



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Matthew**

**Version 66**

[en]

# Copyrights and Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 66

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 41

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 40

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2022-08-18

**Version:** 2.1.29

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2022-08-18

**Version:** 0.29

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 33

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 36

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 18

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](https://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](https://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>16</b>
Matthew	16
Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew	17
Matthew 1	19
Matthew 2	51
Matthew 3	84
Matthew 4	111
Matthew 5	152
Matthew 6	217
Matthew 7	263
Matthew 8	302
Matthew 9	345
Matthew 10	396
Matthew 11	458
Matthew 12	510
Matthew 13	600
Matthew 14	685
Matthew 15	728
Matthew 16	771
Matthew 17	815
Matthew 18	847
Matthew 19	895
Matthew 20	935
Matthew 21	977
Matthew 22	1037
Matthew 23	1090
Matthew 24	1145
Matthew 25	1203
Matthew 26	1253
Matthew 27	1347
Matthew 28	1422
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>1443</b>
Abstract Nouns	1444
Active or Passive	1446
Apostrophe	1449
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1451
Background Information	1455
Biblical Distance	1458
Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors	1461
Biblical Money	1464
Biblical Volume	1466
Connect — Background Information	1470
Connect — Contrast Relationship	1473
Connect — Exception Clauses	1475
Connect — Hypothetical Conditions	1477
Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship	1479
Connect — Sequential Time Relationship	1481
Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship	1483



Connecting Words and Phrases .....	1485
Copy or Borrow Words .....	1489
Direct and Indirect Quotations .....	1491
Double Negatives .....	1493
Doublet .....	1496
Ellipsis .....	1498
End of Story .....	1501
Euphemism .....	1503
Exclamations .....	1505
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' .....	1507
First, Second or Third Person .....	1509
Forms of You .....	1511
Forms of 'You' — Singular .....	1512
Generic Noun Phrases .....	1514
Hendiadys .....	1516
How to Translate Names .....	1519
Hyperbole .....	1523
Idiom .....	1527
Imperatives — Other Uses .....	1529
Information Structure .....	1532
Introduction of a New Event .....	1534
Introduction of New and Old Participants .....	1537
Irony .....	1540
Kinship .....	1543
Litany .....	1545
Litotes .....	1548
Merism .....	1550
Metaphor .....	1552
Metonymy .....	1558
Nominal Adjectives .....	1560
Numbers .....	1562
Order of Events .....	1565
Ordinal Numbers .....	1567
Parables .....	1570
Parallelism .....	1572
Personification .....	1575
Possession .....	1577
Predictive Past .....	1581
Pronouns .....	1583
Pronouns — When to Use Them .....	1585
Proverbs .....	1587
Quotations and Quote Margins .....	1590
Quotes within Quotes .....	1592
Rhetorical Question .....	1595
Simile .....	1598
Symbolic Action .....	1601
Synecdoche .....	1603
Textual Variants .....	1605
Translate Unknowns .....	1607
Translating Son and Father .....	1610
When Masculine Words Include Women .....	1612
When to Keep Information Implicit .....	1614

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words</b> .....	<b>1616</b>
Abel .....	1617
Abijah .....	1618
abomination, abominable .....	1619
Abraham, Abram .....	1620
accuse, accused, accuser, accusation .....	1621
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress .....	1622
adversary, enemy .....	1623
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels .....	1624
age, aged .....	1625
Ahaz .....	1626
alms .....	1627
altar .....	1628
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ... ..	1629
amen, truly .....	1630
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather .....	1631
Andrew .....	1633
angel, archangel .....	1634
anoint, anointed, anointing .....	1636
apostle, apostleship .....	1637
appoint, appointed .....	1638
ark .....	1639
Asa .....	1640
ash, ashes .....	1641
asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless .....	1642
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community .....	1643
astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray .....	1644
authority .....	1645
ax .....	1646
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian .....	1647
baptize, baptized, baptism .....	1648
Barabbas .....	1650
Bartholomew .....	1651
basket, basketfuls .....	1652
bear, bearer, carry .....	1653
Beelzebul .....	1654
beg, beggar, needy .....	1655
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief .....	1656
beloved .....	1659
Bethany .....	1660
Bethlehem, Ephrathah .....	1661
betray, betrayer .....	1662
bind, bond, bound .....	1663
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous .....	1664
bless, blessed, blessing .....	1665
blood .....	1667
Boaz .....	1669
body .....	1670
born again, born of God, new birth .....	1671
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee .....	1672
bread .....	1673
bridegroom .....	1674

brother .....	1675
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances .....	1676
bury, buried, burial .....	1677
Caesar .....	1678
Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi .....	1679
Caiaphas .....	1680
call, call out .....	1681
camel .....	1683
Canaan, Canaanite .....	1684
Capernaum .....	1685
cast out, driving out, throw out .....	1686
centurion .....	1687
chaff .....	1688
children, child, offspring .....	1689
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect .....	1691
Christ, Messiah .....	1692
church, Church .....	1694
clean, wash .....	1696
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments .....	1698
comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted .....	1699
command, commandment .....	1700
compassion, compassionate .....	1701
conceive, conception .....	1702
condemn, condemned, condemnation .....	1703
confess, confession .....	1704
cornerstone .....	1705
corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness .....	1706
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved .....	1707
council .....	1708
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ... ..	1709
covenant .....	1711
create, created, creation, creator .....	1713
cross .....	1714
crown, crowned .....	1715
crucify, crucified .....	1716
cry, cry out, outcry .....	1717
cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy ..	1718
curse, cursed, cursing .....	1720
curtain .....	1722
cut off, cut down .....	1723
Cyrene .....	1724
Daniel .....	1725
darkness .....	1726
daughter of Zion .....	1727
David .....	1728
day .....	1729
deceive, lie, deception, illusions .....	1730
declare, proclaim, announce .....	1731
defile, defiled, desecrate .....	1732
delight .....	1733
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue .....	1734
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit .....	1735

demon-possessed .....	1736
desert, wilderness .....	1737
desolate, desolation, alone, deserted .....	1738
destroy, destruction, annihilate .....	1739
devour .....	1740
die, dead, deadly, death .....	1741
disciple .....	1743
divorce .....	1745
doctrine, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge .....	1746
donkey, mule .....	1747
dove, pigeon .....	1748
dream .....	1749
drunk, drunkard .....	1750
eagle .....	1751
earth, land .....	1752
Egypt, Egyptian .....	1753
elder, older, old .....	1754
Eleazar .....	1755
Eliakim .....	1756
Elijah .....	1757
endure, endurance .....	1758
envy, covet .....	1759
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever .....	1760
eunuch .....	1762
evil, wicked, unpleasant .....	1763
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins .....	1765
exalt, exalted, exaltation .....	1766
exult, exultant .....	1767
face, facial .....	1768
faith .....	1770
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy .....	1771
false prophet .....	1773
famine .....	1774
fast, fasting .....	1775
fear, afraid, frighten .....	1776
feast, feasting .....	1777
festival, feast, celebrate .....	1778
fig .....	1779
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot .....	1780
fishermen, fishers .....	1781
flesh .....	1782
flock, herd .....	1783
flood .....	1784
flute, pipe .....	1785
fool, foolish, folly .....	1786
footstool .....	1787
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned .....	1788
forsake, forsaken, leave .....	1790
found, founder, foundation .....	1791
frankincense .....	1792
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty .....	1793
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful .....	1794

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out .....	1796
furnace .....	1797
Galilee, Galilean .....	1798
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway .....	1799
generation .....	1800
Gentile .....	1801
Gethsemane .....	1802
gift .....	1803
glory, glorious, glorify .....	1804
goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids .....	1806
God .....	1807
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father .....	1809
gold, golden .....	1811
Golgotha .....	1812
Gomorrah .....	1813
good news, gospel .....	1814
good, right, pleasant, better, best .....	1816
govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha .....	1818
grain, grainfields .....	1819
grape, grapevine .....	1820
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place .....	1821
Hades, Sheol .....	1822
hand .....	1823
hang, hung .....	1825
hard, harden, hardness .....	1826
harvest, reap .....	1827
head .....	1828
heart .....	1829
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly .....	1830
heir .....	1832
hell, lake of fire .....	1833
Herod, Herod Antipas .....	1834
Herod, Herod the Great .....	1835
Herodias .....	1836
Hezekiah .....	1837
high priest, chief priests .....	1838
holy city .....	1840
holy place .....	1841
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit .....	1842
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred .....	1844
honey, honeycomb .....	1846
honor .....	1847
hope, hoped .....	1848
hour .....	1849
hour, moment, immediately, for a while .....	1850
house of God, Yahweh's house .....	1851
house, household .....	1852
household .....	1853
humble, humbled, humility .....	1854
hypocrite, hypocrisy .....	1855
image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue .....	1856
inherit, inheritance, heir .....	1857

innocent .....	1859
instruct, instruction, instructors .....	1860
interpret, interpretation, interpreter .....	1861
Isaac .....	1862
Isaiah .....	1863
Israel, Israelites .....	1864
it is written .....	1866
Jacob, Israel .....	1867
James (brother of Jesus) .....	1868
James (son of Alphaeus) .....	1869
James (son of Zebedee) .....	1870
Jehoram, Joram .....	1871
Jehoshaphat .....	1872
Jeremiah .....	1873
Jericho .....	1874
Jerusalem .....	1875
Jesse .....	1877
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus .....	1878
Jew, Jewish .....	1880
John (the apostle) .....	1881
John (the Baptist) .....	1882
Jonah .....	1883
Jordan River, Jordan .....	1884
Joseph (NT) .....	1885
Josiah .....	1886
Jotham .....	1887
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad .....	1888
Judah .....	1890
Judas Iscariot .....	1891
Judea, Judah .....	1892
judge .....	1893
judge, judgment .....	1894
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification .....	1896
kind [NOT kindness] .....	1898
King of the Jews .....	1899
king, kingship .....	1900
kingdom .....	1901
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven .....	1903
kiss .....	1905
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish .....	1906
labor, laborer, work, hard work .....	1908
lamp .....	1909
lampstand .....	1910
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God .....	1911
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness .....	1913
learned men, astrologers .....	1915
life, live, living, alive .....	1916
light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten .....	1918
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if .....	1919
locust .....	1920
loins, waist .....	1921
lord, Lord, master, sir .....	1922

lots, casting lots .....	1924
love, beloved .....	1925
lust, lustful, passions, desires .....	1927
manager, steward, stewardship .....	1928
Manasseh .....	1929
Mary Magdalene .....	1930
Mary, the mother of Jesus .....	1931
Matthew, Levi .....	1933
meek, meekness .....	1934
member, body parts .....	1935
mercy, merciful .....	1936
messenger .....	1938
might, mighty, mighty works .....	1939
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded .....	1940
miracle, wonder, sign .....	1941
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock .....	1943
Moses .....	1944
Mount of Olives .....	1945
mourn, mourner, weeping .....	1946
multiply, multiplied, multiplication .....	1947
myrrh .....	1948
mystery, hidden truth .....	1949
name .....	1950
Naphtali .....	1951
nation .....	1952
Nazareth, Nazarene .....	1954
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring .....	1955
Nineveh, Ninevite .....	1956
Noah .....	1957
oath, swear, swearing, swear by .....	1958
obey, keep .....	1959
oil .....	1960
olive .....	1961
on high, in the highest .....	1962
ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared .....	1963
parable .....	1964
Passover .....	1965
patient, patience, impatient .....	1967
peace, peaceful, peacemakers .....	1968
people of God .....	1969
people, people group .....	1970
perfect, complete .....	1972
perish .....	1973
persecute .....	1974
perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, ... ..	1975
Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas .....	1976
Pharisee .....	1977
Philip, the apostle .....	1978
pig, pork, swine .....	1979
Pilate .....	1980
pit, pitfall, trenches, cistern .....	1981
plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow .....	1982

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess .....	1983
power, powerful, powerfully .....	1984
praise, praised, praiseworthy .....	1986
pray, prayer .....	1987
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation .....	1988
precious, valuable, expensive, fine .....	1990
priest, priesthood .....	1991
prison, prisoner, imprison .....	1993
profane, profaned .....	1994
profit, profitable, unprofitable .....	1995
promise, promised .....	1996
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess .....	1997
prostitute, harlot, whored .....	1999
prostrate, bow down, worship .....	2000
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished .....	2001
pure, purify, purification .....	2003
queen .....	2004
quench, quenched, unquenchable .....	2005
Rabbi .....	2006
Rachel .....	2007
Rahab .....	2008
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up, .....	2009
Ramah .....	2011
ransom, ransomed .....	2012
rebuke, reprove .....	2013
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance .....	2014
reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation .....	2016
reed .....	2017
Rehoboam .....	2018
reign, rule .....	2019
reject, rejected, rejection .....	2020
repent, repentance .....	2021
report, reported, tell, reputation .....	2023
rest, rested, restless .....	2024
resurrection .....	2025
return, turn back .....	2026
reveal, revealed, revelation .....	2027
reward, prize, deserve .....	2028
right hand .....	2029
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ... ..	2031
robe, robed .....	2033
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader .....	2034
Ruth .....	2035
Sabbath .....	2036
sackcloth .....	2038
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering .....	2039
Sadducee .....	2041
saint .....	2042
Samaria, Samaritan .....	2043
sanctify, sanctification .....	2044
sandal .....	2045
Satan, devil, evil one .....	2046



Satan, devil, evil one .....	2048
save, saved, safe, salvation .....	2050
scribe .....	2052
Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias .....	2053
seal, sealed, unsealed .....	2054
seed, semen .....	2055
seek, search, look for .....	2056
seize, seizure, capture .....	2057
send, sent, send out .....	2058
serpent, snake, viper .....	2059
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women .....	2060
set apart .....	2063
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication .....	2064
shadow, overshadow, shade .....	2065
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach .....	2066
shepherd, herder, pastor .....	2068
Sidon, Sidonians .....	2070
sign, proof, reminder .....	2071
silver .....	2073
Simon the Zealot .....	2074
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning .....	2075
sister .....	2077
skin disease, leper, leprosy .....	2078
skull .....	2079
snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall .....	2080
snow .....	2081
Sodom .....	2082
soldier, warrior .....	2083
Solomon .....	2084
son .....	2085
Son of God, the Son .....	2087
Son of Man, son of man .....	2089
sons of God, children of God .....	2090
soul, self, person .....	2091
spirit, wind, breath .....	2092
staff, clubs .....	2094
stone, stoning .....	2095
strength, strengthen, strong .....	2096
stumble, reeling .....	2098
stumbling block, stone of stumbling .....	2099
suffer, suffering .....	2100
sweep .....	2102
sword, swordsmen .....	2103
synagogue .....	2104
Syria, Ashur .....	2105
Tamar .....	2106
tax, tribute, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector, .....	2107
teach, teaching, untaught .....	2109
teacher, Teacher .....	2110
temple, house, house of God .....	2111
tempt, temptation .....	2113
tenth, tithe .....	2114

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire .....	2115
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence .....	2116
tetrarch .....	2118
the twelve, the eleven .....	2119
thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits .....	2120
Thomas .....	2121
thorn, thorn bush, thistle .....	2122
thresh .....	2123
throne, enthroned .....	2124
time, untimely, date .....	2125
to minister, ministry .....	2126
torment, tormented, tormentors .....	2127
tradition .....	2128
trample .....	2129
tremble, stagger, shake .....	2130
trespass .....	2131
tribe, tribal, tribesmen .....	2132
tribulation, distresses, trouble .....	2133
tribute, contribution, fined .....	2134
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity .....	2135
true, truth .....	2136
trumpet, trumpeters .....	2138
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness .....	2139
tunic .....	2140
turn, turn away, turn back, return .....	2141
twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes .....	2143
Tyre, Tyrians .....	2144
understand, understanding, thinking .....	2145
unleavened bread .....	2146
Uriah .....	2147
Uzziah, Azariah .....	2148
vain, vanity .....	2149
vine .....	2150
vineyard .....	2151
virgin, virginity .....	2152
vision, envision .....	2153
voice .....	2154
walk, walked .....	2155
waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak .....	2156
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware .....	2157
watchtower, tower .....	2158
water, deep .....	2159
wheat .....	2160
will of God .....	2161
wine, wineskin, new wine .....	2162
winepress .....	2163
winnow, sift .....	2164
wise, wisdom .....	2165
woe .....	2166
wolf, wild dogs .....	2167
womb .....	2168
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ... ..	2169

work, works, deeds .....	2171
world, worldly .....	2172
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless .....	2173
wrath, fury .....	2174
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful .....	2175
year .....	2176
yeast, leaven, unleavened .....	2177
yoke, yoked, tied .....	2178
Zadok .....	2179
Zebedee .....	2180
Zebulun .....	2181
Zerubbabel .....	2182
Zion, Mount Zion .....	2183
<b>Contributors .....</b>	<b>2184</b>
unfoldingWord@ Translation Notes Contributors .....	2184
unfoldingWord@ Literal Text Contributors .....	2190
unfoldingWord@ Simplified Text Contributors .....	2191
unfoldingWord@ Translation Academy Contributors .....	2192
unfoldingWord@ Translation Words Contributors .....	2192
unfoldingWord@ Translation Words Links Contributors .....	2193



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Matthew**

## Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of the book of Matthew

The birth of Jesus Christ and the beginning of his ministry (1:1-4:25)  
 Jesus' Sermon on the Mount (5:1-7:28)  
 Jesus illustrates the kingdom of God through acts of healing (8:1-9:34)  
 Jesus teaches about mission and the kingdom (9:35-10:42)  
 Jesus teaches about the gospel of the kingdom of God. Opposition to Jesus begins. (11:1-12:50)  
 Jesus tells parables about the kingdom of God (13:1-52)  
 Further opposition to Jesus and misunderstanding of the kingdom of God (13:53-17:57)  
 Jesus teaches about life in the kingdom of God (18:1-35)  
 Jesus ministers in Judea (19:1-22:46)  
 Jesus teaches about the final judgment and salvation (23:1-25:46)  
 The crucifixion of Jesus, his death and resurrection (26:1-28:19)

#### What is the book of Matthew about?

The Gospel of Matthew is one of four books in the New Testament that describe some of the life of Jesus Christ. The authors of the Gospels wrote about different aspects of who Jesus was and what he did. Matthew showed that Jesus was the Messiah, and God would save Israel through him. Matthew often explained that Jesus fulfilled the Old Testament prophecies about the Messiah. This may indicate that he expected most of his first readers to be Jewish. (See: [Christ, Messiah](#))

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "The Gospel of Matthew," or "The Gospel according to Matthew." Or they may choose a title that may be clearer, such as, "The Good News about Jesus that Matthew wrote." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Who wrote the book of Matthew?

The book does not give the name of the author. However, since early Christian times, most Christians have thought that the author was the Apostle Matthew.

### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

#### What is the "kingdom of heaven?"

Matthew spoke of the "kingdom of heaven" in the same way that other Gospel writers spoke of the kingdom of God. The kingdom of heaven represents God ruling over all people and all creation everywhere. Those whom God accepts into his kingdom will be blessed. They will live with God forever.

#### What were the teaching methods of Jesus?

The people regarded Jesus as a rabbi. A rabbi is a teacher of God's law. Jesus taught in ways similar those of other religious teachers in Israel. He had students who followed him wherever he went. These students were called

disciples. He often told parables. Parables are stories that teach moral lessons. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#) and [disciple](#) and [parable](#))

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### What are the Synoptic Gospels?

The Gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke are called the Synoptic Gospels because they have many similar passages. The word “synoptic” means to “see together.”

The texts are considered “parallel” when they are the same or almost the same among two or three gospels. When translating parallel passages, translators should use the same wording and make them as similar as possible.

### Why does Jesus refer to himself as the “Son of Man”?

In the gospels, Jesus calls himself the “Son of Man.” It is a reference to Daniel 7:13-14. In that passage there is a person described as a “son of man.” That means the person was someone who looked like a human being. God gave authority to the son of man to rule over the nations forever. All the people will worship him forever.

Jews of Jesus’ time did not use “Son of Man” as a title for anyone. Therefore, Jesus used it for himself to help them understand who he truly was. (See: [Son of Man](#), [son of man](#))

Translating the title “Son of Man” can be difficult in many languages. Readers may misunderstand a literal translation. Translators can consider alternatives, such as “The Human One.” It may also be helpful to include a footnote to explain the title.

### What are the major issues in the text of the book of Matthew?

The following verses are found in older versions of the Bible but are not included in most modern versions: \* “Bless those who curse you; do good to those who hate you” (5:44) \* “For yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen” (6:13) \* “But this kind of demon does not go out except with prayer and fasting” (17:21) \* “For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost” (18:11) \* “Many are called, but few are chosen” (20:16) \* “Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you devour widows’ houses, while you make a show of long prayers. You will therefore receive greater condemnation.” (23:14)

Translators are advised not to include these passages. However, if in the translators’ region, there are older versions of the Bible that include one or more of these passages, the translators may include them. If they are included, they should be put inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that they were probably not original to Matthew’s Gospel. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

# Matthew 1

## Matthew 1 General Notes

### Structure and Formatting

#### Indentation

Some translations set a quotation from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this for the quoted material in 1:23.

#### Genealogy

A genealogy is a list that records a person's ancestors or descendants. Genealogies were important to the Jewish people because family lineage is how they decided how someone functioned in society. For instance, if someone was a descendant of Aaron, they were able to become priests. Similarly, if someone was a descendant of King David, they were able to become a king. This genealogy shows that Jesus was clearly a descendant of King David, and therefore, was able to become king.

### Important Figures of Speech in this Chapter

#### Use of the passive voice

Matthew uses the passive voice very purposefully in this chapter to indicate that Mary did not have a sexual relationship with anyone. She became pregnant with Jesus because the Holy Spirit performed a miracle. Many languages do not have a passive voice, so translators in those languages must find other ways to present the same truths. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Matthew 1:1

### of Jesus Christ, son of David, son of Abraham (ULT)

### Jesus the Messiah...who is the descendant of King David and the descendant of Abraham (UST)

Here, **son** means “descendant.” If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: “of Jesus Christ, descendant of King David, who was a descendent of Abraham” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- Christ
- son
- son (2)
- of David
- of Abraham

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- the Messiah
- who is the descendant of...the descendant of
- and (2)
- King David
- Abraham

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The book of the genealogy of [Jesus Christ, son of David, son of Abraham](#):

### UST

<sup>1</sup> This is the record of the people from whom [Jesus the Messiah](#) descended, [who is the descendant of King David and the descendant of Abraham](#).



## Matthew 1:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- fathered
- fathered (2)
- fathered (3)
- Isaac
- Isaac
- Jacob
- Jacob
- Judah
- brothers

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Abraham fathered Isaac, and Isaac fathered Jacob, and Jacob fathered Judah and his brothers,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> There were fourteen generations from Abraham to King David: Abraham was the father of Isaac. Isaac was the father of Jacob. Jacob was the father of Judah and of his brothers.

### Translation Words - UST

- There were fourteen generations from Abraham to King David: Abraham
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)
- of Isaac
- Isaac
- of Jacob
- Jacob
- of Judah
- brothers

## Matthew 1:3

### of Perez ... Zerah ... of Hezron ... of Ram

Unless stated otherwise, all of the names in this genealogy are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- fathered
- fathered (2)
- fathered (3)
- Tamar

#### Translation Words - UST

- Judah
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)
- Tamar

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and Judah fathered Perez and Zerah by Tamar, and Perez fathered Hezron, and Hezron fathered Ram,

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Judah was the father of Perez and Zerah, and their mother was Tamar. Perez was the father of Hezron. Hezron was the father of Ram.

## Matthew 1:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fathered
- fathered (2)
- fathered (3)

### Translation Words - UST

- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> and Ram fathered Amminadab, and Amminadab fathered Nahshon, and Nahshon fathered Salmon,

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Ram was the father of Amminadab. Amminadab was the father of Nahshon. Nahshon was the father of Salmon.

## Matthew 1:5

### Rahab...Ruth (ULT) and his wife Rahab...Ruth (UST)

**Rahab** and **Ruth** are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fathered
- fathered (2)
- fathered (3)
- Boaz
- Boaz (2)
- Rahab
- Ruth
- Jesse

#### Translation Words - UST

- and his wife Rahab
- were the parents
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)
- of Boaz
- Boaz (2)
- Ruth
- of Jesse

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> and Salmon fathered Boaz by Rahab, and Boaz fathered Obed by Ruth, and Obed fathered Jesse,

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Salmon and his wife Rahab were the parents of Boaz. Boaz was the father of Obed. Obed's mother was Ruth. Obed was the father of Jesse.

## Matthew 1:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesse
- fathered
- fathered (2)
- David
- David (2)
- king
- Solomon
- of Uriah

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesse
- was the father
- was the father of (2)
- King
- of...David
- There were fourteen generations from David until the time when the people were taken to Babylon. David (2)
- Solomon
- of Uriah

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> and Jesse fathered David the king, and David fathered Solomon by the {wife} of Uriah,

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Jesse was the father of King David. There were fourteen generations from David until the time when the people were taken to Babylon. David was the father of Solomon; Solomon's mother was the wife of Uriah.

## Matthew 1:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- fathered
- fathered (2)
- fathered (3)
- Rehoboam
- Rehoboam
- Abijah
- Abijah
- Asa

### Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)
- of Rehoboam
- Rehoboam
- of Abijah
- Abijah
- of Asa

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> and Solomon fathered Rehoboam, and Rehoboam fathered Abijah, and Abijah fathered Asa,

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Solomon was the father of Rehoboam. Rehoboam was the father of Abijah. Abijah was the father of Asa.

## Matthew 1:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Asa
- fathered
- fathered (2)
- fathered (3)
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- Joram
- Joram
- Uzziah

### Translation Words - UST

- Asa
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was an ancestor (3)
- of Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- of Joram
- Joram
- of Uzziah

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> and Asa fathered Jehoshaphat, and Jehoshaphat fathered Joram, and Joram fathered Uzziah,

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Asa was the father of Jehoshaphat. Jehoshaphat was the father of Joram. Joram was an ancestor of Uzziah.

## Matthew 1:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Uzziah
- fathered
- fathered (2)
- fathered (3)
- Jotham
- Jotham
- Ahaz
- Ahaz
- Hezekiah

### Translation Words - UST

- Uzziah
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)
- of Jotham
- Jotham
- of Ahaz
- Ahaz
- of Hezekiah

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> and Uzziah fathered Jotham, and Jotham fathered Ahaz, and Ahaz fathered Hezekiah,

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Uzziah was the father of Jotham. Jotham was the father of Ahaz. Ahaz was the father of Hezekiah.



## Matthew 1:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Hezekiah
- fathered
- fathered (2)
- fathered (3)
- Manasseh
- Manasseh
- Josiah

### Translation Words - UST

- Hezekiah
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)
- of Manasseh
- Manasseh
- of Josiah

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> and Hezekiah fathered Manasseh, and Manasseh fathered Amon, and Amon fathered Josiah,

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Hezekiah was the father of Manasseh. Manasseh was the father of Amon. Amon was the father of Josiah.

## Matthew 1:11

### Babylonian (ULT) the country of Babylonia (UST)

Here, **Babylonian** refers to the country of Babylonia, not just the city of Babylon.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Josiah
- fathered
- brothers
- Babylonian

#### Translation Words - UST

- Josiah
- was the father
- Jechoniah's brothers
- the country of Babylonia

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> and Josiah fathered Jechoniah and his brothers at the Babylonian deportation,

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Josiah was the father of Jechoniah and Jechoniah's brothers. They lived at the time when the Babylonian army took the Israelites as captives to the country of Babylonia.

## Matthew 1:12

### after...the Babylonian deportation (ULT) After...the...Babylonians exiled the Israelites to Babylon (UST)

Use the same wording you used in 1:11 for **Babylonian**.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Babylonian
- fathered
- fathered (2)
- Zerubbabel

#### Translation Words - UST

- Babylon
- became the father
- was an ancestor (2)
- of Zerubbabel

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> and after the Babylonian deportation, Jechoniah fathered Shealtiel, and Shealtiel fathered Zerubbabel,

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> After the Babylonians exiled the Israelites to Babylon, Jechoniah became the father of Shealtiel. Shealtiel was an ancestor of Zerubbabel.

## Matthew 1:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Zerubbabel
- fathered
- fathered (2)
- fathered (3)
- Eliakim
- Eliakim

### Translation Words - UST

- Zerubbabel
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)
- of Eliakim
- Eliakim

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> and Zerubbabel fathered Abiud, and Abiud fathered Eliakim, and Eliakim fathered Azor,

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> Zerubbabel was the father of Abiud. Abiud was the father of Eliakim. Eliakim was the father of Azor.

## Matthew 1:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fathered
- fathered (2)
- fathered (3)
- Zadok
- Zadok

### Translation Words - UST

- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)
- of Zadok
- Zadok

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> and Azor fathered Zadok, and Zadok fathered Achim, and Achim fathered Eliud,

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Azor was the father of Zadok. Zadok was the father of Akim. Akim was the father of Eliud.

## Matthew 1:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fathered
- fathered (2)
- fathered (3)
- Eleazar
- Eleazar (2)
- Jacob

### Translation Words - UST

- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)
- of Eleazar
- Eleazar (2)
- of Jacob

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> and Eliud fathered Eleazar, and Eleazar fathered Matthan, and Matthan fathered Jacob,

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Eliud was the father of Eleazar.  
Eleazar was the father of Matthan.  
Matthan was the father of Jacob.

## Matthew 1:16

**of Mary, by whom Jesus was born (ULT)  
was Mary's husband...and Mary was Jesus'  
mother. Jesus (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Mary, who gave birth to Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**of Mary (ULT)  
was Mary's husband (UST)**

Mary is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the one called Christ (ULT)  
is the one who is called the Messiah (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "whom people called Christ" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [fathered](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [of Mary](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [called](#)
- [Christ](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jacob](#)
- [was the father](#)
- [of Joseph. Joseph](#)
- [was Mary's husband](#)
- [Jesus...Jesus](#)
- [who is called](#)
- [the Messiah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> and [Jacob](#) fathered [Joseph](#) the husband of [Mary](#), by whom [Jesus](#) was born, the one [called Christ](#).

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> [Jacob](#) was the father of [Joseph](#). [Joseph](#) was [Mary's](#) husband, and [Mary](#) was [Jesus'](#) mother. [Jesus](#) is the one [who is called the Messiah](#).

## Matthew 1:17

### the Babylonian deportation (ULT) the time when...Babylonia...then (UST)

Use the same wording you used in 1:11.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- generations
- were...generations (2)
- were (3)
- were...generations (4)
- Abraham
- David
- David (2)
- Babylonian
- Babylonian (2)
- Christ

#### Translation Words - UST

- The list of Jesus' ancestors is as follows
- Fourteen of them (2)
- fourteen (3)
- was born (4)
- Abraham lived
- lived. There were another...David lived
- King David (2)
- Babylonia...then
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian (2)
- Messiah

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Therefore, all the generations from Abraham until David {were} 14 generations, and from David until the Babylonian deportation {were} 14 generations, and from the Babylonian deportation until the Christ {were} 14 generations.

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> The list of Jesus' ancestors is as follows: Fourteen of them from the time when Abraham lived to the time when King David lived. There were another fourteen from the time when David lived until the time when the Israelites went away to Babylonia, and then yet another fourteen from then until the time when the Messiah was born.





## **Matthew 1:18**

## Now the birth of Jesus Christ was thus (ULT)

This begins a new part of the story in which the author describes the events leading up to the birth of Jesus. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

## His mother, Mary, having been engaged to marry Joseph (ULT)

## Mary, his mother...had promised to marry... Joseph (UST)

Mary was given by her parents to Joseph to marry him. This was common in their culture. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Mary's parents promised to Joseph that Mary, Jesus' mother, would marry him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## before...they came together (ULT)

This may refer to Mary and Joseph having sexual relations together. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a different polite way of referring to this or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: "before they had united sexually" or "joined in physical union" (See: [Euphemism](#))

## was found having in {the} womb (ULT) they found out that she was carrying a child (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "they realized that she was going to have a baby" or "it became known that she was pregnant" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## was found having in {the} womb (ULT) they found out that she was carrying a child (UST)

This is an idiom meaning people discovered that she was pregnant. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: (1) "Joseph found out that she was pregnant" or (2), more generally "some people discovered that she was pregnant" (See: [Idiom](#))

## from {the} Holy Spirit (ULT) This child was given to her by Holy Spirit (UST)

The power of the **Holy Spirit** had caused Mary to have a baby before she had slept with a man. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "through the Holy Spirit allowing her to be pregnant without sleeping with a man" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Now the birth of **Jesus Christ** was thus: His mother, **Mary**, having been engaged to marry **Joseph**, before they came together, was found **having in {the} womb** from **{the} Holy Spirit**.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> This is the account of what happened up until **Jesus the Messiah** was born. **Mary**, his mother, had promised to marry **Joseph**. Before they lived together as husband and wife, they found out **that she was carrying a child**. This child was given to her by **Holy Spirit**.

## Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- Christ
- Mary
- Joseph
- having
- the} womb
- the} Holy Spirit

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Messiah
- Mary
- Joseph
- that she was carrying a child
- that she was carrying a child
- Holy Spirit

## Matthew 1:19

### Now Joseph her husband, being righteous, and not wanting to publicly disgrace her, he intended to divorce her secretly (ULT)

Mark is providing this background information to help readers understand who Joseph was and what his motives were. Use a natural way in your language for introducing background information. Alternate translation: "Joseph her husband, a righteous man who did not want to embarrass her publicly planned to quietly end their engagement." (See: [Connect — Background Information](#) )

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph
- righteous
- to divorce

#### Translation Words - UST

- Joseph
- was a man who obeyed God's commands...he...her...not to marry...so
- he thought about doing this secretly

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Now Joseph her husband, being righteous, and not wanting to publicly disgrace her, he intended to divorce her secretly.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> Now Joseph was a man who obeyed God's commands. When he found out that she was carrying a child in her womb, he decided not to marry her. But he did not want to shame her in front of other people, so he thought about doing this secretly.



## **Matthew 1:20**

## But he having reflected on these {things}, behold, an angel of {the} Lord appeared to him by way of a dream (ULT)

The angel appeared to Joseph at the same time he was considering divorcing Mary. You can make this clear in your translation with an appropriate connecting word or phrase. Alternate translation: "During the time when Joseph was considering divorcing Mary, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream" (See: [Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship](#) )

## son of David (ULT) King David's descendant (UST)

Here, **son** means "descendant." If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "Descendant of King David" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## the one...having been conceived in her is from {the} Holy Spirit (ULT) For the child which she is carrying...For the child which she is carrying...was given to her by the Holy Spirit (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit caused Mary to become pregnant with this child" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- an angel
- of {the} Lord
- the...Spirit
- a dream
- Joseph
- son
- of David
- you should...fear
- Mary
- having been conceived

### Translation Words - UST

- an angel
- from the Lord
- in a dream
- Joseph
- King David's
- descendant
- do...be afraid
- Mary

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But he having reflected on these {things}, behold, an angel of {the} Lord appeared to him by way of a dream, saying, "Joseph, son of David, you should not fear to take Mary as your wife, because the one having been conceived in her is from {the} Holy Spirit.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> After Joseph had been thinking about this for a while, an angel from the Lord appeared to him in a dream. The angel said to him, "Joseph, King David's descendant, do not be afraid to marry Mary. For the child which she is carrying was given to her by the Holy Spirit.



- For the child which she is carrying
- Spirit

## Matthew 1:21

**for he will save his people from their sins**

**(ULT)**

**for he will save God's people from their sins**

**(UST)**

**for he will save his people from their sins** is explaining the meaning of the name **Jesus**. In Hebrew, Jesus comes from the word meaning "to save". Use a natural way in your language for introducing this background information. Alternate translation: "For, just like his name means, he will save his people from their sins" (See: [Connect — Background Information](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- she will bear
- a son
- you will call
- name
- Jesus
- will save
- his...people
- people
- sins

### Translation Words - UST

- She will give birth to
- a son
- You shall name
- You shall name
- Jesus
- will save
- God's...people
- people
- sins

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> And she will bear a son, and you will call his name Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins."

### UST

<sup>21</sup> She will give birth to a son. You shall name him 'Jesus.', for he will save God's people from their sins."

## Matthew 1:22

**what} was spoken by {the} Lord through the prophet (ULT)**

**what the Lord told Isaiah the prophet Isaiah to write (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “what the Lord told the prophet to write long ago” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the prophet (ULT)**

**Isaiah the prophet Isaiah (UST)**

There were many prophets. Matthew was speaking specifically of Isaiah. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “the prophet Isaiah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**saying (ULT)**

**a long time ago. Isaiah wrote (UST)**

In Paul’s culture, **saying** is a normal way to introduce a quotation from an important text, in this case, the Old Testament book written by Isaiah the prophet. If your readers would not understand this, you could use a comparable phrase that indicates that Paul is quoting from an important text. Alternate translation: “He wrote” (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [might be fulfilled](#)
- [the} Lord](#)
- [prophet](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [prove true](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [Isaiah the prophet Isaiah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Now all this happened so that [might be fulfilled](#) {what} was spoken by {the} Lord through the [prophet](#), saying,

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> All of these things happened to [prove true](#) what [the Lord](#) told [Isaiah the prophet Isaiah](#) to write a long time ago. Isaiah wrote,

## Matthew 1:23

### Immanuel (ULT)

### Immanuel (UST)

**Immanuel** is a male name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Behold (ULT)

### Listen (UST)

The term **behold** focuses the attention of the listener on what the speaker is about to say. Though it literally means “look” or “see,” in this case seeing figuratively means giving notice and attention. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: “Pay attention to what I am saying to you!” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### which is translated, “God with us (ULT)

### which means, “God is with us (UST)

Matthew is providing this background information to help readers understand what the name **Immanuel** means. Use a natural way in your language for introducing background information. Alternate translation: “This name means, ‘God with us’” (See: [Connect — Background Information](#) )

## Translation Words - ULT

- [virgin](#)
- [will have](#)
- [her} womb](#)
- [bear](#)
- [a son](#)
- [they will call](#)
- [name](#)
- [translated](#)
- [God](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [virgin](#)
- [will become pregnant](#)
- [will become pregnant](#)
- [will give birth to](#)
- [a son](#)
- [They will call](#)
- [They will call](#)
- [means](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> “Behold, the [virgin will have](#) in {her} [womb](#) and [bear a son](#), and [they will call](#) his [name Immanuel](#)”—which is [translated](#), “[God with us](#).”

### UST

<sup>23</sup> “Listen, a [virgin will become pregnant](#) and [will give birth to a son](#). [They will call](#) him [Immanuel](#)”— which [means](#), “[God is with us](#).”

## Matthew 1:24

**did as the angel of {the} Lord commanded him and took {her} {as} his wife (ULT)  
he did what the Lord's angel had commanded him to do. The angel commanded him to begin to live with Mary as his wife (UST)**

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: "Joseph took Mary as his wife, just as the angel of the Lord commanded Him to" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph
- sleep
- as
- angel
- of {the} Lord
- commanded

### Translation Words - UST

- Joseph
- sleep
- what
- the Lord's angel had commanded him to do. The angel commanded him to
- the Lord's angel had commanded him to do. The angel commanded him to
- the Lord's angel had commanded him to do. The angel commanded him to

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> And Joseph, having been awakened from sleep, did as the angel of {the} Lord commanded him and took {her} {as} his wife.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> After Joseph got up from sleep, he did what the Lord's angel had commanded him to do. The angel commanded him to begin to live with Mary as his wife.

## Matthew 1:25

### he did not know her (ULT)

### he did not have sex with her (UST)

Mark uses a polite expression to say that they had not engaged in sexual activity. Alternate translation: "He did not have sexual with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he did...know](#)
- [a son](#)
- [he called](#)
- [name](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he did...have sex with](#)
- [her son](#)
- [Joseph named](#)
- [Joseph named](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> And [he did](#) not [know](#) her until she bore [a son](#). And [he called](#) his [name](#) [Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>25</sup> But [he did](#) not [have sex with](#) her until she gave birth to [her son](#). And [Joseph](#) [named](#) him [Jesus](#).

## Matthew 2

### Matthew 2 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in verses 6 and 18, which are words from the Old Testament.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### “Learned men”

These men were men who studied the stars in the sky to try to learn what the gods were communicating to them. If your readers would not be familiar with this, you can state this explicitly. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))





## **Matthew 2:1**

**Now, Jesus having been born in Bethlehem of Judea in {the} days of Herod the king, behold, learned men from {the} east arrived in Jerusalem (ULT)**

**Jesus was born in the town of Bethlehem in the region of Judea. During that time, King Herod the Great ruled there. Some time after Jesus was born, some men from the east who studied the stars came to the city of Jerusalem (UST)**

**learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem** comes after **Jesus had been born in Bethlehem of Judea**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could show this relationship by using a fuller phrase. Alternate translation: "Now after Jesus had been born in the city of Bethlehem, which is in Judea, men who studied the stars came to Jerusalem from an eastern country" (See: [Connect — Sequential Time Relationship](#) )

**of Herod (ULT)**

**King Herod the Great (UST)**

There was more than one man named **Herod**. This refers to **Herod** the Great. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**learned men from {the} east (ULT)**

**some men...from the east...who studied the stars (UST)**

See the note on these men in the Chapter Introduction. Alternate translation: "men who studied the stars" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Bethlehem](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [the} days](#)
- [of Herod the king](#)
- [king](#)
- [learned men](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [the town of Bethlehem](#)
- [region of Judea](#)
- [During that time](#)
- [King Herod the Great ruled there. Some time after Jesus was born](#)
- [ruled there. Some time after Jesus was born](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now, [Jesus](#) having been born in [Bethlehem of Judea](#) in [{the} days of Herod the king](#), behold, [learned men](#) from [{the} east](#) arrived in [Jerusalem](#),

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Jesus](#) was born in [the town of Bethlehem](#) in the [region of Judea](#). During that time, [King Herod the Great](#) ruled there. Some time after [Jesus](#) was born, [some men](#) from the east [who studied the stars](#) came to the city of [Jerusalem](#).

- some men...who studied the stars
- the city of Jerusalem

## Matthew 2:2

**For we saw his star in the east and came to worship him (ULT)**

**We have seen a star in the east which was the sign that he has been born, so we have come to worship him (UST)**

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase is the result of the first phrase. Alternate translation: “We have come to worship him, for we saw his star in the sky in the east” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**his star (ULT)**

**a star...which was the sign...he has been born (UST)**

They were not saying that the baby was the owner of the **star**, but rather that this star was directing them to where the child was. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “the star that tells about him” or “the star that is associated with his birth” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to worship (ULT)**

**to worship (UST)**

This could mean: (1) they intended to **worship** the baby as divine. (2) they wanted to honor him as a human king. If your language has a word that includes both meanings, you should consider using it here.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [King](#)
- [King of the Jews](#)
- [of the Jews](#)
- [to worship](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the king](#)
- [the king over the Jews](#)
- [over the Jews](#)
- [to worship](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> saying, “Where is the one having been born [King of the Jews](#)? For we saw his star in the east and came [to worship](#) him.”

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> They were asking people, “Where is the one whom God appointed to be [the king over the Jews](#) from the time of his birth? We have seen a star in the east which was the sign that he has been born, so we have come [to worship](#) him.”

## Matthew 2:3

### all Jerusalem (ULT)

#### Many of the people...in Jerusalem (UST)

Here, **Jerusalem** refers to the people who live in Jerusalem. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "all the people in Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### and all Jerusalem with him (ULT)

#### Many of the people in Jerusalem also became (UST)

Matthew left out some words in this phrase that might be needed in certain languages to make a full sentence. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "And many in Jerusalem were troubled along with him" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### all Jerusalem (ULT)

#### Many of the people...in Jerusalem (UST)

Here, **all** means "many." Matthew is exaggerating to emphasize how many people were worried. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language. Alternate translation: "many of the people in Jerusalem" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Herod...king](#)
- [king](#)
- [became troubled](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [King Herod the Great](#)
- [King Herod the Great](#)
- [he became very troubled...troubled](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But having heard {this}, [Herod](#) the [king](#) [became troubled](#), and all [Jerusalem](#) with him.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> When [King Herod the Great](#) heard about what these men were asking, [he](#) [became very troubled](#). Many of the people [in Jerusalem](#) also became [troubled](#).

## Matthew 2:4

**he inquired from them, “Where is the Christ being born (ULT)**

**He asked them where the prophets had predicted that the Messiah was to be born (UST)**

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “He was asking them where the Messiah was supposed to have been born” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having brought together](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [of the people](#)
- [Christ](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [King Herod called together](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [teachers of the Jewish laws](#)
- [teachers of the Jewish laws](#)
- [Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And [having brought together](#) all the [chief priests](#) and [scribes of the people](#), he inquired from them, “Where is the [Christ](#) being born?”

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Then [King Herod called together](#) all the [chief priests](#) and [teachers of the Jewish laws](#). He asked them where the prophets had predicted that the [Messiah](#) was to be born.

## Matthew 2:5

### In Bethlehem of Judea (ULT) in the town of Bethlehem, here in the region of Judea (UST)

Matthew is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "He is supposed to have been born in Bethlehem, which is in the region of Judea" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### thus...it has been written through the prophet (ULT)

### We know this because...the prophet Micah wrote long ago (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "this is what the prophet wrote long ago" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### for thus it has been written through the prophet (ULT)

### We know this because the prophet Micah wrote long ago (UST)

In Matthew's culture, **for thus it has been written through the prophet** is a normal way to introduce a quotation from an important text, in this case, the Old Testament book written by Micah the prophet. If your readers would not understand this, you could use a comparable phrase that indicates that Matthew is quoting from an important text. Alternate translation: "according to Micah the prophet, who wrote" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Bethlehem](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [it has been written](#)
- [prophet](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the town of Bethlehem](#)
- [region of Judea](#)
- [the prophet Micah](#)
- [wrote long ago](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And they said to him, "In [Bethlehem of Judea](#), for thus [it has been written](#) through the [prophet](#),

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> They said to him, "He will be born in [the town of Bethlehem](#), here in the [region of Judea](#). We know this because [the prophet Micah wrote long ago](#),





## **Matthew 2:6**

**And you, Bethlehem, land of Judah, are by no means least among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come out a ruling {one} who will shepherd my people Israel (ULT)**

**You who live in Bethlehem in the land of Judah, your town is certainly very important. This is because a man from your town will become a leader. He will guide my people who live in Israel (UST)**

Micah was speaking to **Bethlehem** as if it was a person. If this is confusing in your language, consider referring to Bethlehem in the third person. Alternate translation: "Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, is by no means the least among the leaders of Judah. For from this region a ruler will come who will shepherd my people Israel" (See: [Apostrophe](#))

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> 'And you, [Bethlehem](#), land of [Judah](#), are by no means least among the [leaders of Judah](#), for from you will come out a ruling {one} who [will shepherd](#) my [people Israel](#).'"

### UST

<sup>6</sup> 'You [who live in Bethlehem](#) in the land of [Judah](#), [your town is certainly very important](#). This is because a man from your town will become a leader. He [will guide](#) my [people who live in Israel](#) like a shepherd.'"

**are by no means least among the leaders of Judah (ULT)**  
**your town is certainly very important (UST)**

If **are by no means the least among the leaders of Judah** is confusing in your language, you can express the meaning positively. Alternate translation: "your town is among the most important towns in Judah" (See: [Litotes](#))

**for from you will come out a ruling {one} (ULT)**  
**This is because a man from your town will become a leader (UST)**

When Matthew says **for from you will come out a ruler**, he is talking about from the people who live in Bethlehem. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "from your people a leader will come" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**who will shepherd my people Israel (ULT)**  
**He will guide my people who live in Israel (UST)**

Micah speaks of this ruler as one who will **shepherd my people Israel**. This means he will lead and care for the people just like a shepherd cares for their animals. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternate translation: "who will lead my people Israel and take care of them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Bethlehem](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [of Judah \(2\)](#)
- [leaders](#)
- [will shepherd](#)
- [people](#)
- [my...people...Israel](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- who live in Bethlehem
- Judah
- your town is certainly very important (2)
- your town is certainly very important
- will guide
- people
- my...people...who live in Israel

## Matthew 2:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Herod
- having...called
- learned men
- time

### Translation Words - UST

- King Herod
- brought...to himself
- men who studied the stars
- exactly when

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then Herod, having secretly called the learned men, inquired from them the time of the appearing of {the} star.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then King Herod secretly brought those men who studied the stars to himself. He asked them exactly when the star first appeared.

## Matthew 2:8

**And having sent them to Bethlehem, he said, “Having gone, search carefully for the young child, and after you have found him, report to me so that I also, having come, might worship him (ULT)**

**Then he said to them, “Go out from here to Bethlehem and search everywhere to find where the child is. When you have found him, come back and tell me where he is so that I myself can go there and worship him too (UST)**

Herod first says **Having gone, search carefully for the young child, and after you have found him, report to me so that I also, having come, might worship him.** and then he **sent them to Bethlehem.** If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases. Alternate translation: “Herod said to the men who study the stars, “After you leave, search carefully for the young child, and after you have found him, report to me so that I also, having come, might worship him.” Then he sent them to Bethlehem” (See: [Information Structure](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And [having sent](#) them to [Bethlehem](#), he said, “Having gone, search carefully for the [young child](#), and after you have found him, [report](#) to me so that I also, having come, [might worship](#) him.”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then he said [to them](#), “Go out from here to [Bethlehem](#) and search everywhere to find where the [child](#) is. When you have found him, [come back and tell](#) me [where he is](#) so that I myself can go there [and worship](#) him too.”

## Translation Words - ULT

- [having sent](#)
- [Bethlehem](#)
- [young child](#)
- [report](#)
- [might worship](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [to them](#)
- [Bethlehem](#)
- [child](#)
- [come back and tell...where he is](#)
- [and worship](#)

## Matthew 2:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- king
- young child

### Translation Words - UST

- the king's
- child

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And they, having heard the king, went on their way, and behold, the star that they saw in the east was going before them until, having come, it stood over where the young child was.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> After the men heard the king's request, they went toward the town of Bethlehem. The star which appeared to them in the east appeared again, and led them to the place where the child was. Then, the star remained above that place.

## Matthew 2:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- they rejoiced with...joy

### Translation Words - UST

- they rejoiced

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And having seen the star, they rejoiced with very great joy.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> When they saw the star, they rejoiced greatly.

## Matthew 2:11

### having fallen down, they worshiped him (ULT) They bowed down...worshiped him (UST)

In their culture, **falling down, they worshipped him** was something that was done to a king. This shows that they saw Jesus as the true king of the Jews. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: "They bowed down and honored the child as they would a king" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### their treasures (ULT)

Here, **their treasures** refers to the boxes or bags they used to carry their treasures. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "the containers that held their treasures" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they offered him gifts (ULT) and...gifts...give them to him (UST)

In some cultures, gifts are brought when you are meeting someone important to show that you honor them. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: "They offered him gifts to honor him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [young child](#)
- [Mary](#)
- [having fallen down](#)
- [they worshiped](#)
- [gifts](#)
- [gold](#)
- [frankincense](#)
- [myrrh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [house where the star led them, they](#)
- [child](#)
- [Mary](#)
- [They bowed down](#)
- [worshiped](#)
- [gold](#)
- [frankincense](#)
- [myrrh](#)
- [gifts](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And having gone into the [house](#), they saw the [young child](#) with [Mary](#) his mother. And [having fallen down, they worshiped](#) him, and having opened their treasures, they offered him [gifts](#): [gold](#) and [frankincense](#) and [myrrh](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> After they entered the [house where the star led them](#), they saw the [child](#) and his mother, [Mary](#). [They bowed down](#) and [worshiped](#) him. Then they took out [gold](#), [frankincense](#), and [myrrh](#) [gifts](#) and give them to him.



## Matthew 2:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- a dream
- to return
- Herod

### Translation Words - UST

- a dream
- to return
- King Herod. So

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And having been warned through a dream not to return to Herod, they departed to their country by another way.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> After they left the place where the child was, God warned them in a dream not to return to King Herod. So they left to go back to their country, traveling back on a different road than the one they came on.

## Matthew 2:13

### until I tell you (ULT)

### until I tell you...return (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this phrase, you can make the full meaning of this statement explicit. Alternate translation: “until I tell you it is safe to come back” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- an angel
- of {the} Lord
- to kill
- to Joseph
- a dream
- Having gotten up
- young child
- young child (2)
- Egypt
- Herod
- to seek

### Translation Words - UST

- an angel
- from the Lord
- so that they can kill
- Joseph
- a dream
- Get up
- child
- child (2)
- the country of Egypt
- King Herod
- to send soldiers to look for

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Now they having departed, behold, an angel of {the} Lord appears to Joseph by means of a dream, saying, “Having gotten up, take the young child and his mother, and flee to Egypt, and remain there until I tell you, for Herod is going to seek the young child to kill him.”

### UST

<sup>13</sup> After the men who studied the stars left Bethlehem, an angel from the Lord appeared to Joseph in a dream. He said, “Get up, take the child and his mother, and flee into the country of Egypt. Stay there until I tell you that you should return, because King Herod is about to send soldiers to look for the child so that they can kill him.”

## Matthew 2:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- having gotten up
- young child
- Egypt

### Translation Words - UST

- Joseph woke up...after having the dream
- child
- Egypt

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And **having gotten up**, he took the **young child** and his mother at night and departed for **Egypt**,

### UST

<sup>14</sup> So **Joseph woke up** that night **after having the dream**. He took the **child** and Mary the child's mother, and they fled into **Egypt**.

## Matthew 2:15

### he was there (ULT)

### Joseph, Mary, and Jesus stayed there (UST)

It is implied that Joseph, Mary, and Jesus remained in Egypt. If this might confuse your readers, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "Joseph, Mary and Jesus were there" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### in order that might be fulfilled {what} was spoken by {the} Lord through the prophet (ULT)

### In this way, what God had told the prophet Hosea to write proved true (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "in order that God might prove true that which he spoke through the prophet Hosea" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### saying (ULT)

See how you translated **saying** in [1:23](#)(See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [death](#)
- [of Herod](#)
- [might be fulfilled](#)
- [the} Lord](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [I called](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [King Herod](#)
- [died](#)
- [God](#)
- [prophet Hosea to write](#)
- [proved true](#)
- [I have brought](#)
- [son](#)
- [Egypt](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> and he was there until the [death of Herod](#), in order that [might be fulfilled](#) {what} was spoken by {the} Lord through the [prophet](#), saying, "Out of [Egypt I called](#) my son."

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Joseph, Mary, and Jesus stayed there until [King Herod died](#). Then they left Egypt and returned to Judah. In this way, what [God](#) had told the [prophet Hosea to write proved true](#), "I have [brought](#) my [son](#) out of [Egypt](#)."

## Matthew 2:16

**he had been mocked by the learned men (ULT)  
the men who study the stars had tricked him  
(UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the learned men had embarrassed him by tricking him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**having sent forth, he killed all the male  
children (ULT)  
sent soldiers there to kill all the boy babies  
(UST)**

Herod sent other people to kill the **children**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “he gave orders for his soldiers to kill all the boys” or “he sent soldiers there to kill all the boy babies” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Herod
- learned men
- learned men (2)
- having sent forth
- male children
- Bethlehem
- time

### Translation Words - UST

- King Herod died
- the men who study the stars
- the men who studied (2)
- Bethlehem, Herod
- sent soldiers there
- boy babies
- what...told him about when the star first appeared

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Then Herod, having seen that he had been mocked by the learned men, was very angry, and having sent forth, he killed all the male children in Bethlehem and in all its region, from two years and under, according to the time that he had determined exactly from the learned men.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Before King Herod died, he realized that the men who study the stars had tricked him, and he became furious. Because he thought that Jesus was still near Bethlehem, Herod sent soldiers there to kill all the boy babies two years old and younger. Herod calculated how old the baby was, according to what the men who studied the stars told him about when the star first appeared.

## Matthew 2:17

**was fulfilled {what} was spoken (ULT)  
the...had written long ago proved true (UST)**

See how your translated this in [2:15](#) (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [was fulfilled](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [prophet](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [prophet](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [proved true](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Then [was fulfilled](#) {what} was spoken through [Jeremiah](#) the [prophet](#), saying,

### UST

<sup>17</sup> When Herod did this, what the [prophet Jeremiah](#) had written long ago [proved true](#), when he wrote about Bethlehem near the town of Ramah:



## **Matthew 2:18**



## **A voice...was heard (ULT)**

### **Women...were weeping (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People heard a voice" or "People heard a sound" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## **weeping and great mourning (ULT)**

### **were weeping...and wailing loudly (UST)**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize that the sound of weeping was very loud. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "much weeping" (See: [Doublet](#))

## **Rachel weeping for her children, and not willing to be comforted (ULT)**

### **The descendants of Rachel were weeping because of what happened to their children. People tried to comfort them, but they were not able to (UST)**

**Rachel** lived many years before this time. This prophecy depicts Rachel, who is represented by her descendants weeping over their children. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "the descendants of Rachel are weeping over their children, and no one can comfort them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## **not willing to be comforted (ULT)**

### **People tried to comfort them...they were not able to (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "no one could comfort her" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## **because they are no more (ULT)**

### **because all their children were dead (UST)**

Here, **they are no more** is a polite way of saying they are dead. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a different polite way of referring to this or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: "because they were dead" or "because the children were gone and would never return" (See: [Euphemism](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- [A voice](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [mourning](#)
- [Rachel](#)
- [for...children](#)
- [to be comforted](#)

## **ULT**

<sup>18</sup> "A voice was heard in Ramah, weeping and great mourning, Rachel weeping for her children, and not willing to be comforted, because they are no more."

## **UST**

<sup>18</sup> Women in Ramah were weeping and wailing loudly. The descendants of Rachel were weeping because of what happened to their children. People tried to comfort them, but they were not able to, because all their children were dead.

## Translation Words - UST

- Women
- Ramah
- wailing
- The descendants of Rachel
- because of what happened to...children
- People tried to comfort them

## Matthew 2:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Herod
- having died
- an angel
- of {the} Lord
- a dream
- to Joseph
- Egypt

### Translation Words - UST

- After...died
- Herod
- an angel
- that the Lord had sent
- Joseph in
- a dream...He said to Joseph
- while they were in Egypt

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Now Herod having died, behold, an angel of {the} Lord appears through a dream to Joseph in Egypt,

### UST

<sup>19</sup> After Herod died, an angel that the Lord had sent appeared to Joseph in a dream while they were in Egypt. He said to Joseph,

## Matthew 2:20

### the ones seeking the life of the child (ULT) the people who were trying to kill the child (UST)

Here, **seeking the life of the child** is a way of saying they wanted to kill the child. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a different polite way of referring to this or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: “those who were looking for the child in order to kill him” (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Having gotten up](#)
- [child](#)
- [of the child](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [seeking](#)
- [life](#)
- [have died](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Get up](#)
- [child](#)
- [child](#)
- [the country of Israel](#)
- [were trying to kill](#)
- [were trying to kill](#)
- [have died](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> saying, “[Having gotten up](#), take the [child](#) and his mother and go to {the} land [of Israel](#), for the ones [seeking](#) the [life of the child have died](#).”

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> “[Get up](#) and take the [child](#) and his mother and return to [the country of Israel](#) to live, because the people who [were trying to kill](#) the [child have died](#).”

## Matthew 2:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- having gotten up
- child
- of Israel

### Translation Words - UST

- Joseph took
- child
- Israel

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> And he, **having gotten up**, took the **child** and his mother, and entered into {the} land **of Israel**.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> So **Joseph took** the **child** and his mother, and they returned to **Israel**.

## Matthew 2:22

### Archelaus (ULT)

### Archelaus (UST)

**Archelaus** is the name of Herod's son. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- is reigning
- over Judea
- father
- Herod
- he was afraid
- a dream
- of Galilee

### Translation Words - UST

- now ruled in the
- region of Judea
- father
- King Herod the Great
- he was afraid
- a dream
- of Galilee instead

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But having heard that Archelaus is reigning over Judea in the place of his father Herod, he was afraid to go there. But having been warned by means of a dream, he withdrew to the region of Galilee,

### UST

<sup>22</sup> But when Joseph heard that Archelaus now ruled in the region of Judea instead of his father, King Herod the Great, he was afraid to go there. So God instructed Joseph in a dream to go to the district of Galilee instead.

## Matthew 2:23

**it might be fulfilled {what} was spoken  
through the prophets (ULT)  
what the prophets had said long ago proved  
true (UST)**

See how you translated this in 2:15 (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [being called](#)
- [he will be called](#)
- [Nazareth](#)
- [a Nazarene](#)
- [it might be fulfilled](#)
- [prophets](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Nazareth](#)
- [he is from Nazareth](#)
- [of Nazareth](#)
- [People will say](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [true](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> and having gone there, he lived in a city [being called Nazareth](#), so that [it might be fulfilled {what} was spoken through the prophets](#), that [he will be called a Nazarene](#).

### UST

<sup>23</sup> They went to live in the town of [Nazareth](#). The result was that what the [prophets](#) had said long ago proved [true](#): "[People will say that he is from Nazareth](#)."

## Matthew 3

### Matthew 3 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted material in verse 3.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### John the Baptist

In this chapter, John the Baptist appear preaching in the wilderness. He is portrayed by Matthew as resembling the Prophet Elijah in the way that he dresses and by what he eats. We know from other Gospels that John is Jesus' cousin. John the Baptist comes before Jesus to make people ready for his coming.

##### "Kingdom of Heaven"

"The kingdom of Heaven" is synonymous with "Kingdom of God" from the other three Gospels. It is a major concept in the Gospel of Matthew. It is very rich in meaning. It includes the idea of eternal life in the presence of God, but it also includes the idea of what the earth will be like in the future when God rules everything, and the idea of life on earth right now, when and where God's wishes are carried out fully. The unifying concept behind all of these ideas is that of people becoming one of the people over whom God rules. Wherever the expression "the kingdom of God" occurs, translation notes will suggest communicating this idea behind the abstract noun "kingdom". UST models this approach consistently. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

##### "Bear fruit worthy of repentance"

Fruit is a common metaphor for doing good things that God desires you to do. Similar to if a fruit plant is healthy, it will bear a lot of good fruit, and if a fruit plant is unhealthy, it will bear a lot of bad fruit.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Metonymy

Matthew uses metonymy frequently in this chapter to express groups of people or things. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language to express these figures of speech.



## Matthew 3:1

### Now (ULT)

#### When Jesus was an adult (UST)

This is the beginning of a new part of the story where Matthew tells of the ministry of John the Baptist. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: "Some time while Jesus was still in Galilee" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### John the Baptist (ULT)

#### John, whom the people called the Baptizer (UST)

This introduces John as a new character in the story. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new character. The expression "the Baptizer" identifies him as someone who baptized people in water after they were sorry for their sins. Since he is a new participant, if it would be helpful to your readers, you could call him something like "a man named John, who baptized people" (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [John the Baptist](#)
- [preaching](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [of Judea](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [When Jesus was an adult](#)
- [John, whom the people called the Baptizer](#)
- [desolate place](#)
- [region of Judea](#)
- [He was preaching to the people who came there this message](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now in those [days](#), [John the Baptist](#) comes [preaching](#) in the [wilderness of Judea](#),

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [When Jesus was an adult](#), [John, whom the people called the Baptizer](#), went to a [desolate place](#) in the [region of Judea](#). [He was preaching to the people who came there this message](#):

## Matthew 3:2

**is near...the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)**  
**For God wants you to become of his people**  
**over whom he will rule from heaven...For God**  
**wants you to become of his people over whom**  
**he will rule from heaven (UST)**

The phrase **the kingdom of the heavens** refers to God ruling as king. **heavens** refers to the place where God rules from. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Repent](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Cease from your evil ways](#)
- [For God wants you to become of his people over whom he will rule from heaven](#)
- [For God wants you to become of his people over whom he will rule from heaven](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> saying, "[Repent](#), for the [kingdom of the heavens](#) is near."

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> "[Cease from your evil ways!](#) For God wants you to become of his people over whom he will rule from heaven"



## **Matthew 3:3**

**For this is the one spoken of by Isaiah the prophet, saying (ULT)  
John the Baptizer is the one who God talked about through the prophet Isaiah when he wrote (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "For John was the one who Isaiah spoke about when he said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Make ready the way of {the} Lord, make his paths straight (ULT)**

Here there is a direct quotation inside a direct quotation, as Mark quotes Isaiah who quotes the messenger. If this would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "a voice crying out in the wilderness, telling people to make ready the way of the Lord and to make his paths straight" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**A voice calling out in the wilderness (ULT)  
He will be a voice calling out in the desolate place to anyone who hears him, saying (UST)**

Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotations in your language. Alternate translation: "The voice of someone crying out in the wilderness is heard, saying:" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

**A voice calling out (ULT)  
He will be a voice calling out...to anyone who hears him, saying (UST)**

Here, a voice figuratively refers to the messenger who uses his voice to cry out. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "people will hear the messenger's voice as he cries out" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Make ready the way of {the} Lord, make his paths straight (ULT)**

**Make ready the way of the Lord** and **make his paths straight** mean the same thing. If this would be confusing in your language, you could combine the two. "Prepare to hear and obey the Lord's message when he comes". (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Make ready the way of {the} Lord (ULT)**

Isaiah uses a metaphor here of preparing paths or the way that someone will travel on. If someone prepares a path for another, they make the path walkable. If someone in high authority were coming, they would make sure the roads were clear from any hazards. So this metaphor means that the people should prepare themselves to receive the Lord's message when he comes. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture or use plain speech. Alternate translation: "Prepare to hear and obey the Lord's message when he comes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> For this is the one spoken of by [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#), saying, "A [voice calling out](#) in the [wilderness](#), 'Make ready the way of {the} Lord, make his paths straight.'"

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> John the Baptizer is the one who God talked about through the [prophet Isaiah](#) when he wrote, "He will be a [voice calling out](#) in the [desolate place](#) to anyone who hears him, saying 'Make yourselves ready to welcome the [Lord](#). Get everything organized for his coming!'"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Isaiah
- prophet
- A voice
- calling out
- wilderness
- of {the} Lord

## Translation Words - UST

- prophet
- Isaiah
- He will be a voice
- calling out...to anyone who hears him, saying
- the desolate place
- Lord

## Matthew 3:4

### Now this John had his clothing from {the} hair of a camel and a leather belt around his waist, and his food was locusts and wild honey (ULT)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Matthew gives the reader some background information about what John the Baptist ate, and what he looked like. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information. (See: [Background Information](#))

### had his clothing from {the} hair of a camel (ULT)

**had his clothing from the hair of a camel** means that he wore clothes made from camels' hair. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "wore clothing made from the hair of a camel" (See: [Idiom](#))

### of a camel (ULT) camel's (UST)

If your readers would not know what a **camel** is, you could include a description in a footnote or use a more general term. Alternate translation: "large, humped animal used for riding" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### locusts (ULT) grasshoppers (UST)

If your readers would not know what **locusts** are, you could include a description in a footnote or use a more general term. Alternate translation: "grasshoppers" or "insects" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [clothing](#)
- [of a camel](#)
- [waist](#)
- [locusts](#)
- [honey](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [John](#)
- [rough clothes](#)
- [camel's](#)
- [waist](#)
- [grasshoppers](#)
- [honey](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Now this [John](#) had his [clothing](#) from {the} hair [of a camel](#) and a leather belt around his [waist](#), and his food was [locusts](#) and wild [honey](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> [John](#) wore [rough clothes](#) made of [camel's](#) hair and a leather belt around his [waist](#). His food was [grasshoppers](#) and [honey](#) that he found in that desolate area.

## Matthew 3:5

**Jerusalem, and all Judea, and all the {region} around the Jordan (ULT)**

**People who lived in the city of Jerusalem, people who lived in the region of Judea, and many others who lived near the Jordan River (UST)**

The words **Jerusalem, Judea, and the region around the Jordan** are metonyms for the people from those areas. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “people from Jerusalem, Judea, and the region near the Jordan river” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then were going out to him [Jerusalem](#), and all [Judea](#), and all the {region} around the [Jordan](#),

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [People who lived in the city of Jerusalem](#), [people who lived in the region of Judea](#), and many others who lived near the [Jordan River](#) came to John to hear him preach.

**Jerusalem, and all Judea, and all the {region} around (ULT)**

**People who lived in the city of Jerusalem, people who lived in the region of Judea, and many others who lived near (UST)**

The word **all** is an exaggeration to emphasize that very many people went out. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that depicts many people. Alternate translation: “very many people from Jerusalem, Judea, and the region near the Jordan river” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Jordan](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [People who lived in the city of Jerusalem](#)
- [people who lived in the region of Judea](#)
- [Jordan River](#)



## Matthew 3:6

### being baptized...by him (ULT) and then...baptized them...John (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: "John baptized them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [being baptized](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [confessing](#)
- [sins](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [they were openly sorry for...to God](#)
- [sins](#)
- [and then...baptized them](#)
- [Jordan River](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> and [being baptized](#) by him in the [Jordan River](#), [confessing](#) their [sins](#).

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> After they heard his message, [they were openly sorry for](#) their [sins to God](#), and then John [baptized them](#) in the [Jordan River](#).

## Matthew 3:7

### You offspring of vipers (ULT)

### You people are like poisonous snakes (UST)

Here, **offspring of vipers** means having the characteristic of vipers, which are poisonous snakes. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "You evil poisonous snakes!" or "You are evil like poisonous snakes!" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Who warned you to flee from the coming wrath (ULT)

### Do not think that you can escape from God's wrath if you do not genuinely ask for forgiveness (UST)

John uses a question to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees because they were asking him to baptize them so that God would not punish them, but they did not want to stop sinning. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "you cannot flee from God's wrath like this." or "do not think that you can escape God's wrath just because I baptize you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to flee from the coming wrath (ULT)

### Do not think that you can escape from God's wrath if you do not genuinely ask for forgiveness (UST)

The phrase **coming wrath** is being used to refer to God's punishment. Wrath itself cannot come, but God is the one who causes it to happen. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "to flee from God's wrath which he is bringing against you" (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees](#)
- [baptism](#)
- [of vipers](#)
- [wrath](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees](#)
- [to baptize them](#)
- [poisonous snakes](#)
- [Do not think that you can escape from God's wrath if you do not genuinely ask for forgiveness](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now having seen many [of the Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#) coming for his [baptism](#), he said to them, "You offspring [of vipers](#)! Who warned you to flee from the coming [wrath](#)?"

### UST

<sup>7</sup> But John saw that many [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#) were coming in order for John [to baptize them](#). He said to them, "You people are like [poisonous snakes](#)! [Do not think that you can escape from God's wrath if you do not genuinely ask for forgiveness!](#)"

## Matthew 3:8

### Therefore, produce fruit worthy of repentance (ULT)

### If you are truly sorry for your sin, you must show this by doing good things (UST)

The phrase **produce fruit** is a metaphor referring to a person's actions. Just as a healthy tree bears good fruit, so should someone who love God do good. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture.

Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "Let your actions show that you have truly repented" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Therefore, produce [fruit worthy of repentance](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> [If you are truly sorry for your sin, you must show this by doing good things](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fruit](#)
- [worthy](#)
- [of repentance](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [If you are truly sorry for your sin](#)
- [If you are truly sorry for your sin](#)
- [you must show this by doing good things](#)



## **Matthew 3:9**

**We have Abraham {as} father (ULT)**  
**Since we are descendants of our ancestor Abraham, God will not punish us even though we have sinned (UST)**

They would say **We have Abraham {as} father** because they thought being Abraham's descendants would protect them from God's judgement. Alternate translation: "Abraham is our ancestor, so God would not punish us" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**as} father (ULT)**  
**Since we are descendants of (UST)**

Here, the word father figuratively means "ancestor." If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternate translation: "Abraham is our ancestor" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**God is able to raise up children for Abraham from these stones (ULT)**  
**he...he can just as easily make descendants of Abraham out of these rocks (UST)**

John uses an exaggeration here to show that God does not need these Pharisees and Sadducees to fulfill his promises which he made to **Abraham**. If our readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that portrays this exaggeration. Alternate translation: "God could make children of Abraham even out of these rocks!" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**children for Abraham (ULT)**  
**descendants of Abraham (UST)**

Here, the word children figuratively means "descendants." If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternate translation: "descendants for Abraham" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Abraham
- for Abraham (2)
- as} father
- God
- to raise up
- children

**Translation Words - UST**

- Since we are descendants of
- our ancestor Abraham, God will not punish us even though we have sinned
- of Abraham (2)

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> And you should not think to say among yourselves, 'We have **Abraham {as} father**.' For I say to you that **God** is able **to raise up children for Abraham** from these stones.

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> Do not say to yourselves, '**Since we are descendants of our ancestor Abraham, God will not punish us even though we have sinned**.' No! I tell you that **he** does not need you! For he can just as easily **make descendants of Abraham** out of these rocks!

- [he](#)
- [make](#)
- [descendants](#)

## Matthew 3:10

**But already the ax is set against the root of the trees. So, every tree not producing good fruit is chopped down and is thrown into a fire (ULT)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the person who is going to cut down the tree has already placed his ax against the roots. So, he will cut down every tree which does not bear good fruit and throw it into the fire" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**So, every tree not producing good fruit is chopped down and is thrown into a fire (ULT)**

**every tree not producing good fruit is chopped down and is thrown into the fire** is a figurative way of describing punishment. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternate translation: "God will certainly punish every person who does not repent of their sins and do good deeds to show it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- ax
- good
- fruit
- a fire

### Translation Words - UST

- is ready to chop away
- what it is supposed to
- what it is supposed to
- the fire

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But already the **ax** is set against the root of the trees. So, every tree not producing **good fruit** is chopped down and is thrown into **a fire**.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> God is ready right now to punish you, just like a man who **is ready to chop away** the roots of a plant which is not producing **what it is supposed to**. He cuts it down and throws it into **the fire**."



## Matthew 3:11

**I am not worthy to carry away {his} sandals (ULT)**

**I am not even worthy to carry his sandals (UST)**

**carrying...sandals** was a duty of a slave. John is saying implicitly that the one who is coming will be so great that he is not even worthy to be his slave. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could state that explicitly. Alternate translation: "I am not even worthy to be his slave" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**He will baptize you with {the} Holy Spirit and with fire (ULT)**

John is using literal baptism, which puts a person under water, to speak figuratively of spiritual baptism, which cleanses people from their sin. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternate translation: See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- baptize
- will baptize
- water
- repentance
- mightier than
- worthy
- to carry away
- sandals
- the} Holy Spirit
- with fire

### Translation Words - UST

- I am baptizing
- will baptize...he will baptize
- water in the Jordan River
- in the fire of judgement
- because you were sorry for your sins
- is much greater than...is so great
- even worthy
- to carry
- his sandals
- the Holy Spirit

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> I baptize you with water for repentance. But the one coming after me is mightier than I, of whom I am not worthy to carry away {his} sandals. He will baptize you with {the} Holy Spirit and with fire;

### UST

<sup>11</sup> "I am baptizing you with water in the Jordan River because you were sorry for your sins. Soon someone else will come who is much greater than I am. He is so great that I am not even worthy to carry his sandals. He will baptize some of you in the Holy Spirit. Others of you he will baptize in the fire of judgement.



## **Matthew 3:12**

## whose winnowing fork {is} in his hand (ULT)

John is saying figuratively that the Messiah will come prepared to judge people right away. You could express this metaphor as a simile in your translation. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here in your translation. Alternate translation: "He will already be prepared to judge people, just like a farmer who is ready to thresh grain" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## whose winnowing fork {is} in his hand (ULT)

Here, **in his hand** means the person is ready to act. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "and Christ is holding a winnowing fork because he is ready" (See: [Idiom](#))

## winnowing fork (ULT)

A **winnowing fork** is a tool for tossing wheat into the air to separate the wheat grain from the chaff. The heavier grain falls back down, and the wind blows away the unwanted chaff. This tool is similar to a pitchfork. If you have a similar tool in your culture, you can use the word for it here. Otherwise, you can use a phrase that would express the meaning. Alternate translation: "tool for threshing grain" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## his threshing floor (ULT)

## ready to separate edible parts of the wheat plant from the inedible parts of the wheat plant. He is ready to clear out all the inedible parts from where he prepares the wheat (UST)

The **threshing floor** was the place where wheat was stacked in preparation for threshing. To clear off the floor is to finish threshing all the grain. If your readers would not be familiar with this place, you could use the name of a place of similar use in your culture, or you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: "The place where food is prepared" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## gather his wheat into the storehouse...But he will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire (ULT)

John continues to speak figuratively to describe how the coming Messiah will judge people. The wheat is the part of the crop that is useful. It represents people who are obedient to God, who will be welcomed into his presence. The chaff is the husk that surrounds the grain. It is not useful for anything, so people burn it up. You could express this metaphor as a simile in your translation. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He will welcome those who are obedient to God, just as a farmer stores good grain in his barn. But he will punish those who are disobedient to God, just as a farmer burns up the useless chaff" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [winnowing fork](#)
- [hand](#)
- [threshing floor](#)

## ULT

<sup>12</sup> whose [winnowing fork](#) {is} in his [hand](#), and he will thoroughly clear off his [threshing floor](#) and gather his [wheat](#) into the storehouse. But he will burn up the [chaff](#) with unquenchable [fire](#)."

## UST

<sup>12</sup> He [is like a farmer, who is holding his winnowing fork, ready to separate edible parts of the wheat plant from the inedible parts of the wheat plant. He is ready to clear out all the inedible parts from where he prepares the wheat. He will put his wheat into his storehouse; but he will burn the inedible parts, in a fire that never goes out. {Similarly, God will bring to himself those who are pleasing to him, and will punish those who are displeasing to him}](#)"

- wheat
- chaff
- with...fire

## Translation Words - UST

- is like a farmer, who is holding
- his winnowing fork
- ready to separate edible parts of the wheat plant from the inedible parts of the wheat plant. He is ready to clear out all the inedible parts from where he prepares the wheat
- ready to separate edible parts of the wheat plant from the inedible parts of the wheat plant. He is ready to clear out all the inedible parts from where he prepares the wheat
- but he will burn the inedible parts, in a fire that never goes out...Similarly, God will bring to himself those who are pleasing to him, and will punish those who are displeasing to him
- but he will burn the inedible parts, in a fire that never goes out...Similarly, God will bring to himself those who are pleasing to him, and will punish those who are displeasing to him

## Matthew 3:13

### Then (ULT)

### During that time (UST)

This introduces a new event that happened some time after the events the story has just related. The story does not say how long after those events this new event happened. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: "Some time later" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### to be baptized...by him (ULT)

### John...could baptize him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so John could baptize him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [Jordan](#)
- [John](#)
- [to be baptized](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [region of Galilee](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [John](#)
- [could baptize him](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then [Jesus](#) comes from [Galilee](#) to the [Jordan](#), to [John](#), to be baptized by him.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> During that time, [Jesus](#) went from the [region of Galilee](#) to the [Jordan River](#), where [John](#) was. He did this so John could baptize him.

## Matthew 3:14

**I have need to be baptized by you, and yet you come to me (ULT)**

**I need you to baptize me! {For you are much greater than I am (UST)}**

John uses a question to show his surprise at Jesus' request. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "You are more important than I am. I should not baptize you. You should baptize me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [to be baptized](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [John to baptize him, John](#)
- [to baptize](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But [John](#) was hindering him, saying, "I have need [to be baptized](#) by you, and yet you come to me?"

### UST

<sup>14</sup> When Jesus asked [John to baptize him](#), [John](#) refused. He said, "I need you [to baptize](#) me! {For you are much greater than I am!}"

## Matthew 3:15

### for us (ULT)

### we two will do everything that God requires (UST)

Here, **us** refers to Jesus and John. Your language may require you to mark these forms. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### to fulfill all righteousness (ULT)

### we two will do everything that God requires (UST)

**To fulfill all righteousness** means to do everything which God requires someone to do. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "to do everything which God has told us to do" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to fulfill](#)
- [righteousness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [But Jesus said](#)
- [we two will do everything that God requires](#)
- [we two will do everything that God requires](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But answering, [Jesus](#) said to him, "Permit {it} now, for in this way it is fitting for us [to fulfill](#) all [righteousness](#)." Then he permits him.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> [But Jesus said](#) to him, "Baptize me now, because in this way [we two will do everything that God requires](#)." Then John agreed to baptize him.



## Matthew 3:16

### having been baptized (ULT)

#### As soon as (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "After John baptized Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the heavens were opened to him (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the sky opened up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the Spirit of God coming down like a dove, resting upon him (ULT)

### The Spirit of God descended {from heaven} like a dove would, and landed upon him (UST)

The phrase like a dove could mean: (1) the Spirit looked like a dove as he descended upon Jesus. Alternate translation: "he Spirit come down from heaven, looking like a dove" (2) the Spirit descend upon Jesus as a dove descends from the sky toward the ground. Alternate translation: "The Spirit of God came down from heaven as a dove comes down" (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having been baptized](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [water](#)
- [heavens](#)
- [Spirit of God](#)
- [like](#)
- [a dove](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [As soon as](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [water](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [The Spirit...of God](#)
- [like](#)
- [a dove would](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Now [having been baptized](#), [Jesus](#) immediately came up from the [water](#), and behold, the [heavens](#) were opened to him, and he saw the [Spirit of God](#) coming down [like a dove](#), resting upon him,

### UST

<sup>16</sup> [As soon as Jesus](#) came up out of the [water](#), he saw [heaven](#) open. [The Spirit of God](#) descended {from heaven} [like a dove would](#), and landed upon him.

## Matthew 3:17

### a voice from the heavens, saying (ULT) God spoke from heaven and said (UST)

Mark speaks figuratively of this voice as if it were a living thing that could come from heaven to earth. The voice is God's voice. Alternate translation: "God spoke from heaven and said" (See: [Personification](#))

### my...Son (ULT) my Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a voice
- heavens
- beloved
- Son
- I am very pleased

### Translation Words - UST

- God spoke
- heaven
- Son
- whom I dearly love
- I am very pleased

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> and behold, a voice from the heavens, saying, "This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him."

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Then God spoke from heaven and said, "This is my Son whom I dearly love. I am very pleased with him."

## Matthew 4

### Matthew 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in verses 5 and 16, which are words from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The Devil

The devil, or Satan, is a fallen angel who attacks God's people and tries to get them to turn against God. The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God. [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

## Matthew 4:1

### Then (ULT)

### Then (UST)

This introduces a new event that happened some time after the events the story has just related. The story does not say how long after those events this new event happened. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: "After this" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### Jesus was led up...by the Spirit (ULT) led Jesus...God's Spirit (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the Spirit led Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to be tempted by the devil (ULT)

### He did this in order for} the devil to tempt him (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so the devil could tempt Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [to be tempted](#)
- [devil](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God's Spirit](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [He did this in order for...to tempt him](#)
- [devil](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then [Jesus](#) was led up by the [Spirit](#) into the [wilderness to be tempted](#) by the [devil](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then [God's Spirit](#) led [Jesus](#) into the [wilderness](#).{[He did this in order for](#)} the [devil to tempt him](#).

## Matthew 4:2

### 40 days and 40 nights (ULT)

This means he fasted continually with no breaks for a period of 40 days. (See: [Numbers](#))

### 40 days and 40 nights (ULT)

Matthew uses **40 days and 40 nights** to express that Jesus fasted for 40 entire days without stopping. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language.

Alternate translation: "for 40 whole days" (See: [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having fasted](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he had not eaten food](#)
- [for 40 days](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And [having fasted](#) 40 [days](#) and 40 nights, afterwards, he was hungry.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> After [he had not eaten food for 40 days](#), he was hungry.

## Matthew 4:3

### If you are the Son of God, speak so that these stones might become bread (ULT)

The devil is suggesting that this is a hypothetical condition, and that the stone will only become bread if Jesus speaks to them as the Son of God. The devil is speaking as if it is uncertain who Jesus is in order to challenge him to do this miracle to prove that he really is the Son of God. If this would be unclear in your language, you can clarify.

Alternate translation: "Prove that you are the Son of God by commanding these stones to become bread" (See: [Connect — Hypothetical Conditions](#) )

### the Son...of God (ULT)

### the Son...of God (UST)

**Son of God** is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [tempting](#)
- [the Son](#)
- [of God](#)
- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Satan, the one who was tempting Jesus](#)
- [the Son](#)
- [of God](#)
- [bread](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And having approached, the one [tempting](#) said to him, "If you are [the Son of God](#), speak so that these stones might become [bread](#)."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [Satan, the one who was tempting Jesus](#), came to him and said, "If you are really [the Son of God](#), tell these stones to become [bread](#) {so that you might eat}!"



## **Matthew 4:4**



**It is written (ULT)**  
**God has said in the Scriptures which Moses wrote (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: "Moses wrote this in the scriptures long ago"  
 (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**It is written (ULT)**  
**God has said in the Scriptures which Moses wrote (UST)**

In Matthew's culture, **it is written** is a normal way to introduce a quotation from an important text, in this case, the Old Testament book written by Moses. If your readers would not understand this, you could use a comparable phrase that indicates that Jesus is quoting from an important text. Alternate translation: "as it can be read in the Old Testament" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

**he...Man...will not live by bread alone (ULT)**

This can either be (1) a command. Alternate translation: "Man shall not live on bread alone" or (2) a general statement: Alternate translation: "Man does not live on bread alone"

**Man (ULT)**  
**A person (UST)**

This verse is not speaking about a specific person, but about people in general. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: "A person" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

**but (ULT)**  
**He should also listen to what (UST)**

What follows the word **but** here is in contrast to what came before it. People should not only live on food, but also must hear what the Lord is teaching them. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: "But also" (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

**every word coming through the mouth of God (ULT)**  
**He should also listen to what...God has said (UST)**

**coming from the mouth of God** is figurative meaning everything which God has spoken. God does not actually have a mouth for words to come from. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "every word which God has spoken" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [It is written](#)
- [will...live](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> But he, answering, said, "[It is written](#), 'Man will not [live](#) by [bread](#) alone, but by every word coming through the mouth of [God](#).'"

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> But Jesus said to him, "No! I will not do this, because [God has said in the Scriptures which Moses wrote](#), 'A person should not [live only by eating food](#). He should also listen to what [God has said](#)'"

- bread
- of God

## Translation Words - UST

- God has said in the Scriptures which Moses wrote
- should...live
- only by eating food
- God

## Matthew 4:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- devil
- holy city
- holy
- of...temple

### Translation Words - UST

- devil
- Jerusalem, the holy city
- Jerusalem, the holy city
- of the temple

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then the devil takes him into the holy city and set him on the highest point of the temple,

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then the devil took Jesus to Jerusalem, the holy city. He set him on a high part of the temple



## **Matthew 4:6**

**the Son...of God (ULT)**  
**you are truly the Son of God...cause yourself to fall from here. Surely you will not be hurt (UST)**

**Son of God** is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**throw yourself down (ULT)**  
**cause yourself to fall from here. Surely you will not be hurt (UST)**

When Satan tells Jesus to **throw yourself down**, he means from on top of the temple. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "throw yourself down from on top of the high point of the temple" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**for it is written (ULT)**  
**for God has promised in his word (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "For God has written in his word" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**it is written (ULT)**  
**for God has promised in his word (UST)**

Satan is quoting from the book of Psalms. See note on [4:4](#) for how you translated this phrase (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

**They will lift you up in {their} hands (ULT)**  
**They will lift you up in their hands when you are falling (UST)**

This verse is saying that God's angels would catch Jesus if he were to **throw himself down**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "The angels would catch you if you fell" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [the Son](#)
- [of God](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [He will command](#)
- [angels](#)
- [They will lift...up](#)
- [their} hands](#)

## ULT

<sup>6</sup> and says to him, "If you are [the Son of God](#), throw yourself down, for [it is written](#), '[He will command](#) his [angels](#) concerning you,' and, '[They will lift](#) you up in [{their} hands](#), lest you might hit your foot against a stone.'"

## UST

<sup>6</sup> and said to him, "If [you are truly the Son of God](#), [cause yourself to fall from here](#). Surely you will not be hurt, for [God has promised in his word](#), '[God will command](#) his [angels to protect](#) you. [They will lift](#) you up in [their hands when you are falling](#), and they will keep you from hitting your foot on a small stone.'"

## Translation Words - UST

- you are truly the Son of God
- cause yourself to fall from here. Surely you will not be hurt
- for God has promised in his word
- God will command
- angels to protect
- They will lift...up
- their hands when you are falling

## Matthew 4:7

### Again it is written (ULT) also said in the scriptures (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: "Again, I will tell you what Moses wrote in the scriptures" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### You will not test (ULT) Do not test what...can or cannot do (UST)

Here, **You** refers to people in general, and not to a specific person. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: "No one shall" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [You will...test](#)
- [the} Lord](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [But Jesus](#)
- [also said in the scriptures](#)
- [Do...test what...can or cannot do](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> [Jesus](#) said to him, "Again [it is written](#), 'You will not [test {the} Lord](#) your [God](#).'"

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> [But Jesus](#) said, "No! I will not jump down, because God has [also said in the scriptures](#), 'Do not [test what the Lord](#) your [God can or cannot do](#).'"



## Matthew 4:8

### and their glory (ULT) and the magnificent things in those nations (UST)

**their glory** is referring to the riches that these nations have. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “and the riches which they possessed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [devil](#)
- [kingdoms](#)
- [of the world](#)
- [glory](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [devil](#)
- [nations](#)
- [world](#)
- [magnificent things](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Again, the [devil](#) takes him to a very high hill and shows him all the [kingdoms of the world](#) and their [glory](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then the [devil](#) took him on top of a very high mountain. There he showed him all the [nations](#) in the [world](#) and the [magnificent things](#) in those nations.

## Matthew 4:9

**All these {things} I will give you (ULT)  
I will let you rule all these nations and give  
you the magnificent things in them (UST)**

Satan is using a hypothetical statement to tempt Jesus. Make sure to make this hypothetical statement explicit in your language. Alternate translation: "If you bow down and worship me, I will give you all of these things" (See: [Connect — Hypothetical Conditions](#) )

**if having fallen down (ULT)  
if...bow down and (UST)**

This was a common action to show that a person was worshiping. If there is a gesture with similar meaning in your culture, you could consider using it here in your translation. Alternate translation: "if you show reverence to me" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having fallen down](#)
- [you would worship](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bow down and](#)
- [you...worship](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And he said to him, "All these {things} I will give you, if [having fallen down](#), you [would worship](#) me."

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then he said to him, "I will let you rule all these nations and give you the magnificent things in them if you [bow down and worship](#) me."

## Matthew 4:10

### For it is written (ULT)

#### God has said in the scriptures, 'It is to (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: "For Moses also wrote in the scriptures" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### You will worship...you will serve (ULT)

#### whom you must bow down...worship (UST)

Here, **You** refers to people in general and not to a specific person. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: "Each person shall" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [You will worship](#)
- [the} Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [you will serve](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [God has said in the scriptures, 'It is to](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [whom you must bow down](#)
- [worship](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then [Jesus](#) says to him, "Go away, [Satan](#)! For [it is written](#), '[You will worship {the} Lord](#) your [God](#), and [you will serve](#) only him.'"

### UST

<sup>10</sup> But [Jesus](#) said to him, "No, I will not worship you, [Satan](#). Leave me! [God has said in the scriptures](#), '[It is to the Lord](#) your [God](#) alone [whom you must bow down](#) and [worship](#).'"

## Matthew 4:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- devil
- angels
- began to minister

### Translation Words - UST

- devil
- angels
- began taking care

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Then the devil leaves him, and behold, angels came and began to minister to him.

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Then the devil went away, and at that moment, angels came to Jesus and began taking care of him.

## Matthew 4:12

### Now (ULT)

### While Jesus was in the region of Judea (UST)

This is the beginning of a new part of the story in which Matthew describes the beginning of Jesus' ministry in Galilee. These verses explain how Jesus came to be in Galilee. (See: [Background Information](#))

### John had been arrested (ULT)

### John the Baptizer's disciples came and told him...had put John in prison (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the king had arrested John" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [Galilee](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [John the Baptizer's disciples came and told him](#)
- [district of Galilee, to the town of Nazareth](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Now having heard that [John](#) had been arrested, he withdrew into [Galilee](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> While Jesus was in the region of Judea, [John the Baptizer's disciples came and told him](#) that King Herod had put John in prison. So Jesus returned to the [district of Galilee, to the town of Nazareth](#).

## Matthew 4:13

**in {the} territories of Zebulun and Naphtali (ULT)**

**in the region that formerly belonged to the tribes of Israel named Zebulun and Naphtali (UST)**

**Zebulun** and **Naphtali** are the names of the tribes that lived in these territories many years earlier before foreigners took control of the land of Israel. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Nazareth](#)
- [Capernaum](#)
- [of Zebulun](#)
- [Naphtali](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Nazareth](#)
- [the city of Capernaum](#)
- [Zebulun](#)
- [Naphtali](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And having left [Nazareth](#), having come, he lived in [Capernaum](#) by the sea, in {the} territories of [Zebulun](#) and [Naphtali](#),

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Then he left [Nazareth](#) and went to live in [the city of Capernaum](#).

[Capernaum](#) is located beside the Sea of Galilee in the region that formerly belonged to the tribes of Israel named [Zebulun](#) and [Naphtali](#).

## Matthew 4:14

### what was spoken (ULT) these words that the prophet Isaiah had written long ago (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.  
Alternate translation: "what God said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [it might be fulfilled](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [prophet](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [words that the prophet Isaiah had written long ago](#)
- [words that the prophet Isaiah had written long ago](#)
- [might come true](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> so that [it might be fulfilled](#) what was spoken through [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#), saying,

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> He went to live there so that these [words that the prophet Isaiah had written long ago](#) might come true:

## Matthew 4:15

**The} land of Zebulun and {the} land of Naphtali...Galilee of the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**The regions of Zebulun and Naphtali, regions...Galilee, home of many non-Israelites (UST)**

Jesus refers figuratively to these places, when he is really referring to the people who live in them. If our readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "You who live in Zebulun and Naphtali" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**the} way of {the} sea (ULT)**  
**by the Sea (UST)**

the way of the sea could also be a title referring to a road which ran along the Sea of Galilee.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Zebulun
- of Naphtali
- Jordan
- Galilee
- of the Gentiles

### Translation Words - UST

- Zebulun
- Naphtali...regions
- Jordan River
- Galilee
- many non-Israelites

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> "{The} land of Zebulun and {the} land of Naphtali, {the} way of {the} sea, beyond the Jordan, Galilee of the Gentiles—

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> "The regions of Zebulun and Naphtali, regions by the Sea, on the eastern side of the Jordan River, Galilee, home of many non-Israelites





## **Matthew 4:16**

**the people sitting in darkness (ULT)**

**The people there are like people who were at one time sitting in darkness, but now they have seen a great light because they now know God (UST)**

the **people** being referred to here are the Jews. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "The Jews, who are sitting in darkness" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the people sitting in darkness have seen a great light...in {the} region and shadow of death...a light (ULT)**

**The people there are like people who were at one time sitting in darkness, but now they have seen a great light because they now know God...And while they lived in a region of people who did not know God, now, like a bright light beginning to shine on them, God has revealed himself to them (UST)**

Here, **darkness** and **region and shadow of death** are metaphors for not knowing the truth about God. And **light** is a metaphor for God's true message that saves people from their sin. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "The people sitting in sin have heard the message that God saves" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**sitting...to the ones sitting (ULT)**

**are like people who were at one time sitting in darkness, but now they have seen a great light because they now know God...And while they lived in a region of people who did not know God, now, like a bright light beginning to shine on them, God has revealed himself to them (UST)**

**sitting** is a metaphor for living. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "who are living...to those living" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to the ones sitting in {the} region and shadow of death, upon them has a light arisen (ULT)**

**And while they lived in a region of people who did not know God, now, like a bright light beginning to shine on them, God has revealed himself to them (UST)**

**and to those sitting in the region and shadow of death, upon them has a light arisen** has the same meaning as the first part of the sentence. If saying the same thing might be confusing for your readers, you can

**ULT**

<sup>16</sup> the **people** sitting in **darkness** have seen a great **light**, and to the ones sitting in {the} region and **shadow of death**, upon them has a **light** arisen."

**UST**

<sup>16</sup> **The people there are like people who were at one time sitting in darkness, but now they have seen a great light because they now know God. And while they lived in a region of people who did not know God, now, like a bright light beginning to shine on them, God has revealed himself to them.**

combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: "Those who are sitting in darkness have seen a great light"  
(See: [Parallelism](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- people
- darkness
- a...light
- a light (2)
- shadow
- of death

## Translation Words - UST

- The people there
- are like people who were at one time sitting in darkness, but now they have seen a great light because they now know God
- And while they lived in a region of people who did not know God, now, like a bright light beginning to shine on them, God has revealed himself to them (2)
- are like people who were at one time sitting in darkness, but now they have seen a great light because they now know God
- And while they lived in a region of people who did not know God, now, like a bright light beginning to shine on them, God has revealed himself to them
- And while they lived in a region of people who did not know God, now, like a bright light beginning to shine on them, God has revealed himself to them

## Matthew 4:17

**has come near...the kingdom of the heavens  
(ULT)**

**For...has come near to us...God's rule (UST)**

See how you translated this in 3:2 (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- to preach
- Repent
- kingdom of the heavens
- of the heavens

### Translation Words - UST

- while Jesus was in
- to preach to the people
- Cease from your evil ways
- God's rule
- God's rule

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> From that time Jesus began to preach and to say, "Repent, for the kingdom of the heavens has come near."

### UST

<sup>17</sup> At that time, while Jesus was in the city of Capernaum, he began to preach to the people, "Cease from your evil ways! For God's rule has come near to us"



## **Matthew 4:18**

## Now (ULT) One day while (UST)

This begins a new story about Jesus' ministry in Galilee. Here he begins to gather men to be his disciples. The story does not say how long after those events this new event happened. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: "Some time later" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

## casting a net into the sea (ULT) They were casting their fishing net into the water (UST)

They were **casting a net** in order to catch fish. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "throwing a net into the water to catch fish" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## casting a net (ULT) They were casting their fishing net (UST)

Some cultures use a **net** to catch fish. A net is something which is thrown into the water to trap fish in it. If this would not be understood in your culture, you can use a general phrase. Alternate translation: "fishing in the sea" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## for they were fishermen (ULT) for they caught fish for work (UST)

Mark is providing this background information to help readers understand why they were casting fishing nets. Use a natural way in your language for introducing background information. Alternate translation: "They were doing this because they worked as fishermen" (See: [Connect — Background Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [walking](#)
- [Sea of Galilee](#)
- [sea \(2\)](#)
- [fishermen](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [called](#)
- [Andrew](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus was walking](#)
- [Sea of Galilee](#)

## ULT

<sup>18</sup> Now [walking](#) beside the [Sea of Galilee](#), he saw two [brothers](#), [Simon called Peter](#), and [Andrew his brother](#), casting a net into the [sea](#), for they were [fishermen](#).

## UST

<sup>18</sup> One day while [Jesus was walking](#) by the [Sea of Galilee](#), he saw two [men](#), [Simon, who was later called Peter](#), and [Andrew, his younger brother](#). They were casting their fishing net into the [water](#), for [they caught fish for work](#).



- water (2)
- they caught fish for work
- of Galilee
- men
- younger brother
- Simon
- Peter
- who was later called
- Andrew

## Matthew 4:19

### Come after me (ULT)

### You know how to gather fish, but come with me (UST)

**Come after me** is an idiom meaning to follow someone and be their student. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "Follow me" (See: [Idiom](#))

### I will make you fishers of men (ULT)

### I will teach you how to gather people (UST)

**I will make you fishers of men** means Simon and Andrew will teach people God's true message, so others will also follow Jesus. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "I will teach you to gather men to me like you used to gather fish" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fishers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [how to gather people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> And he says to them, "Come after me, and I will make you [fishers](#) of men."

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> Then Jesus said to them, "You know how to gather fish, but come with me and I will teach you [how to gather people](#)."

## Matthew 4:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> And immediately, they, having left {their} nets, followed him.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> They immediately left the work that they were doing and went with him.

## Matthew 4:21

### he called them (ULT) them that they should leave their work...and go with him (UST)

**he called them** is an idiom meaning that he told them to follow him. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "he told them to follow him" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [brother](#)
- [James](#)
- [of Zebedee](#)
- [Zebedee \(2\)](#)
- [John](#)
- [father](#)
- [he called](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [the three of them...James](#)
- [Zebedee \(2\)](#)
- [the three of them...James](#)
- [and go with him](#)
- [the three of them...James](#)
- [the younger brother](#)
- [John](#)
- [their father](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> And having gone on from there, he saw two other [brothers](#), [James](#) the {son} [of Zebedee](#), and [John](#) his [brother](#) in the boat with [Zebedee](#) their [father](#) mending their nets, and [he called](#) them,

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> As [the three of them](#) walked on from there, Jesus saw two other men, [James](#) and [John](#), [the younger brother](#) of James. They were in their boat with [Zebedee](#), [their father](#), mending their fishing nets. Jesus told them that they should leave their work [and go with him](#).

## Matthew 4:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- father

### Translation Words - UST

- father and

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> and immediately they, having left the boat and their father, followed him.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Immediately they also left their boat and their father and went with Jesus.

## Matthew 4:23

### preaching the gospel of the kingdom (ULT) He was preaching...the good news...God is ruling (UST)

Here, **kingdom** refers to God's reign as king. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "preaching the good news that God will soon show himself as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### every disease and every sickness (ULT) all...sick (UST)

The words **disease** and **sickness** are used here to cover every form of sickness which someone might have. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "every form of sickness" (See: [Merism](#))

### every disease and every sickness (ULT) all...sick (UST)

**every** here is an exaggeration, and does not mean that he healed every single disease among the people, but rather that he healed many different kinds of diseases. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language. Alternate translation: "many diseases and many sicknesses" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Galilee
- teaching
- synagogues
- preaching
- gospel
- of the kingdom
- healing
- people

### Translation Words - UST

- district of Galilee
- He was teaching the people
- synagogues
- He was preaching
- good news
- God is ruling
- He was...healing
- people who were

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> And he was going around in all of Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing every disease and every sickness among the people.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Jesus led those four men throughout all of the district of Galilee. He was teaching the people in the synagogues. He was preaching the good news about how God is ruling. He was also healing all the people who were sick.



## **Matthew 4:24**



## being possessed by demons (ULT) who were controlled by demons, people (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “those whom demons controlled” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## the news of him went out into all Syria (ULT) When people who lived...in other parts of the region of Syria heard what he was doing (UST)

News itself can not **go out**, but rather, people spread the news about what Jesus was doing. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: “people were spreading the news of what Jesus was doing into all of Syria” (See: [Personification](#))

## they brought to him all the ones...sickness (ULT) they brought...to him people who suffered from illnesses, people (UST)

**all those having sickness** here is an exaggeration and does not mean that every single person who was sick was brought to him, but rather that many were brought. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language. Alternate translation: “Those who lived there brought many sick people to him” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## the} epileptic (ULT) who were epileptics (UST)

This refers to someone who goes unconscious and their body moves uncontrollably. If your readers would not be familiar with this disease, you could use the name of something like this from your language, or you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: “those who sometimes become unconscious and move uncontrollably” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## and {the} paralytic (ULT) and people who were paralyzed (UST)

A person who is a **paralytic** is someone who is not able to use a large portion of their body due to injury or sickness. If your readers would not be familiar with this sickness, you could use the name of something like this in your language, or you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: “someone who is paralyzed” or “someone who is not able to use a large portion of their body” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Syria](#)
- [being possessed by demons](#)
- [he healed](#)

## ULT

<sup>24</sup> And the news of him went out into all [Syria](#), and they brought to him all the ones having sickness. being afflicted by various diseases and pains, and [being possessed by demons](#), and {the} epileptic and {the} paralytic, and [he healed](#) them.

## UST

<sup>24</sup> When people who lived in other parts of the region of [of Syria](#) heard what he was doing, they brought to him people who suffered from illnesses, people who suffered from many kinds of diseases, people who suffered from severe pains, people [who were controlled by demons](#), people who were epileptics, and people who were paralyzed. And [Jesus healed](#) them.

## Translation Words - UST

- of Syria
- who were controlled by demons, people
- Jesus healed

## Matthew 4:25

### Decapolis (ULT) the Ten Towns, from (UST)

This name means “the Ten Towns.” This is the name of a region to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Galilee](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Jordan](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Galilee, from](#)
- [the city of Jerusalem, from other parts of the](#)
- [region of Judea](#)
- [the Jordan River](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> And large crowds followed him from [Galilee](#) and Decapolis and [Jerusalem](#) and [Judea](#) and beyond the [Jordan](#).

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then large crowds started to go with him. They were people from [Galilee](#), from the Ten Towns, from [the city of Jerusalem](#), from other parts of the [region of Judea](#), and from areas east of the [Jordan River](#).

## Matthew 5

### Matthew 5 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Many people call the words in Matthew 5-7 the Sermon on the Mount. This is one long lesson that Jesus taught. Bibles divide this lesson into three chapters, but this can sometimes confuse the reader. If your translation divides the text into sections, be sure that the reader understands that the whole sermon is one large section.

Matthew 5:3-10, known as the Beatitudes or Blessings, has been set apart by being set farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text, with each line beginning with the word “blessed.” This way of placing the words on the page highlights the poetic form of this teaching.

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### “His disciples”

It is possible to refer to anyone who followed Jesus as a follower or disciple. Jesus selected twelve of his followers to become his closest disciples, “the twelve disciples.” They would later become known as the apostles.

##### Generic Noun Phrases

In this chapter, because Jesus is talking to a very large crowd, he often uses words such as “you”, “those”, “a person”, “someone” or other ways of speaking about people in general. He is not speaking about any particular person. This is a common practice when giving important universal teachers as Jesus is doing here. Express these phrases in a way that is natural in your language for speaking about people in general. (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

##### The Law

Many times in this chapter, it sounds like Jesus contrasts what the law says with “but I say”. Jesus is not actually contrasting what he says with the law, but is just expanding on the meaning of the law for his listeners, to apply it to their lives. Make sure this is clear to your readers.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### You singular and you plural

In this chapter, Jesus is talking to a large crowd of his followers. Throughout the chapter, Jesus switches between using you in the singular and you in the plural. In both instances he is talking to the same people. When he is using the singular, he is referring to all of the individuals in the crowd, but is still referring to the crowd as a whole. Your language may require you to use a plural here. (See: [Forms of ‘You’ — Singular](#) )

## Matthew 5:1

### Now (ULT)

### When Jesus saw (UST)

This introduces a new event that happened some time after the events the story has just related. The story does not say how long after those events this new event happened. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: "Some time later" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [many of...disciples](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now having seen the crowds, he went up on the mountain, and he having sat down, his [disciples](#) came to him.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> When Jesus saw the crowds, he went up on a hill. He sat down there, and [many of his disciples](#) gathered around him to hear him teach.

## Matthew 5:2

### having opened his mouth (ULT) he began to teach (UST)

Here, **having opened his mouth** is an idiom meaning to speak. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: “when Jesus began to speak” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [he taught](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [he began to teach](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And having opened his mouth, [he taught](#) them, saying,

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Then [he began to teach](#) them. He said,



## **Matthew 5:3**



**Blessed {are} (ULT)****It is well (UST)**

The phrase **Blessed {are}** indicates that God is giving favor to people and that their situation is positive or good. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "How good it is for" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the poor (ULT)****with those of you who admit to having spiritual need (UST)**

Jesus is using the adjective **poor** as a noun in order to indicate a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: "people who are poor" or "you who are poor" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**the poor in spirit (ULT)****with those of you who admit to having spiritual need (UST)**

Jesus is referring to people in general in this phrase, not of any particular person. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. See the note in the chapter introduction for a longer explanation. Alternate translation: "The people who are poor in spirit" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

**the poor in spirit (ULT)****with those of you who admit to having spiritual need (UST)**

The phrase **poor in spirit** refers to someone who is in need of God. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "those who know they need God" (See: [Idiom](#))

**for theirs is the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)****for you belong to God's people (UST)**

See how you translated **kingdom of the heavens** in [3:2](#) (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Blessed {are}](#)
- [in spirit](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [It is well](#)
- [with those of you who admit to having spiritual need](#)
- [you belong to God's people](#)
- [you belong to God's people](#)

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> ["Blessed {are}](#) the poor [in spirit](#), for theirs is the [kingdom of the heavens](#).

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> ["It is well with those of you who admit to having spiritual need](#), for you belong to God's people.

## Matthew 5:4

**Blessed {are (ULT)**

**It is well (UST)**

See the note in the previous verse. [Idiom](#))

**the ones mourning (ULT)**

**with those of you who mourn because of this  
sinful world (UST)**

See how you handled this type of phrase in the previous verse. (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

**they will be comforted (ULT)**

**God will comfort you (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God will comfort them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed {are](#)
- [mourning](#)
- [will be comforted](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [It is well](#)
- [with those of you who mourn because of this sinful world](#)
- [God will comfort](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [Blessed {are}](#) the ones [mourning](#), for they [will be comforted](#).

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> [It is well with those of you who mourn because of this sinful world](#), for [God will comfort you](#).

## Matthew 5:5

### the meek (ULT) with those of you who are humble (UST)

Jesus is using the adjective **meek** as a noun in order to indicate a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: “people who are humble” or “you who are humble” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed {are}
- meek
- will inherit
- earth

#### Translation Words - UST

- It is well
- with those of you who are humble
- you will inherit
- the earth that God will one day restore

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Blessed {are} the meek, for they will inherit the earth.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> It is well with those of you who are humble, for you will inherit the earth that God will one day restore.

## Matthew 5:6

**the ones hungering and thirsting for righteousness (ULT)  
with those of you who desire to live a life pleasing to God as much as someone might need...eat and drink (UST)**

**hungering and thirsting for righteousness** describes people who strongly desire to do what is right. Hunger and thirst are the strongest desire a person can have. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "those who desire to live right as much as they desire food and drink" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they will be fed (ULT)  
to...God will satisfy your desires (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God will fill them" or "God will satisfy them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed {are}](#)
- [for righteousness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [It is well](#)
- [with those of you who desire to live a life pleasing to God as much as someone might need...eat and drink](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> [Blessed {are}](#) the ones hungering and thirsting [for righteousness](#), for they will be fed.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> [It is well with those of you who desire to live a life pleasing to God as much as someone might need to eat and drink](#), for God will satisfy your desires.

## Matthew 5:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed {are}
- merciful
- will obtain mercy

### Translation Words - UST

- It is well
- with those of you who act mercifully toward others
- God will act mercifully toward you

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Blessed {are} the merciful, for they will obtain mercy.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> It is well with those of you who act mercifully toward others, for God will act mercifully toward you.

## Matthew 5:8

### the pure in heart (ULT) with those who do what God desires them to do (UST)

Here, **pure in heart** is an idiom for a person's intentions. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "those who have good intentions" (See: [Idiom](#))

### the pure in heart (ULT) with those who do what God desires them to do (UST)

See the note in [5:3](#). Alternate translation: "people whose intentions please God" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

### they will see God (ULT) they will see God in his presence (UST)

Here, **they will see God** means they will be able to live in God's presence, which a person cannot do unless they are in right relationship with him. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "they will live in God's presence" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed {are}](#)
- [pure](#)
- [in heart](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [It is well](#)
- [with those who do what God desires them to do](#)
- [with those who do what God desires them to do](#)
- [they will see God in his presence](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [Blessed {are}](#) the [pure in heart](#), for they will see [God](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> [It is well](#) with those who do what God desires them to do, for they will see God in his presence.

## Matthew 5:9

**for they will be called sons of God (ULT)  
for God will regard you as his own children  
(UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: "for God will call them his children" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed {are}](#)
- [will be called](#)
- [sons](#)
- [sons of God](#)
- [of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [It is well](#)
- [God will regard you as his own children](#)
- [God will regard you as his own children](#)
- [God will regard you as his own children](#)
- [God will regard you as his own children](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [Blessed {are}](#) the peacemakers, for they [will be called sons of God](#).

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [It is well](#) with those of you who act peaceably with all people, for [God will regard you as his own children](#).

## Matthew 5:10

**the ones persecuted (ULT)  
with those of you who people treat poorly  
because you obey God (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: "those people whom others treat unfairly" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**theirs is the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)  
God is ruling over you from heaven (UST)**

See how you translated this in [5:3](#) (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed {are}
- persecuted
- righteousness
- kingdom of the heavens
- of the heavens

### Translation Words - UST

- It is well
- with those of you who people treat poorly because you obey God
- with those of you who people treat poorly because you obey God
- God is ruling over you from heaven
- God is ruling over you from heaven

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Blessed {are} the ones persecuted for the sake of righteousness, for theirs is the kingdom of the heavens.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> It is well with those of you who people treat poorly because you obey God, for God is ruling over you from heaven.



## Matthew 5:11

### Blessed are you...you...you (ULT)

**It is well with those of you who...people speak falsely against...people speak falsely against (UST)**

The word **you** here, and in the remainder of the chapter, unless otherwise notified, is plural. Jesus is talking to the people in the crowd. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### because of me (ULT)

### because of me (UST)

When Jesus says **because of me**, he means because they are following him. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “because you follow me” or “because you believe in me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed](#)
- [they insult](#)
- [persecute {you}](#)
- [evil {thing}](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [It is well](#)
- [people speak falsely against](#)
- [people speak falsely against](#)
- [persecute](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> [Blessed](#) are you when [they insult](#) you and [persecute {you}](#) and say every [evil {thing}](#) against you falsely because of me.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [It is well](#) with those of you who [people speak falsely against](#) and [persecute](#) because of me.

## Matthew 5:12

### Rejoice and be very glad (ULT)

### When that happens, rejoice and be glad (UST)

Here, **Rejoice** and **be very glad** mean almost the same thing. Jesus said this to be emphatic. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "Be very glad!" (See: [Doublet](#))

### in the heavens (ULT)

### in heaven (UST)

Here, **in the heavens** means with God. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "which you will receive when you are with God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Rejoice](#)
- [be very glad](#)
- [reward](#)
- [heavens](#)
- [they persecuted](#)
- [prophets](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [When that happens, rejoice](#)
- [be glad](#)
- [reward](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [they persecuted](#)
- [prophets who lived long ago](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> [Rejoice](#) and [be very glad](#), for great {is} your [reward](#) in the [heavens](#), for in this way [they persecuted](#) the [prophets](#) before you.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [When that happens, rejoice](#) and [be glad](#), because God will give you a great [reward](#) in [heaven](#). Remember, that is how [they persecuted](#) the [prophets who lived long ago](#).

## Matthew 5:13

### You are the salt of the earth. But if the salt has lost its taste, with what might it be made salty again (ULT)

This could mean: (1) just as **salt** makes food taste good, disciples of Jesus influence the people of the world so that they will be good. Alternate translation: "You are like salt for the people of the world" (2) just as **salt** preserves food, disciples of Jesus keep people from becoming totally corrupt. Alternate translation: "As salt is for food, you are for the world" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### But if the salt has lost its taste, with what might it be made salty again (ULT)

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples that God does not use people who don't care about what he wants. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "A person who stops following God becomes useless to him" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### except having been thrown out, to be trampled by men (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "except for people to throw it out into the road and walk on it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### It is good for nothing any longer, except having been thrown out (ULT)

Jesus is saying that the only use for the salt is to be trampled upon. If it would appear in your language that Jesus was making a statement here and then contradicting it, you could reword this to avoid using an exception clause. Alternate translation: "The salt only useful for being thrown out" (See: [Connect — Exception Clauses](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the earth](#)
- [to be trampled](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Just as salt is good for food, so you shall be good for the world, keeping the people of the world from being more evil](#)
- [trample](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> You are the salt [of the earth](#). But if the salt has lost its taste, with what might it be made salty again? It is good for nothing any longer, except having been thrown out, [to be trampled](#) by men.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> [Just as salt is good for food, so you shall be good for the world, keeping the people of the world from being more evil](#). But, as useless salt is thrown out onto the ground, so God will no longer use you, if you stop obeying him.

## Matthew 5:14

### You are the light of the world (ULT) What light does for people in the dark, this is what you will do for the world (UST)

Just like a **light** shines in a dark place, Jesus is saying that his disciples will shine with his message in **the world**. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "You are like a light for the people of the world to see God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### A city being set on top of a hill is not able to be hidden (ULT)

### Just as a city on top of a hill is seen from far away, {so your good deeds in the world will be seen by many people (UST)

At night when it is dark, people can see the lights of a city shining from far away, as the city is not blocked by anything being on top of the hill. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "At night, when the lights are most visible, a city on a hill cannot be hidden" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### A city being set on top of a hill is not able to be hidden (ULT)

### Just as a city on top of a hill is seen from far away, {so your good deeds in the world will be seen by many people (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.. Alternate translation: "Everyone can see the lights from a city which is up on a hill" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [light](#)
- [of the world](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [What light does for people in the dark, this is what you will do for the world](#)
- [What light does for people in the dark, this is what you will do for the world](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> You are the [light of the world](#). A city being set on top of a hill is not able to be hidden.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> [What light does for people in the dark, this is what you will do for the world](#). Just as a city on top of a hill is seen from far away, {so your good deeds in the world will be seen by many people.}

## Matthew 5:15

### Neither do they light a lamp (ULT)

### No one lights a lamp (UST)

See the note in the chapter introduction. Alternate translation: "People do not light a lamp" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

### but rather (ULT)

### Instead (UST)

What follows the words **but rather** here is in contrast to what came before it. Instead of foolishly putting a lamp in a basket, you should put it out to light up the room. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: "But" (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a lamp
- a basket
- lampstand
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- a lamp
- basket
- lampstand
- house

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Neither do they light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather on the lampstand, and it shines for all the ones in the house.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> No one lights a lamp and puts it under a basket. Instead, they put it on a lampstand so it can shine upon everyone in the house.

## Matthew 5:16

### Let your light shine before men (ULT) you need...what is right in such a way...other people (UST)

**Let your light shine before men** means a disciple of Jesus should live in such a way that others can learn about God's truth because of how they live. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "Let your lives be like a light that shines before people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### your Father who is in the heavens

God is referred to as our **Father**. He is not our father in that same way as our biological father. That detail is not normally translated, but if your language has a specific word for a man's father, it would be appropriate to use it here. (See: [Kinship](#))

### in the heavens (ULT) in heaven (UST)

See how you translated **in the heavens** in [5:12](#)(See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [light](#)
- [good](#)
- [deeds](#)
- [might glorify](#)
- [Father](#)
- [heavens](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you need...what is right in such a way](#)
- [do](#)
- [do](#)
- [they will praise](#)
- [Father](#)
- [heaven](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Let your [light](#) shine before men in such a way so that they might see your [good deeds](#) and [might glorify](#) your [Father](#) in the [heavens](#).

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> Similarly, [you need](#) to do [what is right in such a way](#) that other people can see what you [do](#). When they see it, [they will praise](#) your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#)."

## Matthew 5:17

### the prophets (ULT)

### what the prophets wrote (UST)

This refers to what the **prophets** wrote in the scriptures. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. “the writings of the prophets” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I came not to destroy but to fulfill (ULT)

### I have come to you in order..to do away with...

### Rather, I came to cause to happen those things that were predicted would happen

### (UST)

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “I did not come to nullify the law and the prophets, but I came to fulfill them” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### but (ULT)

### Rather (UST)

What follows the word **but** here is in contrast to what came before it. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: “But rather” (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [law](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [to fulfill](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [laws that God gave Moses](#)
- [prophets wrote](#)
- [I came to cause to happen those things that were predicted would happen](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Do not think that I came to destroy the [law](#) or the [prophets](#). I came not to destroy but [to fulfill](#).

### UST

<sup>17</sup> “You should not suppose that I have come to you in order to do away with the [laws that God gave Moses](#) or what the [prophets wrote](#). Rather, [I came to cause to happen those things that were predicted would happen](#).”

## Matthew 5:18

**until the heaven and the earth passes away,  
one jot or one tittle will certainly not pass  
away from the law (ULT)**

The phrase **until the heaven and the earth may pass away, one jot or one tittle may certainly not pass away from the law** exaggerates the fact that no part of God's word will ever pass away. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that shows honor. Alternate translation: "Not even the smallest part of God's word will ever pass away" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**one jot or one tittle (ULT)  
the smallest part (UST)**

The **jot** was the smallest Hebrew letter, and the **tittle** was a small mark that was the difference between two Hebrew letters. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "the smallest written letter or the smallest part of a letter" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [truly](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [earth](#)
- [law](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [This is a true saying](#)
- [of his laws](#)
- [until the end times when he has finished everything he planned to do](#)
- [until the end times when he has finished everything he planned to do](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> For [truly](#) I say to you, until the [heaven](#) and the [earth](#) passes away, one jot or one tittle will certainly not pass away from the [law](#) until all things are accomplished.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> [This is a true saying](#): God will never do away with the smallest part [of his laws until the end times when he has finished everything he planned to do](#).





## **Matthew 5:19**

**Therefore, whoever annuls one of the least of these commandments...will be called least in the kingdom of the heavens...But whoever does and teaches {them}, that one will be called great in the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)**

Jesus is using a hypothetical situation to teach the crowd of his disciples the importance of God's law. Alternate translation: "If one were to nullify even the smallest of these commandments, God would call him the least important in his kingdom...If one were to do and teach the commandments, God would call him great in his kingdom" (See: [Connect — Hypothetical Conditions](#) )

**Therefore, whoever annuls...But whoever does (ULT)**

**Therefore, if one of you decides that...are not important...But if one you obey God's commands...teach others to obey God as you are obeying him (UST)**

See the note in the chapter introduction. Alternate translation: "If anyone therefore breaks...if anyone does" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

**teaches men to do so...will be called (ULT)**  
**and you teach others this...the...person...you will be...least important (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "teaches others to do so, God will call that person" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)**  
**God's rule from heaven (UST)**

See how you translated this in 3:2 (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...commandments
- teaches
- teaches {them} (2)
- will be called
- will be called (2)
- kingdom of the heavens
- kingdom of the heavens
- of...heavens
- of the heavens (2)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Therefore, whoever annuls one of the least of these [commandments](#) and [teaches](#) men to do so [will be called](#) least in the [kingdom of the heavens](#). But whoever does and [teaches {them}](#), that one [will be called](#) great in the [kingdom of the heavens](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Therefore, if one of you decides that any of the [commands](#) are not important, [and you teach others this](#), [you will be the least important](#) person under [God's rule from heaven](#). But if [one you obey God's commands](#) and [teach others to obey God as you are obeying him](#), [you will become a great person under God's rule from heaven](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- commands
- and you teach others this
- But if one you obey God's commands...teach others to obey God as you are obeying him (2)
- you will be...least important
- you will become a great person (2)
- God's rule from heaven
- under God's rule from heaven
- God's rule from heaven
- under God's rule from heaven (2)

## Matthew 5:20

### that unless your righteousness abounds...you will certainly not enter (ULT)

If your readers would misunderstand this double negative, you can state it in a positive form. Alternate translation: "that your righteousness must exceed ... Pharisees in order to enter" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### unless your righteousness abounds more than {that...you will certainly not enter into the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)

Jesus is using a hypothetical situation to teach the disciples about how holy they need to be to enter into the kingdom of heaven.

Alternate translation: "If your righteousness does not become much greater...you will never be a part of God's people" (See: [Connect — Hypothetical Conditions](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [righteousness](#)
- [of the scribes](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you must obey God's laws](#)
- [teachers of the law](#)
- [the Pharisees](#)
- [be one of God's people](#)
- [be one of God's people](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> For I say to you that unless your [righteousness](#) abounds more than {that} [of the scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#), you will certainly not enter into the [kingdom of the heavens](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> I tell you that [you must obey God's laws](#) better than the [teachers of the law](#) and [the Pharisees](#). Otherwise, you will never [be one of God's people](#)

## Matthew 5:21

### it was said to the ancient {ones} (ULT)

### God said to our ancestors (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: "God said through Moses to your ancestors long ago" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Whoever...Whoever...kills will be subject to the judgment (ULT)

### you...kill anyone, the judge will declare you guilty (UST)

Here, **the judgment** implies that a judge will condemn the person to die. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "A judge will condemn anyone who kills another person" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [judgment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the judge will declare you guilty](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> You have heard that it was said to the ancient {ones}, 'Do not kill,' and, 'Whoever kills will be subject to the [judgment](#).'

### UST

<sup>21</sup> "Your religious teachers have told you what God said to our ancestors, 'You shall not kill anyone,' and, 'If you kill anyone, [the judge will declare you guilty](#).'

## Matthew 5:22

### with his brother...to his brother (ULT)

Here, **his brother** refers to a fellow disciple of Jesus, not to a literal brother or a neighbor. If your reader would not understand this, you can make it explicit. Alternate translation: "with another one of my followers" (See: [Kinship](#))

### Fool (ULT)

### You are worthless (UST)

This is an Aramaic word. Matthew spelled it out using Greek letters so his readers would know how it sounded. In your translation you can spell it the way it sounds in your language. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

### And whoever says (ULT)

### If you say (UST)

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "Whoever might say to his brother" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with...brother](#)
- [to...brother](#) (2)
- [judgment](#)
- [Fool](#)
- [You fool](#)
- [council](#)
- [Gehenna](#)
- [of fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [are angry with another one of my followers](#)
- [to another one of my followers](#) (2)
- [God himself will judge you](#)
- [You are worthless](#)
- [You are a fool](#)
- [a council](#)
- [fire](#)
- [Hell](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But I say to you that everyone being angry with his [brother](#) will be subject to the [judgment](#). And whoever says to his [brother](#), 'Fool!' will be subject to the [council](#). And whoever says, 'You fool!' will be subject to the [Gehenna of fire](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> But I tell you that even if you [are angry with another one of my followers](#), [God himself will judge you](#). If you say [to another one of my followers](#), 'You are [worthless](#),' [a council](#) will bring you before them for judgement. If you say to someone, 'You are a fool,' God will throw you into the [fire](#) in [Hell](#).

## Matthew 5:23

### at the altar (ULT)

### to the altar (UST)

It is implied that this is God's **altar** at the temple in Jerusalem. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "to God at the altar in the temple" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- gift
- altar
- brother

### Translation Words - UST

- your gift for God
- altar
- you have offended someone

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Therefore, if you offer your [gift](#) at the [altar](#) and there you remember that your [brother](#) has something against you,

### UST

<sup>23</sup> So if, when you take [your gift for God](#) to the [altar](#), you remember that [you have offended someone](#),



## Matthew 5:24

**first be reconciled with your brother (ULT)**  
**Then...the person you have offended...tell that person that you are sorry for what you have done, and ask that person to forgive you (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.  
 Alternate translation: "first, make peace with that person" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**then (ULT)**  
**Then (UST)**

The word **then** indicates that only after the two are reconciled can this person offer something upon the altar. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could show this relationship by using a fuller phrase. Alternate translation: "then, once you are brought together again" (See: [Connect — Sequential Time Relationship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gift](#)
- [gift \(2\)](#)
- [altar](#)
- [be reconciled](#)
- [with...brother](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gift](#)
- [gift to God \(2\)](#)
- [altar](#)
- [person](#)
- [tell that person that you are sorry for what you have done, and ask that person to forgive you](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> leave your [gift](#) there in front of the [altar](#) and go; first [be reconciled](#) with your [brother](#), and then, having come, offer your [gift](#).

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> leave your [gift](#) by the [altar](#). Then, go to the [person](#) you have offended, and [tell that person that you are sorry for what you have done, and ask that person to forgive you](#). Then go back and offer your [gift to God](#).



## **Matthew 5:25**

**Be in agreement with your accuser quickly while you are with him on the way, lest {your} accuser might hand you over to the judge, and the judge to the officer, and you will be thrown into prison (ULT)**

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of **you** and **your** in this verse are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**with your accuser (ULT)**  
**If a fellow citizen takes you before a judge in order to...you of doing something wrong (UST)**

An **accuser** is a person who blames someone for doing something wrong. He takes the wrongdoer to court to accuse him before a judge. If your readers would not understand this, you can state it explicitly. Alternate translation: “one who accuses another of doing wrong” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**might hand you over...to the judge (ULT)**  
**you...hand...over...the judge (UST)**

Here, **hand you over** means to give someone into the control of someone else. Alternate translation: “will let the judge deal with you” (See: [Idiom](#))

**while you are with him on the way (ULT)**  
**with that person, while...are still walking with that person to court. Do that while there still is time so that he will not take you to (UST)**

Here, **on the way** is referring to the time when they are walking to the place where the judge is. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “while you are walking with him on the road to the court house” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**lest {your} accuser might hand you over to the judge (ULT)**

Here, **hand you over** means to bring someone to the judge to have the judge deal with them. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: “lest your accuser might bring you to the judge and give you to him so that he can judge you” (See: [Idiom](#))

**the judge to the officer (ULT)**

Here, “hand you over” is implied from the previous phrase. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “and the judge might hand you over to the officer” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Be in agreement with your **accuser** quickly while you are with him on the way, lest {your} **accuser** might hand you over **to the judge**, and the **judge** to the officer, and you will be thrown into **prison**.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> **If a fellow citizen takes you before a judge in order to accuse** you of doing something wrong, come to an agreement quickly with that person, while you are still walking with that person to court. Do that while there still is time so that he will not take you to the **judge**, because the **judge might say you are guilty** and hand you over to his jailor, and the jailor will put you in **prison**.

## to the officer (ULT)

Here, **the officer** is a person who has authority to carry out the decisions of a judge. Usually this involves bringing people to jail if they have been declared guilty by the judge. Alternate translation: "one who carries out the judge's orders" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## you will be thrown into prison (ULT) the jailor will put you in prison (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the officer will put you in prison" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [with...accuser](#)
- [accuser](#)
- [to the judge](#)
- [judge](#)
- [prison](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [If a fellow citizen takes you before a judge in order to](#)
- [accuse](#)
- [judge](#)
- [judge might say you are guilty](#)
- [prison](#)

## Matthew 5:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly

### Translation Words - UST

- This is a true saying which I am telling

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Truly I say to you, you will certainly not come out from there until you have paid the last quadrans.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> This is a true saying which I am telling to you. You will never come out of prison until you pay everything which you owe to that person."

## Matthew 5:27

### that it was said (ULT)

### that God said to our ancestors (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: "that God said" or "that Moses said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Do...commit adultery](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Do...commit adultery](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> You have heard that it was said, 'Do not [commit adultery](#).'

### UST

<sup>27</sup> "You have heard from your religious teachers that that God said to our ancestors, 'Do not [commit adultery](#).'

## Matthew 5:28

### with her in his heart (ULT)

Here, **heart** is referring to the inner thoughts and desires of a person. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "with her in his thoughts" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lust after](#)
- [has...committed adultery](#)
- [heart](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [desiring to sleep with her](#)
- [he has...committed adultery](#)
- [heart](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> But I say to you that everyone looking on a woman to [lust after](#) her has already [committed adultery](#) with her in his [heart](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> But I tell you that even if a man looks at a woman [desiring to sleep with her](#), to God [he has](#) already [committed adultery](#) with her.





## **Matthew 5:29**

**But if your right eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw {it} away from you. For it is better for you that one of your members would perish and your whole body would not be thrown into Gehenna (ULT)**

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All instances of **you** and **your** here are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**if...your right eye causes you to stumble (ULT)**  
**If...you sin with your eyes, having looked at certain things, you (UST)**

Here, **right eye** refers to both eyes. It was common in Jesus' time to think the right eye was more important. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "if one of your eyes causes you to sin" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**if...your right eye causes you to stumble (ULT)**  
**If...you sin with your eyes, having looked at certain things, you (UST)**

Here, **to stumble** is a metaphor meaning "to sin." If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternate translation: "if you want to sin because of what you see" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**pluck it out (ULT)**  
**should destroy both of your eyes...you...sinning (UST)**

This is an exaggerated command for a person to do whatever he needs to do to stop sinning, even if that means removing an eye. If you mention both eyes in this verse, it will be necessary to say "pluck them out" here. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**and your whole body would not be thrown into Gehenna (ULT)**  
**than for God to throw you into hell while you can still see (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "than for God to throw your whole body into hell" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**one of your members would perish (ULT)**  
**to be blind and stop sinning (UST)**

Here, a **member** is referring to an individual part of the body. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternate translation: "one individual part of your body perish" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> But if your right eye **causes** you to **stumble**, pluck it out and throw {it} away from you. For **it is better** for you that one of your **members would perish** and your whole **body** would not be thrown into **Gehenna**.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> If **you sin** with your eyes, having looked at certain things, you should destroy both of your eyes. **If this would help** you to **avoid** sinning, **it would be better to be blind and stop sinning**, than for God to throw you into **hell** while you **can still see**.

## Translation Words - ULT

- causes...to stumble
- it is better
- of...members
- would perish
- body
- Gehenna

## Translation Words - UST

- you sin
- If this would help...to avoid...it would be better
- to be blind and stop sinning
- to be blind and stop sinning
- hell
- than...you...while...can still see



## **Matthew 5:30**

**And if your right hand causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw {it} away from you. For it is better for you that one of your members would perish and your whole body would not go into Gehenna (ULT)**

This verse has the same meaning as the previous verse. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the verses into one. Alternate translation: "If a part of your body causes you to sin against God, you should destroy it. For it is better that one part of your body be destroyed than for God to throw your entire body into Gehenna" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**if your right hand causes you to stumble (ULT)  
if one of your hands causes you to sin (UST)**

Here, the **hand** stands for the actions of the whole person. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation "If you do something that causes you to sin, cut it off" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**cut it off and throw {it} away from you (ULT)  
cut your hand off and throw it away (UST)**

This is an exaggerated command for a person to do whatever he needs to do to stop sinning. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**one of your members would perish (ULT)**

See how you translated this word in the previous verse. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [causes...to stumble](#)
- [cut...off](#)
- [it is better](#)
- [of...members](#)
- [would perish](#)
- [body](#)
- [Gehenna](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [one of your hands](#)
- [causes...to sin](#)
- [cut your hand off](#)
- [If this would help you to avoid sinning, it would be better](#)
- [to lose](#)
- [a part of...body than](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> And if your right [hand causes](#) you [to stumble](#), [cut it off](#) and throw {it} away from you. For [it is better](#) for you that one of your [members would perish](#) and your whole [body](#) would not go into [Gehenna](#).

### UST

<sup>30</sup> And if [one of your hands causes](#) you [to sin](#), [cut your hand off](#) and throw it away. [If this would help you to avoid sinning, it would be better to lose a part of your body than](#) for God to throw your whole [body](#) into [hell](#)."

- body
- hell



## Matthew 5:31

### it has been said (ULT)

### God has said in the Scriptures (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: "God also said" or "Moses also said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sends...away](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [divorces](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Now it has been said, 'Whoever [sends](#) his wife [away](#), let him give her a certificate of divorce.'

### UST

<sup>31</sup> "God has said in the Scriptures, 'If a man [divorces](#) his wife, he should write a document on which he states that he is divorcing her.'

## Matthew 5:32

**everyone divorcing his wife, except for a report of sexual immorality, causes her to commit adultery (ULT)  
a man may divorce his wife only if she has committed adultery. If a man divorces his wife for any other reason, he causes her to act adulterously (UST)**

If it would appear in your language that Luke was making a statement here and then contradicting it, you could reword this to avoid using an exception clause. Alternate translation: "A man is only allow to divorce a woman if she has been unfaithful to him with another man. Otherwise, he will cause her to be adulterous" (See: [Connect — Exception Clauses](#) )

**the one who} has been divorced (ULT)  
then...marries her also (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "her after her husband has divorced her" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [divorcing](#)
- [the one who} has been divorced](#)
- [of sexual immorality](#)
- [to commit adultery](#)
- [commits adultery](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [may divorce](#)
- [then...marries her also](#)
- [she has committed adultery](#)
- [If a man divorces his wife for any other reason, he causes her to act adulterously](#)
- [commits adultery](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> But I say to you that everyone [divorcing](#) his wife, except for a report of [sexual immorality](#), causes her to [commit adultery](#). And whoever marries [{the one who} has been divorced](#) [commits adultery](#).

### UST

<sup>32</sup> But I tell you that a man [may divorce](#) his wife only if [she has committed adultery](#). [If a man divorces his wife for any other reason, he causes her to act adulterously](#). If she marries someone else, then the man who [marries her also commits adultery](#)."

## Matthew 5:33

### it was said to the ancients (ULT)

### God said to our ancestors (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God said to those who lived long ago" or "Moses said to your ancestors long ago" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### but (ULT)

What follows the word **but** here is in contrast to what came before it. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: "But rather" (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [oaths](#)
- [to the Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You shall fulfill...oaths as you have promised](#)
- [to the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Again, you have heard that it was said to the ancients, 'Do not break an oath, but carry out your [oaths to the Lord](#).'

### UST

<sup>33</sup> "You have heard from your religious teachers that God said to our ancestors, 'You shall fulfill your [oaths as you have promised to the Lord](#).'

## Matthew 5:34

**neither by heaven, for it is {the} throne of God (ULT)**

**Do not swear by heaven. For God rules from there (UST)**

Here, **heaven** is spoken of as **the throne of God** in a figurative way. Heaven is the place where God rules from. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "not by the heavens, where God rules from as a throne" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to swear
- heaven
- the} throne
- of God

### Translation Words - UST

- when you make a promise, do
- heaven
- God rules from there
- God rules from there

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> But I tell you not to swear at all, neither by heaven, for it is {the} throne of God;

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> But I tell you that when you make a promise, do not use the name of God or anything to guarantee your promise as the vows of the Pharisees! Do not swear by heaven. For God rules from there.

## Matthew 5:35

### it is a footstool for his feet (ULT) the earth belongs to God (UST)

Here, **footstool** is used to refer to the earth. If your readers would not know what a footstool is, you can use a general expression. Alternate translation: “something on which God can rest his feet” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### for it is a footstool for his feet (ULT) For the earth belongs to God (UST)

God does not need **a footstool for his feet**, for he does not have feet. This language is metaphorical, telling the reader that the earth belongs to God. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: “no longer belong to Jesus” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#)
- [a footstool](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [of the...King](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [earth would witness it](#)
- [the earth belongs to God](#)
- [the city of Jerusalem](#)
- [God, our...King](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> nor by the [earth](#), for it is [a footstool](#) for his feet; nor by [Jerusalem](#), for it is {the} city [of the](#) great [King](#).

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> And do not swear any oath on the promise that the [earth would witness it](#). For [the earth belongs to God](#). Never swear an oath by [the city of Jerusalem](#), because Jerusalem is the city that belongs to [God, our great King](#).

## Matthew 5:36

### Neither should you swear by your head, for you are not able to make one hair white or black (ULT)

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of the words **you** and **your** are singular, but you may have to translate them as plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Neither should you swear by your head (ULT)

To **swear by your head** figuratively means to swear by your own authority. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "Neither should you swear by your own authority" or "Neither should you swear by your own knowledge" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [should you swear](#)
- [head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Also, do...promise that you will do something](#)
- [by the authority of...own knowledge](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Neither [should you swear](#) by your [head](#), for you are not able to make one hair white or black.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> [Also, do not promise that you will do something by the authority of your own knowledge](#). For you are not even able to change the color of one hair on your head.

## Matthew 5:37

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the evil one](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Satan...Evil One](#)

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> But let your word be 'Yes, yes,' {or} 'No, no.' But anything greater than this is from [the evil one](#).

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> If you promise something, just say 'Yes, I will do it,' or 'No, I will not do it.' If you say anything more than that, it is [Satan](#), the [Evil One](#), who has suggested that you talk this way."

## Matthew 5:38

**that it was said (ULT)  
your religious teachers say that God told our  
ancestors (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that God said” or “that Moses said” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**An eye in exchange for an eye, and a tooth in  
exchange for a tooth (ULT)  
If a person harms one of your eyes, then  
someone should harm one of that person’s  
eyes as punishment. And if a person harms  
one of your teeth, then someone should harm  
one of that person’s teeth (UST)**

This passages is speaking of the punishment of injuring someone’s **eye** or **tooth**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly, as in the UST. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> You have heard that it was said, ‘An eye in exchange for an eye, and a tooth in exchange for a tooth.’

### UST

<sup>38</sup> “You have heard your religious teachers say that God told our ancestors, ‘If a person harms one of your eyes, then someone should harm one of that person’s eyes as punishment. And if a person harms one of your teeth, then someone should harm one of that person’s teeth as punishment.’”



## Matthew 5:39

### the evil one (ULT)

### stop someone who does evil against you (UST)

Jesus is using the adjective **evil** as a noun in order to describe a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this with a noun phrase. Alternate translation: "someone who is evil" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil one](#)
- [turn](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [stop someone who does evil against you](#)
- [turn](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> But I tell you not to resist the [evil one](#). Instead, whoever strikes you on the right cheek, [turn](#) to him the other also.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> But I tell you that you should not [stop someone who does evil against you](#). Instead, if someone insults you by striking you on one cheek, [turn](#) your other cheek toward that person so he can strike it also.

## Matthew 5:40

**you...your...your} cloak (ULT)**  
**you...your...your outer garment, which is of even more worth to you (UST)**

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of **you** and **your** are singular. In some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**coat...cloak (ULT)**  
**tunic...your outer garment, which is of even more worth to you (UST)**

The **coat** was worn close to the body, like a heavy shirt or a sweater. The **cloak**, the more valuable of the two, was worn over the **coat** for warmth and also used as a blanket for warmth at night. If your readers would not be familiar with these, you can state what these things are explicitly. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to have judgment passed upon
- coat
- cloak

### Translation Words - UST

- to sue...in a court
- tunic
- your outer garment, which is of even more worth to you

#### ULT

<sup>40</sup> And to the one wanting to have judgment passed upon you and to take away your coat, let him also have {your} cloak.

#### UST

<sup>40</sup> If someone wants to sue you in a court so that you lose your tunic, let that person also have your outer garment, which is of even more worth to you.

## Matthew 5:41

### whoever (ULT)

### And if a Roman soldier (UST)

The context implies that he is speaking about a Roman soldier. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "If a soldier of the Roman army" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### one mile (ULT)

### one mile (UST)

Here, **one mile** refers to the Roman mile, which was 1,000 paces. This was the distance a Roman soldier could legally force someone to carry something for him. If **mile** is confusing, it can be translated literally. Alternate translation: "1000 paces" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### go with him two (ULT)

### to...go with him...two miles (UST)

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "go with him two miles" or "go with him 2000 paces" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> And whoever will compel you to go one mile, go with him two.

### UST

<sup>41</sup> And if a Roman soldier forces you to carry his burden for one mile, go with him and carry it for him for two miles.

## Matthew 5:42

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- do...turn away from

### Translation Words - UST

- do not withhold it from him

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Give to the one asking you, and do not **turn away from** the one wanting to borrow from you.

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> If someone asks you for something, give it to him. And if someone asks you to lend him something, **do not withhold it from him.**"

## Matthew 5:43

### You have heard...your...your (ULT)

### You have heard...your...your (UST)

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The **You** is plural in **You have heard**. The verb **Love** and both instances of **your** are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### that it was said (ULT)

### that God said to our ancestors (UST)

See how you translated this in [5:27](#). (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### your neighbor (ULT)

### your fellow Israelites (UST)

Here the word **neighbor** does not refer to a specific neighbor, but to any members of one's community or people group. These are people whom one usually desires to treat kindly or at least believes he ought to treat kindly. Alternate translation: "your countrymen" or "those who belong to your people group" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Love](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [enemy](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Love](#)
- [fellow Israelites](#)
- [enemies](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> You have heard that it was said, 'Love your [neighbor](#) and hate your [enemy](#).'

### UST

<sup>43</sup> "You have heard that God said to our ancestors, 'Love your [fellow Israelites](#) and hate foreigners, for they are your [enemies](#).'

## Matthew 5:44

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- love
- enemies
- pray
- persecuting

### Translation Words - UST

- you should also love
- enemies
- pray
- those who cause...to suffer

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> But I say to you, love your enemies and pray on behalf of the ones persecuting you, <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>44</sup> But I tell to you that you should also love your enemies, and pray for those who cause you to suffer.



## **Matthew 5:45**



**you might be sons of your Father (ULT)**  
**You ought to behave this way} in order to be like...God, your Father...people (UST)**

We are not God's physical children, but his spiritual children. It is best to translate **sons** with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to human sons or children. (See: [Kinship](#))

**of...your...Father (ULT)**  
**God...your...Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**in {the} heavens (ULT)**  
**who is in...heaven. {For he acts kindly to all (UST)**

See how you translated **in the heavens** in [5:12](#)(See: [Metonymy](#))

**he makes his sun to rise on {the} evil and {the} good, and he sends rain on {the} just and {the} unjust (ULT)**

Here, **he makes his sun to rise** and **he sends rain on** are figurative for sending blessings, as sun and rain help crops to grow. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "God gives blessing to both those who are right with him and those who are not right with him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [sons](#)
- [sons of...Father](#)
- [of...Father](#)
- [the} heavens](#)
- [the} evil](#)
- [the} good](#)
- [the} just](#)
- [the} unjust](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God...Father](#)
- [God...Father...people](#)
- [heaven. {For he acts kindly to all](#)
- [people](#)
- [wicked people](#)
- [good people](#)
- [people who obey his law](#)
- [people who do not](#)

**ULT**

<sup>45</sup> so that you might be [sons of your Father](#) in [{the} heavens](#). For he makes his sun to rise on [{the} evil](#) and [{the} good](#), and he sends rain on [{the} just](#) and [{the} unjust](#).

**UST**

<sup>45</sup> {You ought to behave this way} in order to be like [God](#), your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#). {[For he acts kindly to all people](#).} This is seen in that he causes the sun to shine equally on [wicked people](#) and on [good people](#), and he sends rain both on [people who obey his law](#) and on [people who do not](#).

## Matthew 5:46

### what reward do you have (ULT) do not expect God to reward you at all (UST)

Jesus uses this question to teach the people that loving those who love them is not something special that God will reward them for. This is because it is easy to love those who love you back. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "you will get no reward." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Do not even the tax collectors do the same {thing (ULT)

### Even people who do evil things, such as tax collectors, love those who love them. You must act better than they do (UST)

Jesus asks this question to show that even people who are considered to be the most evil do this. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "Even the tax collectors do the same thing." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you love](#)
- [loving](#)
- [reward](#)
- [tax collectors](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you love only](#)
- [love](#)
- [do not expect God to reward you at all](#)
- [such as tax collectors](#)

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> For if [you love](#) the ones [loving](#) you, what [reward](#) do you have? Do not even the [tax collectors](#) do the same {thing}?

### UST

<sup>46</sup> If [you love only](#) the people who [love](#) you, [do not expect God to reward you at all](#). Even people who do evil things, [such as tax collectors](#), love those who love them. You must act better than they do!

## Matthew 5:47

**what do you do more? Do not even the Gentiles do the same {thing (ULT) you are not acting any better than other people. Even non-Jews, who do not obey God's law, do the same thing (UST)**

Jesus asks these questions to teach his followers that they are no better than the Gentiles if they do not welcome people who are not like them. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way.

Alternate translation: "you do not do anything better than those who do not know God. For the Gentiles do this very thing" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [Gentiles](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israelites](#)
- [non-Jews, who do not obey God's law](#)

#### ULT

<sup>47</sup> And if you love only your [brothers](#), what do you do more? Do not even the [Gentiles](#) do the same {thing}?

#### UST

<sup>47</sup> And if you greet only fellow [Israelites](#), you are not acting any better than other people. Even [non-Jews, who do not obey God's law](#), do the same thing!

## Matthew 5:48

### Father (ULT)

### God...Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- perfect
- perfect
- as
- heavenly
- Father

### Translation Words - UST

- act without fault
- acts without fault
- just as
- God...Father
- heavenly

### ULT

<sup>48</sup> Therefore, you shall be perfect, as your heavenly Father is perfect.  
5:44 <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>48</sup> So you must act without fault, just as God your heavenly Father acts without fault."

## Matthew 6

### Matthew 6 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Matthew 6 continues Jesus' extended teaching known as "The Sermon on the Mount."

You may wish to set apart the prayer in 6:9-11 by placing it farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text.

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### You singular and you plural

In this chapter, as in the last chapter, Jesus is talking to a large crowd of his followers. Throughout the chapter, Jesus switches between using you in the singular and you in the plural. In both instances he is talking to the same people. When he is using the singular, he is referring to all of the individuals in the crowd, but is still referring to the crowd as a whole. Your language may require you to use a plural here. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Singular](#) )



## **Matthew 6:1**

**your...not to do...you do not have...your (ULT)**  
**you are...not doing...what is good...not give...  
 any...your (UST)**

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of **you** and **your** are plural in this chapter unless otherwise noted. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**before men to be seen by them (ULT)**  
**them so people will see what you do (UST)**

It is implied that those who see this person will honor him. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "in front of people to be seen by them so they will give you honor for what you have done" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**before men to be seen by them (ULT)**  
**them so people will see what you do (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "in front of people just so that they can see you and honor you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**before men (ULT)**  
**people...what you do (UST)**

Although the term **men** is masculine, Jesus is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: "people" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**Father (ULT)**  
**God...Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**in the heavens (ULT)**  
**in heaven (UST)**

See how you translated this in [5:16](#) (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [righteousness](#)
- [a reward](#)
- [Father](#)
- [heavens](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> Now take heed not to do your [righteousness](#) before men to be seen by them, otherwise, you do not have a [reward](#) with your [Father](#) in the [heavens](#).

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> "Make certain that when you [do good deeds](#) you are not doing them so people will see what you do. If that is your reason for doing what is good, [God](#), your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#), will not give you any [reward](#)."



## **Translation Words - UST**

- do good deeds
- God...Father
- heaven
- will...you...reward



## **Matthew 6:2**

## do not sound a trumpet before yourself (ULT) you...not make other people notice it...playing a trumpet. That is what the (UST)

Here, **do not sound a trumpet** could mean (1) that they should not blow an actual trumpet when they go to give, or (2) **do not blow your trumpet** is figurative for bringing attention to yourself. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: “do not bring much attention to yourself” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## the hypocrites (ULT) hypocrites (UST)

**hypocrites** is a generic noun phrase. This is not referring to a specific person, but to people who behave this way in general. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: “people who act in a hypocritical way” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

## so that they may be glorified by men (ULT) in order that people might praise them (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “in order that people might honor them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## they have their reward in full (ULT) is the only reward the hypocrites will receive (UST)

Often times, to **have a reward** is a positive thing. Here, Jesus means it in a negative way that their reward is not with God. If this would be misunderstood in your language, consider expressing the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “their reward is not with God in the heavens” (See: [Irony](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [alms](#)
- [do...sound a trumpet](#)
- [even as](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [synagogues](#)
- [they may be glorified](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [they have...in full](#)
- [reward](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [give something to the poor](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So when you give [alms](#), do not [sound a trumpet](#) before yourself [even as](#) the [hypocrites](#) do in the [synagogues](#) and in the streets, so that [they may be glorified](#) by men. [Truly](#) I say to you, [they have their reward in full](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> So whenever you [give something to the poor](#), do not make other people notice it [as if playing a trumpet](#). [That is what the hypocrites](#) do in the [synagogues](#) and in the main roads in order that people [might praise them](#). [This truth](#) I want you to understand, that is [the only reward](#) the hypocrites [will receive!](#)

- as if
- playing a trumpet. That is what the
- hypocrites
- synagogues
- might praise them
- This truth
- the only reward
- is...will receive

## Matthew 6:3

**you...your...your (ULT)**  
**Instead of doing as they do, when you...**  
**what...are doing...you (UST)**

All occurrences of **you** and **your** are singular in this verse. You might need to translate these as plural in your language. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Singular](#))

**do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing (ULT)**  
**not let other people know what you are doing (UST)**

This phrase is a metaphor for total secrecy. Just as hands usually work together and each can be said to **know** what the other is **doing** at all times, you should not let even those closest to you know when you are giving to the poor. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [alms](#)
- [do...let...know](#)
- [right hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [give something to the poor](#)
- [let other people know](#)
- [what...are doing](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But you, giving [alms](#), do not let your left hand [know](#) what your [right hand](#) is doing,

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Instead of doing as they do, when you [give something to the poor](#), do not [let other people know what you are doing](#).

## Matthew 6:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- alms
- Father
- will reward

### Translation Words - UST

- will be giving to the poor
- Father
- will reward

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> so that your alms may be in secret, and your Father seeing in secret will reward you.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> In that way, you will be giving to the poor secretly. As a result God, your Father, who observes what you do while no one else sees it, will reward you.





## **Matthew 6:5**

**you pray...to you (ULT)**  
**you pray...you (UST)**

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The first occurrence of **you** is singular and second is plural. In some languages they both may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**the hypocrites (ULT)**  
**the hypocrites (UST)**

See the note in [5:2](#) (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

**so that they may be seen by men (ULT)**  
**in order that other people will see them and think highly of them (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so that people will see them and give them honor" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by men (ULT)**  
**other people (UST)**

Although the term **men** is masculine, Jesus is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: "by people" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you pray](#)
- [to pray](#)
- [like](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [they love](#)
- [synagogues](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [they have...in full](#)
- [reward](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you pray](#)
- [to pray](#)
- [do...what...do](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [They like](#)
- [synagogues](#)
- [This truth](#)
- [is the...will get](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And when [you pray](#), do not be [like](#) the [hypocrites](#), for [they love to pray](#), having stood in the [synagogues](#) and on the corners of the street, so that they may be seen by men. [Truly](#) I say to you, [they have](#) their [reward in full](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> "Similarly, when [you pray](#), do not do [what](#) the [hypocrites do](#). [They like](#) to stand in the [synagogues](#) and on the corners of the main streets [to pray](#) in order that other people will see them and think highly of them. [This truth](#) I want you to know, that [is the only reward](#) they [will get](#).

- only reward

## Matthew 6:6

### enter into your inner chamber (ULT)

### go into your private room (UST)

The **inner chamber** was a small, private room where people stored belongings, as well as food for their animals. If your readers would not understand this, you can state it plainly. Alternate translation: “go into your private storage room” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### to your Father (ULT)

### God, your Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- you pray
- pray
- to...Father
- Father
- will reward

### Translation Words - UST

- pray
- order to pray
- God...Father
- Your Father
- will reward

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But you, when you **pray**, enter into your inner chamber, and having shut your door, **pray** to your **Father** in secret, and your **Father** seeing in secret **will reward** you.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But as for you, when you **pray**, go into your private room and close the door in **order to pray to God**, your **Father**, whom no one can see. **Your Father** observes what you do and **will reward** you.

## Matthew 6:7

**the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**the people who do not know God do when**  
**they pray (UST)**

Jesus is speaking of **Gentiles** in general, and not to any specific gentiles. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: "Gentile people" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

**they will be heard (ULT)**  
**their gods will hear their requests (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "their false gods will hear them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [praying](#)
- [even as](#)
- [Gentiles](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [When you pray](#)
- [as](#)
- [people who do not know God do when they pray](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now [praying](#), do not make useless repetitions [even as](#) the [Gentiles](#), for they think that because of their many words they will be heard.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> [When you pray](#), do not repeat words many times [as](#) the [people who do not know God do when they pray](#). They think that if they use many words, their gods will hear their requests.

## Matthew 6:8

### Therefore, you should not be like them (ULT) Do not repeat words as those who do not know God (UST)

When Jesus says to **not be like them**, he means in the way they pray. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "Therefore, you should not pray like them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Father (ULT) God...Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you should...be like](#)
- [Father](#)
- [knows](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [as](#)
- [God...Father](#)
- [knows](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Therefore, [you should](#) not [be like](#) them, for your [Father knows](#) what need you have before you ask him.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Do not repeat words [as](#) those who do not know God, for [God](#) your [Father knows](#) what you need before you even ask him.

## Matthew 6:9

### let your name be honored (ULT)

### May everyone glorify you (UST)

Here, **your name** refers to God himself. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “make everyone honor you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Therefore, you must pray like this (ULT)

### So you ought to pray to God like this (UST)

Jesus was not saying that this was the only way to pray. He was giving an example of how one should pray. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “Therefore, instead of babbling like the Gentiles, you should pray similar to this” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

See how you translated **who is in the heavens** in [5:16](#) (See: [Metonymy](#))

### let your name be honored (ULT)

### May everyone glorify you (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “make people glory your name” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### let your name be honored (ULT)

### May everyone glorify you (UST)

Here, **your name** refers to God himself. The name of something is very closely associated with who it belongs to. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “May people honor you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [must pray](#)
- [Father](#)
- [heavens](#)
- [name](#)
- [let...be honored](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [you ought to pray to God](#)
- [God...Father](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [May everyone](#)
- [glorify you](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Therefore, you [must pray](#) like this:  
'Our [Father](#) in the [heavens](#), let your [name be honored](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> So [you ought to pray to God](#) like this:  
'[God](#), our [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#), [May everyone glorify you](#).

## Matthew 6:10

**Let your kingdom come (ULT)**  
**May your kingdom come (UST)**

See how your translated **kingdom** in 3:2. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**let your will also be done on earth as {it is} in heaven (ULT)**  
**May everything happen on earth as you desire, just as it happens in heaven (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "May everything on earth happen in accordance with your will just as everything in heaven does" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Let your **kingdom** come, let your **will** also be done on **earth as {it is}** in **heaven**.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> May **your kingdom come**. May everything happen on **earth as you desire, just as it happens** in **heaven**.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [kingdom](#)
- [your...will](#)
- [earth](#)
- [as {it is}](#)
- [heaven](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [your kingdom come](#)
- [earth as](#)
- [you...desire](#)
- [just as it happens](#)
- [heaven](#)



## Matthew 6:11

### bread...daily (ULT)

### the food that...each day (UST)

Here, **bread** refers to food in general. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "something he said" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [food that](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Give us today our daily [bread](#);

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Give us each day the [food that](#) we need for that day.

## Matthew 6:12

### debts...our debtors (ULT) sins against you...the people who have sinned against us (UST)

A **debt** is what one person owes another person. A **debtor** is a person who owes a debt to another person. This is a metaphor for those who have sinned against another person. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "sins...those who sin against us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- forgive
- forgave
- as

#### Translation Words - UST

- Forgive
- forgive
- in the same way

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> and forgive us our debts, as we also forgave our debtors;

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Forgive us of our sins against you in the same way that we forgive the people who have sinned against us.

## Matthew 6:13

**do not bring us into temptation (ULT)**  
**Do not bring us into situations where we will sin (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **temptation**, you can express it as a verb. Alternate translation: “do not let anything tempt us” or “do not let anything cause us to desire to sin” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**but deliver us from the evil one (ULT)**  
**but rescue us when Satan tries to harm us (UST)**

Here, **evil one** could also mean evil. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of evil, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: “protect us from doing evil things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Most important manuscripts do not include "For yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen." See the discussion of textual issues in the chapter introduction to decide whether to include this sentence in your translation. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- temptation
- deliver
- evil one

### Translation Words - UST

- situations where we will sin
- rescue
- when Satan tries to harm us

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> and do not bring us into temptation, but deliver us from the evil one.' <sup>[1]</sup>

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> Do not bring us into situations where we will sin, but rescue us when Satan tries to harm us.'

## Matthew 6:14

### men (ULT) the people (UST)

Although the term **men** is masculine, Jesus is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: “people” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### their trespasses (ULT) who sin against you (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **trespasses**, you can express it as a verb. Alternate translation: “when they trespass against you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Father (ULT) God...Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- you forgive
- will...forgive
- trespasses
- heavenly
- Father

### Translation Words - UST

- you forgive
- will forgive
- who sin against
- God...Father
- in heaven

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For if you forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> If you forgive the people who sin against you, God, your Father who is in heaven, will forgive your sins.

## Matthew 6:15

### your trespasses (ULT) your sins against him (UST)

See how you translated trespasses in the previous verse. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### the men (ULT) other people (UST)

Although the term **men** is masculine, Jesus is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: “those people” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- you do...forgive
- will...forgive
- Father
- trespasses

### Translation Words - UST

- you do...forgive...for their sins against you
- will...forgive
- Father
- sins against him

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But if **you do** not **forgive** the men, neither will your **Father forgive** your **trespasses**.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> But if **you do** not **forgive** other people **for their sins against you**, neither will your **Father forgive** your **sins against him**.

## Matthew 6:16

### they disfigure...their faces (ULT)

### They make...appear sad...their faces (UST)

The hypocrites would not wash **their faces**. They did this purposely to draw attention to themselves so that people would see them and give them honor for fasting. If someone was fasting, it would be obvious from their appearance. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "they...make it obvious to others that they are fasting" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### they have their reward in full (ULT)

### that is the only reward they will get (UST)

See how you translated **they have their reward in full** in 6:2 (See: [Irony](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- you fast
- as fasting
- like
- hypocrites
- faces
- Truly
- they have...in full
- reward

## Translation Words - UST

- you keep from eating food in order to please God
- they are not eating food
- as
- hypocrites
- faces
- This truth I want you to know
- that is...will get
- the only reward

## ULT

<sup>16</sup> Now when you fast, do not like the mournful hypocrites, for they disfigure their faces so that they may be seen as fasting by men. Truly I say to you, they have their reward in full.

## UST

<sup>16</sup> When you keep from eating food in order to please God, do not look sad as the hypocrites look. They make their faces appear sad in order that people will see that they are not eating food. This truth I want you to know, that is the only reward they will get!

## Matthew 6:17

**you...your...your (ULT)**

**each of you...anoint yourselves...your (UST)**

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of **you** and **your** are singular. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Singular](#))

**anoint your head and wash your face (ULT)**  
**anoint yourselves and wash your face as usual (UST)**

Here, to **anoint** the **head** and to **wash** the **face** is to take normal care of one's self. This gives the appearance that you are living life as normal. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: "make yourself appear as though you weren't fasting" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [when} fasting](#)
- [anoint](#)
- [head](#)
- [face](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [when you keep from eating food to please God](#)
- [anoint yourselves](#)
- [anoint yourselves](#)
- [face](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> But you, [{when} fasting](#), [anoint](#) your [head](#) and wash your [face](#),

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Instead, each of you, [when you keep from eating food to please God](#), [anoint yourselves](#) and wash your [face](#) as usual.

## Matthew 6:18

### to your Father (ULT) God, your Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### to...Father in...secret...Father...seeing (ULT) God...Father...no one can see...will observe... that...are not eating food (UST)

See how you translated this in [6:6](#). Alternate translation: “who sees what you do in private”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fasting](#)
- [to...Father](#)
- [Father](#)
- [will reward](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [are fasting](#)
- [God...Father](#)
- [He](#)
- [will reward...because of this](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> so that you would not appear [fasting](#) to men, but only to your [Father](#) in secret; and your [Father](#), seeing in secret, [will reward](#) you.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> Do this in order that other people will not notice that you [are fasting](#). But [God](#), your [Father](#), whom no one can see, [will observe](#) that you are not eating food. [He](#) sees you even though no one else sees you, and he [will reward](#) you [because of this](#).



## Matthew 6:19

### moth (ULT)

#### moths ruin clothing (UST)

A **moth** is a small, flying insect that destroys cloth by eating it. If it would not be known in your language, you can use a general term for moth. Alternate translation: "flying insects eat your belongings" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### rust (ULT)

#### rust destroys metals (UST)

Here, **rust** could also be referring to a bug which eats away at things like food. It is not clear in the original language. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you can use a general expression. Alternate translation: "bugs which eat way at food" or "things which eat away at your belongings"

### rust (ULT)

#### rust destroys metals (UST)

Here, **rust** is a term referring to something that deteriorates metal. If this would not be known in your language, you can use a general expression. Alternate translation: "something which destroys metal" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#)
- [thieves](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [earth. For the earth is](#)
- [thieves](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Do not store up for yourselves treasures on the [earth](#), where moth and rust destroy, and where [thieves](#) break in and steal.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Do not accumulate large quantities of money and material goods for yourselves on this [earth](#). [For the earth is](#) where everything perishes—where moths ruin clothing, rust destroys metals, and [thieves](#) break into people's houses and steal what belongs to them.

## Matthew 6:20

**store up...for yourselves treasures in heaven (ULT)**

**do deeds that will please God so that...you store up treasures in heaven. Nothing (UST)**

This is a metaphor that means do good things on earth so God will reward you in **heaven**. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation “do good things and obey God, so that he will reward you in heaven” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [thieves](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven. Nothing](#)
- [no thieves who break in and](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Instead, store up for yourselves treasures in [heaven](#), where neither moth nor rust destroys, and where [thieves](#) do not break in nor steal.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Instead, do deeds that will please God so that you store up treasures in [heaven](#). [Nothing](#) perishes in heaven. In heaven no moths can ruin clothing, there is no rust to destroy metal, and there are [no thieves who break in and steal things](#).

## Matthew 6:21

### For where your treasure is (ULT) Remember that whatever is most important to you (UST)

Here, **treasure** is figurative for the things people value the most in life. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "For what you value most in life" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### there will your heart be also (ULT) that is what you will desire the most (UST)

Here, **heart** means a person's thoughts and interests. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "there your desires will also be" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [you will desire the most](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> For where your treasure is, there will your [heart](#) be also.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> Remember that whatever is most important to you, that is what [you will desire the most](#).

## Matthew 6:22

### your..your (ULT)

**your..you will see things clearly. Similarly, if you are generous, then God will tell you all that he wants you to know (UST)**

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. Both instances of **your** are all singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Singular](#) )

### The lamp of the body is the eye (ULT)

**Your eyes are like a lamp for your body, {because they enable you to see things (UST)**

The eye is a lamp in a figurative sense. It is not a source of light, but a channel of light. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "Your eye lets light into your body" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Therefore, if your eye is healthy, your whole body is full of light (ULT)

Jesus is drawing an extended comparison between physical vision and spiritual receptivity. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the comparison. Alternate translation: "When your eye is healthy, it lets light into your whole body. In the same way, if you are willing to obey God, you will understand and live by his message for every part of your life" (See: [Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamp](#)
- [of the body](#)
- [body](#)
- [full of light](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a lamp](#)
- [for your body](#)
- [you will see things clearly. Similarly, if you are generous, then God will tell you all that he wants you to know](#)
- [you will see things clearly. Similarly, if you are generous, then God will tell you all that he wants you to know](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> The [lamp of the body](#) is the eye. Therefore, if your eye is healthy, your whole [body](#) is full of light.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> "Your eyes are like [a lamp for your body](#), {because they enable you to see things}. So if your eyes are healthy, [you will see things clearly. Similarly, if you are generous, then God will tell you all that he wants you to know.](#)

## Matthew 6:23

### But if your eye ... how great is that darkness

Jesus continues to draw an extended comparison between physical vision and spiritual receptivity. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the comparison. Alternate translation: “But when your eye is unhealthy, it does not let light into any of your body. In the same way, if you are not willing to obey God, you will not understand and live by his message for any part of your life” (See: [Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors](#) )

#### Translation Words - ULT

- evil
- body
- full of darkness
- darkness
- darkness (2)
- light

#### Translation Words - UST

- are bad
- you are not able to see things well...to...in
- you...love your treasure...this world, you will take part in much spiritual darkness
- you...love your treasure...this world, you will take part in much spiritual darkness (2)
- you are not able to see things well...to...in
- you...love your treasure...this world, you will take part in much spiritual darkness

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But if your eye is evil, your whole body is full of darkness. Therefore, if the light in you is darkness, how great {is} the darkness!

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> But if your eyes are bad, you are not able to see things well. Similarly, if you continue to love your treasure in this world, you will take part in much spiritual darkness.”

## Matthew 6:24

### No one (ULT)

### No one (UST)

Jesus is speaking of people in general, not of one particular person. If your readers would misunderstand this, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: "No person" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

**for either he will hate the one and will love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and will despise the other (ULT)**  
**that, he would hate one of them and love the other one, or he would be loyal to one of them and despise the other one. Similarly, you (UST)**

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that a person cannot love and be devoted both to God and money at the same time. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: "For he will obey one of them and disobey the other" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**You are not able to serve God and wealth (ULT)**  
**cannot worship God and money at the same time (UST)**

Here, **money** is spoken of figuratively as though it were a person who someone could serve. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "You are not able to serve God and completely desire riches" (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to serve](#)
- [to serve](#) (2)
- [masters](#)
- [will love](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to serve](#)
- [worship](#) (2)
- [masters at the same time. If he tried to do](#)
- [love](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> No one is able [to serve](#) two [masters](#), for either he will hate the one and [will love](#) the other, or else he will be devoted to one and will despise the other. You are not able [to serve](#) [God](#) and wealth.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> "No one is able [to serve](#) two different [masters at the same time](#). [If he tried to do](#) that, he would hate one of them and [love](#) the other one, or he would be loyal to one of them and despise the other one. Similarly, you cannot [worship](#) [God](#) and money at the same time."

## Matthew 6:25

Here the instances of **you** and **your** are all plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**Is not life more than food, and the body,  
{than} clothing (ULT)  
enough clothes to wear..Life is much more  
than just about these things (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to teach the people about what is important in life. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way.  
Alternate translation: "Life is much more than just food, and the body is much more than just what you wear!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [about...life](#)
- [life](#)
- [about...body](#)
- [body](#)
- [you might wear](#)
- [than} clothing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you should...worry about things that...need in order to live](#)
- [Life](#)
- [enough clothes to wear](#)
- [just about these things](#)
- [enough clothes to wear](#)
- [just about these things](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Because of this I say to you, do not worry [about](#) your [life](#), what you might eat or what you might drink, nor [about](#) your [body](#), what [you might wear](#). Is not [life](#) more than food, and the [body](#), [{than} clothing](#)?

### UST

<sup>25</sup> That is why I tell you that [you should](#) not [worry about things that you need in order to live](#). Do not worry about whether you will have enough food to eat and enough things to drink, or [enough clothes to wear](#). [Life](#) is much more than [just about these things](#).

## Matthew 6:26

### Father (ULT)

### God...Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Are} you not more valuable than them (ULT)

### You can be assured that God will supply what you need, for you are certainly worth a lot more than birds (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the people about the value of human beings compared to animals. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "You are much more valuable than the birds of the sky!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sky](#)
- [heavenly](#)
- [they do...sow](#)
- [reap](#)
- [Father](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [birds](#)
- [is in heaven](#)
- [They do...plant seeds](#)
- [they do...harvest crops from seeds](#)
- [God...Father](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Look at the birds [of the sky](#), that [they do not sow](#) nor [reap](#) nor gather into barns, but your [heavenly Father](#) feeds them. {Are} you not more valuable than them?

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Think about the [birds](#). [They do not plant seeds](#), and [they do not harvest crops from seeds](#) nor gather produce into barns. They always have food to eat because [God](#), your [Father who is in heaven](#), provides food for them. You can be assured that God will supply what you need, for you are certainly worth a lot more than birds!



**Matthew 6:27****you (ULT)****you (UST)**

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. Here, **you** is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**But who among you, being anxious, is able to add one cubit to his lifespan (ULT)**

**None of you can, just by worrying, add any amount of time to your life (UST)**

Here to **add one cubit to his lifespan** is a metaphor for adding time to how long a person will live. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "Who among you is able to add time to his life by being anxious" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**But who among you, being anxious, is able to add one cubit to his lifespan (ULT)**

**None of you can, just by worrying, add any amount of time to your life (UST)**

Jesus uses this question to emphasize that they cannot lengthen their lives. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "None of you can, just by worrying, add years to your life." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**one cubit (ULT)****any amount of time (UST)**

A **cubit** is a measure of a little less than half a meter. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> But who among you, being anxious, is able to add one cubit to his lifespan?

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> None of you can, just by worrying, add any amount of time to your life.

## Matthew 6:28

### why are you anxious about clothing (ULT) worry about whether you will have enough clothes to wear (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the people why they should not be anxious. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way.

Alternate translation: "you should not be worried about what you will wear." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### They do not labor, nor do they spin {cloth (ULT)

### not work to earn money, and they do not make their own clothes (UST)

Jesus speaks about the lilies as if they were people who were able to **toil** and **spin cloth**. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "They do not work and spin cloth like people do" (See: [Personification](#))

### lilies (ULT) flowers (UST)

A lily is a kind of wild flower. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clothing](#)
- [They do...labor](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clothes to wear](#)
- [work to earn money](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> And why are you anxious about [clothing](#)? Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow. [They do](#) not [labor](#), nor do they spin {cloth}.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> You should also not worry about whether you will have enough [clothes to wear](#). Think about the way flowers grow in the fields. They do not [work to earn money](#), and they do not make their own clothes.

## Matthew 6:29

**not even Solomon in all his glory clothed himself like one of these (ULT)  
even though King Solomon, who lived long ago, wore very beautiful clothes, his clothes were not as beautiful as one of those flowers (UST)**

The lilies being **clothed** is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture.

Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way.

Alternate translation: "not even Solomon with all of his riches looked as majestic as a lily of the field" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**clothed himself like one of these (ULT)  
clothes were...as beautiful as one of those flowers (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "did not wear clothes that are as beautiful as these lilies" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [glory](#)
- [clothed himself](#)
- [like](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [King Solomon](#)
- [who lived long ago, wore very beautiful clothes](#)
- [clothes were](#)
- [as beautiful as](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> But I say to you that not even [Solomon](#) in all his [glory clothed himself like](#) one of these.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> But I tell you that even though [King Solomon, who lived long ago, wore very beautiful clothes](#), his [clothes were](#) not [as beautiful as](#) one of those flowers.



## **Matthew 6:30**

**the grass of the field...thus clothes (ULT)  
the flowers are in the field...this shows that}  
God...will surely provide clothes (UST)**

The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**grass (ULT)  
the flowers are (UST)**

If your language has a word that includes **grass** and the word you used for “lilies” in the previous verse, you can use it here.

**being thrown into an oven (ULT)  
people throw them into an oven to burn them (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “someone throws it into a fire” or “someone burns it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**will he} not much more (ULT)  
will surely provide clothes (UST)**

The verb “clothe” is implied from the previous sentence. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**will he} not much more, you of little faith (ULT)  
will surely provide clothes...for you. So trust in God, you who have so little  
faith (UST)**

Jesus uses this question to teach the people that God will provide what they need. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “he will certainly clothe you even better, you of little faith.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [of little faith](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [this shows that} God](#)
- [So trust in God, you who have so little faith](#)

**ULT**

<sup>30</sup> But if [God](#) thus clothes the grass of the field, existing today and tomorrow being thrown into an oven, {will he} not much more, you [of little faith](#)?

**UST**

<sup>30</sup> And if one day the flowers are in the field, and the next day people throw them into an oven to burn them, {[this shows that](#)} [God](#) will surely provide clothes for you. [So trust in God, you who have so little faith!](#)

## Matthew 6:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Therefore, you should not be anxious, saying, 'What might we eat?' or, 'What might we drink?' or, 'What might we wear?'

### UST

<sup>31</sup> So do not worry and say, 'Will we have anything to eat?' or 'Will we have anything to drink?' or 'Will we have clothes to wear?'

## Matthew 6:32

### Father (ULT)

### God...Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Gentiles](#)
- [seek](#)
- [heavenly](#)
- [Father](#)
- [knows](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Those who do not know God](#)
- [are...worrying](#)
- [But...knows](#)
- [God...Father](#)
- [who is in heaven](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> For the [Gentiles seek](#) all these {things}; for your [heavenly Father knows](#) that you need all of these {things}.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> [Those who do not know God](#) are always [worrying](#) about what they will eat, drink, and what they will wear. [But God, your Father who is in heaven, knows](#) that you need all those things.



## Matthew 6:33

**seek...first {his} kingdom and his righteousness (ULT)**

**make it...the most important thing that you become one of God's people, and that you do what he commands you to do (UST)**

Here, **kingdom** refers to God's rule as king. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "Most importantly, be one of God's people, and do what he desires of you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**all these {things} will be added to you (ULT)**

**If you do that...he will give you...all the things that...you...need (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God will provide all these things for you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [seek](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [righteousness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [make it](#)
- [you become one of God's people](#)
- [that you do what he commands you to do](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> But [seek](#) first {his} [kingdom](#) and his [righteousness](#), and all these {things} will be added to you.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> Instead, [make it](#) the most important thing that [you become one of God's people](#), and [that you do what he commands you to do](#). If you do that, he will give you all the things that you need.

## Matthew 6:34

**tomorrow...tomorrow...will be anxious for itself (ULT)**

**For...when that day comes, you will have enough to be concerned about (UST)**

Jesus speaks of **tomorrow** as if it were a person who could worry. Jesus means that a person will have enough to worry about when the next day comes. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for the day](#)
- [is...evil](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to be concerned about](#)
- [to be concerned about](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Therefore, you should not be anxious for tomorrow, for tomorrow will be anxious for itself. Sufficient [for the day](#) {is} its [evil](#).

6:13 <sup>[1]</sup>

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> So do not be worried about what will happen to you tomorrow. For when that day comes, you will have enough [to be concerned about](#).”

## Matthew 7

### Matthew 7 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Matthew 5-7

Many people call the words in Matthew 5-7 the Sermon on the Mount. This is one long lesson that Jesus taught. Bibles divide this lesson into three chapters, but this can sometimes confuse the reader. If your translation divides the text into sections, be sure that the reader understands that the whole sermon is one large section.

#### “By their fruits you will know them”

Fruit is a common image in the scriptures. It is used to describe the results of either good or bad actions. In this chapter, good fruit is the result of living as God commands. (See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [unfruitful](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### You singular and you plural

In this chapter, as in the past two chapters, Jesus is talking to a large crowd of his followers. Throughout the chapter, Jesus switches between using you in the singular and you in the plural. In both instances he is talking to the same people. When he is using the singular, he is referring to all of the individuals in the crowd, but is still referring to the crowd as a whole. Your language may require you to use a plural here. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Singular](#) )

## Matthew 7:1

### Do not judge (ULT) Do not show how much other people have disobeyed God (UST)

It is implied here that **judge** has a strong negative meaning. Jesus is not saying that judgment is always bad, but that in this case it is negative. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "Do not condemn people harshly" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### you will not be judged (ULT) you would like God to show how much you have disobeyed him (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God will not condemn you harshly" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Do...judge
- you will...be judged

### Translation Words - UST

- Do not show how much other people have disobeyed God
- you would like God to show how much you have disobeyed him

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Do not judge, so that you will not be judged.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Do not show how much other people have disobeyed God, unless you would like God to show how much you have disobeyed him.



## **Matthew 7:2**

**with the...judgment you judge, you will be judged (ULT)**  
**if you call other people sinful...if you call other people sinful...God will show you how you are sinful (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God will condemn you in the same way you condemn others" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**For with the judgment (ULT)**  
**For if you call other people sinful (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **judgement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "In the manner that you judge" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**you judge...you measure (ULT)**  
**if you call other people sinful...to the same extent that you treat others (UST)**

Here, Jesus leaves out that **you judge** and **you measure** is being done to other people. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "you judge other people...you measure other people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**and with the measure you measure, it will be measured to you (ULT)**  
**Likewise, to the same extent that you treat others, God will treat you in this way (UST)**

To **measure** someone is to hold them up to a high standard. Here, Jesus is saying that they are holding others up by too high of a standard. If your readers would not understand what **measure** means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "with the standard of behavior that you expect of other people, God will expect of you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**with the measure (ULT)**  
**to the same extent that you treat others (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **measure**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "In the manner that you measure other" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**it will be measured to you (ULT)**  
**God will treat you in this way (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God will measure you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> For with the [judgment you judge, you will be judged](#), and with the measure you measure, it will be measured to you.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> For [if you call other people sinful, God will show you how you are sinful](#). Likewise, to the same extent that you treat others, God will treat you in this way.

## Translation Words - ULT

- judgment
- you judge
- you will be judged

## Translation Words - UST

- if you call other people sinful
- if you call other people sinful
- God will show you how you are sinful





## **Matthew 7:3**

## Why do you look at the speck ... but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye?

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the people for paying attention to other people's sins and ignoring their own. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "You look at the speck in your brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### do you look at...your...your eye...you do not notice (ULT) noticing...of that person...your own eye...not noticing (UST)

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All instances of **you** and **your** are all singular. See the note in the introduction. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Singular](#) )

### the speck that is in the eye of your brother

A **speck of wood** is a small piece of wood that might fall into someone's eye. This is a metaphor that refers to the less offensive sins of a fellow believer. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "the lesser sin that is in your fellow believer's eye" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### of your brother (ULT) of that person (UST)

Here, and in the next two verses, **brother** refers to other people who were also followers of Jesus. These people are not their biological siblings. If your reader would not understand this, you can use plain language. Alternate translation: "your fellow follower of Jesus" (See: [Kinship](#))

### the...log in your eye (ULT)

A **log** is a large piece of wood, usually the remnant of the trunk of a tree. This is a metaphor that refers to the most offensive sins of a fellow believer. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "the most offensive sin that is in your own eye" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the...you do not notice...log in your eye (ULT)

A **log** cannot fit into a person's eye. Jesus is exaggerating to emphasize that a person should pay attention to their own more offensive sins before he deals with another person's less offensive sins. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that shows this exaggeration. Alternate translation: "you do not see your own very offensive sins" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Now why do you look at the speck of wood in the eye of your **brother**, but you do not notice the log in your eye?

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> {None of you should be concerned about the small faults of another person. You should be concerned about your own serious faults.} Otherwise, that would be like noticing a speck in the eye **of that person** while not noticing a huge wooden plank in your own eye.

## Translation Words - ULT

- of...brother

## Translation Words - UST

- of that person

## Matthew 7:4

**Or how will you say to your brother, 'Let me take out the speck of wood from your eye,' while behold, the log {is} in your eye (ULT)  
You should not say to other people about their minor faults, 'Let me remove the speck from your eye!' while you still have a wooden plank in your own eye (UST)**

Jesus asks this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an

exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "You should not say to your brother, 'Let me take out the speck from your eye,' while there is log in your own eye." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Or how will you say to your [brother](#), 'Let me take out the speck of wood from your eye,' while behold, the log {is} in your eye?

### UST

<sup>4</sup> You should not say to other [people](#) about their minor faults, 'Let me remove the speck from your eye!' while you still have a wooden plank in your own eye.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to...brother](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#)

## Matthew 7:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- You hypocrite
- of...brother

### Translation Words - UST

- If you do that, you are a hypocrite
- others

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You hypocrite! First take out the log from your eye, and then you will see clearly to take out the speck of wood from the eye of your brother.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> If you do that, you are a hypocrite! You should first {stop committing your own sins. That will be like} removing a large plank from your own eye. Then, as a result, you will have the spiritual insight you need to help others get rid of the {smaller faults that are like} little specks in their eyes.

## Matthew 7:6

### You should neither give the holy to the dogs, nor should you throw your pearls in front of the pigs (ULT)

Here, to **give what is holy** and to **throw your pearls** means to share about God with people. The message about God is seen as very valuable and holy. Also, **dogs** and **pigs** are figurative for people who would reject this message. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "Do not share the holy message about God with people who would hurt you, nor should you try to share the valuable message about God with people who do not care to listen to it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### pearls (ULT)

#### pearls (UST)

A pearl is a valuable white stone produced by a creature that lives in the ocean. It is similar to a small, round stone or bead. They are also very easy to break or damage. If this would not be understood in your language, you can use plain language. Alternate translation: "small valuable stones" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#)
- [pigs](#)
- [they will trample](#)
- [having turned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [valuable things](#)
- [a herd of pigs](#)
- [who will trample](#)
- [For these people will reject what you say to them and will instead attack](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> You should neither give the [holy](#) to the dogs, nor should you throw your pearls in front of the [pigs](#). Otherwise [they will trample](#) them under their feet, and [having turned](#), tear you to pieces.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> "Do not share about God with people who have completely refused to hear it. For this is like giving [valuable things](#) to dogs, or like throwing pearls in front of [a herd of pigs, who will trample](#) them. [For these people will reject what you say to them and will instead attack](#) you.

## Matthew 7:7

**Ask, and it will be given to you. Seek, and you will find. Knock, and it will be opened to you (ULT)**

**Ask God for what you need, and he will certainly give it to you (UST)**

Here, **Ask**, **seek**, and **knock** have a similar meaning of praying to God. If saying the same thing three times might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: "Pray to God for what you need, and he will give it to you" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**it will be given to you (ULT)**  
**he will certainly give it to (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God will give it to you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Knock (ULT)**  
**he will certainly give it to (UST)**

To **knock** on a door is a polite way to request that the person inside the house or room open the door. If knocking on a door is impolite or not done in your culture, use the word that describes how people politely ask for people to let you into their house. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "knock on the door" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Seek](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he will certainly give it to](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Ask, and it will be given to you. [Seek](#), and you will find. Knock, and it will be opened to you.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> "Ask God for what you need, and [he will certainly give it to you](#)."



## Matthew 7:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- receives
- seeking

### Translation Words - UST

- asks God for something they need
- he will give it to them

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For everyone asking, **receives**; and the one **seeking**, finds; and to the one knocking, it will be opened.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> For if anyone **asks God for something they need**, **he will give it to them**.

## Matthew 7:9

**Or what man is there from among you, of whom his son will ask for bread—he will not give him a stone, will he (ULT)**

Jesus uses a question to teach the people how God gives gifts. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “There is not one person among you, of whom his son will ask for bread, and he will give him a stone.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**bread (ULT)**

**bread (UST)**

Here, **bread** refers to food in general. Alternate translation: “for some food” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [bread](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Or what man is there from among you, of whom his [son](#) will ask for [bread](#) —he will not give him a stone, will he?

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> If your [son](#) asked you for [bread](#), you certainly would not give him a stone!

## Matthew 7:10

**Or he will also ask for a fish—he will not give him a snake, will he (ULT)**

**Similarly, if your son asked you for a fish, certainly you would not give him a snake (UST)**

It is understood that Jesus is still referring to a man and his son. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “Or will a man’s son ask for a fish, and the man will give him a snake” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Or he will also ask for a fish—he will not give him [a snake](#), will he?

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Similarly, if your son asked you for a fish, certainly you would not give him [a snake](#).

**Or he will also ask for a fish—he will not give him a snake, will he (ULT)**

**Similarly, if your son asked you for a fish, certainly you would not give him a snake (UST)**

Jesus asks another question to teach the people about how God gives gifts. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “And there is not one person among you, if his son asks for a fish, will give him a snake.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a snake](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a snake](#)

## Matthew 7:11

### how much more will your Father who is in the heavens give good things to those who ask him?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people about how God gives gifts. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “then your Father in heaven will most certainly give good things to those who ask him.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Father (ULT) God...Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

See how you translated this in [5:16](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil](#)
- [know how](#)
- [good](#)
- [good {things} \(2\)](#)
- [gifts](#)
- [to...children](#)
- [Father](#)
- [heavens](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [know how](#)
- [good](#)
- [good things to \(2\)](#)
- [things](#)
- [children, even though](#)
- [evil](#)
- [God...Father](#)
- [heaven, will even](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Therefore, if you, being [evil](#), [know how](#) to give [good gifts](#) to your [children](#), how much more will your [Father](#) in the [heavens](#) give [good {things}](#) to the ones asking him?

### UST

<sup>11</sup> You [know how](#) to give [good things](#) to your [children](#), [even though](#) you are [evil](#). So [God](#), your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#), [will even](#) more certainly give [good things to](#) those who ask him.

## Matthew 7:12

### for this is the law and the prophets (ULT) For this is what Moses taught in God's law and what the prophets wrote long ago (UST)

Here, **the law and the prophets** refer to what Moses and the prophets wrote. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "for this is what Moses and the prophets wrote in the scriptures" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### for this is the law and the prophets (ULT) For this is what Moses taught in God's law and what the prophets wrote long ago (UST)

Here, **for this is the law and the prophets** means that the law and the prophets teach this same message. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "for the law and prophets teach this message" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [law](#)
- [prophets](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses taught in God's law](#)
- [what the prophets wrote long ago](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Therefore, all {things} in as much as you desire that men do to you, in this manner also, you do to them, for this is the [law](#) and the [prophets](#).

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> So in whatever way you want others to act toward you, that is the way you should act toward them. For this is what [Moses taught in God's law](#) and [what the prophets wrote long ago](#).

## Matthew 7:13

**Enter through the narrow gate. For wide {is} the gate and broad {is} the road that is leading to destruction, and there are many entering through it (ULT)**

In this verse, **road** is figurative for the span of a person's life. The word **gate** is figurative for the time when a person dies and enters into eternity. If your readers would not understand what they means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation, as in the in UST. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to destruction (ULT)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **destruction**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "to God's judgement" or "to God destroying you" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#)
- [is...gate](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Enter through the narrow [gate](#). For wide {is} the [gate](#) and broad {is} the road that is leading to destruction, and there are many entering through it.

### UST

<sup>13-14</sup> "You ought to live with God in Heaven! This is like walking through a narrow gate which not many people go through. For there is another path of life, one that most people take, which is like a wide road. They walk on that wide road until they reach a wide gate, but when they go through it, God will punish them forever. So I am telling you to take the narrow road and enter the narrow gate to live forever with God in heaven. Not many people find this path"

## Matthew 7:14

### to life (ULT)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **life**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "to the place where people live forever" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### there are few finding it (ULT)

Here, to **find it** means to enter into eternal life with God and not be destroyed by him. In the same way you might find a hidden path, so Jesus is saying that eternal life can be found. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "there are few that God brings into eternal life with himself" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#)
- [life](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)

### ULT

**14** For the [gate](#) {is} narrow and the way has been made narrow that is leading to [life](#), and there are few finding it.

### UST

**13-14** "You ought to live with God in Heaven! This is like walking through a narrow gate which not many people go through. For there is another path of life, one that most people take, which is like a wide road. They walk on that wide road until they reach a wide gate, but when they go through it, God will punish them forever. So I am telling you to take the narrow road and enter the narrow gate to live forever with God in heaven. Not many people find this path"

## Matthew 7:15

**who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous wolves (ULT)  
They pretend that they are one of God's people, but they are really enemies of God's people (UST)**

Here, a **sheep** is figurative for someone who is a part of the people of God. Just as in real life, predators try to attack sheep, so people who try to hurt God's people are called **wolves**. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "who come to God's people to harm them, as a wolf comes to harm sheep" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [false prophets](#)
- [sheep's](#)
- [clothing](#)
- [wolves](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people who come to you and say falsely that they are telling you what God has said](#)
- [pretend that they are one of God's people](#)
- [pretend that they are one of God's people](#)
- [but they are really enemies of God's people](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Beware of the [false prophets](#), who come to you in [sheep's clothing](#), but inwardly they are ravenous [wolves](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Watch out for [people who come to you and say falsely that they are telling you what God has said](#). They [pretend that they are one of God's people, but they are really enemies of God's people](#).



## Matthew 7:16

### By their fruits you will know them (ULT)

Here, **their fruits** is referring to a person's actions before God. Just as a good tree produces good fruit and a bad tree produces bad fruit, so a person who loves God will obey him and a person who does not love God will not obey him. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "Just as you know a tree by the fruit that grows on it, you will know false prophets by the fact that they do not speak the words of God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### They do not gather grapes from a thornbush or figs from thistles, do they (ULT)

Jesus uses a question to teach the people about false prophets. The people would have known that the answer is no. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "People do not gather grapes from a thornbush or figs from thistles." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fruits](#)
- [you will know](#)
- [grapes](#)
- [a thornbush](#)
- [figs](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Just as thorn bushes](#)
- [grapes](#)
- [figs](#)
- [you will recognize](#)
- [that they are not one of God's people by the way they behave](#)

#### ULT

**16** By their [fruits you will know](#) them. They do not gather [grapes](#) from a [thornbush](#) or [figs](#) from thistles, do they?

#### UST

**16** [Just as thorn bushes](#) cannot produce [grapes](#) and thistles cannot produce [figs](#), so [you will recognize that they are not one of God's people by the way they behave](#).

## Matthew 7:17

**In the same way, every good tree produces good fruit, but the bad tree produces bad fruit (ULT)**

**Likewise, all good fruit trees produce good fruit for eating, but all rotten trees produce fruit which you cannot eat (UST)**

Jesus continues to use the metaphor of **fruit** to refer to bad prophets who produce evil works. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture.

Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation "Just as when a good tree bears good fruit and a bad tree bears bad fruit, so those who preach God's words do good and those who do not preach God's words do evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> In the same way, every **good** tree produces **good fruit**, but the **bad** tree produces bad **fruit**.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Likewise, all **good** fruit trees produce **good fruit for eating**, but all **rotten** trees produce **fruit** which you cannot eat.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [good](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [fruit](#) (2)
- [bad](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [good](#)
- [good...for eating](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [fruit](#) (2)
- [rotten](#)

## Matthew 7:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- good
- good
- fruit
- fruit (2)
- bad

### Translation Words - UST

- good
- good fruit
- fruit
- fruit (2)
- unhealthy

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> A **good** tree is not able to produce bad **fruit**, nor a **bad** tree to produce **good fruit**.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> No **good fruit** tree is able to produce inedible **fruit**, and no **unhealthy** tree is able to produce **good fruit**.

## Matthew 7:19

**Every tree not producing good fruit is cut down and thrown into a fire (ULT)**

**Just as every useless tree which produces bad fruit should be chopped down and thrown in a fire to be burned, so God will destroy those who pretend to be his people but are not (UST)**

Here, Jesus continues talking figuratively about **trees**. He is saying that those who do not preach God's words will be judged by him. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation "And just as every bad tree which does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire, so everyone who disobeys God will be judged by him forever" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Every tree not producing [good fruit is cut down](#) and thrown into [a fire](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Just as every useless tree which produces [bad fruit should be chopped down](#) and thrown [in a fire to be burned](#), so God will destroy those who pretend to be his people but are not.

**is cut down and thrown into a fire (ULT)**

**should be chopped down and thrown in a fire to be burned, so God will destroy those who pretend to be his people but are not (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people cut down and throw them into a fire" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [is cut down](#)
- [a fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bad](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [should be chopped down](#)
- [in a fire to be burned](#)

## Matthew 7:20

**you will recognize them from their fruits (ULT)  
And just as you can tell if a tree is healthy by  
the quality of it's fruit...so you can tell if  
someone is one of God's people by the way  
they behave (UST)**

See how you translated this in [7:16](#) (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you will recognize](#)
- [fruits](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [so you can tell if someone is one of God's people by the way they behave](#)
- [so you can tell if someone is one of God's people by the way they behave](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So then, [you will recognize](#) them from their [fruits](#).

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> And just as you can tell if a tree is healthy by the quality of it's fruit, [so you can tell if someone is one of God's people by the way they behave](#).

## Matthew 7:21

### Lord, Lord (ULT)

### Lord, pretending that they are my people (UST)

Here, **Lord, Lord** is an exclamation that shows that these people think that Jesus is their master. This is what a servant would say to their master. Use an exclamation that is natural in your language for communicating this. Alternate translation: "My Lord!" (See: [Exclamations](#))

### of my Father (ULT)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

See how you translated **who is in the heavens** in [5:16](#) (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Lord (2)
- kingdom of the heavens
- of...heavens
- heavens
- will of...Father
- of...Father

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord, pretending that they are my people
- Lord, pretending that they are my people (2)
- they are not my people
- they are not my people
- in heaven
- Father
- will of God

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Not everyone saying to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter into the kingdom of the heavens, but the one doing the will of my Father in the heavens.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Even though many people habitually call me Lord, pretending that they are my people, they are not my people, because they do not do what my Father in heaven desires them to do.



## **Matthew 7:22**



**in that day (ULT)****On the day that God will judge everyone (UST)**

Jesus said **that day** knowing his hearers would understand he was referring to the day of judgment. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “on the day when God will judge all people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**did we not prophesy in your name, and in your name cast out demons, and in your name do many mighty deeds (ULT)**  
**we spoke God’s message by your power! By your power we drove out demons from people! And by your power, we performed many mighty deeds (UST)**

The people use a question to emphasize that they did many good things for Jesus. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “we prophesied in your name, and in your name cast out demons, and in your name did many mighty deeds.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**in your name**

Here, to do something **in your name** means to do it by his power and authority. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “by your authority” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [day](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord \(2\)](#)
- [mighty deeds](#)
- [did we...prophesy](#)
- [in...name](#)
- [in...name \(2\)](#)
- [in...name \(3\)](#)
- [cast out](#)
- [demons](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [On the day that God will judge everyone](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord \(2\)](#)
- [mighty deeds](#)
- [we spoke God’s message](#)
- [by your power](#)

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> Many will say to me in that [day](#), ‘[Lord](#), [Lord](#), [did we not prophesy](#) in your [name](#), and in your [name cast out demons](#), and in your [name](#) do many [mighty deeds](#)?’

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> [On the day that God will judge everyone](#), many people will say to me, ‘[Lord](#), [we spoke God’s message by your power](#)! [By your power we drove out demons from people](#)! And [by your power](#), we performed many [mighty deeds](#)!’

- By your power (2)
- by your power (3)
- we drove out...from people
- demons

## Matthew 7:23

### I never knew you (ULT) I never said that you were one of my people (UST)

**I never knew you** means that the person was never one of God's people. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "You have never been my follower" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- I will publicly declare
- I...knew
- practicing
- lawlessness

#### Translation Words - UST

- I will publicly say
- I...said that...were one of my people
- you...do
- is evil

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> And then I will publicly declare to them, 'I never knew you! Go away from me, the ones practicing lawlessness!'

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Then I will publicly say to them, 'I never said that you were one of my people. Go away from me, you who do what is evil!'

## Matthew 7:24

**will be compared to a wise man who built his house upon the rock (ULT)**

**will be like a wise man who built his house on solid ground (UST)**

Jesus compares those who obey what he says to a person who builds his **house** on a rock where nothing can harm it. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "he will be like man who builds a a house on solid ground" (See: [Simile](#))

**will be compared to a wise man (ULT)**

**will be like a wise man (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "is like a wise man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**rock (ULT)**

**solid ground (UST)**

Here, **rock** means the bedrock below the topsoil and clay, not a large stone or boulder above the ground. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "solid ground" or "sturdy ground" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- will be compared to
- wise
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- will be like
- wise
- house

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Therefore, everyone who hears these words of mine and does them **will be compared to** a **wise** man who built his **house** upon the rock.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> So then, anyone who hears what I say and obeys me **will be like** a **wise** man who built his **house** on solid ground.

## Matthew 7:25

### it had been founded (ULT)

### it had been built (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the man had built it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [it had been founded](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)
- [it had been built](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> And the rain came down, and the floods came, and the winds blew and struck against that [house](#), but it did not fall down, for [it had been founded](#) on the rock.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Even though it rained and floods came, and the winds blew and beat against that [house](#), it did not fall down because [it had been built](#) on solid ground.

## Matthew 7:26

**will be compared to a foolish man who built his house upon the sand (ULT)**

**will be like a foolish man who built his house on sand (UST)**

Jesus uses a simile to compare those who do not obey his words with **foolish** house-builders who pick a bad place to build a house. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning in a nonfigurative way.

Alternate translation: "will be like a fool who built his house in a dangerous place where it could be knocked down" (See: [Simile](#))

**will be compared to a foolish man (ULT)**

**will be like a foolish man (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "is like a foolish man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will be compared to](#)
- [foolish](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [will be like](#)
- [foolish](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But everyone hearing these words of mine and not doing them [will be compared to](#) a [foolish](#) man who built his [house](#) upon the sand.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> On the other hand, anyone who hears what I say but does not obey me [will be like](#) a [foolish](#) man who built his [house](#) on sand.

## Matthew 7:27

### its destruction was great (ULT)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **destruction**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "the waters and the wind greatly destroyed it" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that house](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> And the rain came down, and the floods came, and the winds blew and struck against that [house](#), and it fell, and its destruction was great."

### UST

<sup>27</sup> When the rain fell, and floods came, and the winds blew and beat against [that house](#), it crashed down and broke completely apart because it was built on sand."

## Matthew 7:28

### General Information:

This verse describe how the people in the crowds reacted to Jesus' teaching. This marks the end of the Sermon on the Mount. Use the natural form in your language for expressing the conclusion of a story. (See: [End of Story](#))

### by his teaching (ULT) by what he taught them (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **teaching**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "by the way that he taught them" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [were astonished](#)
- [teaching](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [were amazed](#)
- [what...taught them](#)

### ULT

**28** And it happened that when [Jesus](#) finished speaking these words, the crowds [were astonished](#) by his [teaching](#),

### UST

**28** When [Jesus](#) finished teaching, the crowds who had heard him [were amazed](#) by [what he taught them](#).



## Matthew 7:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- teaching
- as
- as (2)
- authority
- scribes

### Translation Words - UST

- He taught
- like
- like (2)
- a teacher who
- those who taught the Jewish laws, who repeated the different things that other men had taught

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> for he was teaching them as having authority, and not as their scribes.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> He taught like a teacher who relies on what he himself knows. He did not teach like those who taught the Jewish laws, who repeated the different things that other men had taught.

## **Matthew 8**

### **Matthew 8 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter begins a new section.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Miracles**

Jesus performed miracles to show that he could control things that no other people could control. He also showed that it is proper to worship him because he performed miracles. (See: [authority](#))

## Matthew 8:1

### Now (ULT)

### When (UST)

This introduces a new event that happened some time after the events the story has just related. The story does not say how long after those events this new event happened. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: "Some time later" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now {when} he had come down from the hill, large crowds followed him.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> When Jesus went down from the hillside, large crowds followed him.

## Matthew 8:2

### behold, a leper, having approached (ULT) Then, a man who had a skin disease came and (UST)

This introduces the **leper** as a new character in the story. A leper is a person with a skin disease. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new character. Since he is a new participant, if it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a common way in your language for introducing a new person to a story. Alternate translation: "There was a man who was a leper approaching him" (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### if you are willing, you are able to make me clean (ULT) you are able to heal me if you are willing to (UST)

The leper is using a hypothetical situation to show that he believes Jesus will heal him. Use the natural form in your language for expressing a hypothetical situation. Alternate translation: "If you would desire to heal me, you are able to do it" (See: [Connect — Hypothetical Conditions](#))

### you are able to make me clean (ULT) you are able to heal me (UST)

Here, to be **clean** means to be healed from the skin disease, which did not allow them to be in the community with the rest of the people. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "you are able to heal me and allow me to be a part of the community again" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a leper
- bowed before
- Lord
- to make...clean

### Translation Words - UST

- a man who had a skin disease
- knelt before
- Lord, please heal me. For I know
- to heal

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And behold, a leper, having approached, bowed before him, saying, "Lord, if you are willing, you are able to make me clean."

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Then, a man who had a skin disease came and knelt before him. He said to Jesus, "Lord, please heal me. For I know you are able to heal me if you are willing to."

## Matthew 8:3

### he was cleansed of his leprosy (ULT) Jesus healed the man from his skin disease (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Jesus cleansed him of his leprosy" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- Be clean
- he was cleansed
- of...leprosy

#### Translation Words - UST

- his hand and
- to heal you...I heal you now
- Jesus healed
- from...skin disease

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And having reached out {his} hand, he touched him, saying, "I am willing. Be clean." And immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Then Jesus stretched out his hand and touched the man. He said to him, "I am willing to heal you, and I heal you now!" Immediately Jesus healed the man from his skin disease.

## Matthew 8:4

### show yourself to the priest (ULT) and show to the priest that you are healed (UST)

Jewish law required that the person **show** his healed skin **to the priest**, who would then allow him or her to return to the community, to be with other people. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “show the priest that you are healed from the disease, so that you can rejoice your community” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### offer the gift {that} Moses commanded, for a testimony to them (ULT) give the offering that Moses commanded so people will see that you are no longer sick (UST)

The law of **Moses** required that someone healed of leprosy give a thanksgiving offering to the priest. When the priest accepted the gift, people would know that the man had been healed. Lepers were not allowed to come into contact with anyone so that no one else would be infected. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “offer the gift that Moses commanded in the Law, for a testimony to the priest that you are healed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### to them (ULT) so people will see that you are no longer sick (UST)

Here, **to them** either refers to (1) the priests, or (2) the community in general. If this might confuse your readers, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “to the priests” or “to the community” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to the priest](#)
- [gift](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [a testimony](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [the offering](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [so people will see that you are no longer sick](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And [Jesus](#) says to him, “See that you tell no one, but go, show yourself [to the priest](#) and offer the [gift](#) {that} [Moses commanded](#), for [a testimony](#) to them.”

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Then [Jesus](#) said to him, “Make sure that you do not report about me healing you to anyone. Instead, go to the temple in Jerusalem and show to [the priest](#) that you are healed. Then give [the offering](#) that [Moses commanded](#) so people will see that you are no longer sick.”

## Matthew 8:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Capernaum
- a centurion
- begging

### Translation Words - UST

- the city of Capernaum
- a Roman officer who commanded one hundred soldiers
- He begged...to help him

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Now {when} he had entered into Capernaum, a centurion came to him, begging him

### UST

<sup>5</sup> When Jesus went to the city of Capernaum, a Roman officer who commanded one hundred soldiers came to him. He begged Jesus to help him.

## Matthew 8:6

### paralyzed (ULT) and is paralyzed (UST)

A paralytic is someone who is not able to completely use their body. Sometimes they just can't use their legs, but sometimes they can't use anything. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you can state this explicitly. "not able to use his arms and legs" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- servant
- house
- being tormented

#### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- servant
- bed at home
- and he is suffering

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> and saying, "Lord, my servant has been lying in the house paralyzed, being tormented terribly."

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> He said to him, "Lord, my servant is lying in bed at home and is paralyzed, and he is suffering much."



## Matthew 8:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- will heal

### Translation Words - UST

- to your house and heal

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And he says to him, "I, {when} I have come, will heal him."

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Jesus said to him, "I will go to your house and heal him."

## Matthew 8:8

### under my roof (ULT) my house (UST)

Here, **under my roof** is figurative for being in a person's house. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "in my house" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### speak a word (ULT) is speak (UST)

Here, **speak** is a polite way of saying that all Jesus has to do is speak a word, and he will heal the servant. Use a form in your language that communicates this. Alternate translation: "Only say a word" (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#) )

### my servant will be healed (ULT) you will heal my servant (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "you will make my servant well" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [centurion](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [worthy](#)
- [servant](#)
- [will be healed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the officer](#)
- [My Lord](#)
- [worthy](#)
- [you will heal](#)
- [servant](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And answering, the [centurion](#) said, "[Lord](#), I am not [worthy](#) that you might enter under my roof, but only speak a word and my [servant will be healed](#)."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> But [the officer](#) said to him, "[My Lord](#), I am not [worthy](#) for you to come into my house. All you must do is speak, and [you will heal](#) my [servant](#)."

## Matthew 8:9

**I...am a man placed under authority, having soldiers under me (ULT)**

**I myself am a man who must obey the orders of my superiors. I also have soldiers who must obey my orders (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "I am a man who is under the authority of someone else, and I myself authority over a group of soldiers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**under authority...under me (ULT)**  
**who must obey the orders of my superiors...**  
**who must obey my orders (UST)**

To be **under** someone means to be less important and to obey the commands of someone of a higher status. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "who obeys other people's commands...who obey me (See: [Idiom](#))

**and to another one...and to my servant (ULT)**

The centurion is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "and to another I say...and to my servant I say" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [placed](#)
- [authority](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [to...servant](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who must obey the orders of my superiors](#)
- [who must obey the orders of my superiors](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [When I say to...slave](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> For I also am a man [placed](#) under [authority](#), having [soldiers](#) under me. And I say to this one, 'Go,' and he goes, and to another one, 'Come,' and he comes, and to my [servant](#), 'Do this,' and he does {it}."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> {I know that you can do this} because I myself am a man [who must obey the orders of my superiors](#). I also have [soldiers](#) who must obey my orders. When I say to one of them, 'Go!' he goes. When I say to another one, 'Come!' he comes. [When I say to my slave](#), 'Do this!' he does it."

## Matthew 8:10

**I have found such great faith from no one in Israel (ULT)  
never before found anyone who trusts in me as much this non-Jewish man. Not...in Israel, where I would expect people to believe in me, have I found anyone who trusts so much in me (UST)**

Jesus' hearers would have thought that the Jews in **Israel**, who claim to be children of God, would have greater **faith** than anyone. Jesus is saying that the centurion's faith was greater. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "I have found such faith from no one in Israel, who should have more faith (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**in Israel (ULT)**

**in Israel, where I would expect people to believe in me (UST)**

Here, the name **Israel** is not referring to the country, but to the people who live in Israel. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "among the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [was amazed](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [faith](#)
- [Israel](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [this, he marveled](#)
- [Listen to this: I have](#)
- [trusts in me](#)
- [Israel, where I would expect people to believe in me](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But having heard {this}, [Jesus was amazed](#) and said to the ones following him, "[Truly](#) I say to you, I have found such great [faith](#) from no one in [Israel](#)."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> When [Jesus](#) heard [this](#), [he marveled](#). He said to the crowd that was walking with him, "[Listen to this: I have](#) never before found anyone who [trusts in me](#) as much this non-Jewish man. Not even in [Israel, where I would expect people to believe in me](#), have I found anyone who trusts so much in me!"

## Matthew 8:11

**you (ULT)**

**you (UST)**

Here, **you** is plural and refers to “those who were following him” in 8:10. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**from east and west (ULT)**

**from distant countries, including those far to the east and far to the west (UST)**

Using the opposites **east** and **west** is a way of saying “everywhere.” Alternate translation: “from many far away places” (See: [Merism](#))

**they will recline to eat (ULT)**

**and have eternal life with God (UST)**

Jesus speaks of the joy that people will share in God’s kingdom as if they were all having a feast. Use a term in your language referring to a celebratory meal. Alternate translation: “will feast together in the kingdom of God” or “will rejoice together in the kingdom of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)**

**and the rest of God's people (UST)**

See how you translated **kingdom of the heavens** in 3:2 (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [along with Abraham](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [and the rest of God's people](#)
- [and the rest of God's people](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But I tell you that many will come from east and west, and they will recline to eat with [Abraham](#) and [Isaac](#) and [Jacob](#), in the [kingdom of the heavens](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> I tell you that many other non-Jewish people will believe in me also. They will come from distant countries, including those far to the east and far to the west, and have eternal life with God, [along with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob and the rest of God's people](#).



## **Matthew 8:12**

**the...sons of the kingdom will be thrown out (ULT)**

**as for the Jewish people, whom God intended to be his people...as for the Jewish people, whom God intended to be his people...he will throw many of them (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "God will throw out the sons of the kingdom" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**But the sons of the kingdom (ULT)**  
**But as for the Jewish people, whom God intended to be his people (UST)**

The phrase **sons of** is figurative, referring to the Jews of the kingdom of Judea. This is saying that they are of Jewish descent. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "but those who do not believe in me from the Jewish people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**But the sons of the kingdom will be thrown out (ULT)**  
**But as for the Jewish people, whom God intended to be his people—he will throw many of them (UST)**

In their culture, **the sons of the kingdom** would usually inherit the kingdom, and not be thrown out. Jesus is saying it in this way to show how disobedient the Jewish people were being. If this would be misunderstood in your language, consider expressing the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "and we certainly can not go and buy food for all these people" (See: [Irony](#))

**into the outer darkness (ULT)**  
**into hell, where there is no spiritual good (UST)**

Here, **outer darkness** is a metonym for the place where God sends those who reject them. This is a place where God punishes people forever. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language, as in the UST. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**weeping and grinding of the teeth (ULT)**  
**they will weep because of their suffering...and they will grind their teeth because they will be in severe pain (UST)**

Here, **grinding of the teeth** is a symbolic act, representing extreme pain and suffering. If there is a gesture with similar meaning in your culture, you could consider using it here in your translation. Alternate translation: "weeping and extreme suffering" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But the **sons of the kingdom will be thrown out** into the outer **darkness**, where there will be weeping and grinding of the teeth."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> But **as for the Jewish people, whom God intended to be his people—he will throw many of them** into **hell, where there is no spiritual good**. There they will weep because of their suffering, and they will grind their teeth because they will be in severe pain."



## Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- of the kingdom
- will be thrown out
- darkness

## Translation Words - UST

- as for the Jewish people, whom God intended to be his people
- as for the Jewish people, whom God intended to be his people
- he will throw many of them
- hell, where there is no spiritual good

## Matthew 8:13

### let it be done for you (ULT) you...will happen (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so I will do it for you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the servant was healed (ULT) servant had become well (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed the servant" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- to the centurion
- As
- you believed
- servant
- was healed
- hour

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- officer
- What
- believed I am able to do
- servant
- had become well
- exact time

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And Jesus said to the centurion, "Go! As you believed, let it be done for you." And the servant was healed at that hour.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Then Jesus said to the officer, "Go home. What you believed I am able to do will happen." Then the officer went home and found out that his servant had become well at the exact time that Jesus told him that he would heal him.

## Matthew 8:14

### being sick with a fever (ULT) she was feeling sick due to having a fever (UST)

A **fever** is a symptom of an illness in which the temperature of the body temporarily increases. This results in the need to lie down in bed and rest as Peter's mother-in-law was doing. If your reader would not be familiar with this, you could use a general expression. Alternate Translation: "being feverish from illness" or "being ill with an elevated temperature" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Peter](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [home](#)
- [of Peter](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And {when} [Jesus](#) had come into the [house of Peter](#), he saw his mother-in-law having been laid down and being sick with a fever.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> When [Jesus](#) and some of his disciples went to the [home of Peter](#), Jesus saw Peter's mother-in-law. She was lying on a bed because she was feeling sick due to having a fever.

## Matthew 8:15

### the fever left her (ULT) she no longer had a fever (UST)

The **fever** is spoken of as if it, like a person, **left**. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed her of her fever" (See: [Personification](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [she got up](#)
- [began to serve](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [she got up](#)
- [served](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And he touched her [hand](#), and the fever left her, and [she got up](#) and [began to serve](#) him.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> He touched her [hand](#), and immediately she no longer had a fever. Then [she got up](#) and [served](#) Jesus and the disciples.

## Matthew 8:16

### many being possessed by demons (ULT) many people whom demons controlled (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "many of those who demons have possessed (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### he cast out the spirits with a word (ULT) He made the demons leave the people just by commanding them to (UST)

Here, **word** means a command that Jesus gave. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "he commanded the spirits to leave" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [being possessed by demons](#)
- [he cast out](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [healed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [whom demons controlled](#)
- [He made...leave the people](#)
- [the demons](#)
- [he healed](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Now evening having come, they brought to him many [being possessed by demons](#), and [he cast out the spirits](#) with a word and [healed](#) all the ones having sickness,

### UST

<sup>16</sup> When it was evening, the crowd brought to Jesus many people [whom demons controlled](#), and other people who were sick. [He made the demons leave the people](#) just by commanding them to, and [he healed](#) all the people who were sick.

## Matthew 8:17

**might be fulfilled that which had been spoken by Isaiah the prophet (ULT)**

**When he did this, he proved true what...the prophet Isaiah (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Jesus fulfilled the prophecy that the prophet Isaiah spoke" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**saying (ULT)**  
**had written (UST)**

Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotations in your language. Alternate translation: "and this is what he said" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

**He himself took our weaknesses and bore {our} diseases (ULT)**  
**He healed people from their sicknesses, and he cured them from their diseases (UST)**

Matthew is quoting the prophet Isaiah. **He himself took our weaknesses** and **bore {our} diseases** mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he healed all of **our diseases**. If it would be clearer for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: "He took away our sicknesses" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [might be fulfilled](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [bore](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [When he did this, he proved true what](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [he cured them from their diseases](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> so that [might be fulfilled](#) that which had been spoken by [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#), saying, "He himself took our weaknesses and [bore](#) {our} diseases."

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> [When he did this, he proved true what](#) the [prophet Isaiah](#) had written, 'He healed people from their sicknesses, and [he cured them from their diseases](#).'

## Matthew 8:18

**commanded to depart to the other side (ULT)  
he told his disciples to take...by boat to the  
other side of the lake (UST)**

Matthew is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "Jesus told his disciples to sail to the other side of the Sea of Galilee" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [commanded](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [he told his disciples](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Now [Jesus](#), having seen a crowd around him, [commanded](#) to depart to the other side.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> When [Jesus](#) saw the crowd around him, [he told his disciples](#) to take him by boat to the other side of the lake.

## Matthew 8:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- Teacher

### Translation Words - UST

- man who taught the Jewish laws
- Teacher

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> And having approached, a scribe said to him, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go."

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> As they were walking toward the boat, a man who taught the Jewish laws came to him and said, "Teacher, I will go with you wherever you go."





## **Matthew 8:20**

## And Jesus...Foxes have holes...the birds of the sky, nests, but...Son of Man does not have {a place} where he might lay {his} head (ULT)

Jesus answers the scribe with this proverb. The proverb means even wild animals have somewhere to rest. You can translate the proverb itself in a way that will be recognized as a proverb and be meaningful in your language and culture. Alternate translation: "Even animals have a place to sleep, but the Son of Man does not have a place to sleep" (See: [Proverbs](#))

### Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky, nests (ULT)

### Foxes have holes in the ground in which to live, and birds have nests in the trees to live (UST)

Jesus assumes that his hearers know what **foxes** are and what they use the **holes** for. **Foxes** are animals like wild dogs. They eat nesting birds and other small animals. If foxes are unknown in your area, use a general term for wild dog-like creatures that burrow in the ground. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. It may be helpful to make this a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "Foxes have their holes in the ground to sleep in, and flying birds have their nests to sleep in" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the birds of the sky, nests (ULT)

### birds have nests in the trees to live (UST)

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "birds who fly in the sky have nests" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### the...Son of Man (ULT)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. If this would be confusing in your language, you can express this in the first person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### does not have {a place} where he might lay {his} head (ULT)

### I do not have a home where I can sleep (UST)

Here, **lay his head** refers to a place to sleep. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "has no place of his own to sleep" (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of the sky](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [head](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> And [Jesus](#) says to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds [of the sky](#), nests, but the [Son of Man](#) does not have {a place} where he might lay {his} [head](#)."

### UST

<sup>20</sup> [Jesus](#) answered him, "Foxes have holes in the ground in which to live, and [birds](#) have nests in the trees to live, but [even though I am the Son of Man](#), I do not have a home where [I can sleep](#)."

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- birds
- even though I am the Son of Man
- I can sleep

## Matthew 8:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the disciples
- Lord
- to bury
- father

### Translation Words - UST

- of Jesus' disciples
- Lord
- After...dies I will bury him...then I will come with you
- father

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Now another of the disciples said to him, "Lord, permit me first to go away and to bury my father."

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Another man who was one of Jesus' disciples said to him, "Lord, permit me first to go home. After my father dies I will bury him, and then I will come with you."

## Matthew 8:22

**allow the dead to bury {their} own dead (ULT)  
Let the people who do not love God and desire  
to follow me...bury the people who have died  
(UST)**

Jesus does not mean literally that **dead** people will bury other dead people. Here, **the dead** is referring to those who are spiritually **dead**, meaning they do not love God, and are not following Jesus. If your readers would not understand what **dead** means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation, as expressed in the UST. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [dead](#)
- [dead](#)
- [to bury](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Let the people who do not love God and desire to follow me](#)
- [the people who have died](#)
- [bury](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But [Jesus](#) says to him, "Follow me, and allow the [dead to bury](#) {their} own [dead](#)."

### UST

<sup>22</sup> But [Jesus](#) said to him, "Come with me now. [Let the people who do not love God and desire to follow me bury the people who have died](#)."

## Matthew 8:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> And {when} he had entered into a boat, his [disciples](#) followed him.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> When Jesus got onto the boat, his [disciples](#) followed him.

## Matthew 8:24

**so that the boat was covered by the waves  
(ULT)**

**Very high waves were splashing into the boat  
and filling it (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so that the waves were filling the boat" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sea](#)
- [was sleeping](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sea of Galilee](#)
- [was sleeping](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> And behold, a great storm happened on the [sea](#), so that the boat was covered by the waves. But he [was sleeping](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Suddenly a strong windstorm came over the [sea of Galilee](#). Very high waves were splashing into the boat and filling it, but Jesus [was sleeping](#).



## Matthew 8:25

**Lord, save us; we are perishing (ULT)**

**Lord, rescue us! We are about to drown (UST)**

Here, **we** is referring to both Jesus and the disciples. Your language may require you to mark these forms. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- save us
- we are perishing

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- rescue us
- We are about to drown

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> And having approached, they woke him, saying, "Lord, [save us; we are perishing!](#)"

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> The disciples went and woke Jesus up, and said to him, "[Lord, rescue us! We are about to drown!](#)"

## Matthew 8:26

### Why are you cowardly, you of little faith (ULT) You should not be scared! You do not believe that I can rescue you (UST)

Jesus asks this question in order to teach the disciples why they should not be afraid. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "There is nothing for you to be afraid of, you who have little faith!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### you of little faith (ULT) You do not believe that I can rescue you (UST)

Jesus addresses his disciples this way because their anxiety about the storm shows they have little faith in him to control it. See how you translated this in [6:30](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you of little faith](#)
- [having gotten up](#)
- [he rebuked](#)
- [sea](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You do not believe that I can rescue you](#)
- [he got up](#)
- [and told...the...to stop](#)
- [and...waves](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> And he says to them, "Why are you cowardly, [you of little faith?](#)" Then, [having gotten up, he rebuked](#) the winds and the [sea](#), and a great calm happened.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> He said to them, "You should not be scared! [You do not believe that I can rescue you.](#)" Then [he got up and told](#) the wind and the [waves to stop](#). Immediately the wind stopped and the water became calm.

## Matthew 8:27

### What sort of is he, that even the winds and the sea obey him (ULT)

This question shows that the disciples were surprised. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "This man is unlike any man we have ever seen! Even the wind and the waves obey him!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### even the winds and the sea obey him (ULT)

Here, **wind** and **waves** are described as if they are able to **obey** Jesus. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "he even controls the wind and the waves" (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [marveled](#)
- [sea](#)
- [obey](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [were amazed](#)
- [He...commands](#)
- [waves](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But the men [marveled](#), saying, "What sort of is he, that even the winds and the [sea obey](#) him?"

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> The men [were amazed](#), and they said to each other, "This man is certainly an extraordinary person, having all things are under his control! [He](#) even [commands](#) the wind and the [waves](#)!"

## Matthew 8:28

### the country of the Gadarenes (ULT) they arrived in...the region where the Gadarenes lived (UST)

The **Gadarenes** were named after the town of Gadara. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### two men...being possessed by demons (ULT) two men whom demons controlled (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "two men ... whom demons were controlling" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- being possessed by demons
- of the tombs
- was strong enough

#### Translation Words - UST

- two men whom demons controlled
- among the tombs where they were living
- was brave enough

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> And {when} he had come to the other side, to the country of the Gadarenes, two men met him, **being possessed by demons**, coming out **of the tombs**, very violent, so that no one **was strong enough** to pass through that road.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> When they came to the east side of the lake, they arrived in the region where the Gadarenes lived. Then **two men whom demons controlled** came out from **among the tombs where they were living**. Because they were extremely violent and attacked people, no one **was brave enough** to travel on the road that went by the tombs.



## **Matthew 8:29**

## What to us and to you, Son of God (ULT) Leave us alone, Son of the Most High God (UST)

The unclean spirit asks this question out of fear. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "Leave me alone, Jesus, Son of the Most High God! There is no reason for you to interfere with me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Son of God (ULT) Son of the Most High God (UST)

**Son of God** is an important title for Jesus, which describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

## Have you come here to torment us before the set time (ULT) Have you come here to torture us before the time God has appointed to punish us (UST)

Again, the demons use a question out of fear. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "You have surely come here to punish us before the time when God will judge us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Have you come here to torment us before the set time (ULT) Have you come here to torture us before the time God has appointed to punish us (UST)

Here, **the set time** is referring to the time when God will judge all of the evil spirits and people. Matthew's readers would have understood this. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "Have you come here early, before the time when God is planning to judge us?" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they cried out](#)
- [Son of God](#)
- [to torment](#)
- [the set time](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they shouted to](#)
- [Son of the Most High God](#)
- [to torture](#)
- [the time God has appointed to punish](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> And behold, [they cried out](#), saying, "What to us and to you, [Son of God](#)? Have you come here [to torment](#) us before [the set time](#)?"

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Suddenly [they shouted to](#) Jesus, "Leave us alone, [Son of the Most High God](#)! Have you come here [to torture](#) us before [the time God has appointed to punish](#) us?"

## Matthew 8:30

### Now (ULT)

### There was (UST)

**Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew tells background information about a herd of pigs that had been there before Jesus arrived. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...pigs

### Translation Words - UST

- pigs

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Now a herd of many pigs was feeding at a distance from them.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> There was a large herd of pigs grazing not far away.



## Matthew 8:31

### If you cast us out (ULT)

It is implied that the demons knew that Jesus was going to **cast** them **out**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "Because you are going to cast us out" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### us (ULT)

Here, **us** is exclusive, referring only to the demons. Your language may require you to mark these forms. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [demons](#)
- [were begging](#)
- [you cast...out](#)
- [send...away](#)
- [of the pigs](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [demons](#)
- [begged](#)
- [If you are going to send out of these people](#)
- [send](#)
- [those pigs](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> But the [demons were begging](#) him, saying, "If [you cast us out](#), [send us away](#) into the herd [of the pigs](#)."

### UST

<sup>31</sup> So the [demons begged](#) Jesus and said, "If [you are going to send out of these people](#), [send us into those pigs!](#)"

## Matthew 8:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- pigs
- sea
- they died
- water

### Translation Words - UST

- pigs
- the water
- and drowned
- and drowned

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> And he said to them, "Go!" And they, having come out, went away into the pigs; and behold, the whole herd rushed down the steep slope into the sea, and they died in the water.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Jesus said to them, "If that is what you want, go!" So the demons left the men and entered the pigs. Suddenly the whole herd of pigs rushed down the steep bank into the water and drowned.

## Matthew 8:33

**the {things concerning} the ones possessed by demons (ULT)**

**what had happened to the two men whom demons had controlled (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "what Jesus did to help the men whom demons were controlling" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they reported](#)
- [possessed by demons](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [reported](#)
- [two men whom demons had controlled](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Now the ones feeding them ran away and, having gone away to the city, [they reported](#) everything, and the {things concerning} the ones [possessed by demons](#).

### UST

<sup>33</sup> The men who were tending the pigs became afraid and ran into the town and [reported](#) everything that had happened, including what had happened to the [two men whom demons had controlled](#).

## Matthew 8:34

### the whole city (ULT)

The word **city** is a metonym for the people of the city. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "all the people who lived in the city" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the whole city (ULT)

The word **whole** is an exaggeration to emphasize how very many people came out to see Jesus. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that shows this. Alternate translation: "many of the people in the city (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [they begged him](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [they pleaded with Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> And behold, the whole city came out to meet [Jesus](#). And having seen him, [they begged him](#) that he would depart from their region.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> Then many people who lived in that town went to meet [Jesus](#). When they saw him and the two men whom demons had controlled, [they pleaded with Jesus](#) to leave their region.

## Matthew 9

### Matthew 9 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### “Sinners”

When the people of Jesus' time spoke of “sinners,” they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call “sinners,” he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as “sinners.” (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Passive voice

Many sentences in this chapter tell that a person had something happen to him without saying who caused that something to happen. You may have to translate the sentence so that it tells the reader who performed the action. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

##### Rhetorical questions

Speakers in this chapter asked questions to which they already knew the answer. They asked the questions to show that they were not happy with the hearers or to teach them or to get them to think. Your language may have another way of doing this. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

##### Proverbs

Proverbs are very short sentences that use words that are easy to remember to tell about something that is generally true. People who understand proverbs usually have to know much about the language and culture of the speaker. When you translate the proverbs in this chapter, you may have to use many more words than the speakers used so that you can add information that the hearers knew but your reader do not know. (See: [Proverbs](#))

## Matthew 9:1

### he crossed over (ULT)

### They sailed over the Sea of Galilee (UST)

Here, Matthew does not specify that Jesus **crossed over** the Sea of Galilee. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "he crossed over the Sea of Galilee" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And having entered into a boat, he crossed over and came to {his} own city.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Jesus and his disciples got into the boat. They sailed over the Sea of Galilee and went to the city of Capernaum where Jesus was living.

## Matthew 9:2

### behold (ULT)

### Some people brought (UST)

Here, **behold** introduces a new event that happened some time after the events the story has just related. The story does not say how long after those events this new event happened. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: "When they arrived in Jesus' town" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### a paralytic (ULT)

### a man who was paralyzed (UST)

See how you translated **paralytic** in 4:24. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Your sins are forgiven (ULT)

### I forgive your sins (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I have forgiven your sins" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [faith](#)
- [Child](#)
- [have courage](#)
- [sins](#)
- [are forgiven](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [that...believed that he could heal the paralyzed man](#)
- [Be encouraged](#)
- [I forgive](#)
- [sins](#)
- [children, child, offspring](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And behold, they were bringing to him a paralytic lying on a mat. And {when} [Jesus](#) had seen their [faith](#), he said to the paralytic, "[Child, have courage](#). Your [sins are forgiven](#)."

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Some people brought to him a man who was paralyzed and who was lying on a sleeping pad. When [Jesus](#) perceived that they [believed that he could heal the paralyzed man](#), he said to him, "[Be encouraged! I forgive your sins](#)."

## Matthew 9:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the scribes
- blasphemes

### Translation Words - UST

- of the men who taught the Jewish laws
- Only God can forgive sins! This man says that he can forgive sins. He is blaspheming

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And behold, some of the scribes said among themselves, "This one blasphemes."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Some of the men who taught the Jewish laws said among themselves, "Only God can forgive sins! This man says that he can forgive sins. He is blaspheming!"



## Matthew 9:4

### having known...their thoughts (ULT) knew...what they were thinking (UST)

This phrase implies that Jesus had supernatural knowledge. It indicates that Jesus knew what the scribes were saying even though he did not hear what they said. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say this explicitly. Alternate translation: "Even though no one told Jesus, he knew" or "Even though Jesus had not heard them, he was fully aware"(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### For what reason do you think evil in your hearts (ULT)

### You should not think evil thoughts (UST)

Jesus used this question to rebuke the scribes. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "You should not be thinking this evil in your hearts!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### in your hearts (ULT) evil thoughts (UST)

Here, **hearts** refers to their minds or their thoughts. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "in your minds" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [evil](#)
- [hearts](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [evil thoughts](#)
- [evil thoughts](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And [Jesus](#), having known their thoughts, said, "For what reason do you think [evil](#) in your [hearts](#)?"

### UST

<sup>4</sup> [Jesus](#) knew what they were thinking, so he said, "You should not think [evil thoughts](#)!"



## **Matthew 9:5**

**For which is easier, to say, 'Your sins have been forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk (ULT)**

**You think it would certainly be easier for someone to say to another person "I have forgiven your sins" {because you can not see the proof of it happening}. Similarly, you think it would be much more difficult for someone to say to another person "{I have healed you.} Stand up and walk" {because you can see the proof of it happening (UST)**

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive **sins**. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "you think that it is certainly easier to say 'your sins are forgiven' than to say 'get up and walk'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**which...is easier, to say, 'Your sins have been forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk (ULT)**

**You think...it would certainly be easier for someone to say to another person "I have forgiven your sins" {because you can not see the proof of it happening}. Similarly, you think it would be much more difficult for someone to say to another person "{I have healed you.} Stand up and walk" {because you can see the proof of it happening (UST)**

The quotes can be translated as indirect quotes. Alternate translation: You think that it is easier to tell someone that his sins are forgiven, than to tell him to get up and walk" or (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**Your sins have been forgiven (ULT)**

**I have forgiven your sins (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I have forgiven your sins" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [have been forgiven](#)
- [Get up](#)
- [walk](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I have forgiven](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For which is easier, to say, 'Your [sins have been forgiven](#),' or to say, 'Get up and [walk](#)'?

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> You think it would certainly be easier for someone to say to another person "I [have forgiven](#) your [sins](#)" {because you can not see the proof of it happening}. Similarly, you think it would be much more difficult for someone to say to another person "{[I have healed you.](#)} [Stand up](#) and [walk](#)" {because you can see the proof of it happening}.

- sins
- I have healed you.} Stand up
- walk

## Matthew 9:6

### you might know...your...your (ULT)

### I will show you...your...home (UST)

Here, the **you** is plural and is addressed to the scribes, but both instances of **your** are singular and addressed to the paralytic. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### the Son of Man (ULT)

### I, the Son of Man (UST)

Here Jesus refers to himself as **the Son of Man** in the third person. If this would be confusing in your language, you can make it first person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### authority (ULT)

### am able (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **authority**, you could express the same idea in another way, as in the UST. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- you might know
- Son of Man
- authority
- earth
- to forgive
- sins
- Get up
- house

## Translation Words - UST

- I will show you
- I, the Son...of Man
- am able
- to forgive...which according to you is easier to do
- sins
- the earth
- Stand up
- home

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But in order that you might know that the Son of Man has authority on the earth to forgive sins..." he then says to the paralytic, "Get up, pick up your mat, and go to your house."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But I will show you that I, the Son of Man, am able to forgive sins on the earth, {which according to you is easier to do} ". Then Jesus said to the paralyzed man, " Stand up! Take up your sleeping pad and go home! "

## Matthew 9:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- having gotten up
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- The man got up, picked up his sleeping pad
- home

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And having gotten up, he went away to his house.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> The man got up, picked up his sleeping pad, and went home.

## Matthew 9:8

**authority (ULT)**

**authority (UST)**

See how you translated this in 9:6 (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- they were afraid
- glorified
- God
- authority

### Translation Words - UST

- they were amazed
- They praised
- God
- authority

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now {when} the crowds had seen this, they were afraid and glorified God, having given such authority to men.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> When the crowds saw this, they were amazed. They praised God for giving such authority to people.



## Matthew 9:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Matthew
- tax collection office

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Matthew
- table where he collected taxes for the Roman government

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And {as} Jesus is passing on from there, he saw a man named Matthew sitting at the tax collection office, and he says to him, "Follow me." And having gotten up, he followed him.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> As Jesus was going away from there, he saw a man named Matthew. He was sitting at a table where he collected taxes for the Roman government. Jesus said to him, "Come with me and be my disciple!" So Matthew got up and went with him.

## Matthew 9:10

### **sinners (ULT)** **people who did not obey the Law of Moses (UST)**

Here, **sinners** refers to people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "people who committed many bad sins" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [house](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [sinners](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- [a house for a meal](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [people who did not obey the Law of Moses](#)
- [them](#)
- [them](#)

#### **ULT**

<sup>10</sup> And it happened that he is reclining at table in the [house](#), and behold, many [tax collectors](#) and [sinners](#), having come, were dining with [Jesus](#) and his [disciples](#).

#### **UST**

<sup>10</sup> Jesus and his disciples sat down in a [house for a meal](#). While they were eating, many [tax collectors](#) and [people who did not obey the Law of Moses](#) came and ate with [them](#).

## Matthew 9:11

### For what reason does your teacher eat with tax collectors and sinners (ULT)

The Pharisees use this question to criticize what Jesus is doing. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "Your teacher should not eat with tax collectors and sinners!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- to...disciples
- teacher
- tax collectors
- sinners

#### Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- disciples
- teacher
- tax collectors
- people who do not know God

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And the [Pharisees](#), having seen this, were saying to his [disciples](#), "For what reason does your [teacher](#) eat with [tax collectors](#) and [sinners](#)?"

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> When the [Pharisees](#) saw that, they approached Jesus' [disciples](#) and said, "It is shameful that your [teacher](#) eats and spends time with [tax collectors](#) and [people who do not know God](#)."



## **Matthew 9:12**

## But he, having heard {this (ULT)

Here, **this** refers to the question the Pharisees asked about Jesus eating with tax collectors and sinners. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "When Jesus heard the Pharisees ask this question" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**The ones being healthy do not have need of a physician, but the ones having sickness (ULT)  
In the same way that people who are sick need a doctor, and not people who are well. So, people who are spiritually unwell need a spiritual care (UST)**

Jesus begins his response by quoting or creating a proverb, a short saying about something that is generally true in life. This proverb draws a figurative comparison. Just as sick people need to see a doctor to be healed, so sinners need to see Jesus in order to be forgiven and restored. But since Jesus explains the comparison in the next verse, you do not need to explain it here. Rather, you can translate the proverb itself in a way that will be meaningful in your language and culture. Alternate translation: "People who are well do not need to see a doctor, but people who are sick do" (See: [Proverbs](#))

## The ones being healthy (ULT)

**In the same way that people who are sick need a doctor, and not people who are well. So, people who are spiritually unwell need a spiritual care (UST)**

Those who **have sickness** are equated with those who are wanting to be saved by Jesus. The **healthy** are equated with those who do not think they need Jesus. Jesus does not actually think those who do not want him are **strong**, but the opposite. He says this because those people think they are healthy in their own eyes and do not need Jesus. If your readers would misunderstand this, consider expressing the meaning plainly.. Alternate translation: "Those who suppose themselves to be healthy do not need a doctor. It is those who know that they are sick who need a doctor". (See: [Irony](#))

## the ones having sickness (ULT)

**In the same way that people who are sick need a doctor, and not people who are well. So, people who are spiritually unwell need a spiritual care (UST)**

The phrase "need a physician" is understood from the previous phrase. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "people who are sick need a physician" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [being healthy](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But he, having heard {this}, said, "The ones [being healthy](#) do not have need of a physician, but the ones having sickness.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Jesus heard what they said, and he said to them, "[In the same way that people who are sick need a doctor, and not people who are well. So, people who are spiritually unwell need a spiritual care.](#)"

## Translation Words - UST

- In the same way that people who are sick need a doctor, and not people who are well. So, people who are spiritually unwell need a spiritual care

## Matthew 9:13

### but sinners (ULT)

### Rather...who think of themselves as sinners (UST)

The words **I did not come to call** are understood from the phrase before this. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "but I came to call sinners" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [mercy](#)
- [sacrifice](#)
- [to call](#)
- [the} righteous](#)
- [sinners](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you to act mercifully to people](#)
- [just to offer sacrifices](#)
- [to make people my disciples...to make people my disciples](#)
- [who think themselves to be righteous](#)
- [who think of themselves as sinners](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But having gone, learn what this is: 'I desire [mercy](#) and not [sacrifice](#).' For I did not come [to call {the} righteous](#), but [sinners](#)."

### UST

<sup>13</sup> You should learn what these words mean that God said, 'I want [you to act mercifully to people](#) and not [just to offer sacrifices](#).' I have not come [to make people my disciples who think themselves to be righteous](#). Rather, I have come [to make people my disciples who think of themselves as sinners](#)."



## Matthew 9:14

### Then (ULT)

### Then (UST)

The word **then** indicates that the events the story will now relate came after the event it has just described. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could show this relationship by using a fuller phrase. Alternate translation: "After Jesus said this" (See: [Connect — Sequential Time Relationship](#) )

### the disciples of John (ULT)

### the disciples of John the Baptizer (UST)

Here, **John** is referring to John the Baptizer. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could that this is referring to John the Baptizer. Alternate translation: "John the Baptizer" (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [of John](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [do...fast](#)
- [do...fast](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [disciples do not do that](#)
- [of John the Baptizer](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [abstain from food because we want to please God](#)
- [do they...abstain from food](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Then the [disciples of John](#) come to him, saying, "For what reason do we and the [Pharisees](#) often [fast](#), but your [disciples](#) do not [fast](#)?"

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Then the [disciples of John the Baptizer](#) came to Jesus and asked him, "We and the [Pharisees](#) often [abstain from food because we want to please God](#), but your [disciples do not do that](#). Why [do they](#) not [abstain from food](#)?"



## **Matthew 9:15**

**The sons of the bridal chamber are not able to mourn while the bridegroom is still with them, are they (ULT)**

**When a man is marrying a woman, his friends will certainly not be sad and abstain from food while he is still with them (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to answer John's disciples. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "The sons of the bridal chamber are certainly not able to mourn while the bridegroom is still with them." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**The sons of the bridal chamber are not able to mourn while the bridegroom is still with them, are they (ULT)**

**When a man is marrying a woman, his friends will certainly not be sad and abstain from food while he is still with them (UST)**

Jesus uses this proverb to show that his disciples do not **mourn** because he **is still** there **with them**. In this proverb, Jesus is the **bridegroom**, and his disciples are the **sons of the bridal chamber**. You can translate the proverb itself in a way that will be recognized as a proverb and be meaningful in your language and culture. If it would be misunderstood in your language, you can state it explicitly. Alternate translation: "Just as the sons of the bridal chamber are not able to mourn while the bridegroom is still with them, so my disciples are not able to fast while I am still with them" (See: [Proverbs](#))

**But days will come when (ULT)**

**But some day (UST)**

Here, **the day** is said to be **coming** like a person might come. This is figurative, meaning that the event will happen. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "But it will happen that when" (See: [Personification](#))

**the bridegroom will be taken away from them (ULT)**

**the groom will go away from his friends (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the bridegroom will leave them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [sons](#)
- [to mourn](#)
- [bridegroom](#)
- [bridegroom](#) (2)

## ULT

<sup>15</sup> And [Jesus](#) said to them, "The [sons](#) of the bridal chamber are not able to [mourn](#) while the [bridegroom](#) is still with them, are they? But [days](#) will come when the [bridegroom](#) will be taken away from them, and then [they will fast](#)."

## UST

<sup>15</sup> [Jesus](#) answered, "When a man is marrying a woman, his friends will certainly not be sad and abstain from food while he is still with them. But [some day](#), the groom will go away from his friends. Then [in those days](#), they will abstain from food and be sad."

- days
- they will fast

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus answered
- When a man is marrying a woman
- the groom (2)
- his friends will certainly
- be sad and abstain from food
- But some day
- in those days, they will abstain from food and be sad

## Matthew 9:16

### Now no one puts a patch of new cloth on an old garment, for his patch tears away from the garment, and a worse tear happens (ULT)

This verse is a proverb, which has a similar meaning to the previous verse. Jesus is talking about how the disciples should not use old ways of worship when he is present with them. Translate the proverb itself in a way that will be recognized as a proverb and be meaningful in your language and culture. Alternate translation: "Just as you shouldn't use a new patch on an old piece of cloth, so you should not use old methods of worship like fasting when I am present" (See: [Proverbs](#))

### Now no one puts a patch of new cloth on an old garment (ULT)

When a piece of clothing gets a hole in it, another piece of cloth, a patch, is sewn onto the clothing to cover the hole. If this patch has not yet been washed, it will shrink and tear the piece of clothing, making the hole worse than it was to begin with. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "Now, no one sews a new patch of cloth that has not yet shrunk from being washed on an old patch that has shrunk already" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [an...garment](#)
- [garment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [an...piece of clothing to mend a hole](#)
- [the clothing](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Now no one puts a patch of new cloth on an old [garment](#), for his patch tears away from the [garment](#), and a worse tear happens.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> People do not sew a patch of unshrunk cloth on an old [piece of clothing to mend a hole](#). If they did that, when they washed the clothing, the patch would shrink and tear [the clothing](#), and the hole would become bigger.



## **Matthew 9:17**



## Neither do they put new wine into old wineskins

This verse is a proverb with a similar message as the previous verse. Jesus is saying that just as someone would not put new wine which will expand in an old wine skin which cannot expand, so the disciples should not fast while Jesus is with them. You can translate the proverb itself in a way that will be recognized as a proverb and be meaningful in your language and culture. (See: [Proverbs](#))

### Neither (ULT) not (UST)

Here, **neither** is a word which shows that the meaning of this verse is similar to the meaning of the previous verse. Use an word in your language that expresses this. Alternate translation: "Similarly, no one" (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

### Neither do they put...they put (ULT) Similarly, people do not put...people must put (UST)

Jesus is speaking of people in general, and not a specific person. If your readers would misunderstand this, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: "People do not pour...people pour" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

### the wine is spilled, and the wineskins are destroyed (ULT) the new wine...As a result both the wine and the skin bags would be ruined (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "this will ruin the wineskins and spill the wine" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Instead (ULT) On the contrary (UST)

What follows the word **instead** here is in contrast to what comes before it, showing what people do and do not do with wine and wineskins. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: "Rather than doing this" (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

### both are preserved (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "this will keep safe both the wineskins and the wine" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- wine

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Neither do they put new wine into old wineskins. Otherwise, the skins are burst, and the wine is spilled, and the wineskins are destroyed. Instead, they put new wine into fresh wineskins, and both are preserved."

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> Similarly, people do not put new wine into old animal skin bags to store it. If they did, the new wine will burst the skin bags because they would not stretch when the wine ferments and expands. As a result both the wine and the skin bags would be ruined! On the contrary, people must put new wine into new skin bags!

- wineskins
- skins
- wine
- wineskins
- wine (2)
- wineskins (2)
- are destroyed

## Translation Words - UST

- wine
- animal skin bags to store it
- skin bags
- new wine
- As a result both the wine and the skin bags would be ruined
- wine (2)
- skin bags (2)
- As a result both the wine and the skin bags would be ruined

## Matthew 9:18

**While} he is saying these {things} to them (ULT)**

**While Jesus was saying those things to the scribes (UST)**

Here, **While he is saying these things to them** marks the introduction of a new event. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: "It happened that as Jesus was speaking with the scribes" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

**a certain official (ULT)**

**a leader in the city came and (UST)**

This introduces the **official** as a new character in the story. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new character. Since he is a new participant, if it would be helpful to your readers, you could call him something like "a man who was a ruler in a nearby town" (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**bowed down to him (ULT)**

**bowed down before him (UST)**

This is a way someone would show respect to someone in higher authority. If there is a gesture with similar meaning in your culture, you could consider using it here in your translation. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a...official](#)
- [bowed down](#)
- [has...died](#)
- [hand](#)
- [she will live](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a leader in the city](#)
- [bowed down before](#)
- [has...died](#)
- [hand](#)
- [she will live again](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> {While} he is saying these {things} to them, behold, a certain **official**, having approached, **bowed down** to him, saying, "My daughter has just now **died**, but, having come, lay your **hand** on her, and **she will live**."

### UST

<sup>18</sup> While Jesus was saying those things to the scribes, **a leader in the city** came and **bowed down before** him. Then he said, "My daughter has just now **died**! But if you come and lay your **hand** on her, **she will live again!**"

## Matthew 9:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- having gotten up
- Jesus
- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus and his
- disciples
- got up

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> And **having gotten up**, **Jesus** and his **disciples** followed him.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> So **Jesus and his disciples got up**, and they went with the man.

## Matthew 9:20

### suffering from a discharge of blood (ULT) who had been suffering constant bleeding (UST)

The woman did not have an open wound. Rather, her monthly flow of blood would not stop. Your language may have a polite way to refer to this condition. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### touched the edge of his garment (ULT) touched the edge of his garment (UST)

Matthew does not explain why she **touched the edge of his garment**. Since the expression is explained in the next verse, you do not need to explain its meaning further here. (See: [When to Keep Information Implicit](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- years
- of...garment

### Translation Words - UST

- years
- garment

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> And behold, a woman suffering from a discharge of blood for 12 years, having come up behind him, touched the edge of his garment,

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Then a woman who had been suffering constant bleeding for twelve years came near Jesus. She came behind him and touched the edge of his garment.

## Matthew 9:21

**for she was saying to herself, “If only I touch his garment, I will be healed (ULT)**

**She was saying to herself, “If I just touch his garment, I will be healed (UST)**

This verse tells us why she touched Jesus' garment. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information. Alternate translation: “She did this because she was thinking to herself, ‘If I just touch his garments, then he will heal me’” (See: [Background Information](#))

**I will be healed (ULT)**

**I will be healed (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “he will make me well” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [garment](#)
- [I will be healed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [garment](#)
- [I will be healed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> for she was saying to herself, “If only I touch his [garment](#), [I will be healed](#).”

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> She was saying to herself, “If I just touch his [garment](#), [I will be healed](#).”

## Matthew 9:22

### Daughter (ULT) dear woman (UST)

Jesus was using this term figuratively to refer to the woman as a believer. She was not actually his daughter. Make sure this is understood by your readers. Alternate translation: "Beloved woman" (See: [Kinship](#))

### your faith has healed you (ULT) Because you believed that I could heal you, I have healed you (UST)

Here, **faith** is spoken of as having **saved** a person. This is figurative, meaning that because she believed that Jesus was able to heal her, he did heal her. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "because you believed I have healed you, I have healed you" (See: [Personification](#))

### the woman was healed from that hour (ULT) Jesus healed the woman at that very moment (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed the woman at that moment" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [having turned](#)
- [take courage](#)
- [faith](#)
- [has healed](#)
- [was healed](#)
- [hour](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Then...turned around](#)
- [Be encouraged](#)
- [Because...believed that I could heal you](#)
- [I have healed](#)
- [Jesus healed](#)
- [moment](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But [Jesus](#), [having turned](#) and having seen her, said, "Daughter, [take courage](#); your [faith has healed](#) you." And the woman [was healed](#) from that [hour](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Then [Jesus turned around](#) to see who had touched him. And when he saw the woman, he said to her, "[Be encouraged](#), dear woman. [Because](#) you [believed that I could heal you](#), [I have healed](#) you." [Jesus healed](#) the woman at that very [moment](#).

## Matthew 9:23

**having seen the flute players and the crowd being disturbed (ULT)**

**saw the flute players playing funeral music; there were also many mourners who were wailing loudly because the girl had died (UST)**

There were **flute players** at the house because it was customary in that culture to play the flute in a time of mourning. If you think your readers might not understand the significance of these actions, you could explain generally what the people were doing. Or you could describe the actions and say why the people were doing them. Alternate translation: "having see the flute players and the upset crowd performing their mourning rituals" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [house](#)
- [of the official](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [man's house](#)
- [man's house](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> And [Jesus](#), having come into the [house of the official](#) and having seen the flute players and the crowd being disturbed,

### UST

<sup>23</sup> [Jesus](#) came to the [man's house](#) and saw the flute players playing funeral music; there were also many mourners who were wailing loudly because the girl had died.



## Matthew 9:24

**not...the girl has...died, but sleeps (ULT)**  
**not...the girl is...dead! She is just sleeping (UST)**

Jesus is using a play on words. It was common in Jesus' day to refer to a dead person as one who **sleeps**. But here the dead **girl** will get up, as though she had only been sleeping. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a different polite way of referring to death or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: "The girl is only temporarily dead, as if she is sleeping" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [has...died](#)
- [sleeps](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [is...dead](#)
- [She is just sleeping](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> said, "Go away, for the girl has not [died](#), but [sleeps](#)." But they laughed at him.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> He said to them, "Go away and stop your mourning, for the girl is not [dead](#)! [She is just sleeping!](#)" But the people laughed at him because they knew that she was dead.

## Matthew 9:25

**But when the crowd had been put outside (ULT)**

**But Jesus told them to get out of the house. Then (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "But after Jesus had sent the crowd outside" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**But when the crowd had been put outside (ULT)**

**But Jesus told them to get out of the house. Then (UST)**

Here, **when** is showing that Jesus did not enter the house until after he made the family leave. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could show this relationship by using a fuller phrase. Alternate translation: "After Jesus made the family go out of the house" (See: [Connect — Sequential Time Relationship](#))

**the girl was raised up (ULT)**  
**and she became alive again and got up (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Jesus raised the girl from the dead" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- had been put outside
- hand
- was raised up

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus told...to get out of the house
- of...hand
- and she became alive again and got up

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But when the crowd **had been put outside**, having entered, he took her **hand**, and the girl **was raised up**.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> But **Jesus told them to get out of the house**. Then he went into the room where the girl was lying. He took hold of her **hand and she became alive again and got up**.

## Matthew 9:26

**And this report went out into all that region (ULT)**

**And the people of that whole region heard about what Jesus did (UST)**

Here, **this report** is said to have **gone out** as a person might go out from a place. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "People reported what Jesus had done to the whole region" (See: [Personification](#))

**into all that region (ULT)**

**the people of that whole region heard about what Jesus did (UST)**

Jesus refers figuratively to the **region** to mean the people who live in that region. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "to many of the people in that region" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [report](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the people of that whole region heard about what Jesus did](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> And this [report](#) went out into all that region.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> And [the people of that whole region heard about what Jesus did](#).

## Matthew 9:27

### Have mercy on us (ULT)

### Have mercy on us and heal us (UST)

Here, **have mercy** means that they want Jesus to heal them from their blindness. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "Heal us from our blindness" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Son of David (ULT)

### you Descendant of King David (UST)

Jesus was not David's literal **Son**, but his descendant. The title **Son of David** is also an important messianic title. Make sure this is clear to your readers. Alternate translation: "Descendant of King David, the Messiah" (See: [Kinship](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [crying out](#)
- [Have mercy](#)
- [Son](#)
- [of David](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [and they were shouting](#)
- [Have mercy on...heal](#)
- [you Descendant](#)
- [of King David](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> And {as} [Jesus](#) is departing from there, two blind men followed him, [crying out](#) and saying, "[Have mercy](#) on us, [Son of David](#)!"

### UST

<sup>27</sup> As [Jesus](#) went away from there, two blind men followed him [and they were shouting](#), "[Have mercy on us and heal us, you Descendant of King David](#)!"

## Matthew 9:28

### Yes, Lord (ULT)

### Yes, Lord (UST)

The two blind men are leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "Yes, Lord, we believe you can heal us" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Do you believe](#)
- [I am able](#)
- [Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [house, and](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Do you believe](#)
- [I am able](#)
- [Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Now {when} he had come into the [house](#), the blind men came to him and [Jesus](#) says to them, "[Do you believe](#) that [I am able](#) to do this?" They say to him, "Yes, [Lord](#)."

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Jesus went into the [house](#), [and](#) then the blind men went in, too. [Jesus](#) said to them, "[Do you believe](#) that [I am able](#) to heal you?" They said to him, "Yes, [Lord](#)!"

## Matthew 9:29

### Let it happen to you according to your faith (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will heal you it based on how much you have believed in me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [faith](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [you believe that I can heal your eyes, I am healing them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then he touched their eyes, saying, "Let it happen to you according to your [faith](#)."

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> Then he touched their eyes and he said to them, "Because [you believe that I can heal your eyes, I am healing them right now!](#)"

## Matthew 9:30

### their eyes were opened (ULT) made them able to see (UST)

Here, **their eyes were opened** is an idiom that means they were able to see. Their eyes were already physically open. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "they were made able to see" (See: [Idiom](#))

### their eyes were opened (ULT) made them able to see (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Jesus made them able to see" or "Jesus caused them to be able to see" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### See that you let no one know {about this} (ULT) Be sure that you do not tell anybody about me healing your eyes (UST)

Here, **See** is figurative, meaning to be sure to do something. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "Be sure no one finds out about this" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [you let...know {about this}](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Be sure that you do not tell anybody about me healing your eyes](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> And their eyes were opened, and [Jesus](#) warned them, saying, "See that [you let](#) no one [know {about this}](#)."

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> [Jesus](#) made them able to see. After this, he told them sternly, "[Be sure that you do not tell anybody about me healing your eyes!](#)"

## Matthew 9:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> But they, having gone out, reported it in all that region.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> But the two men who were blind went out and spread the news of what Jesus did to many people in that region.



## Matthew 9:32

### a mute...man (ULT)

### a man who was unable to speak (UST)

A person who is **mute** is someone who is not able to talk. Use an expression from your language that describes someone who is unable to see. Alternate translation: "a person who was unable to see anything" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### a mute, demon-possessed man (ULT)

### a man who was unable to speak because a demon controlled him (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "a man whom a demon was controlling and making him mute" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [demon-possessed](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [because a demon controlled him](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Now {as} they are going away, behold, they brought to him a mute, [demon-possessed](#) man.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Just when those two men were leaving, some people brought to Jesus a man who was unable to speak [because a demon controlled him](#).

## Matthew 9:33

### Such as this has never been seen (ULT) Never before have we seen anything as marvelous as this happen (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "No one has ever seen anything such as this" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- when...had been cast out
- demon
- were astonished
- Israel

#### Translation Words - UST

- After Jesus had driven out
- demon
- they were astonished
- Israel

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> And {when} the [demon had been cast out](#), the mute {man} spoke, and the crowds [were astonished](#), saying, "Such as this has never been seen in [Israel!](#)"

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> [After Jesus had driven out the demon](#), the man began to speak. The crowd saw this and [they were astonished](#) and said, "Never before have we seen anything as marvelous as this happen in [Israel!](#)"

## Matthew 9:34

### By the ruler of the demons (ULT)

Here, **the ruler of the demons** would have been understood by Jesus' audience as being Satan. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "By Satan, who rules the demons" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharisees](#)
- [ruler](#)
- [of the demons](#)
- [demons](#)
- [he casts out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Pharisees](#)
- [It is Satan, who rules](#)
- [demons](#)
- [demons](#)
- [who enables this man to drive out...from people](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> But the [Pharisees](#) were saying, "By the [ruler of the demons](#) he casts out the [demons](#)."

### UST

<sup>34</sup> But the [Pharisees](#) said, "It is [Satan, who rules the demons](#), who enables this man to drive out demons from people."

## Matthew 9:35

### all the cities (ULT)

### many of the cities (UST)

The word **all** is an exaggeration to emphasize how many **cities** Jesus went to. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language. Alternate translation: “many of the cities” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### preaching the gospel of the kingdom (ULT) proclaiming the good news about how God will make them his people (UST)

Here the abstract noun **kingdom** refers to God’s rule as king. See how you translated this in [4:23](#). Alternate translation: “preaching the good news that God will make them one of his people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### every disease and every sickness (ULT) people who had various diseases and illnesses (UST)

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use and. Alternate translation: “many different kinds of illnesses” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [synagogues](#)
- [preaching](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [of the kingdom](#)
- [healing](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [He was teaching](#)
- [synagogues](#)
- [proclaiming](#)
- [good news](#)
- [God will make them his people](#)
- [He...was healing the](#)

## ULT

<sup>35</sup> And [Jesus](#) was going around all the cities and the villages, [teaching](#) in their [synagogues](#), and [preaching](#) the [gospel of the kingdom](#), and [healing](#) every disease and every sickness.

## UST

<sup>35</sup> Then [Jesus](#) and his disciples went through many of the cities and towns in the region of Galilee. [He was teaching](#) in the [synagogues](#) and [proclaiming](#) the [good news](#) about how [God will make them his people](#). [He also was healing](#) the people who had various diseases and illnesses.

## Matthew 9:36

### like sheep not having a shepherd (ULT) like sheep that did not have a shepherd {to lead them and take care of them (UST)

Jesus compares the people sheep to who do not have a shepherd to lead them and take care of them. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "they did not have someone to lead them and take care of them" (See: [Simile](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [he felt compassion](#)
- [troubled](#)
- [like](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [a shepherd](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [he pitied](#)
- [upset](#)
- [like](#)
- [sheep that](#)
- [a shepherd {to lead them and take care of them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Now having seen the crowds, [he felt compassion](#) for them, because they were [troubled](#) and discouraged, [like sheep](#) not having [a shepherd](#).

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> When he saw the crowds of people, [he pitied](#) them because they were [upset](#) and oppressed. They were [like sheep that did not have a shepherd {to lead them and take care of them.}](#)

## Matthew 9:37

### he says (ULT)

### he said (UST)

To call attention to a development in the story, Matthew uses the present tense in past narration. If it would not be natural to do that in your language, you can use the past tense in your translation. Alternate translation: "he said" (See: [Predictive Past](#))"

### The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few

Jesus uses a proverb to respond to what he is seeing. Jesus means there are a lot of people who are ready to believe God but only few people to teach them God's truth. You can translate the proverb itself in a way that will be recognized as a proverb and be meaningful in your language and culture.(See: [Proverbs](#))

### laborers (ULT)

### people to tell them my message (UST)

Here, **laborers** is a word that refers to people who work in a field to bring in food. Use a term in your language for this. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to...disciples
- harvest
- laborers

### Translation Words - UST

- disciples
- crops are ready to harvest
- people to tell them my message

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> Then he says to his [disciples](#), "The [harvest](#) {is} plentiful, but the [laborers](#) {are} few.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> Then he said to his [disciples](#), "The people who are ready to receive my message are like a field where the [crops are ready to harvest](#). But there are not many [people to tell them my message](#).

## Matthew 9:38

**earnestly ask...the Lord of the harvest (ULT)**  
**pray and ask...the Lord who causes people to be ready to hear the message (UST)**

Here, **of** means that the harvest belongs to the Lord, and that he has control over it. If this is not clear in your language, you could state this in a clearer way. Alternate translation: “beg the Lord, who is in charge of the harvest” (See: [Possession](#))

**laborers (ULT)**

**workers (UST)**

See how you translated **laborers** in the previous verse.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [earnestly ask](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [of the harvest](#)
- [harvest](#)
- [he might send out](#)
- [laborers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [pray and ask](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [who causes people to be ready to hear the message](#)
- [to gather people to hear the message like one gathers crops](#)
- [Do this in order that he might send many more](#)
- [workers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> Therefore, [earnestly ask](#) the [Lord of the harvest](#), so that [he might send out laborers](#) into his [harvest](#).”

#### UST

<sup>38</sup> So [pray and ask](#) the [Lord who causes people to be ready to hear the message](#). [Do this in order that he might send many more workers to gather people to hear the message like one gathers crops](#).”

## Matthew 10

### Matthew 10 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The sending of the twelve disciples

Many verses in this chapter describe how Jesus sent the twelve disciples out. He sent them to tell his message about the kingdom of heaven. They were to tell his message only in Israel and not to share it with the Gentiles.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

#### “The kingdom of heaven has come near”

No one knows for sure whether the “kingdom of heaven” was present or still coming when John spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase “at hand,” but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrases “is coming near” and “has come near.”



## Matthew 10:1

### And (ULT)

### Then (UST)

This verse begins the account of Jesus sending his disciples out to share his message with the people in the surrounding towns. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: "Some time later" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### he gave them authority (ULT)

### he gave them...power (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **authority**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "he made able to have power" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having summoned](#)
- [12...disciples](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [authority](#)
- [over unclean spirits](#)
- [to cast...out](#)
- [to heal](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus told...to come to him](#)
- [twelve disciples](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [power](#)
- [to drive out](#)
- [evil spirits that controlled people. He](#)
- [to heal people who had](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And [having summoned](#) his [12 disciples](#), he gave them [authority over unclean spirits](#), so as [to cast](#) them [out](#) and [to heal](#) every disease and every sickness.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Jesus told his [twelve disciples](#) to come to him. Then he gave them the [power to drive out evil spirits that controlled people](#). He also enabled them [to heal people who had](#) every kind of sickness.

## Matthew 10:2

### Now (ULT)

#### Here is a list of the (UST)

**Now** is used to add needed background information about the twelve apostles. Use the natural form in your language for expressing background information. (See: [Background Information](#))

### first (ULT)

This is **first** in order, not in rank. If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use a way in your language for marking the first thing in a list. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- names
- of the...12...apostles
- brother
- brother (2)
- James
- of Zebedee
- John
- of the...apostles
- Simon
- Peter
- called
- Andrew

### Translation Words - UST

- names
- of the twelve whom he chose to represent him
- Zebedee
- John
- of the...whom he chose to represent him
- Simon
- Peter
- he gave the new name
- Andrew
- Peter's younger brother
- younger brother (2)
- James

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Now the names of the 12 apostles are these: first, Simon (called Peter), and Andrew his brother; and James the {son} of Zebedee, and John his brother;

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Here is a list of the names of the twelve whom he chose to represent him. They were Simon, to whom he gave the new name Peter, Andrew, Peter's younger brother, James the son of Zebedee, John, the younger brother of James,

## Matthew 10:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Philip
- Bartholomew
- Thomas
- Matthew
- tax collector
- James the {son} of Alphaeus

### Translation Words - UST

- Philip
- Bartholomew
- Thomas
- Matthew
- tax collector
- James the son of Alphaeus

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Philip and Bartholomew; Thomas and Matthew the tax collector; James the {son} of Alphaeus and Thaddaeus;

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Philip; Bartholomew; Thomas; Matthew, the tax collector; James the son of Alphaeus; Thaddaeus;

## Matthew 10:4

### Simon the Zealot (ULT)

### Simon the Zealot (UST)

The word **Zealot** describes a group of people who were desiring to see the Jewish people freed from the rule of the Roman Empire. This likely means that **Simon** was a part of this group. If your language would not understand this, you can state this explicitly. Alternate translation: "Simon, who was a part of the group called the Zealots" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### having even betrayed him (ULT)

### who was disloyal to Jesus and brought the

### authorities to where he was so they could arrest him (UST)

Matthew writes **who also betrayed him** to give some extra information to the readers about what Judas did later to Jesus. Use a natural way in your language for introducing background information. Alternate translation: "This is the one who led the people to Jesus to arrest and kill him" (See: [Connect — Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Simon the Zealot](#)
- [Judas Iscariot](#)
- [having...betrayed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Simon the Zealot](#)
- [Judas Iscariot](#)
- [was disloyal to Jesus and brought the authorities to where he was so they could arrest him](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [Simon the Zealot](#), and [Judas Iscariot](#), [having even betrayed](#) him.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> [Simon the Zealot](#); and [Judas Iscariot](#), who [was disloyal to Jesus and brought the authorities to where he was so they could arrest him](#).

## Matthew 10:5

### These Twelve Jesus sent out, having instructed them, saying (ULT)

Although this verse begins by saying that Jesus sent out the twelve, he gives these instructions before sending them out. If this is confusing in your language, you could make the order of events clear. Alternate translation: "Before Jesus sent the Twelve out, he instructed them, saying" (See: [Order of Events](#))

### These Twelve Jesus sent out (ULT)

See how you translated this in 10:2

### sent out (ULT)

### When...was about to send...to represent him, telling the good news to people in various places (UST)

Jesus **sent** them **out** to teach people his message. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "sent out...to teach people his message" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Twelve
- Jesus
- sent out
- having instructed
- to the} Gentiles
- of {the} Samaritans

### Translation Words - UST

- When...was about to send...to represent him, telling the good news to people in various places
- Jesus
- twelve
- he gave...these instructions
- Gentiles
- Samaritans

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> These [Twelve Jesus sent out, having instructed](#) them, saying, "Do not go on {the} way {to the} [Gentiles](#), and do not enter into a city of {the} [Samaritans](#)."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [When Jesus was about to send the twelve to represent him, telling the good news to people in various places, he gave them these instructions:](#) "Do not go where the [Gentiles](#) live. Do not go into the towns where the [Samaritans](#) live."

## Matthew 10:6

### But (ULT)

What follows the word **but** here is in contrast to what was before it. Jesus prefers the disciples to go to the people of Israel instead of the non-Jewish people. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: "But rather" (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

**the lost sheep of {the} house of Israel (ULT)**  
**the people of Israel; they are like sheep who have strayed away from their shepherd (UST)**

This is a metaphor comparing the people of the nation of Israel who are not obeying God to **lost sheep** who have strayed from their shepherd. If your readers would not understand what **sheep** means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "those of the people of Israel who have strayed from God like lost sheep" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of {the} house of Israel (ULT)**  
**the people of Israel (UST)**

This refers to the people who live in **Israel**. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "of the people of Israel" or "of the descendants of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lost](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [of {the} house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the people](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [they are like sheep](#)
- [have strayed away from their shepherd](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But go instead to the [lost sheep of {the} house of Israel](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Instead, go to [the people of Israel](#); [they are like sheep who have strayed away from their shepherd](#).

**Matthew 10:7**

**The kingdom of the heavens has come near**

**(ULT)**

**they can become God's people over whom he will rule from heaven (UST)**

See how you translated this in 3:2. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [preach](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [proclaim to them](#)
- [they can become God's people over whom he will rule...from heaven](#)
- [heaven](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> Now {as} you are going, [preach](#), saying, 'The [kingdom of the heavens](#) has come near.'

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> When you go to them, [proclaim to them](#) that [they can become God's people over whom he will rule from heaven](#).





## **Matthew 10:8**

## raise {the} dead (ULT) cause dead people to become alive (UST)

Here, **raise the dead** is an idiom meaning to bring people who are dead back to life. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "cause the dead to live again" (See: [Idiom](#))

## Heal {the} sick, raise {the} dead, cleanse {the} lepers, {and} cast out demons (ULT) Heal sick people, cause dead people to become alive, heal people with leprosy and bring them back into society, and cause demons to leave those whom they control (UST)

Here, Jesus uses a repetitive series of sentences to tell his disciples what they ought to go out and do. These are all ways that the disciples can help people. Use a form in your language that someone would use to list things that someone should go and do. (See: [Litany](#))

## Freely you have received, freely give (ULT) God did not charge you any money for helping you, so you should not charge other people money to help them (UST)

Jesus did not state what the disciples had **received** or were to **give**. Some languages may require this information in the sentence. This is referring to the abilities which Jesus gave to the disciples in [4:2](#). If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "I have given these abilities to you without cost, so you should use them to help others without cost" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Heal](#)
- [raise](#)
- [the} dead](#)
- [cleanse](#)
- [the} lepers](#)
- [and} cast out](#)
- [demons](#)
- [Freely](#)
- [freely \(2\)](#)
- [you have received](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Heal](#)
- [cause...to become alive](#)
- [demons](#)
- [God did not charge you any money for helping you](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [Heal {the} sick, raise {the} dead, cleanse {the} lepers, {and} cast out demons. Freely you have received, freely give.](#)

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [Heal sick people, cause dead people to become alive, heal people with leprosy and bring them back into society, and cause demons to leave those whom they control. God did not charge you any money for helping you, so you should not charge other people money to help them.](#)

- God did not charge you any money for helping you
- so you should not charge other people money to help them (2)
- dead people
- heal...and bring...back into society
- people with leprosy...them
- and cause...to leave those whom they control

## Matthew 10:9

**Do not acquire gold or silver or copper in your belts (ULT)**

**Do not take any money with you as you travel (UST)**

A **belt** is a long strip of cloth or leather worn around the waist. It was often wide enough that it could be folded and used to carry money. If your readers would not use a belt for this purpose, you can express this with the word for whatever you use to carry money. Alternate translation: "Do not carry money with you" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**gold or silver or copper (ULT)**  
**any money with...as you travel (UST)**

**gold**, **silver**\*\* and **copper** are metals out of which coins were made. This list is a metonym for money. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "valuable metals" or "money" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [any money with...as you travel](#)
- [any money with...as you travel](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Do not acquire [gold](#) or [silver](#) or copper in your belts,

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Do not take [any money with you as you travel](#).

## Matthew 10:10

### a bag (ULT)

### a bag (UST)

A **bag** is something that is worn that a person can carry their belongings in. If your language does not have a word for this, you can use something in your culture that you put things in to carry them. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### two tunics (ULT)

### take an extra tunic (UST)

Use the same word you used for **tunic** in 5:40. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### for the laborer {is} worthy of his food (ULT)

The proverb **for the laborer {is} worthy of his food** is giving the reason why Jesus' disciples should not bring anything with them. Jesus is saying that God will provide his disciples, the **laborer**, with what they need. You can translate the proverb itself in a way that will be recognized as a proverb and be meaningful in your language and culture. Alternate translation: "For God will provide the laborer with what he needs to live" (See: [Proverbs](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [tunics](#)
- [sandals](#)
- [a staff](#)
- [laborer](#)
- [is} worthy](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [tunic](#)
- [sandals in addition to what you are wearing](#)
- [a walking stick](#)
- [Every worker](#)
- [deserves to get pay from...you deserve](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> nor a bag for {the} journey nor two [tunics](#) nor [sandals](#) nor [a staff](#), for the [laborer {is} worthy](#) of his food.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Neither should you take a bag for what belongs to you. Do not take an extra [tunic](#), nor [sandals in addition to what you are wearing](#), nor [a walking stick](#). [Every worker deserves to get pay from](#) the people for whom he works, so [you deserve](#) to receive food from the people to whom you go.

## Matthew 10:11

**and stay there until you leave (ULT)  
wants you to...stay...Stay in that person's  
home until you decide to leave that place  
(UST)**

In this sentence, **there** means the **worthy** person's house. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "and stay at that person's house until you leave" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [wants you to](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But whatever city or village you enter into, find someone who is [worthy](#) in it and stay there until you leave.

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> In any town or village that you enter, find a person who [wants you to](#) stay in his home. Stay in that person's home until you decide to leave that place.

## Matthew 10:12

**Now entering into the house, greet it (ULT)  
When you go into that house, greet the  
people who live there, {and ask God to bring  
them peace (UST)**

<sup>1</sup>The word **it** refers to the **house**. Here, **house** represents the people who live in the house. So, Matthew is saying to greet the people in the house. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "As you enter the house, greet the people who live in it" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Now entering into the [house](#), greet it.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> When you go into that [house](#), greet the people who live there, {and ask God to bring them peace}.

## Matthew 10:13

**indeed the house is worthy...it is not worthy (ULT)**

**If the people who...live in that house receive you...do not receive you (UST)**

Here, **the house** represents those who live in the house. A **worthy** person is a person who is willing to welcome the disciples into their house. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “the people who live in that house receive you well...the people who live in that house do not receive you well” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [worthy](#)
- [worthy](#) (2)
- [peace](#)
- [peace](#) (2)
- [let...be returned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [live in that house](#)
- [receive you](#)
- [do...receive you](#) (2)
- [God will indeed bring them peace](#)
- [then God will not bring them peace](#) (2)
- [then God will not bring them peace](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And if indeed the [house](#) is [worthy](#), let your [peace](#) come upon it, but if it is not [worthy](#), let your [peace](#) be returned to you.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> If the people who [live in that house](#) [receive you](#), [God will indeed bring them peace](#). But if they do not [receive you](#), then [God will not bring them peace](#).



## Matthew 10:14

**shake off the dust from your feet (ULT)**  
**As you leave, shake off the dust from your feet {to warn them that God will judge them for not welcoming you (UST)}**

The phrase **shake off the dust from your feet** was an expression of strong rejection in this culture. It showed that someone did not want even the dust of a town to remain on them. If there is a similar gesture in your culture, you could consider using it here in your translation. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [does...receive](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [do...welcome](#)
- [place](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And whoever does not [receive](#) you nor listen to your words, departing from that [house](#) or city, shake off the dust from your feet.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> If the people who live in any house or town do not [welcome](#) you, nor listen to your message, leave that [place](#). As you leave, shake off the dust from your feet {to warn them that God will judge them for not welcoming you}.

## Matthew 10:15

**for {the} land of Sodom and Gomorrah (ULT)  
he will punish the wicked people who lived in  
Sodom...and Gomorrah (UST)**

Here, **the land of Sodom and Gomorrah** refers to the people who lived in **Sodom and Gomorrah**. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "the people who lived in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**for {the} land of Sodom and Gomorrah (ULT)  
he will punish the wicked people who lived in  
Sodom...and Gomorrah (UST)**

Jesus would have expected his hearers to know that Sodom and Gomorrah were cities filled with many wicked people, and that God would judge these people harshly. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly, as in the UST. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**for that city (ULT)  
But if the people who live in any...city or town reject you, God will punish  
them even more severely (UST)**

Here, **that city** is referring to the city which does not accept Jesus' disciples. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "for the city that does not receive you and listen to your words" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- of Sodom
- Gomorrah
- the} day
- of judgment

### Translation Words - UST

- For certainly
- the time when
- God judges all people
- he will punish the wicked people who lived in Sodom
- Gomorrah

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Truly I say to you, it will be more tolerable for {the} land of Sodom and Gomorrah in {the} day of judgment than for that city.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> For certainly at the time when God judges all people, he will punish the wicked people who lived in Sodom and Gomorrah. But if the people who live in any city or town reject you, God will punish them even more severely.

## Matthew 10:16

### as sheep in the midst of wolves (ULT) you will be as defenseless as sheep among people who are as dangerous as wolves (UST)

Sheep are defenseless animals that **wolves** often attack. Jesus is stating that people who are as dangerous as **wolves** may harm the disciples, who are defenseless like **sheep**. Jesus is not using the same sheep metaphor as he used in 10:6. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: “as defenseless sheep among people who are like dangerous wolves” or “to dangerous places where people might attack you” (See: [Simile](#))

### become...wise as the serpents and harmless as the doves (ULT)

### be...be...as wise as snakes are wise in dangerous situations, and...harmless like pigeons are harmless (UST)

Jesus is telling the disciples they must be cautious like a **snake** and **harmless** like *doves*\* around the dangerous the people. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: “act with wisdom and caution, as well as with innocence” (See: [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Behold, I **send** you **out as sheep** in the midst **of wolves**, so become **wise as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> “Take note of what I am about to say: When I **send** you **out to share my message**, you will be as defenseless as **sheep** among **people who are as dangerous as wolves**. So be **as wise as snakes are wise in dangerous situations**, and be harmless **like pigeons are harmless**.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [send...out](#)
- [as](#)
- [as \(2\)](#)
- [as \(3\)](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [of wolves](#)
- [wise](#)
- [serpents](#)
- [doves](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I send...out to share my message](#)
- [you will be as defenseless as sheep](#)
- [as \(2\)](#)
- [like \(3\)](#)
- [you will be as defenseless as sheep](#)
- [people who are as dangerous as wolves](#)
- [as wise](#)
- [snakes are wise in dangerous situations](#)
- [pigeons are harmless](#)

## Matthew 10:17

### **councils (ULT)** **the members of the governing councils who will judge you (UST)**

The **councils** were groups of leaders who helped solve issues among people in their community. They acted like a court. If your readers would not be familiar with this, you could use term in your language for something like this, or you could use a general expression.

Alternate translation: "members of their community who were in authority" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [councils](#)
- [synagogues](#)

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- [the members of the governing councils who will judge you](#)
- [synagogues](#)

#### **ULT**

<sup>17</sup> But beware of the men, for they will hand you over to [councils](#), and they will whip you in their [synagogues](#);

#### **UST**

<sup>17</sup> Be careful around such people, because they will arrest you and take you to [the members of the governing councils who will judge you](#). They will also whip you in their [synagogues](#).

## Matthew 10:18

**you will...be brought (ULT)  
they will arrest you and take you...in order  
that they may put you on trial and punish you  
(UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you must state who did the action, Matthew implies that “the men” mentioned in the previous verse did it. Alternate translation: “the men will bring you” or “people will bring you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**and you will...be brought before governors  
and kings for my sake (ULT)  
because you belong to me, they will arrest you and take you before  
governors and kings in order that they may put you on trial and punish you  
(UST)**

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the first phrase. Alternate translation: “Because you are my disciples, they will bring you before rulers and kings” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [governors](#)
- [kings](#)
- [a testimony](#)
- [to the Gentiles](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [governors](#)
- [kings](#)
- [But you will testify...about me](#)
- [non-Jews](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> and you will even be brought before [governors](#) and [kings](#) for my sake, as a [testimony](#) to them and [to the Gentiles](#).

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> And because you belong to me, they will arrest you and take you before [governors](#) and [kings](#) in order that they may put you on trial and punish you. [But you will testify](#) to those rulers and to other [non-Jews about me](#).

## Matthew 10:19

### But when they hand you over (ULT) When those people arrest you (UST)

Here, **they** are the same people as in [10:17](#). Alternate translation: “But when people take you to the councils”

### how or what you will speak (ULT) what you will say to them (UST)

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use **and**. Alternate translation: “what you might say” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

### for...will be given to you...what you will say (ULT) because I will tell you...the words that you should say (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “for God will give to you what you should say” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### will be given...to you (ULT) I will tell...you (UST)

Here, **will be given to you** is figurative for God telling the disciples what to say in this situation. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: “God will tell you” (See: [Idiom](#))

### in that hour (ULT) at that time (UST)

Here, **in that hour** means “at that time”. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “at that time” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [hour](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [time](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But when they hand you over, do not be anxious about how or what you will speak, for what you will say will be given to you in that [hour](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> When those people arrest you, do not be worried about what you will say to them, because I will tell you the words that you should say at that [time](#).

## Matthew 10:20

### but (ULT)

### Instead, you will say what (UST)

What follows the word **but** here is in contrast to what was before it. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: “But rather” (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#) )

### the Spirit of your Father (ULT)

### the Holy Spirit of your heavenly Father (UST)

Here, **the Spirit of your Father** is referring to the Holy Spirit, and not a spirit of an earthly father. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “The Holy Spirit, who is of your Heavenly Father” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### of your Father (ULT)

### of your heavenly Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### in you (ULT)

### you (UST)

Alternate translation: “through you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- of...Father

### Translation Words - UST

- Holy Spirit
- heavenly Father

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> For you are not the one speaking, but the Spirit of your Father speaking in you.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> It is not that you will decide what to say. Instead, you will say what the Holy Spirit of your heavenly Father tells you to say.

## Matthew 10:21

**will hand over...brother...brother to death**

**(ULT)**

**will have his own...arrested...a man...brother...**

**and have the leaders kill him (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **death**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "A man will have his brother killed" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**a father {his} child (ULT)**

**fathers will have their own children arrested**

**and have the leaders kill them (UST)**

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "a father will have his child killed" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**children will rise up (ULT)**

**children will have...arrested (UST)**

Here, **to rise up against** is an idiom meaning to rebel against an authority. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "children will rebel against their parents ἐπὶ γονεῖς" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [death](#)
- [put...to death](#)
- [a father](#)
- [his} child](#)
- [children](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a man](#)
- [brother](#)
- [and have the leaders kill him](#)
- [have the leaders kill](#)
- [fathers will have their own...arrested and have the leaders kill them](#)
- [children](#)
- [children](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Now [brother](#) will hand over [brother](#) to [death](#), and [a father {his} child](#), and [children](#) will rise up against parents and [put them to death](#).

### UST

<sup>21</sup> It will be so dangerous for you, that [a man](#) will have his own [brother](#) arrested and [have the leaders kill him](#). Also, [fathers will have their own children arrested and have the leaders kill them](#). Similar to this, [children](#) will have their parents arrested and [have the leaders kill them](#).



## Matthew 10:22

### you will be hated by everyone (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Many people will hate you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### everyone (ULT)

### Many people (UST)

Here, **everyone** is figurative for many people. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your language that expresses this. Alternate translation: "many people" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### because of my name (ULT)

### because you are my disciple (UST)

Here, **name** refers to the Jesus himself. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "because of me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the one...having endured (ULT)

### anyone who...continues to be my disciple (UST)

Jesus is speaking of people in general, not of one particular person. If your readers would misunderstand this, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: "If a person remains" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

### he will be saved (ULT)

### those people God will save (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God will save him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [having endured](#)
- [will be saved](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [you are my disciple](#)
- [continues to be my disciple](#)
- [God will save](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And you will be hated by everyone because of my [name](#), but the one [having endured](#) to {the} end, he [will be saved](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Many people will hate you because [you are my disciple](#). But anyone who [continues to be my disciple](#) until they die, those people [God will save](#).

## Matthew 10:23

### in this city (ULT)

### in one city (UST)

Here, **this** does not refer to a specific **city**, but cities in general. If your readers would misunderstand this, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: “in a city” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

### flee to the next (ULT)

### escape to another city (UST)

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “run away to the next city” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Son of Man (ULT)

### I, the Son...of Man (UST)

Here, Jesus is referring to himself when he says “Son of Man”. If this would be confusing in your language, you can clarify. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### the Son of Man (ULT)

### I, the Son of Man (UST)

**Son of Man** is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [they persecute](#)
- [truly](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [people...try to harm](#)
- [it is certain that](#)
- [I, the Son...of Man](#)
- [throughout Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But whenever [they persecute](#) you in this city, flee to the next, for [truly](#) I say to you, you will certainly not finish going through the cities [of Israel](#) before the [Son of Man](#) comes.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> When [people](#) in one city [try to harm](#) you, escape to another city. For [it is certain that I, the Son of Man](#), will certainly return before you have finished going from one town to another town [throughout Israel](#) and telling people about me.

## Matthew 10:24

**A disciple is not above {his} teacher, nor a slave above his master (ULT)**

**A disciple is not greater than his teacher, and servants are not superior to their master (UST)**

Jesus is using a proverb to teach his disciples a general truth. Jesus is emphasizing that the disciples should not expect people to treat them any better than the people treat Jesus, who is more important than them. You can translate the proverb itself in a way that will be recognized as a proverb and be meaningful in your language and culture. (See: [Proverbs](#))

**nor a slave above his master (ULT)  
and servants are not superior to their master (UST)**

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "nor is a slave above his master" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [A disciple](#)
- [teacher](#)
- [a slave](#)
- [master](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [A disciple](#)
- [than his teacher](#)
- [and servants](#)
- [to...master](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> [A disciple](#) is not above {his} [teacher](#), nor [a slave](#) above his [master](#).

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> [A disciple](#) is not greater [than his teacher](#), [and servants](#) are not superior to their [master](#).



## **Matthew 10:25**

**the slave like his master (ULT)**  
**a...his teacher, or...servant better than they**  
**treat...master, you can expect that people will**  
**mistreat you, because they...like (UST)**

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "it is enough for a slave to be like his master" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**If they called the master of the house**  
**Beelzebul (ULT)**  
**the ruler of a household, and they call me**  
**Satan. If they act that (UST)**

Jesus refers to himself as **the master of the house**. This is figurative, meaning that he is the most important person among the group of him and disciples. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "If they call me, who is like the master of the house, Beelzebul" or "If they call me, who is more important, Beelzebul" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Beelzebul (ULT)**  
**Satan (UST)**

The name **Beelzebul** could be translated: (1) as "Beelzebul" or (2) with its original, intended meaning of "Satan". (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

**the members of his household (ULT)**  
**they will act (UST)**

Here, **the members of his household** is figuratively referring to Jesus' disciples. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "Jesus' disciples, who are like the members of his house" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [for the disciple](#)
- [like](#)
- [like \(2\)](#)
- [teacher](#)
- [slave](#)
- [master](#)
- [master of the house](#)
- [they called](#)
- [Beelzebul](#)

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> It is enough [for the disciple](#) that he might be [like](#) his [teacher](#), and the [slave like](#) his [master](#). If [they called](#) the [master of the house Beelzebul](#), how much worse the [members of his household](#)!

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> You do not expect that people will treat a [student better than they treat](#) his teacher, or that they will treat a [servant better than they treat](#) his master. Similarly, because I am your [teacher](#) and [master, you can expect that people will mistreat you, because they have mistreated me](#). I am [like](#) the [ruler of a household](#), and [they call](#) me [Satan](#). If they act that poorly toward me, surely [they will act](#) poorly towards you"

- members of...household

## Translation Words - UST

- student better than they treat
- servant better than they treat
- teacher
- master, you can expect that people will mistreat you, because they
- ruler of a household
- have mistreated me. I am
- like (2)
- they call
- Satan
- they will act





## **Matthew 10:26**

**nothing...there is...concealed that will not be revealed, and hidden, that will not be made known (ULT)**

**everything...which is done in secret God will reveal when he judges the world (UST)**

Here, **there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed** means the same thing as **hidden, that will not be made known**. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: "there is nothing hidden that will not be revealed" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Therefore, do not **fear** them, for there is nothing concealed that will not **be revealed**, and hidden, that will not **be made known**.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> "Do not **be afraid** of those people. For everything which is done in secret **God will reveal when he judges the world**.

**for there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed, and hidden, that will not be made known (ULT)**

**For everything which is done in secret God will reveal when he judges the world (UST)**

Here, Jesus uses a proverb to teach his disciples. Jesus is explaining that all of the evil which people have done in secret, God will reveal when he judges people. you can translate the proverb itself in a way that will be recognized as a proverb and be meaningful in your language and culture. (See: [Proverbs](#))

**nothing...there is...concealed that will not be revealed (ULT)**

**everything...which is done in secret God will reveal when he judges the world (UST)**

If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "everything which is hidden will be revealed" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**nothing...there is...concealed that will not be revealed, and hidden, that will not be made known (ULT)**

**everything...which is done in secret God will reveal when he judges the world (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God has not concealed anything which he will not reveal, nor hidden anything which he will not cause other people to know" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [do...fear](#)
- [will...be revealed](#)
- [will...be made known](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Do...be afraid](#)

- God will reveal when he judges the world
- God will reveal when he judges the world



## **Matthew 10:27**

**What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight, and what you hear in {your} ear, proclaim upon the housetops (ULT)**  
**You should say to many people the message which I have told you privately. Likewise, you should shout from the places where many people can hear you that which I told you quietly (UST)**

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that the disciples should tell everyone what he tells the disciples in private. Alternate translation: "Tell everyone in public what I tell you privately" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight (ULT)**  
**You should say to many people the message which I have told you privately (UST)**

Here, **darkness** is a metonym for "private, and **daylight** is a metonym for "public." If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "What I tell you privately, say in public" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**what you hear in {your} ear (ULT)**  
**that which I told you quietly (UST)**

Here, **what you hear in {your} ear** is a way of referring to whispering. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "what I whisper to you" (See: [Idiom](#))

**proclaim upon the housetops (ULT)**  
**you should shout from the places where many people can hear you (UST)**

Here, **housetops** refers to any high place where all people can hear a person speaking. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "speak loudly in a public place where many people can hear you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [darkness](#)
- [daylight](#)
- [proclaim](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to many people](#)
- [privately](#)
- [you should shout](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> What I tell you in the [darkness](#), say in the [daylight](#), and what you hear in {your} ear, [proclaim](#) upon the housetops.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> You should say [to many people](#) the message which I have told you [privately](#). Likewise, [you should shout](#) from the places where many people can hear you that which I told you quietly.

## Matthew 10:28

### But (ULT) Instead (UST)

Matthew contrasts people with God by using the word **but**. People are only able to kill our physical bodies, but God **is able** to kill both our physical bodies and our spiritual souls. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: "But rather" (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#) )

### Gehenna (ULT) hell (UST)

Jesus figuratively uses the name of **Gehenna**, where refuse was thrown and fires burned continually, to mean hell. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "Hell" (See: [Metaphor](#) )

### Gehenna (ULT) hell (UST)

Gehenna is the name for a place, the Valley of Hinnom just outside Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- do...be afraid
- fear (2)
- body
- body (2)
- soul
- soul (2)
- to destroy
- Gehenna

### Translation Words - UST

- Do...be afraid
- fear (2)
- your body
- your body (2)
- soul
- your soul (2)
- to destroy
- hell

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> And do not **be afraid** of the ones killing the **body** but not being able to kill the **soul**. But instead, **fear** the one being able **to destroy** both **soul** and **body** in **Gehenna**.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Do not **be afraid** of people who are able to kill **your body** but are not able to destroy your **soul**. Instead, **fear** God, because he is able **to destroy** both **your body** and **your soul** in **hell**.





## **Matthew 10:29**

**Are not two sparrows sold for an assarion?  
And yet not one of them will fall to the ground  
apart from your Father (ULT)  
Sparrows have so little value that you can buy  
two of them for only one small coin. But when  
any sparrow dies, God, your heavenly Father,  
knows it. For he knows everything (UST)**

Jesus uses this proverb to express that even though sparrows are worth very little money, God still watches over them because he created them. (See: [Proverbs](#))

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> Are not two sparrows sold for an assarion? And yet not one of them will fall to the ground apart from your Father.

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> Sparrows have so little value that you can buy two of them for only one small coin. But when any sparrow dies, God, your heavenly Father, knows it. For he knows everything.

**Are not two sparrows sold for an assarion (ULT)  
Sparrows have so little value that you can buy two of them for only one small  
coin (UST)**

Jesus uses this question to teach his disciples about how much God cares about them. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "Sparrows have so little value that you can buy two of them for only one small coin." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**sparrows (ULT)**

**Sparrows (UST)**

These **sparrows** are very small, seed-eating birds. Alternate translation: "small birds" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**for an assarion (ULT)**

**for only one small coin (UST)**

An **assarion** refers to a copper coin worth about one-sixteenth of a day's wage for a laborer. This is often translated as the least valuable coin available in your country. Alternate translation: "very little money" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**Are not two sparrows sold for an assarion (ULT)**

**Sparrows have so little value that you can buy two of them for only one small  
coin (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Do people not sell two sparrows for an assarion" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**not one of them will fall to the ground apart from your Father (ULT)  
when any sparrow dies, God, your heavenly Father, knows it. For he knows  
everything (UST)**

If this double negative would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate it as a positive statement. Alternate translation: “your Father knows when even one sparrow dies and falls to the ground” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**will fall to the ground (ULT)  
dies (UST)**

Here, **will fall to the ground** is a polite way of referring to the sparrow dying. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a different polite way of referring to this or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: “will die” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**your Father (ULT)  
God...your...heavenly Father, knows it. For he knows everything (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [Father](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [God...heavenly Father, knows it. For he knows everything](#)

## Matthew 10:30

**your...even the hairs of...head are all numbered (ULT)**

**He knows so much about you...that he even knows how many hairs you have on your head (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God knows even how many hairs are on your head" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But even the hairs of your [head](#) are all numbered.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> He knows so much about you that he even knows how many hairs you have on your [head](#)!

## Matthew 10:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- do...fear

### Translation Words - UST

- do...be afraid of people who threaten to kill you

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Therefore, do not fear; you are more valuable than many sparrows.

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> God values you much more than he values many sparrows. So, do not be afraid of people who threaten to kill you!

**Matthew 10:32****my Father (ULT)****my Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**before men (ULT)****in front of people who want to harm them (UST)**

Although the term **men** is masculine, Jesus is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: "people" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**in {the} heavens (ULT)****in heaven (UST)**

See how you translated **in the heavens** in [5:16](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- will confess
- will...confess
- Father
- the} heavens

**Translation Words - UST**

- are willing to say that they belong to me
- I will also acknowledge
- Father
- heaven

**ULT**

<sup>32</sup> Therefore, everyone who will confess about me before men, I will also confess about him before my Father in {the} heavens.

**UST**

<sup>32</sup> If people are willing to say that they belong to me in front of people who want to harm them, I will also acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven that they belong to me.

**Matthew 10:33**

**before men (ULT)**  
**in front of others who want to harm them (UST)**

See how you translated **before men** in the previous verse. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**in {the} heavens (ULT)**  
**in heaven (UST)**

See how you translated this in the previous verse. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Father](#)
- [the} heavens](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Father](#)
- [heaven](#)

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> But whoever denies me before men, I will also deny him before my [Father](#) in [{the} heavens](#).

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> But if they are afraid to say in front of others who want to harm them that they belong to me, I will tell my [Father](#), who is in [heaven](#), that they are not mine.”

## Matthew 10:34

### upon the earth (ULT) to earth (UST)

Here, **upon the earth** refers to the people who live on **the earth**. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "to the people of the earth" or "among people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### but a sword (ULT) Because I have come, some of those who follow me...will die (UST)

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "but I have come to bring a sword" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### a sword (ULT) will die (UST)

The **sword** is figurative for division and fighting. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "division among people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [peace](#)
- [peace \(2\)](#)
- [earth](#)
- [a sword](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to earth](#)
- [in peace](#)
- [Because I have come, some of those who follow me \(2\)](#)
- [will die](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Do not think that I came to bring [peace](#) upon the [earth](#). I did not come to bring [peace](#), but [a sword](#).

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> "Do not think that I came [to earth](#) to cause people to live together [in peace](#). [Because I have come, some of those who follow me will die](#)."



## Matthew 10:35

**and a daughter against her mother, and a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law (ULT)**

**Similarly, some daughters will oppose their mothers because they believe in me, as well as some daughter-in-laws will oppose their mother-in-laws (UST)**

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "and to set a daughter against her mother, and to set a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [father](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fathers because the fathers believe in me](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> For I came to set a man against his [father](#), and a daughter against her mother, and a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law;

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> For example, because I have come, some sons will oppose their [fathers because the fathers believe in me](#). Similarly, some daughters will oppose their mothers because they believe in me, as well as some daughter-in-laws will oppose their mother-in-laws.

## Matthew 10:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the} enemies
- of...household

### Translation Words - UST

- enemies
- will be members of...household

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> and {the} enemies of a man {will be} the ones of his household.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Because a person belongs to me, sometimes a person's enemies will be members of his own household!

## Matthew 10:37

**is not worthy of me...is not worthy of me (ULT)**  
**are not worthy to belong to me...are not**  
**worthy to belong to me (UST)**

See how you translated **worthy** in 10:10.

### Translation Words - ULT

- loving
- loving (2)
- father
- worthy
- worthy (2)
- son

### Translation Words - UST

- People who are more afraid of being harmed by
- those who are more afraid of being harmed by (2)
- their father
- worthy to belong to
- worthy to belong to (2)
- their son

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> The one **loving father** or mother more than me is not **worthy** of me; and the one **loving son** or daughter more than me is not **worthy** of me.

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> **People who are more afraid of being harmed by their father** or mother than they love me are not **worthy to belong to** me. And **those who are more afraid of being harmed by their son** or daughter more than they love me are not **worthy to belong to** me.

**Matthew 10:38**

**does not take up his cross and follow after me (ULT)**

**If you are not ready to die...because you belong to me (UST)**

Here, the **cross** is figurative for people harming or killing you because you belong to Jesus. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "does not suffer because they belong to me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**ULT**

<sup>38</sup> And whoever does not take up his [cross](#) and follow after me is not [worthy](#) of me.

**UST**

<sup>38</sup> [If you are not ready to die](#) because you belong to me, [then you are not worthy to belong to me](#).

**me is not worthy (ULT)**

**because you belong to me...then you are not worthy to belong to me (UST)**

See how you translated **worthy** in the previous verse.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [cross](#)
- [worthy](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [If you are not ready to die](#)
- [then you are not worthy to belong to me](#)



## **Matthew 10:39**

**The one having found his life will lose it, and the one having lost his life for my sake will find it (ULT)**

**People who deny that they belong to me in order to escape dying will not live with God eternally. But people who are willing to lose their lives because people hate them for belonging to me will live with God eternally (UST)**

Jesus uses a proverb to teach his disciples about following him. Since Jesus does not explain its meaning, you can translate the proverb itself in a way that will be recognized as a proverb and be meaningful in your language and culture. Alternate translation: "Those who desire to not have people hurt them because they belong to me will not spend eternity with God. But those who accept harm from people because they belong to me will spend eternity with God" (See: [Proverbs](#))

**The one having found...will find (ULT)**

**People who deny that they belong to me in order to escape dying...will live with God eternally (UST)**

Here, **found** and **find** are figurative for obtaining something. If your readers would not understand what it means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "The one who retains...will gain" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**will lose it (ULT)**

**will not live with God eternally (UST)**

Here, Jesus is saying that if a person tries to save his physical life from people who want to kill him for belonging to Jesus, God will punish him after he dies. But if a person suffers during his life on earth because he belongs to Jesus, God will not punish him after he dies. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly, as in the UST. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [life \(2\)](#)
- [will lose](#)
- [having lost](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [deny that they belong to me in order to escape dying](#)
- [lives \(2\)](#)
- [will not live with God eternally](#)
- [are willing to lose](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> The one having found his [life will lose](#) it, and the one [having lost](#) his [life](#) for my sake will find it.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> People who [deny that they belong to me in order to escape dying will not live with God eternally](#). But people who [are willing to lose](#) their [lives](#) because people hate them for belonging to me will live with God eternally."

## Matthew 10:40

### The one receiving you receives me (ULT) To God everyone who welcomes you it is as though they welcome me (UST)

Jesus says that people **receive me** when they receive the disciples because Jesus is always with his disciples, and so it is like they receive him. If your readers would not understand what it means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "The one who receives you, my disciples, it will be like he also receives me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the one receiving me receives the one having sent me (ULT) to him everyone who welcomes me welcomes God, who is the one who sent me (UST)

Here, **the one receiving me receives the one who sent me** means that when someone **receives** Jesus, it is like **receiving** God the Father, who sent Jesus. If your readers would not understand what it means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "the one who receives me, it is like he receives my Father who sent me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [receiving](#)
- [receives](#)
- [receiving](#) (2)
- [receives](#) (2)
- [having sent](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [welcomes](#)
- [it is as though they welcome](#)
- [welcomes](#) (2)
- [welcomes](#) (2)
- [God, who is...one who sent](#)

#### ULT

<sup>40</sup> The one [receiving](#) you [receives](#) me, and the one [receiving](#) me [receives](#) the one [having sent](#) me.

#### UST

<sup>40</sup> "To God everyone who [welcomes](#) you [it is as though they welcome](#) me. Likewise, to him everyone who [welcomes](#) me [welcomes God, who is the one who sent](#) me.





## **Matthew 10:41**

**The one receiving a prophet in {the} name of a prophet will receive a reward of a prophet, and the one receiving a righteous {man} in {the} name of a righteous {man} will receive a reward of a righteous {man} (ULT)**

**To those who welcome someone because they know that person is a prophet God will give the same reward that he gives to prophets.**

**Likewise, to those who welcome a person because they know that person is righteous God will give the reward that he gives to righteous people (UST)**

Jesus tells this proverb to show how important it is for people to receive his disciples. You can translate the proverb itself in a way that will be recognized as a proverb and be meaningful in your language and culture. Alternate translation: "People who welcome one of God's prophets, God will reward him as he rewards the prophets. And people who welcome someone who obeys God, God will reward him like that person" (See: [Proverbs](#))

**The one receiving a prophet in {the} name of a prophet will receive a reward of a prophet, and the one receiving a righteous {man} in {the} name of a righteous {man} will receive a reward of a righteous {man} (ULT)**

**To those who welcome someone because they know that person is a prophet God will give the same reward that he gives to prophets. Likewise, to those who welcome a person because they know that person is righteous God will give the reward that he gives to righteous people (UST)**

This **reward** is referring to living with God forever. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "To the one who receives the prophet, God will give him the reward of living with him forever, as he gives to the prophets. And to the one who receives the person who obeys God, God will give to him the reward of living with him forever, which he gives to those who obey him." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [receiving](#)
- [will receive](#)
- [receiving](#) (2)
- [will receive](#) (2)
- [a prophet](#)
- [of a prophet](#)
- [of a prophet](#) (2)
- [the} name](#)
- [the} name](#) (2)
- [a reward](#)
- [a reward](#) (2)

## ULT

<sup>41</sup> The one [receiving a prophet](#) in {the} name of a prophet will receive a reward of a prophet, and the one [receiving a righteous {man}](#) in {the} name of a righteous {man} will receive a reward of a righteous {man}.

## UST

<sup>41</sup> To those who [welcome someone because they know that person is a prophet](#) God will give the same reward that he gives to prophets. Likewise, to those who [welcome a person because they know that person is righteous](#) God will give the reward that he gives to righteous people.

- a righteous {man
- of a righteous {man
- of a righteous {man (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- welcome
- God will give
- welcome (2)
- God will give (2)
- someone because they know that person is a prophet
- someone because they know that person is a prophet
- that he gives to prophets (2)
- someone because they know that person is a prophet
- a person because they know that person is righteous (2)
- the same reward
- the reward (2)
- a person because they know that person is righteous
- a person because they know that person is righteous
- that he gives to righteous people (2)

## Matthew 10:42

### whoever gives...to drink (ULT) if a person gives...water when they are thirsty (UST)

Jesus is speaking of people in general, not of one particular person. If your readers would misunderstand this, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: "If a person gives...to drink" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

### to one of these little ones (ULT) a person...a little child (UST)

The phrase **these little ones** refers figuratively to Jesus' disciples. If your readers would not understand what **little ones** means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "one of my disciples, who are like my children" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### his reward (ULT) then God will...reward...them (UST)

See the note on **reward** in the previous verse. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the} name
- of a disciple
- truly
- he will...lose
- reward

### Translation Words - UST

- because they know that you are one of my disciples
- because they know that you are one of my disciples
- then God will...reward
- then God will...reward
- surely

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> And whoever gives to one of these little ones a cup of cold water to drink only in {the} name of a disciple, truly I say to you, he will certainly not lose his reward."

### UST

<sup>42</sup> And if a person gives a little child water when they are thirsty because they know that you are one of my disciples, then God will surely reward them"

# Matthew 11

## Matthew 11 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted material in 11:10.

Some scholars believe that [Matthew 11:20](#) begins a new stage in the ministry of Christ because of Israel's rejection of him.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Hidden revelation

After [Matthew 11:20](#), Jesus begins to reveal information about himself and about the plans of God the Father, while hiding this information from those who reject him ([Matthew 11:25](#)).

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “The kingdom of heaven is near”

No one knows for sure whether the “kingdom of heaven” was present or still coming when John spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase **at hand**, but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrases “is coming near” and “has come near.”

## Matthew 11:1

### And it happened that (ULT)

**And it happened** is the beginning of a new part of the story where Matthew tells of how Jesus responded to disciples of John the Baptist. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: "Some time later" (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### to teach and to preach (ULT)

Here, the phrases **to teach** and **to preach** mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize that Jesus was teaching the people there. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "to proclaim many things" (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to...12...disciples](#)
- [to...disciples](#)
- [to teach](#)
- [to preach](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [twelve...disciples](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [to](#)
- [proclaim his message](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And it happened that when [Jesus](#) had finished giving orders to his [12 disciples](#), he departed from there [to teach](#) and [to preach](#) in their cities.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> When [Jesus](#) had finished instructing his [twelve disciples](#) about what they should do, and after sending them away, he went [to proclaim his message](#) in other towns in that area.

## Matthew 11:2

**John...John...having heard in the prison about (ULT)**

**While...John the Baptizer was in prison, he heard (UST)**

Matthew had not yet told his audience why **John** was **in prison**. Since Matthew explains the story of how John ended up in prison in 14:4-5, you do not need to tell your reader why here. (See: [When to Keep Information Implicit](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- John
- prison
- deeds
- of Christ
- having sent
- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- John the Baptizer
- prison
- what...was doing
- Jesus the Messiah
- So he sent some of...to Jesus
- disciples

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Now [John](#), having heard in the [prison](#) about the [deeds of Christ](#), [having sent](#) through his [disciples](#),

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> While [John the Baptizer](#) was in [prison](#), he heard [what Jesus the Messiah was doing](#). So he sent some of his [disciples](#) to [Jesus](#)



## Matthew 11:3

**the one coming (ULT)**  
**the Messiah {whom the prophets said} would come (UST)**

Here, **the one coming** is referring to the prophet whom God promised to send. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: “the one whom God promised to send” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**or are we expecting another (ULT)**  
**or is someone else coming that we should expect (UST)**

John's disciples are leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “or should we expect someone else to come after you” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**are we expecting another (ULT)**  
**is someone else coming that we should expect (UST)**

Here, the word **we** is referring to either (1) John's disciples, or (2) the Jewish people in general. It is not including Jesus. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> said to him, “Are you the one coming, or are we expecting another?”

### UST

<sup>3</sup> to ask him, “Are you the Messiah {whom the prophets said} would come, or is someone else coming that we should expect?”

## Matthew 11:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- report
- to John

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus answered
- report
- to John

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And answering, Jesus said to them, "Having gone, report to John what you see and hear.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Jesus answered John's disciples, "Go back and report to John what you hear me teaching people and what you see me doing.



## **Matthew 11:5**

**The} blind regain {their} sight, and {the} lame walk, lepers are cleansed, and {the} deaf hear, and {the} dead are raised, and {the} poor are being told the gospel (ULT)**

**I am making blind people to see again and I am making lame people able to walk. I am healing people who have leprosy and making them able to enter back into the community. I am making deaf people to hear again and I am making dead people to become alive again. I am telling the poor people God's good news (UST)**

Here, Jesus lists all of the things which he has done to the people during his ministry. Use a form in your language that someone would use to list things that they have done. (See: [Litany](#))

**The} blind...the} lame...lepers...the} deaf...the} dead...the} poor (ULT)  
blind people...lame people...people who have leprosy...deaf people...dead people...the poor people (UST)**

Jesus is using the adjectives **blind**, **lame**, **lepers**, **deaf**, **dead**, and **poor** as nouns in order to describe a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this with a noun phrase, as in the UST. (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**lepers are cleansed (ULT)**

**I am healing people who have leprosy and making them able to enter back into the community (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I am making lepers clean" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the} dead are raised (ULT)**

**I am making dead people to become alive again (UST)**

Here, the word **raised** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "I am causing people to become alive again" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the} dead are raised (ULT)**

**I am making dead people to become alive again (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you must state who did the action, Jesus implies that he did it. Alternate translation: "I am raising dead people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## ULT

<sup>5</sup> {The} blind regain {their} sight, and {the} lame walk, lepers are cleansed, and {the} deaf hear, and {the} dead are raised, and {the} poor are being told the gospel.

## UST

<sup>5</sup> I am making blind people to see again and I am making lame people able to walk. I am healing people who have leprosy and making them able to enter back into the community. I am making deaf people to hear again and I am making dead people to become alive again. I am telling the poor people God's good news.

**the} poor are being told the gospel (ULT)**  
**I am telling...the poor people...God's good news (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you must state who did the action, Jesus implies that he did it. Alternate translation: "I am telling the poor good news" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- walk
- lepers
- are cleansed
- the} dead
- are raised
- are being told the gospel

**Translation Words - UST**

- I am making...able to walk
- I am healing...and making them able to enter back into the community
- people who have leprosy
- I am making...to become alive again
- dead people
- I am telling...God's good news

## Matthew 11:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- blessed

### Translation Words - UST

- God is pleased with people

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And **blessed** is whoever does not stumble over me.”

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Also tell John that I am teaching people that **God is pleased with people** who do not get offended when they see what I do and hear what I teach.

## Matthew 11:7

### Now {as} these were going on their way (ULT) As John's disciples went away (UST)

Here, the word **these** refers to John's disciples. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "As John's disciples left" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### What did you go out in the wilderness to see— a reed being shaken by {the} wind (ULT)

Jesus uses a question to cause the people to think about what kind of person John the Baptist is. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "Surely you did not go out to the wilderness to see a reed being shaken by the wind!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### a reed being shaken by {the} wind (ULT) like a reed which is blown around in the wind (UST)

Here, the phrase **reed being shaken by the wind** is figuratively referring to a person who is easily affected by the people around them as a reed is affected by the wind. If your readers would not understand what it means in this context, you could use a simile, as in the UST. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "a man who is easily affected by other people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### a reed being shaken by {the} wind (ULT) like a reed which is blown around in the wind (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "a reed which the wind is blowing around" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [John](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [a reed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [John](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [like a reed](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now {as} these were going on their way, [Jesus](#) began to say to the crowds concerning [John](#), "What did you go out in the [wilderness](#) to see—a [reed](#) being shaken by {the} wind?"

### UST

<sup>7</sup> As John's disciples went away, [Jesus](#) began to talk to the crowd of people {following him} about [John](#). He said to them, "When you went out into the [wilderness](#) {to hear John teach and to have him baptize you}, you certainly were not expecting to see {the kind of person} that is easily influenced by others, [like a reed](#) which is blown around in the wind!"



## Matthew 11:8

### But what did you go out to see—a man dressed in soft clothing (ULT)

Jesus uses these questions to cause the people to think about what kind of person John the Baptist is. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “Likewise, surely you did not go out to see a man clothed in expensive clothing” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### But what did you go out to see (ULT)

Here, Jesus leaves out the word “desert” from the previous verse. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply this word from the context. Alternate translation: “But what did you go out to the desert to see” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [houses](#)
- [of the kings](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [kings](#)
- [palaces and not in the wilderness](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But what did you go out to see—a man dressed in soft clothing? Behold, the ones wearing soft clothing are in the [houses of the kings](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> What did you expect to see? Surely not a man who was wearing expensive clothes. You know very well that people who wear clothes like that reside in [kings' palaces and not in the wilderness](#).

## Matthew 11:9

### But what did you go out to see—a prophet (ULT)

Jesus uses a question to make the people think about what kind of man John the Baptist is. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “But surely you went out to the desert to see a prophet!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### greater than a prophet (ULT) John is not just any ordinary prophet, but he is greater than all of the prophets (UST)

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “you went out to see a much more important prophet” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a prophet
- a prophet

### Translation Words - UST

- A prophet
- John is not just any ordinary prophet, but he is greater than all of the prophets

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But what did you go out to see—a prophet? Yes, I say to you, and greater than a prophet.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> What did you expect to see? A prophet? Yes, but let me tell you this: John is not just any ordinary prophet, but he is greater than all of the prophets.

## Matthew 11:10

**This is {the one} about whom it is written (ULT)**

**John the Baptist is the one to whom God was referring when someone wrote in the scriptures and said (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "This is the one whom the prophets wrote about" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**before your face (ULT)  
ahead of you (UST)**

Here, the phrase **before your face** is an idiom which means that "the messenger" was sent first, and then the second person came after them. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you could clarify. Alternate translation: "first" or "before you". (See: [Idiom](#))

**will prepare your way before you (ULT)**

That the messenger will **prepare your way** represents preparing the people for the Lord's arrival. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you can express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "who will prepare the people for your arrival" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [it is written](#)
- [am sending](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [face](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [when someone wrote in the scriptures and said](#)
- [am sending](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [ahead of](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> This is {the one} about whom [it is written](#), 'Behold, I [am sending](#) my [messenger](#) before your [face](#), who will prepare your way before you.'

### UST

<sup>10</sup> John the Baptist is the one to whom God was referring [when someone wrote in the scriptures and said](#), 'See, I [am sending](#) my [messenger ahead of](#) you. He will prepare people for your coming.'

## Matthew 11:11

### among {the ones} born of women (ULT) Of all the people who have ever lived (UST)

The phrase those born of women is an idiom that refers to all people. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: “of all the people who have ever lived” (See: [Idiom](#))

### among {the ones} born of women (ULT) Of all the people who have ever lived (UST)

If you would like to retain the idiom but your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “among those whom women have borne” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### among {the ones} born of women there has not arisen one greater than John the Baptist (ULT)

Jesus uses a negative figure of speech to express how great John the Baptist is. If this is confusing in your language, you can express the meaning positively. Alternate translation: “Among those who have been born of human origin, John the Baptist is the greatest that has arisen” (See: [Litotes](#))

### the least important in the kingdom of the heavens

See how you translated **kingdom of the heavens** in [3:2](#) Alternate translation: “but those who are the least important among the people whom God rules over are greater than he” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Truly](#)
- [there has...arisen](#)
- [John the Baptist](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [What I say to you is true](#)
- [Of all the people who have ever lived](#)
- [John the Baptist](#)
- [among his people who he rules](#)
- [among his people who he rules](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> [Truly](#) I say to you, among {the ones} born of women [there has](#) not [arisen](#) one greater than [John the Baptist](#), but the least important in the [kingdom of the heavens](#) is greater than he.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [What I say to you is true](#): [Of all the people who have ever lived](#), God considers [John the Baptist](#) to be the greatest. At the same time, God considers those that seem unimportant [among his people who he rules](#) to be even more important than John is.

## Matthew 11:12

### But from the days of John the Baptist (ULT) From the time that John the Baptist preached openly in public (UST)

The word **days** is an idiom referring to a specific time period. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "from the time of John the Baptist's preaching" (See: [Idiom](#))

### the...the kingdom...of the heavens...suffers violence, and violent men take it by force (ULT)

This verse is difficult to understand, and many scholars disagree on its meaning. The different options are (1) that it refers to people attacking God's kingdom and the people who are his. Alternate translation: "The kingdom of the heavens is attacked violently, and many violent people try to conquer it" or (2) It also be understood instead as referring to the God's kingdom triumphing in the world. Alternate translation: "The kingdom of the heavens triumphs forcefully, and powerful men have control over it".

### Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [of John the Baptist](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)
- [take...by force](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [time that](#)
- [John the Baptist preached openly in public](#)
- [have been causing harm](#)
- [to those who are God's people](#)
- [to those who are God's people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But from the [days of John the Baptist](#) until now, the [kingdom of the heavens](#) suffers violence, and violent men [take it by force](#).

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> From the [time that John the Baptist preached openly in public](#) until now, some violent people [have been causing harm to those who are God's people](#).

## Matthew 11:13

### all...the prophets and the law have prophesied until John (ULT)

Here, **the prophets and the law** refer to the things that the prophets and Moses wrote in scripture. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "these are the things that the prophets and Moses have prophesied through the scriptures until the time of John the Baptist" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [have prophesied](#)
- [law](#)
- [John](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [prophets](#)
- [wrote about it and Moses wrote in...about it](#)
- [law](#)
- [John the Baptist](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For all the [prophets](#) and the [law](#) have [prophesied](#) until [John](#);

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> Everything that I am saying about John is proven true by the fact that the [prophets wrote about it and Moses wrote in the law about it](#). All of these wrote about [John the Baptist](#) before he was alive.

**Matthew 11:14****if you are willing (ULT)****if you are willing (UST)**

Here, **you** is plural and refers to the crowd, and is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**and if you are willing to accept {it}, he is Elijah, the one being about to come (ULT)**

**Not only that, but if you are willing to try to understand this, I will tell you that John is in fact like the prophet Elijah, who the prophets said would come a second time in the future (UST)**

Awaiting Perry's comment

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [to accept {it}](#)
- [Elijah](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to try to understand this, I will tell you that](#)
- [the prophet Elijah](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> and if you are willing [to accept {it}](#), he is [Elijah](#), the one being about to come.

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> Not only that, but if you are willing [to try to understand this, I will tell you that](#) John is in fact like [the prophet Elijah](#), who the prophets said would come a second time in the future.

## Matthew 11:15

**The one having ears to hear, let him hear (ULT)**

**Whoever is willing to listen, listen to what I say (UST)**

The phrase **has ears** here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "Whoever is willing to understand, let him understand and obey" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The one having ears to hear, let him hear (ULT)**  
**Whoever is willing to listen, listen to what I say (UST)**

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. Alternate translation: "If you are willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> The one having ears to hear, let him hear.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Whoever is willing to listen, listen to what I say.



## Matthew 11:16

### Now to what will I compare this generation (ULT)

Jesus uses a question to introduce a comparison between the people he was speaking to and children who are in the marketplace. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "But I will tell you what this generation is like." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### this generation (ULT)

### Many of you who are alive now (UST)

The phrase **this generation** is likely referring to either, (1) the crowd around him (2) the religious leaders of Israel, or (3) the group of Israelites in general who have rejected Jesus and John. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "you in this crowd" or "the rebellious group of religious leaders" or "Israel" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### the marketplace (ULT)

### the marketplace (UST)

A **marketplace** is a large, open-air area where people buy and sell items such as food and clothing. Use a term in your language that expresses this meaning. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will I compare](#)
- [like](#)
- [generation](#)
- [children](#)
- [are calling out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Many of you who are alive now](#)
- [are like](#)
- [are like](#)
- [children](#)
- [call out](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Now to what [will I compare](#) this [generation](#)? It is [like children](#) sitting in the marketplace, who [are calling out](#) to one another,

### UST

<sup>16</sup> [Many of you who are alive now are like children](#) in the marketplace. Some of them [call out](#) to their friends,

## Matthew 11:17

saying, 'We played a flute for you, and you did not dance. We mourned, and you did not weep (ULT)

and say to them, 'We played happy music on the flute for you, but you refused to dance! Then we sang sad funeral songs for you, but you refused to cry (UST)

Jesus continues the parable from the previous verse, describing the people who he referred to as "this generation". They are like a group of children who will not listen to another group of children. The first group of children who are speaking are Jesus and John. If it would be helpful to your readers, you can state this explicitly, or in a way that is meaningful in your language. (See: [Parables](#))

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> saying, 'We played a flute for you, and you did not dance. We mourned, and you did not weep.'

### UST

<sup>17</sup> and say to them, 'We played happy music on the flute for you, but you refused to dance! Then we sang sad funeral songs for you, but you refused to cry!'

**We played a flute for you (ULT)**

**We played happy music on the flute for you (UST)**

**We** refers to the children sitting in the marketplace, and **you** is plural and refers to the other group of children. If this might confuse your readers, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "We children played a flute for all of you kids" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**We mourned (ULT)**

**Then we sang sad funeral songs for you (UST)**

The phrase **We mourned** has to do with the mourning ceremonies that they performed during that time. If a person died, they would hire a group of people to help them mourn. If it would be helpful for your readers, you can state this explicitly. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- We played a flute

### Translation Words - UST

- We played happy music on the flute

## Matthew 11:18

**neither eating nor drinking (ULT)**  
**He did not eat good food and did not drink wine like most people do (UST)**

This does not mean that John never ate food. It means he fasted often, and when he ate, he did not eat expensive food or drink. If it would be helpful for your readers, you can state this explicitly. Alternate translation: “frequently fasting from food and wine” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they say, ‘He has a demon (ULT)**  
**you rejected him and said, ‘A demon is controlling him (UST)**

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “they say that he has a demon” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [a demon](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [John the Baptist](#)
- [A demon](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> For [John](#) came neither eating nor drinking, and they say, ‘He has [a demon](#).’

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> I say this because you did not listen to [John the Baptist](#) when he came to you. He did not eat good food and did not drink wine like most people do, yet you rejected him and said, ‘[A demon](#) is controlling him!’



## **Matthew 11:19**

**The Son of Man came (ULT)**  
**I also say this because I, the Son of Man, was not like John when I came (UST)**

Jesus uses the title **Son of Man** to referring to himself. If it would be helpful to your readers, you can change it to first person, as in the UST. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**The Son of Man (ULT)**  
**I, the Son of Man (UST)**

The phrase **Son of Man** is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**came...eating and drinking (ULT)**  
**I also say this because...was not like John when I came...I eat the same food and drink wine as other people do (UST)**

The phrase **The Son of Man came eating and drinking** is comparing what Jesus did with what John the Baptist did. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: "But the Son of Man came eating and drinking" (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

**they say, 'Behold a man, a glutton and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners (ULT)**

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "they say that he is a man who is a glutton and a drunkard, and a friend of tax collectors and those who disobey God" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**a glutton...a drunkard (ULT)**  
**eats too much food...drinks too much wine (UST)**

The word **glutton** refers to a person who eats too much food. The word **drunkard** refers to a person who drinks too much wine and gets drunk because of it. Use words in your language that refer to these things. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**But wisdom has been justified by her children (ULT)**  
**But God shows his wisdom through how people's lives are changed by my ministry and John's ministry (UST)**

The proverb **wisdom has been justified by her children** is figurative, where **wisdom** is referring to Jesus and John the Baptist teaching about God's wisdom, which causes people to be saved. The word **children** is referring to those who are influenced by their ministry. You can translate the proverb itself in a way that will be recognized as a proverb and be meaningful in your language and culture. Alternate translation: "But God's wisdom is proven right by its work in the peoples lives who John and I minister to" (See: [Proverbs](#))

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> The [Son of Man](#) came eating and drinking, and they say, 'Behold a man, a glutton and a drunkard, a friend of [tax collectors](#) and [sinners](#)!' But [wisdom has been justified](#) by her [children](#)."

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> I also say this because [I, the Son of Man](#), was not like John when I came. I eat the same food and drink wine as other people do. But you similarly reject me and say, 'Look! This man eats too much food and [drinks too much wine](#), and he is friends with [tax collectors](#) and [those who do not obey the law of Moses](#)!' But [God shows his wisdom through how people's lives are changed by my ministry and John's ministry](#)

**wisdom has been justified by her children (ULT)**  
**God shows his wisdom through how people's lives are changed by my ministry and John's ministry (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God proves his wisdom by his children" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son of Man
- a drunkard
- of tax collectors
- sinners
- wisdom
- has been justified
- children

### Translation Words - UST

- I, the Son...of Man
- drinks too much wine
- those who do not obey the law of Moses
- God shows his wisdom through how people's lives are changed by my ministry and John's ministry
- God shows his wisdom through how people's lives are changed by my ministry and John's ministry
- God shows his wisdom through how people's lives are changed by my ministry and John's ministry
- tax, tribute, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,

## Matthew 11:20

### to rebuke the cities (ULT) the towns where Jesus...to scold (UST)

Here, **the cities** refers to the people who live in the cities. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "to scold the people of the cities" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### in which most of his miracles were done (ULT) In...had performed many of his miracles (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "in which he did most of his miracles" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to rebuke](#)
- [miracles](#)
- [they had...repented](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [miracles](#)
- [the people there still...to repent of their evil deeds...them saying](#)
- [to scold](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then he began [to rebuke](#) the cities in which most of his [miracles](#) were done, because [they had not repented](#).

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> In the towns where Jesus had performed many of his [miracles](#), [the people there still](#) refused [to repent of their evil deeds](#). So he began [to scold them saying](#),





## **Matthew 11:21**

**Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida (ULT)**

**You people who live in the city of Chorazin and you in the city of Bethsaida, God will certainly punish you because of your great evil (UST)**

Jesus is figuratively addressing something that he knows cannot hear him, the cities of **Chorazin** and **Bethsaida**, in order to show his listeners in a strong way how he feels about it. If this is confusing in your language, consider expressing this feeling by talking about these two cities. Alternate translation: "It will not be good for the cities of Chorazin and Bethsaida" (See: [Apostrophe](#))

**Woe to you...Woe to you (ULT)**

**You people who live in...God will certainly punish you because of your great evil...and you in...God will certainly punish you because of your great evil (UST)**

The phrase **Woe to you** is a common exclamation which brings a charge of judgement against a person or group of people. Use an exclamation that is natural in your language for communicating this. Alternate translation: "Judgement is coming against you!" (See: [Exclamations](#))

**Chorazin...Bethsaida...Tyre...Sidon (ULT)**

**the city of Chorazin...the city of Bethsaida...Tyre...Sidon (UST)**

Here, the words **Chorazin**, **Bethsaida**, **Tyre** and **Sidon** refers to the people who live in those cities. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language, as in the UST. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**if the miracles had happened in Tyre and Sidon which happened in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes (ULT)**

**I did many miracles in your cities, but you did not stop sinning. If I had done these miracles in the evil cities of Tyre and Sidon, which existed a long time ago, those wicked people would certainly have stopped sinning. They would have put on rough, scratchy mourning clothes and sat in the cold ashes of their fires, as is the custom of people who are sorry for their evil deeds (UST)**

Jesus is using this hypothetical situation to rebuke the people in those cities. Alternate translation: "suppose the miracles were done among Tyre and Sidon which I did among you. Then they surely would have repented" (See: [Connect — Hypothetical Conditions](#))

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! For if the miracles had happened in Tyre and Sidon which happened in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> "You people who live in the city of Chorazin and you in the city of Bethsaida, God will certainly punish you because of your great evil! For I did many miracles in your cities, but you did not stop sinning. If I had done these miracles in the evil cities of Tyre and Sidon, which existed a long time ago, those wicked people would certainly have stopped sinning. They would have put on rough, scratchy mourning clothes and sat in the cold ashes of their fires, as is the custom of people who are sorry for their evil deeds.

**if the miracles had happened in Tyre and Sidon which happened in you (ULT)  
I did many miracles in your cities, but you did not stop sinning. If I had done these miracles in the evil cities of Tyre and Sidon (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "if I had done the mighty deeds among the people of Tyre and Sidon that I have done among you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**which happened in you (ULT)  
I did...in your cities, but you did not stop sinning (UST)**

Here the **you** is plural and refers to Chorazin and Bethsaida. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Woe](#)
- [Woe \(2\)](#)
- [miracles](#)
- [Tyre](#)
- [Sidon](#)
- [they would have repented](#)
- [sackcloth](#)
- [ashes](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God will certainly punish you because of your great evil](#)
- [God will certainly punish you because of your great evil \(2\)](#)
- [many miracles...these miracles](#)
- [Tyre](#)
- [Sidon](#)
- [those wicked people would certainly have stopped sinning...as is the custom of people who are sorry for their evil deeds](#)
- [They would have put on rough, scratchy mourning clothes](#)
- [sat in the cold ashes of their fires](#)

## Matthew 11:22

### it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you

See how you translated **Tyre** and **Sidon** in the previous verse. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### than for you (ULT) you even more (UST)

The reason why it will be **more tolerable** is because Chorazin and Bethsaida did see Jesus' miracles, and they still did not repent. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "than for you, because you did not repent and believe in me, even though you saw me do miracles" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Nevertheless, I say to you, it will be more tolerable [for Tyre](#) and [Sidon](#) in [{the} day of judgment](#) than for you.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Let me tell you this: [God will punish the wicked people who lived in the cities of Tyre and Sidon. But he will punish you even more severely on the final day when he judges all people.](#)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for Tyre](#)
- [Sidon](#)
- [the} day](#)
- [of judgment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God will punish the wicked people...But he will punish...severely on the final day when he judges all people](#)
- [God will punish the wicked people...But he will punish...severely on the final day when he judges all people](#)
- [who lived in the cities of Tyre](#)
- [Sidon](#)



## **Matthew 11:23**

**And you, Capernaum, you will not be exalted to heaven, will you? You will go down to Hades. For if the miracles that happened in you had happened in Sodom, it would have remained until today (ULT)**

The pronoun **you** is singular and refers to Capernaum throughout this verse and the next. If it is more natural to refer to the people of the city, you could translate with a plural **you**. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**And you, Capernaum, you will not be exalted to heaven, will you (ULT)  
I also have something to say to you people who live in the city of Capernaum. Do you think that others will praise you so much that you will go right up to heaven? That will not happen...and (UST)**

Jesus is figuratively addressing something that he knows cannot hear him, the city of Capernaum, in order to show his listeners in a strong way how he feels about it. If this is confusing in your language, consider expressing this feeling by talking about Capernaum. Alternate translation: "Certainly Capernaum will not be lifted up to heaven, will it" (See: [Apostrophe](#))

**Capernaum...Sodom (ULT)  
in the city of Capernaum...the people of Sodom long ago they would have stopped sinning (UST)**

Here the words **Capernaum** and **Sodom** are referring to the people who live in those cities. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "people of Capernaum...people of Sodom" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**you will not be exalted to heaven, will you (ULT)  
Do you think that others will praise you so much that you will go right up to heaven? That will not happen (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: Alternate translation: "God will not raise you up to heaven, will he?" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**you will not be exalted to heaven, will you (ULT)  
Do you think that others will praise you so much that you will go right up to heaven? That will not happen (UST)**

Jesus uses a rhetorical question to rebuke the people of Capernaum for their pride, because they think they deserve to be taken straight to heaven. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning in a

## ULT

<sup>23</sup> And you, **Capernaum**, you will not be exalted to **heaven**, will you? You will go down to **Hades**. For if the **miracles** that happened in you had happened in **Sodom**, it would have remained until today.

## UST

<sup>23</sup> I also have something to say to you people who live **in the city of Capernaum**. **Do you think that others will praise you so much that you will go right up to heaven?** That will not happen! On the contrary, you will go down to **where God punishes people after they die!** If I had done these same **miracles** even among **the people of Sodom long ago they would have stopped sinning**, and their city would have been here even today.



nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "God will certainly not bring you up to heaven like you think he will!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## **if the miracles that happened in you had happened in Sodom, it would have remained until today (ULT)**

Jesus is using a hypothetical situation to rebuke the people who live in the city of Capernaum. This could have happened in the past, but it did not happen. If it would be helpful to your readers, you can mark the second event with the word "then". Alternate translation: "If I had done all of these powerful deeds in the presence of the people of Sodom, then they would have turned from their sinful ways" (See: [Connect — Hypothetical Conditions](#))

## **if the miracles that happened in you had happened in Sodom (ULT)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "if I had done the miracles among the people of Sodom that I have done among you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [Capernaum](#)
- [you will...be exalted](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [Hades](#)
- [miracles](#)
- [Sodom](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [in the city of Capernaum](#)
- [Do you think that others will praise you so much that you will go right up to](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [where God punishes people after they die](#)
- [I had done these same miracles](#)
- [the people of Sodom long ago they would have stopped sinning](#)

## Matthew 11:24

### for {the} land of Sodom (ULT) in Sodom (UST)

See how you translated Sodom in the previous verse. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### than for you (ULT) But he will punish you people of Capernaum even more severely on the final day...when he judges all people (UST)

Jesus is saying that it will be **more tolerable** for the people of Sodom because they did not have the chance to see Jesus' miracles, while the people of Capernaum did, and still did not repent. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could state this explicitly, as in the UST. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Nevertheless, I say to you that it will be more tolerable for {the} land of Sodom in {the} day of judgment than for you."

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> Let me tell you this: God will punish the wicked people who lived in Sodom. But he will punish you people of Capernaum even more severely on the final day when he judges all people."

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Sodom
- the} day
- of judgment

### Translation Words - UST

- Sodom
- when he judges all people
- when he judges all people



## **Matthew 11:25**

## Father (ULT) My Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

## Lord of heaven and earth (ULT)

The phrase **heaven and earth** is figurative for everything which God has created in the entire universe. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “ruler over the entire universe” (See: [Merism](#))

## from {the} wise and intelligent (ULT)

Jesus is using the adjectives **wise** and **intelligent** as nouns in order to describe a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this with a noun phrase. Alternate translation: “from people who are smart and knowledgeable” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

## the} wise and intelligent (ULT) people who think that they are wise and well educated (UST)

The words **wise** and **intelligent** mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize how smart these people thought they were. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “the discerning” (See: [Doublet](#))

## the} wise and intelligent (ULT) people who think that they are wise and well educated (UST)

Jesus calls them **wise** and **intelligent**, even though he does not actually believe that they are wise or intelligent. If your readers would misunderstand this, consider expressing the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “people who think they are wise and intelligent” (See: [Irony](#))

## to little children (ULT) to people who accept your truth just as little children believe what an older person tells them (UST)

Here, the phrase **little children** is referring to people who are not wise. Jesus uses the figurative language to emphasize that one does not need to be wise to be one of his followers. If your readers would not understand what **little children** means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: “you who are as wise as little children” or “you who are not very wise” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [time](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> At that [time](#), answering, [Jesus](#) said, “I [praise](#) you, [Father](#), [Lord of heaven and earth](#), because you concealed these {things} from {the} [wise](#) and [intelligent](#) and [revealed](#) them to [little children](#).”

### UST

<sup>25</sup> At that [time](#) [Jesus](#) prayed, “[My Father who rules over everything in heaven and on the earth](#), I thank you that you have prevented [people who think that they are wise](#) and [well educated](#) from knowing these things. Instead, [you have revealed](#) them to [people who accept your truth just as little children believe what an older person tells them](#).”

- to little children
- I praise
- Father
- Lord
- of heaven
- earth
- the} wise
- intelligent
- revealed

## Translation Words - UST

- time
- Jesus
- to people who accept your truth just as little children believe what an older person tells them
- My Father
- who rules over
- everything in heaven
- on the earth
- I thank
- people who think that they are wise
- well educated
- you have revealed

## Matthew 11:26

**for thus it was well-pleasing before you (ULT)  
you have done that because it seemed good  
to you to do so (UST)**

The phrase **before you** is an idiom which refers to how someone considers something. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "for you considered it good to do this" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Father](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Father](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Yes, [Father](#), for thus it was well-pleasing before you.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Yes, [Father](#), you have done that because it seemed good to you to do so."





## **Matthew 11:27**

## All {things} were entrusted to me by my Father (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "My Father has given everything over to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## All {things} (ULT) Then Jesus said to the crowd...everything about himself (UST)

The phrase **All things** could mean: (1) God the Father has revealed everything about himself and his kingdom to Jesus. Alternate translation: "All knowledge of himself" or (2) God has given all authority to Jesus. Alternate translation: "All authority"

## my Father (ULT)

**Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

## and no one knows the Son except the Father and no one knows the Father except the Son...to whoever the Son desires to reveal {him (ULT)

If these double negatives would be misunderstood in your language, you could translate them as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "Only the Father knows who the Son is, and only the Son and those to whom he reveals the Father know the Father" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

## the Son...the Son (ULT)

Jesus was referring to himself as the **Son** in the third person. If this is confusing in your language, you could write it in the first person, as in the UST. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

## the Son (ULT)

**Son** is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Father](#)
- [Father](#)
- [Father](#)
- [knows](#)
- [knows](#) (2)
- [Son](#)
- [Son](#)
- [Son](#) (2)
- [to reveal](#) {him

## ULT

<sup>27</sup> All {things} were entrusted to me by my [Father](#); and no one [knows](#) the [Son](#) except the [Father](#) and no one [knows](#) the [Father](#) except the [Son](#), and to whoever the [Son](#) desires [to reveal](#) {him}.

## UST

<sup>27</sup> Then Jesus said to the crowd, "God, my [Father](#), has revealed to me everything about himself. Only my [Father](#) knows who I truly am. Furthermore, only I, [his Son](#), and those to whom I [reveal him](#), [know the Father](#)."

## Translation Words - UST

- God...Father
- my Father
- his...the Father
- knows
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish (2)
- who I truly am
- I...Son
- I (2)
- reveal him, know

## Matthew 11:28

**all the ones laboring and heavy burdened, and I will give you rest (ULT)**

**all you people who are very tired of trying to obey all the {man-made} laws your leaders say you should. I will let you stop {trying to do everything perfectly (UST)}**

Here, **you** is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**the ones laboring and heavy burdened (ULT)**  
**you people who are very tired of trying to obey all the {man-made} laws your leaders say you should (UST)**

Jesus speaks of people being discouraged in their attempts to obey all the laws as if those laws were **heavy** burdens and the people were **laboring** to carry them. If your readers would not understand what it means, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternate translation: "Come to me, all of you who are feeling burdened by how many laws you are trying to keep" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**and I will give you rest (ULT)**  
**I will let you stop {trying to do everything perfectly (UST)}**

Here, the word **rest** is figurative for no longer feeling the obligation to keep every law, especially laws that were created by the Pharisees. If your readers would not understand what it means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "I will give you relief from feeling the need to be perfect before God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [laboring](#)
- [heavy burdened](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [very tired of trying to obey all the {man-made} laws your leaders say you should](#)
- [very tired of trying to obey all the...man-made} laws your leaders say you should](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Come to me, all the ones [laboring](#) and [heavy burdened](#), and I will give you rest.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> Come to me, all you people who are [very tired of trying to obey all the {man-made} laws your leaders say you should](#). I will let you stop {trying to do everything perfectly}.



## **Matthew 11:29**

**Take my yoke on you (ULT)**  
**Let me help you carry your heavy burden, like two beasts of burden would pull a heavy load...If you let me help you (UST)**

Jesus continues the metaphor of burden that he began in the last verse. Jesus uses the image of a yoke, something which is put on large animals to carry heavy burdens, to encourage his listeners to let him carry their burdens with them. If your readers would not understand what **yoke** means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a nonfigurative way. Alternative translation: "Let me help you carry your burden" (See: [Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors](#) )

**I am gentle and humble in heart (ULT)**  
**For I feel compassion towards you (UST)**

Here, **gentle** and **humble in heart** mean basically the same thing. Jesus combines them to emphasize that he is much kinder than the religious leaders who burdened the people with the many laws. Alternate translation: "I am very gentle" (See: [Doublet](#))

**humble in heart (ULT)**  
**For I feel compassion towards you (UST)**

The phrase **humble in heart** is an idiom meaning that he is a humble person. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "humble" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**you will find rest for your souls (ULT)**  
**you will have spiritual peace within yourselves (UST)**

Here, **souls** is figurative for the entire person. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "you will be able to rest" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [yoke](#)
- [gentle](#)
- [humble](#)
- [in heart](#)
- [rest](#)
- [for...souls](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Let me help you carry your heavy burden, like two beasts of burden would pull a heavy load...If you let me help you](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> Take my [yoke](#) on you and learn from me, for I am [gentle](#) and [humble in heart](#), and you will find [rest](#) for your [souls](#).

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> [Let me help you carry your heavy burden, like two beasts of burden would pull a heavy load. For I feel compassion towards you. If you let me help you, and you learn from me, you will have spiritual peace within yourselves.](#)

- For I feel compassion towards you
- For I feel compassion towards you
- For I feel compassion towards you
- spiritual peace
- within yourselves



## Matthew 11:30

**For my yoke {is} easy and my burden is light (ULT)**

**For I will carry most of the heavy burden for you, and it will be much easier for you (UST)**

Here, Jesus continues the burden metaphor from the previous verses. You could express this metaphor as a simile if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: "When I help you, it will be like I am carrying most of the weight of the yoke. I will also be like I am only making you carry a little bit of the burden" (See: [Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors](#) )

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> For my [yoke](#) {is} easy and my [burden](#) is light."

### UST

<sup>30</sup> For I will carry most of the heavy [burden for you](#), and it will be much [easier for you](#)"

**For my yoke {is} easy and my burden is light (ULT)**

**For I will carry most of the heavy burden for you, and it will be much easier for you (UST)**

Both of these phrases mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that it is easier to obey him than it is the Jewish law. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: "For what I place on you, you will be able to carry because it is light" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [yoke](#)
- [burden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I will carry most of the heavy burden for you](#)
- [and it will be much easier for you](#)

## Matthew 12

### Matthew 12 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 12:18-21, which are words from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The Sabbath

This chapter has much to say about how God's people are to obey the Sabbath. Jesus said that the rules that the Pharisees made up did not help people obey the Sabbath the way God wanted them to. (See: [Sabbath](#))

#### “Blasphemy against the Spirit”

No one knows for sure what actions people perform or what words they say when they commit this sin. However, they probably insult the Holy Spirit and his work. Part of the Holy Spirit's work is to make people understand that they are sinners and that they need to have God forgive them. Therefore, anyone who does not try to stop sinning is probably committing blasphemy against the Spirit. (See: [blasphemy](#), [blaspheme](#), [blasphemous](#) and [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Spirit](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Brothers and sisters

Most people call those who have the same parents “brother” and “sister” and think of them as the most important people in their lives. Many people also call those with the same grandparents “brother” and “sister.” In this chapter Jesus says that the most important people to him are those who obey his Father in heaven. (See: [brother](#))



## **Matthew 12:1**

## At that time (ULT) at that time (UST)

This phrase marks a new part of the story where Matthew tells of growing opposition to Jesus' ministry. Here, the Pharisees criticize his disciples for picking grain on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "A little later"

## the grainfields (ULT) some grain fields (UST)

A grainfield is a place to plant grain. If wheat is unknown and "grain" is too general, then you can use "fields of the plant they made bread from." (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## and...to pluck heads of grain...to eat {them (ULT) they began to pick some of the heads of grain...eat them, something that (UST)

Picking **grain** in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether one could do this otherwise lawful activity on the Sabbath.

## and...to pluck heads of grain...to eat {them (ULT) they began to pick some of the heads of grain...eat them, something that (UST)

Alternate translation: "to pick some of the wheat and to eat it" or "to pick some of the grain and to eat it"

## heads of grain (ULT) heads of grain (UST)

The **heads** are the topmost part of the wheat plant. They holds the mature grain or seeds of the plant.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [time](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [on the Sabbaths](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [heads of grain](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [On a Sabbath](#)
- [time](#)
- [Jesus and the disciples](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [heads of grain](#)

## ULT

<sup>1</sup> At that [time](#) [Jesus](#) went [on the Sabbaths](#) through the grainfields, but his [disciples](#) were hungry and began to pluck [heads of grain](#) and to eat {them}.

## UST

<sup>1</sup> [On a Sabbath](#) at that [time](#), [Jesus](#) and the [disciples](#) were walking past some grain fields. Because his [disciples](#) were hungry, they began to pick some of the [heads of grain](#) and eat them, something that the law of Moses allowed.

## Matthew 12:2

**are doing what is not lawful to do on a Sabbath (ULT)**

**are doing work on our day of rest. The law does not allow that (UST)**

Picking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether one could do this otherwise lawful activity **on the Sabbath**.

**the...Pharisees (ULT)**

**Some...Pharisees (UST)**

This does not mean all of **the Pharisees**. Alternate translation: "some Pharisees"

**the...Behold, your...disciples (ULT)**

**Some...Look! Your...disciples (UST)**

The Pharisees use the word **Behold** to draw attention to what the disciples are doing. Alternate translation: "Look, your disciples"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- disciples
- is...lawful
- a Sabbath

### Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- disciples
- day of rest
- law does...allow that

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> But the **Pharisees**, having seen {this}, said to him, "Behold, your **disciples** are doing what is not **lawful** to do on a **Sabbath**."

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Some **Pharisees** saw them doing that, so they said to Jesus, "Look! Your **disciples** are doing work on our **day of rest**. The **law does** not **allow that**!"

**Matthew 12:3****to them (ULT)****It (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to the Pharisees"

**Have you not read what David did when he was hungry, and the ones with him (ULT) written...what our ancestor King David did when he and the men with him were hungry (UST)**

This begins a question that continues into the next verse. Jesus uses the question to respond to the criticism of the Pharisees. Jesus is challenging them to think about the meaning of the scriptures they have read. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I know you have read what David did, when he was hungry, and those who were with him—" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [David](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [King David](#)

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> But he said to them, "Have you not read what [David](#) did when he was hungry, and the ones with him—

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> But Jesus answered, "It is written in the scriptures what our ancestor [King David](#) did when he and the men with him were hungry.

## Matthew 12:4

**the house of God (ULT)**  
**the sacred tent where they worshiped...God...  
of Moses (UST)**

During the time of David there was no temple yet. Alternate translation: "the tabernacle" or "the place for worshipping God"

**the loaves of bread of the presence (ULT)**  
**the bread...had been on display before God.  
But according to the law (UST)**

This refers to the sacred bread that priests placed before God in the tabernacle. Alternate translation: "the bread that the priest placed before God" or "the sacred bread" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**for the ones with him (ULT)**  
**the...who were...with him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "for the men who were with David"

**for the ones...except only...for the priests (ULT)**  
**only priests...but David and...the...who were (UST)**

Alternate translation: "but, according to the law, only the priests could eat it"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [house of God](#)
- [of God](#)
- [loaves of bread](#)
- [lawful](#)
- [for the priests](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the sacred tent where they worshiped](#)
- [the sacred tent where they worshiped...God...of Moses](#)
- [God](#)
- [bread](#)
- [only priests](#)
- [were permitted to eat that bread](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> how he went into the [house of God](#) and ate the [loaves of bread](#) of the presence, which was not [lawful](#) for him to eat nor for the ones with him, except only [for the priests](#)?

### UST

<sup>4</sup> King David entered [the sacred tent where they worshiped God](#) and ate the [bread](#) that had been on display before God. But according to the law [of Moses](#), [only priests were permitted to eat that bread](#), but David and the men who were with him ate it.





## **Matthew 12:5**

**have you not read in the law that on the Sabbaths the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath, but are innocent (ULT) surely you have read what Moses wrote, when he said that even though the priests, by working in the temple on our Sabbath day, are not obeying the Jewish day of rest laws, they are not guilty (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to respond to the criticism of the Pharisees. Jesus is challenging them to think about the meaning of what they have read in the scriptures. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate

translation: "Surely you have read in the law of Moses that on the Sabbaths the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath, but are innocent." or "You should know that the law teaches that on the Sabbaths the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath, but are innocent." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**profane the Sabbath (ULT)  
are not obeying the Jewish day of rest laws, they (UST)**

Alternate translation: "do on the Sabbath what they would do on any other day"

**are innocent (ULT)  
are not guilty (UST)**

Alternate translation: "God will not punish them" or "God does not consider them guilty"

### Translation Words - ULT

- law
- on the Sabbaths
- Sabbath
- priests
- temple
- profane
- innocent

### Translation Words - UST

- what Moses wrote, when he said
- priests, by working
- temple
- Sabbath day
- Jewish day of rest laws, they
- are not obeying
- not guilty

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Or have you not read in the law that on the Sabbaths the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath, but are innocent?

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Also, surely you have read what Moses wrote, when he said that even though the priests, by working in the temple on our Sabbath day, are not obeying the Jewish day of rest laws, they are not guilty.

## Matthew 12:6

### I say...to you (ULT)

### Let me tell you what this means...Let me tell you what this means (UST)

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

### one} greater than the temple (ULT)

### more important than the temple (UST)

Jesus was referring to himself as the one who is **greater**. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#)) Alternate translation: "I am someone who is more important than the temple"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But I say to you that {one} greater than the [temple](#) is here.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Let me tell you what this means: I have come to you, and I am more important than the [temple](#).



## **Matthew 12:7**

**But if you had known what this is, 'I desire mercy and not sacrifice,' you would not have condemned the innocent (ULT)**

**You should think about these words of God in the scriptures: 'I want you to act mercifully toward people, and not just offer sacrifices.' If you understood what that means, you would not condemn my disciples, who have done no wrong (UST)**

In this verse, Jesus quotes the prophet Hosea to rebuke the Pharisees. Alternate translation: "The prophet Hosea wrote this long ago: 'I desire mercy and not sacrifice.' If you had understood what this meant, you would not have condemned the innocent" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But if [you had known](#) what this is, 'I desire [mercy](#) and not [sacrifice](#),' [you would not have condemned](#) the [innocent](#).

### UST

<sup>7</sup> You should think about these words of God in the scriptures: 'I want you to [act mercifully toward people](#), and not [just offer sacrifices](#).' If you [understood](#) what that means, you would not [condemn my disciples, who have done no wrong](#).

**I desire mercy and not sacrifice (ULT)**

**I want you to act mercifully toward people, and not just offer sacrifices.' If you understood (UST)**

In the law of Moses, God did command the Israelites to offer sacrifices. This means God considers **mercy** more important than the **sacrifice**.

**I desire (ULT)**

**I want you (UST)**

The pronoun I refers to God.

**the innocent (ULT)**

**have done no wrong (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **innocent**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "those who are not guilty" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you had known](#)
- [mercy](#)
- [sacrifice](#)
- [you would...have condemned](#)
- [innocent](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You should think about these words of God in the scriptures](#)
- [to act mercifully toward people](#)
- [just offer sacrifices.' If you understood](#)

- condemn my disciples, who
- have done no wrong



## Matthew 12:8

### the Son of Man (ULT) the Son of Man, and I (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Lord...is...of the Sabbath (ULT) have the authority to tell people what they can do on...I am...the Sabbath day (UST)

Alternate translation: "rules over the Sabbath" or "makes the laws about what people can do on the Sabbath"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son of Man](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [of the Sabbath](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Son of Man, and I](#)
- [have the authority to tell people what they can do on](#)
- [Sabbath day](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For the [Son of Man](#) is [Lord of the Sabbath](#)."

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> I am the [Son of Man](#), and I have the [authority to tell people what they can do on](#) the [Sabbath day](#)."

## Matthew 12:9

### General Information:

Here the scene shifts to a later time when the Pharisees criticize Jesus for healing a man on the Sabbath.

### And having departed from there (ULT) After Jesus left there that day (UST)

Alternate translation: "After Jesus left the grain fields" or "When Jesus left from there"

### their synagogue (ULT) he...a synagogue (UST)

The word **their** could refer to: (1) the Jews of that town. Alternate translation: "the synagogue" (2) the Pharisees that Jesus had just spoken to, and this was the synagogue that they and other Jews in that town attended. The word **their** does not mean that the Pharisees owned the synagogue. Alternate translation: "the synagogue that they attended"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a synagogue](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And having departed from there, he went into their [synagogue](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> After Jesus left there that day, he went into [a synagogue](#).



## **Matthew 12:10**

**behold (ULT)**  
**There he saw (UST)**

The word **behold** alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

**a man having a withered hand (ULT)**  
**a man with a withered hand. The Pharisees kept wanting to debate with (UST)**

Alternate translation: "there was a man who had a paralyzed hand" or "there was a man with a crippled hand"

**they questioned him, saying, "Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbaths?" so that they might accuse him (ULT)**  
**asked him, "Does God permit us to heal people on our day of rest?" They were hoping that Jesus would commit a sin by saying something wrong (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the Pharisees wanted to accuse Jesus of sinning, so they asked him, 'Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?'"

**Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbaths (ULT)**  
**Does God permit us to heal people on our day of rest (UST)**

Alternate translation: "According to the law of Moses, may a person heal another person on the Sabbaths?"

**so that they might accuse him (ULT)**  
**They were hoping that Jesus would commit a sin by saying something wrong (UST)**

They did not just want to **accuse** Jesus in front of the people. The Pharisees wanted Jesus to give an answer that contradicted the law of Moses so they could take him before a judge and legally charge him with breaking the law. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [a...hand](#)
- [lawful](#)
- [to heal](#)
- [on the Sabbaths](#)
- [they might accuse](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [a...hand. The Pharisees kept wanting to debate](#)
- [God permit us](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> And behold, a man having a withered [hand](#), and they questioned him, saying, "Is it [lawful to heal on the Sabbaths](#)?" so that [they might accuse](#) him.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> There he saw a man with a withered [hand](#). [The Pharisees kept wanting to debate](#) with Jesus about the Sabbath, so one of them asked him, "Does [God permit us to heal people](#) on our [day of rest](#)?" They were [hoping that Jesus would commit a sin by saying something wrong](#).

- to heal people
- day of rest
- hoping that Jesus would commit a sin by saying something wrong

## Matthew 12:11

**What man will there be among you who will have one sheep, and if it might fall into a pit on the Sabbaths, will not grasp hold of it and lift {it} out (ULT)**

**Suppose that one of you had just one sheep, and that it fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath day. Would you just leave it there? Certainly not! You would take hold of it and lift it out right away (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to respond to the Pharisees. He is challenging them to think about what kind of work they do on the Sabbath. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Every one of you, if you only had one sheep, and if it might fall into a pit on the Sabbaths, would grab the sheep and lift it out." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sheep](#)
- [a pit](#)
- [on the Sabbaths](#)
- [lift {it} out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sheep](#)
- [a deep hole](#)
- [Sabbath day. Would you just leave it there](#)
- [lift it out right away](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But he said to them, "What man will there be among you who will have one [sheep](#), and if it might fall into [a pit on the Sabbaths](#), will not grasp hold of it and [lift {it} out](#)?"

### UST

<sup>11</sup> He replied to them, "Suppose that one of you had just one [sheep](#), and that it fell into [a deep hole](#) on the [Sabbath day](#). [Would you just leave it there?](#) Certainly not! You would take hold of it and [lift it out right away!](#)

## Matthew 12:12

**How much more valuable, then, {is} a man than a sheep (ULT)**

**But a person is much more valuable than a sheep (UST)**

The phrase **How much more** adds emphasis to the statement. The implied answer is "very much more!" If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Obviously, a man is much more valuable than a sheep!" or "Just think about how much more important a man is than a sheep."

**it is lawful to do good on the Sabbaths (ULT)**

**it is certainly right for us to do good by healing another person any day, even on our day of rest (UST)**

Alternate translation: "those who do good on the Sabbaths are obeying the law"

### Translation Words - ULT

- a sheep
- it is lawful
- good
- on the Sabbaths

### Translation Words - UST

- than a sheep
- it is certainly right for us
- good
- day of rest

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> How much more valuable, then, {is} a man than a sheep? Therefore, it is lawful to do good on the Sabbaths."

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> But a person is much more valuable than a sheep. So it is certainly right for us to do good by healing another person any day, even on our day of rest!"



## Matthew 12:13

**Then he says to the man, “Stretch out your hand (ULT)**

**Then he said to the man, “Stretch out your hand!” The (UST)**

You can translate this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “Then Jesus commanded the man to stretch out his hand” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**to the man (ULT)**

**to the man (UST)**

Alternate translation: “to the man with the paralyzed hand” or “to the man with the crippled hand”

**he stretched {it} out (ULT)**

**man stretched out his withered hand (UST)**

Alternate translation: “the man stretched it out”

**it was restored to health (ULT)**

**it became healthy (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “it was healthy again” or “it became well again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [just like](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [like](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then he says to the man, “Stretch out your [hand](#).” And he stretched {it} out, and it was restored to health, [just like](#) the other.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> Then he said to the man, “Stretch out your [hand](#)!” The man stretched out his withered hand, and it became healthy [like](#) the other hand!

## Matthew 12:14

**took counsel against him (ULT)**  
**They began to plan together how they could (UST)**

Alternate translation: "planned to harm Jesus"

**how they might put him to death (ULT)**  
**how they could...kill Jesus (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in order to find a way to kill Jesus"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- counsel

### Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- They began to plan together

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But having gone out, the Pharisees took counsel against him how they might put him to death.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> Then the Pharisees left the synagogue. They began to plan together how they could kill Jesus.

## Matthew 12:15

**But Jesus, having perceived {this}, withdrew (ULT)**

**Because Jesus knew that the Pharisees were plotting to kill him, he took the disciples... went away from (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But Jesus was aware of what the Pharisees were planning, so he withdrew"

**withdrew from there (ULT)**  
**went away from there. Large crowds, including (UST)**

Alternate translation: "departed from there" or "left that place"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- having perceived {this}
- he healed

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- knew that
- he healed

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But Jesus, having perceived {this}, withdrew from there. And many followed him, and he healed them all,

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Because Jesus knew that the Pharisees were plotting to kill him, he took the disciples and went away from there. Large crowds, including many sick people, followed him, and he healed them all.

## Matthew 12:16

**they might not make him known (ULT)**  
**they should not tell other people about him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they would not to tell anyone else about him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- he commanded
- known

### Translation Words - UST

- he told...firmly
- tell other people

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> and he commanded them that they might not make him known,

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> But he told them firmly that they should not tell other people about him.

## Matthew 12:17

**so that...what had been said (ULT)**  
**By doing this...what...had written long ago. He (UST)**

You could start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "This was so that what had been said"

**what had been said through Isaiah the prophet (ULT)**  
**what Isaiah the prophet had written long ago. He (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "what God had said long ago through the prophet Isaiah"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Isaiah
- prophet
- might be fulfilled

### Translation Words - UST

- he fulfilled
- Isaiah
- prophet

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> so that what had been said through Isaiah the prophet might be fulfilled, saying,

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> By doing this he fulfilled what Isaiah the prophet had written long ago. He wrote,



## **Matthew 12:18**

## Connecting Statement:

In verses 18-21, Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus' ministry fulfilled scripture.

## Behold (ULT)

## Here is (UST)

Alternate translation: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

**my...I have chosen...my...my...I will put...my (ULT)**

**my...I have chosen...my...my...I will put...my (UST)**

All occurrences of **I** and **my** refer to God. Isaiah is quoting what God said to him.

**my beloved, in whom my soul is well pleased**

Alternate translation: "he is my beloved one, and I am very pleased with him"

**in whom my soul is well pleased (ULT)**

**and who pleases me (UST)**

Here, **soul** refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "with whom I am very pleased" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**he will announce justice to the Gentiles (ULT)**

**he will bring justice and salvation to the non-Jews (UST)**

The means that God's servant will tell the **Gentiles** that there will be **justice**. You can state clearly that God is the one who will bring about justice. Alternate translation: "he will announce to the nations that God give them justice" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**he will announce justice to the Gentiles (ULT)**

**he will bring justice and salvation to the non-Jews (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **justice**, you can express it as "what is right." Alternate translation: "he will announce to the nations that God will do for them what is right" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#)
- [I have chosen](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [soul](#)
- [is well pleased](#)

## ULT

<sup>18</sup> "Behold, my [servant](#) whom [I have chosen](#); my [beloved](#), in whom my [soul is well pleased](#). I will put my [Spirit](#) upon him, and he will announce [justice to the Gentiles](#).

## UST

<sup>18</sup> "Here is my [servant](#) whom [I have chosen](#), the one whom I [love](#) and who [pleases me](#). I will put my [Spirit](#) in him, and he will bring [justice and salvation](#) to the [non-Jews](#)."



- Spirit
- justice
- to the Gentiles

## **Translation Words - UST**

- servant
- I have chosen
- whom...love
- pleases
- me
- Spirit
- justice and salvation
- non-Jews

**Matthew 12:19**

**neither will anyone hear...his voice (ULT)**  
**will he shout...not...in...And he will...shout (UST)**

Here people not hearing **his voice** represents him not speaking loudly. Alternate translation: "he will not speak loudly" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**He will not strive...his (ULT)**  
**He will not quarrel with people...And he will (UST)**

Both **He** and **his** refer to God's chosen servant.

**in the streets (ULT)**  
**in...the streets (UST)**

This is an idiom that means "publicly." Alternate translation: "in the cities and towns" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [cry aloud](#)
- [voice](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [will he shout...not](#)
- [shout](#)

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> He will not strive nor [cry aloud](#); neither will anyone hear his [voice](#) in the streets.

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> He will not quarrel with people, neither [will he shout](#). And he will [not shout](#) in the streets.



## **Matthew 12:20**

**He will not break...not...he will...quench...he leads (ULT)  
he will not kill him. And...he will...not...kill him...And...and declare that they are not guilty (UST)**

All occurrences of **He** and **he** refer to God's chosen servant.

**He will not break a bruised reed; and he will not quench a smoking flax (ULT)  
He will be gentle with the weak people; If a person is barely alive, he will not kill him. And (UST)**

Both of these statements mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**He will not break a bruised reed; and he will not quench a smoking flax (ULT)  
He will be gentle with the weak people; If a person is barely alive, he will not kill him. And (UST)**

Both of these statements are metaphors emphasizing that God's servant will be gentle and kind. Both **bruised reed** and **smoking flax** represent weak and hurting people. If the metaphor is confusing, you could translate the literal meaning. Alternate translation: "He will be kind to weak people, and he will be gentle to those who are hurting" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a bruised reed (ULT)  
He will be gentle with the weak people; If a person is barely alive (UST)**

Alternate translation: "a damaged plant"

**not...he will...quench a smoking flax (ULT)  
he will...not...kill him...And (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he will not put out any smoking flax" or "he will not stop any smoking flax from burning"

**a smoking flax (ULT)  
he will...kill him...And (UST)**

This refers to a lamp wick after the flame has gone out and when it is only smoking.

**he leads justice to victory (ULT)  
he will judge the people with justice...and declare that they are not guilty (UST)**

Leading someone to **victory** represents causing him to be victorious. Causing **justice** to be victorious represents making things right that had been wrong. Alternate translation: "he makes everything right" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> He will not break a bruised **reed**; and **he will** not **quench** a smoking flax, until he leads **justice** to victory,

### UST

<sup>20</sup> He will be gentle with the weak people; If a person is barely alive, **he will** not **kill him**. **And he will judge the people with justice** and declare that they are not guilty.

## Translation Words - ULT

- a...reed
- he will...quench
- justice

## Translation Words - UST

- he will...kill him...And
- he will judge the people with justice
- He will be gentle with the weak people; If a person is barely alive

## Matthew 12:21

**in his name (ULT)**

**in him (UST)**

Here, **name** refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "in him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in...name](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [will hope](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [non-Jews](#)
- [will confidently trust](#)
- [him](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> and in his [name](#) [Gentiles](#) will [hope](#)."

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> So the [non-Jews](#) will [confidently trust](#) in [him](#)."

## Matthew 12:22

### General Information:

Here the scene shifts to a later time when the Pharisees accuse Jesus of healing a man by the power of Satan.

**Then {one} being demon-possessed was brought to him, blind and mute (ULT)  
One day some men brought to Jesus a man who was blind and unable to speak because he had a demon. Jesus drove out the demon (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Then someone brought to Jesus a man who was blind and mute because a demon was controlling him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**was brought to him...blind and mute (ULT)  
some men brought to Jesus...a man who was blind and unable to speak (UST)**

Alternate translation: "a person was brought to him who could not see and could not talk"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [one} being demon-possessed](#)
- [he healed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [because he had a demon. Jesus drove out the demon](#)
- [healed](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then {one} being demon-possessed was brought to him, blind and mute, and he healed him, so that the mute {one} spoke and saw.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> One day some men brought to Jesus a man who was blind and unable to speak because he had a demon. Jesus drove out the demon and healed him. Then the man began to talk and was able to see.



**Matthew 12:23****all the crowds were amazed (ULT)****All the crowds who saw it...marveled (UST)**

Alternate translation: "all the people who had seen Jesus heal the man were greatly surprised"

**the Son of David (ULT)****the Messiah, the descendant of King David, whom we have been expecting (UST)**

**Son of David** is a title for the Christ or Messiah.

**Son (ULT)****the Messiah...descendant of (UST)**

Here, **Son** means "descendant."

**Translation Words - ULT**

- were amazed
- Son
- of David

**Translation Words - UST**

- marveled
- the Messiah...descendant of
- King David, whom we have been expecting

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> And all the crowds were amazed and were saying, "Is this not the Son of David?"

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> All the crowds who saw it marveled. They began asking each other, "Could this man be the Messiah, the descendant of King David, whom we have been expecting?"

## Matthew 12:24

### having heard {this (ULT)} heard about this miracle (UST)

The word **this** refers to the miracle of the healing of a blind, deaf, and demon-possessed man.

### He does not cast out demons except by Beelzebul (ULT) It is not God, but Beelzebul...who enables this man to drive demons from people (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand double negative **not ... except**, you could express it in a positive form. "He is only able to cast out the demon because he is a servant of Beelzebul" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### He (ULT) this man (UST)

The Pharisees avoid calling Jesus by name to show they reject him.

### ruler of the demons (ULT) the ruler of the demons (UST)

Alternate translation: "the chief of the demons"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharisees](#)
- [does...cast out](#)
- [demons](#)
- [of the demons](#)
- [Beelzebul](#)
- [ruler](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Pharisees](#)
- [Beelzebul](#)
- [the ruler](#)
- [demons](#)
- [demons](#)
- [to drive...from people](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But the [Pharisees](#), having heard {this}, said, "He does not [cast out demons](#) except by [Beelzebul, ruler of the demons](#)."

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Because the [Pharisees](#) heard about this miracle, they said, "It is not God, but [Beelzebul, the ruler](#) of the [demons](#), who enables this man [to drive demons from people](#)!"



## **Matthew 12:25**

**Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate, and every city or house divided against itself will not stand (ULT)**

**If the people in one nation fight against each other, they will destroy their nation. If people who live in the same city or house fight each other, they will certainly not remain as one group or family (UST)**

Jesus uses a proverb to respond to the Pharisees. (See: [Proverbs](#))

**Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate, and every city or house divided against itself will not stand (ULT)**

**If the people in one nation fight against each other, they will destroy their nation. If people who live in the same city or house fight each other, they will certainly not remain as one group or family (UST)**

Both of these statements mean the same thing. They emphasize that it would not make sense for Beelzebul to use his power to fight other demons. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate (ULT)**

**If the people in one nation fight against each other, they will destroy their nation (UST)**

Here, **kingdom** refers to those who live in the kingdom. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate (ULT)**

**If the people in one nation fight against each other, they will destroy their nation (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "A kingdom will not last when its people fight among themselves" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**every city or house divided against itself will not stand (ULT)**

**they will destroy their nation...If people who live in the same city or house fight each other, they will certainly not remain as one group or family (UST)**

Here, **city** refers to the people who live there, and **house** refers to a family. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But [having known](#) their thoughts, he said to them, "Every [kingdom](#) divided against itself [is made desolate](#), and every city or [house](#) divided against itself will not stand.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> But Jesus [knew](#) what the Pharisees were thinking. So he said to them, "If the people in one [nation](#) fight against each other, [they will destroy their nation](#). If people who live in the same city or [house](#) fight each other, they will certainly not remain as one group or family.

**every city or house divided against itself will not stand (ULT)  
they will destroy their nation...If people who live in the same city or house  
fight each other, they will certainly not remain as one group or family (UST)**

Being **divided against itself** represents its people fighting each other. Alternate translation: "it ruins a city or a family when the people fight each other" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [having known](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [is made desolate](#)
- [house](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [knew](#)
- [nation](#)
- [they will destroy their nation](#)
- [house](#)

## Matthew 12:26

### if Satan casts out Satan (ULT) if Satan were driving out his own demons (UST)

The second use of **Satan** refers to the demons that serve Satan.  
Alternate translation: "If Satan works against his own demons" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### How then will his kingdom stand (ULT) He will not be able to continue to rule over his servants (UST)

Jesus uses this question to show the Pharisees that what they were saying was illogical. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "If Satan were divided against himself, his kingdom would not be able to stand!" or "If Satan were to fight against his own demons, his kingdom would not last!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Satan
- Satan
- casts out
- kingdom

### Translation Words - UST

- Satan
- his own demons
- were driving out
- to rule over

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> And if [Satan casts out Satan](#), he has been divided against himself. How then will his [kingdom](#) stand?

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> In the same way, if [Satan were driving out his own demons](#), he would be fighting against himself. He will not be able to continue [to rule over](#) his servants!

## Matthew 12:27

### Beelzebul (ULT)

### Satan (UST)

**Beelzebul** refers to the same person as “Satan” (verse 26).

### by whom do your sons cast them out (ULT) your disciples who drive them out do so by Satan’s power? No! So (UST)

Jesus uses another question to challenge the Pharisees. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “then you must say your followers also cast out demons by the power of Beelzebul. But, you know this is not true.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### your sons (ULT)

### your disciples (UST)

Jesus was speaking to the Pharisees. The phrase **your sons** refers to their followers. This was a common way of referring to those who follow teachers or leaders. Alternate translation: “your followers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### your...For this reason they will be...judges (ULT) your...they will judge...for saying that Satan’s power was behind their work (UST)

Alternate translation: “Because your followers cast out demons by the power of God, they prove that you are wrong about me.”

## Translation Words - ULT

- cast out
- do...cast them out
- demons
- Beelzebul
- sons
- judges

## Translation Words - UST

- Satan
- to drive out
- who drive them out do so
- demons, is it also true that
- disciples
- will judge

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> And if I **cast out demons** by **Beelzebul**, by whom do your **sons cast them out**? For this reason they will be your **judges**.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> Furthermore, if it is true that **Satan** enables me **to drive out demons**, is it **also true that your disciples who drive them out do so** by Satan’s power? No! So they **will judge** you for saying that Satan’s power was behind their work.



## Matthew 12:28

### But if...I (ULT)

### But because...who enables me (UST)

Here, **if** does not mean Jesus is questioning how he casts out demons. Here Jesus uses the word to introduce a true statement.

Alternate translation: "But because I"

### then the kingdom of God has come upon you (ULT)

### that proves that the rule of God from heaven is already here (UST)

Here, **kingdom** refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "this means God is establishing his rule among you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### has come upon you (ULT)

### is already here (UST)

Here, **you** is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [cast out](#)
- [demons](#)
- [the} Spirit of God](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [God's Spirit](#)
- [to drive out](#)
- [demons](#)
- [rule of God from heaven](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> But if I [cast out demons](#) by [{the} Spirit of God](#), then the [kingdom of God](#) has come upon you.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> But because it is [God's Spirit](#) who enables me [to drive out demons](#), that proves that the [rule of God from heaven](#) is already here.



## **Matthew 12:29**

**how is anyone able to enter into the house of the strong man and steal his belongings if he has not first bound the strong man? And then he will plunder his house (ULT)**

**I will show you why I am able to drive out demons. A person...cannot...go into the house of a strong man like Satan and carry off his possessions if he does not first tie up that strong man. But if he ties him up, then he will be able to take his possessions (UST)**

Jesus uses a parable to continue his response to the Pharisees. Jesus means he can drive out demons because he is more powerful than Satan. (See: [Parables](#))

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Or how is anyone able to enter into the [house of the strong man](#) and [steal](#) his belongings if [he has](#) not first [bound](#) the [strong man](#)? And then he will plunder his [house](#).

### UST

<sup>29</sup> I will show you why I am able to drive out demons. A person cannot go into the [house](#) of [a strong man like Satan](#) and [carry off](#) his possessions if he does not first [tie up](#) that [strong man](#). But if he ties him up, then he will be able to take his [possessions](#).

**how is anyone able to enter into the house of the strong man and steal his belongings if he has not first bound the strong man (ULT)**

**I will show you why I am able to drive out demons. A person...cannot...go into the house of a strong man like Satan and carry off his possessions if he does not first tie up that strong man (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to teach the Pharisees and the crowd. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one can enter into the house of the strong man and steal his belongings without tying up the strong man first." or "If a person wants to enter into the house of the strong man and steal his belongings, he must first tie up the strong man." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**if he has not first bound the strong man (ULT)**

**if he does not first tie up that strong man (UST)**

Alternate translation: "without taking control of the strong man first"

**the house...his...then he will plunder (ULT)**

**the house...his...then he will be able to take (UST)**

Alternate translation: "then he can steal his possessions"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [house](#) (2)
- [of the strong man](#)
- [strong man](#)
- [steal](#)
- [he has...bound](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- house
- possessions (2)
- a strong man like Satan
- strong man
- carry off
- tie up

## Matthew 12:30

**The one not being with me (ULT)  
Those who do not acknowledge that the Holy Spirit enables me to expel demons are (UST)**

Alternate translation: "The one who does not support me" or "The one who does not work with me"

**me is against (ULT)  
No one can be neutral...me to expel demons are opposing (UST)**

Alternate translation: "opposes me" or "works against me"

**the one not gathering with me scatters (ULT)  
those who do not gather people to become my disciples are causing those people to go away from me (UST)**

Jesus is using a metaphor that refers to a person either **gathering** the flock of sheep to a shepherd or making them scatter away from the shepherd. Jesus means that a person is either helping to make people become disciples of Jesus or he is making people reject Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> The one not being with me is against me, and the one not gathering with me scatters.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> No one can be neutral. Those who do not acknowledge that the Holy Spirit enables me to expel demons are opposing me, and those who do not gather people to become my disciples are causing those people to go away from me.

## Matthew 12:31

### I say to you (ULT)

### I will say...to you (UST)

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

### I say to you (ULT)

### I will say...to you (UST)

Here, **you** is plural. Jesus is speaking directly to the Pharisees, but he is also teaching the crowd. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven men (ULT)

### If those who offend and insult other people in any way are then sorry and ask God to forgive them, God will forgive them...people (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will forgive every sin that people commit and every evil thing they say" or "God will forgive every person who sins or says evil things" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the...blasphemy of the Spirit will not be forgiven (ULT)

### the...he will not forgive...who insult...Holy Spirit (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will not forgive the person who speaks evil things about the Holy Spirit" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#)
- [blasphemy](#)
- [blasphemy \(2\)](#)
- [will be forgiven](#)
- [will...be forgiven \(2\)](#)
- [of the Spirit](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [If those who offend and insult other people in any way are then sorry](#)
- [If those who offend and insult other people in any way are then sorry](#)
- [who insult \(2\)](#)
- [and ask God to forgive them, God will forgive them](#)
- [he will...forgive \(2\)](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> For this reason I say to you, every [sin](#) and [blasphemy will be forgiven](#) men, but the [blasphemy of the Spirit](#) will not be forgiven.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> You are saying that it is not the Holy Spirit who is enabling me to expel demons. So I will say this to you: [If those who offend and insult other people in any way are then sorry and ask God to forgive them, God will forgive them.](#) But [he will](#) not [forgive](#) people [who insult](#) the [Holy Spirit](#).

## Matthew 12:32

**whoever speaks word against the Son of Man (ULT)**

**people who criticize me, the Son of Man (UST)**

Here, **word** refers to what someone says. Alternate translation: "If a person says anything bad about the Son of Man" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the Son of Man (ULT)**

**the Son of Man (UST)**

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**it will be forgiven him (ULT)**

**God is willing...forgive (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will forgive a person for that" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**it will be forgiven him...not (ULT)**

**God is willing...forgive...not forgive (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will not forgive that person"

**neither in this age, nor in the one coming (ULT)**

**to...not...now, nor in the coming world (UST)**

Here, **this age** and **the one coming** refer to the present life and the next life. Alternate translation: "in this life or in the next life" or "now or ever" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son of Man](#)
- [it will be forgiven](#)
- [it will...be forgiven \(2\)](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [age](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [forgive](#)
- [he will...forgive \(2\)](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [what the Holy...Spirit does. God will](#)
- [world](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> And whoever speaks word against the [Son of Man](#), [it will be forgiven](#) him. But whoever speaks against the [Holy Spirit](#), [it will not be forgiven](#) him, neither in this [age](#), nor in the one coming.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> God is willing to [forgive](#) people who criticize me, the [Son of Man](#). But I warn you that [he will](#) not forgive those who say evil things about [what the Holy Spirit does](#). [God will](#) not [forgive](#) them now, nor in the coming [world](#)."





## **Matthew 12:33**

**Either make the tree good and its fruit good, or make the tree bad and its fruit bad (ULT)  
When you see some fruit...a tree, you decide whether the fruit is good or bad. If it is good, then you know that its tree is also good. If I am (UST)**

This could mean: (1) if you make a **tree good**, its **fruit** will be **good**, and if you **make the tree bad**, its **fruit** will be **bad**. (2) this is a proverb that means if you consider a tree to be good, it will be because its fruit is good, and if you consider it tree to be bad, it will be because its fruit is bad. People were to apply its truth to how they can know whether a person is good or bad. (See: [Proverbs](#))

**good...bad (ULT)  
good...bad. If it is (UST)**

Alternate translation: "healthy ... diseased"

**for the tree is recognized by its fruit (ULT)  
from...doing good things, then you should know whether or not I am good (UST)**

Here, **fruit** is a metaphor for what a person does. Alternate translation: "people know whether a person is good or bad by looking at the results of that person's activities" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for the tree is recognized by its fruit (ULT)  
from...doing good things, then you should know whether or not I am good (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "people know whether a tree is good or bad by looking at its fruit" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [good](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [fruit](#) (2)
- [fruit](#)
- [bad](#)
- [bad](#)
- [is recognized](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [When you see some](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Either make the tree [good](#) and its [fruit good](#), or make the tree [bad](#) and its [fruit bad](#), for the tree [is recognized](#) by its [fruit](#).

### UST

<sup>33</sup> "[When you see some](#) fruit from a tree, you decide whether the [fruit is good](#) or [bad](#). [If it is good](#), then you know [that its tree is also good](#). If I am [doing good things](#), then you should [know whether or not I am good](#)."

- fruit is (2)
- doing good things, then you
- good
- good
- bad. If it is
- that its
- should know whether or not I am good



## **Matthew 12:34**

## **You offspring of vipers (ULT) children of poisonous snakes! You cannot (UST)**

Here, **offspring** means “having the characteristic of.” The **vipers** are poisonous snakes that are dangerous and represent evil. See how you translated a similar phrase in [3:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

## **You offspring...are you able (ULT) children...of poisonous snakes! You cannot (UST)**

Both **You** and **you** are plural and refer to the Pharisees. (See: [Forms of You](#))

## **being evil, how are you able to say good {things (ULT) of poisonous snakes! You cannot...say anything good...you are evil. What a person (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the Pharisees. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “you cannot say good things because you are evil” or “you can only say evil things because you are evil” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## **out...of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks (ULT) because...You are like the...says shows what is inside him (UST)**

Here, **mouth** is a synecdoche that represents a person as a whole. Alternate translation: “what a person says comes from his heart” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## **out...of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks (ULT) because...You are like the...says shows what is inside him (UST)**

Here, **heart** is a metonym for the thoughts in a person’s mind. Alternate translation: “what a person says with his mouth reveals what is in his mind” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [You offspring](#)
- [of vipers](#)
- [evil](#)
- [good {things](#)
- [of the heart](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [You are like the](#)
- [children](#)
- [of poisonous snakes! You cannot](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>34</sup> [You offspring of vipers](#), being [evil](#), how are you able to say [good {things}](#)? For out of the abundance of [the heart](#) the mouth speaks.

### **UST**

<sup>34</sup> [You are like the children of poisonous snakes! You cannot say anything good](#), because you are [evil](#). [What a person says shows what is inside him](#).

- anything good
- evil. What a person



## Matthew 12:35

**The good man from {his} good treasure brings forth good {things}, and the evil man from {his} evil treasure brings forth evil {things} (ULT)**

**Good people speak good things. That is because it is like they have stored up all these good things in a safe place and can bring them out at any time. But evil people speak evil things. That is because it is like they have stored up all these evil things and bring them out at any time from the place where they store them (UST)**

Jesus speaks about the **heart** as if it were a container that a person fills with good or evil things. This is a metaphor that means what a person says reveals what the person is truly like. If you want to keep this imagery, see the UST. You can also translate the literal meaning. Alternate translation: "A man who is truly good will speak good things, and the man who is truly evil will speak evil things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> The **good** man from {his} **good** treasure brings forth **good {things}**, and the **evil** man from {his} **evil** treasure brings forth **evil {things}**.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> **Good** people speak **good** things. That is because it is like they have stored up all these **good things in a safe place** and can bring them out at any time. But **evil** people speak **evil** things. That is because it is like they have stored up all these **evil** things and bring them out at any time from the place where they store them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- **good**
- **good**
- **good {things}**
- **evil**
- **evil**
- **evil {things}**

### Translation Words - UST

- **Good**
- **good**
- **good things in a safe place**
- **evil**
- **evil**
- **evil**

**Matthew 12:36****I say...to you (ULT)****I tell...you (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

**every careless word that...will speak (ULT)**  
**every useless word they have spoken, and he**  
**will judge the people by what they have said**  
**(UST)**

Here, **word** refers to something that someone says. Alternate translation: "every harmful thing they will have said" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**men...they will give an account concerning it (ULT)**  
**he will make people recall (UST)**

Alternate translation: "God will ask those people about it" or "those people will have to explain it to God"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the} day](#)
- [of judgment](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the day when](#)
- [God judges](#)

**ULT**

<sup>36</sup> But I say to you that every careless word that men will speak, they will give an account concerning it in [{the} day of judgment](#).

**UST**

<sup>36</sup> I tell you that on [the day when God judges](#), he will make people recall every useless word they have spoken, and he will judge the people by what they have said.

## Matthew 12:37

**you will be justified...you will be condemned (ULT)**

**God will either declare...are righteous...he will condemn you (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will justify you ... God will condemn you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- you will be justified
- you will be condemned

### Translation Words - UST

- God will either declare...are righteous
- he will condemn you

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> For by your words [you will be justified](#), and by your words [you will be condemned](#)."

### UST

<sup>37</sup> [God will either declare](#) that you [are righteous](#) based on the words that you have spoken, or else [he will condemn you](#) based on what you have said."

## Matthew 12:38

### Connecting Statement:

The dialogue in verses 38-45 happens immediately after Jesus responded to the Pharisees' accusation that he healed a man by the power of Satan.

**we wish (ULT)**

**we want (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we want"

**to see a sign from you (ULT)**

**to see you perform a miracle that will convince us that God sent you (UST)**

You can make explicit why they want **to see a sign**. Alternate translation: "to see a sign from you that proves what you say is true" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Teacher](#)
- [a sign](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Pharisees](#)
- [teachers of the Jewish laws](#)
- [Teacher](#)
- [perform a miracle that will convince us that God sent you](#)

#### ULT

**38** Then certain [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#) responded to him, saying, "[Teacher](#), we wish to see [a sign](#) from you."

#### UST

**38** Then some of the [Pharisees](#) and [teachers of the Jewish laws](#) responded to Jesus, "[Teacher](#), we want to see you [perform a miracle that will convince us that God sent you](#)."



## **Matthew 12:39**

**An evil and adulterous generation seeks a sign, but no sign will be given to it (ULT)  
You people have already seen me perform miracles, but you are evil, and you do not faithfully worship God! You want me to prove that God sent me, but God will show you...It will be like what happened to (UST)**

Jesus is speaking to his present **generation**. Alternate translation: "You are an evil and adulterous generation who demands signs from me, but no sign will be given to you" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**An evil and adulterous generation (ULT)  
You people have already seen me perform...are evil, and you do not faithfully worship God (UST)**

Here, **adulterous** is a metaphor for people who are not faithful to God. Alternate translation: "An evil and unfaithful generation" or "An evil and godless generation" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**no sign will be given to it (ULT)  
God will show you...It will be like what happened to (UST)**

Jesus would not give them a **sign** because, though he had already performed many miracles, they refused to believe him. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "I will not give it a sign" or "God will not give you a sign" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**a sign...except the...of Jonah the prophet (ULT)  
miracles, but you...only one miracle...Jonah the prophet (UST)**

Alternate translation: "except the same sign God gave to Jonah the prophet"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil](#)
- [adulterous](#)
- [An...generation](#)
- [seeks](#)
- [a sign](#)
- [sign \(2\)](#)
- [sign \(3\)](#)
- [of Jonah](#)
- [prophet](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You people have already seen me perform](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> But answering, he said to them, "An [evil](#) and [adulterous generation seeks a sign](#), but no [sign](#) will be given to it except the [sign of Jonah the prophet](#)."

### UST

<sup>39</sup> Then Jesus said to them, "[You people have already seen me perform miracles, but you are evil, and you do not faithfully worship God! You want me to prove that God sent me, but God will show you only one miracle. It will be like what happened to Jonah the prophet.](#)"

- miracles, but you
- It will be like what happened to (2)
- miracle (3)
- are evil
- you do not faithfully worship God
- You want me to prove that God sent me
- Jonah
- prophet



**Matthew 12:40**

**three days and three nights (ULT)**  
**three days and nights before God caused him to come out (UST)**

Here, **days** and **nights** mean complete 24-hour periods. Alternate translation: "three complete days" (See: [Merism](#))

**the Son of Man (ULT)**  
**the Son of Man (UST)**

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**in the heart of the earth (ULT)**  
**deep in the earth, and then God will cause me to live again (UST)**

This phrase refers to the inside a physical grave. (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [just as](#)
- [Jonah](#)
- [days](#)
- [days \(2\)](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [heart](#)
- [of the earth](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jonah](#)
- [for](#)
- [three days and](#)
- [three days and \(2\)](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [deep](#)
- [earth, and then God will cause me to live again](#)

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> For [just as Jonah](#) was three [days](#) and three nights in the belly of the big fish, in this manner the [Son of Man](#) will be three [days](#) and three nights in the [heart of the earth](#).

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> [Jonah](#) was in the stomach of a huge fish [for three days and](#) nights before God caused him to come out. Similarly, [for three days and](#) nights I, the [Son of Man](#), will be [deep](#) in the [earth](#), and then [God will cause me to live again](#).



## **Matthew 12:41**

**The} men of Nineveh (ULT)**  
**everyone, the people who lived in the city of Nineveh (UST)**

Alternate translation: "The citizens of Nineveh"

**at the judgment (ULT)**  
**When God judges...in front of him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "on the judgment day" or "when God judges people"

**this generation (ULT)**  
**you people (UST)**

Here, **this generation** refers to the people living during the time Jesus was preaching.

**will condemn it (ULT)**  
**God will judge you (UST)**

The word **condemn** could: (1) here represent accusing. Alternate translation: "will accuse this generation of people" (2) mean God **will condemn** this generation of people because they did not repent as the people of Nineveh had. Alternate translation: "God will condemn this generation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**and...behold (ULT)**  
**Now I have come to you...but you have not stopped sinning. So (UST)**

The word **behold** emphasizes what Jesus says next.

**something greater than (ULT)**  
**and I am far more important than Jonah was (UST)**

Alternate translation: "someone more important"

**something greater than (ULT)**  
**and I am far more important than Jonah was (UST)**

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**Jonah {is} here (ULT)**  
**and I am far more important than Jonah was (UST)**

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of Jesus' statement. Alternate translation: "than Jonah is here, yet you still have not repented, which is why God will condemn you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## ULT

<sup>41</sup> {The} men of Nineveh will stand up at the judgment with this generation and will condemn it. For they repented at the preaching of Jonah, and behold, something greater than Jonah {is} here.

## UST

<sup>41</sup> When God judges everyone, the people who lived in the city of Nineveh will stand in front of him beside you people. But they stopped sinning when Jonah warned them. Now I have come to you, and I am far more important than Jonah was, but you have not stopped sinning. So God will judge you.

## Translation Words - ULT

- of Nineveh
- judgment
- generation
- will condemn
- they repented
- preaching
- of Jonah
- Jonah (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- When God judges
- the people who lived in the city of Nineveh
- you people
- But they stopped sinning
- Jonah
- and I am far more important than Jonah was (2)
- warned them
- God will judge



## **Matthew 12:42**

**The} Queen of {the} South (ULT)**  
**The queen from Sheba, south of Israel, who lived long ago (UST)**

This refers to the **Queen** of Sheba. Sheba is a land south of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**will rise up at the judgment (ULT)**  
**in...when God judges everyone...will stand in front of him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "will stand up at the judgment"

**at the judgment (ULT)**  
**in...when God judges everyone (UST)**

See how you translated this phrase in [12:41](#).

**this generation (ULT)**  
**you people (UST)**

Here, **this generation** refers to the people living during the time Jesus was preaching.

**condemn it (ULT)**  
**she will condemn you (UST)**

See how you translated a similar statement in [12:41](#). The word **condemn** could: (1) here represent accusing. Alternate translation: "will accuse this generation of people" (2) mean God will **condemn** this generation of people because they did not listen to wisdom as the Queen of the South had. Alternate translation: "God will condemn this generation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**she came from the ends of the earth (ULT)**  
**came...from a distant region (UST)**

Here, **the ends of the earth** is an idiom that means "very far away." Alternate translation: "she came from very far away" (See: [Idiom](#))

**for she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon (ULT)**  
**came from a distant region...order to listen to King Solomon teach many wise things...the queen of Sheba (UST)**

This statement explains why the Queen of the South will condemn the people of Jesus' generation. (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

**ULT**

<sup>42</sup> {The} Queen of {the} South will rise up at the judgment with this generation and condemn it, for she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon, and behold, something greater than Solomon {is} here.

**UST**

<sup>42</sup> The queen from Sheba, south of Israel, who lived long ago, came from a distant region in order to listen to King Solomon teach many wise things. Now I have come to you, and I am far more important than Solomon was, but you have not stopped sinning. So when God judges everyone, the queen of Sheba will stand in front of him beside you people, and she will condemn you."



**and...behold (ULT)****Now I have come to you...and (UST)**

The word **behold** adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

**something greater than (ULT)****I am far more important than (UST)**

Alternate translation: "someone more important"

**something greater than (ULT)****I am far more important than (UST)**

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

**Solomon {is} here (ULT)****Solomon was, but you have not stopped sinning. So (UST)**

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of Jesus' statement. Alternate translation: "than Solomon is here, yet you do not listen. That is why God will condemn you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [The} Queen](#)
- [will rise up](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [generation](#)
- [condemn](#)
- [of the earth](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [of Solomon](#)
- [Solomon \(2\)](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [The queen](#)
- [a distant region](#)
- [King Solomon](#)
- [Solomon was, but you have not stopped sinning. So \(2\)](#)
- [teach many wise things](#)
- [when God judges everyone](#)
- [will stand in front of him](#)
- [you people](#)
- [she will condemn](#)

## Matthew 12:43

### waterless places (ULT) desolate areas (UST)

Alternate translation: "dry places" or "places where no people live"

### not finding {it} (ULT) If he does...not...find anyone (UST)

Here, **it** refers to rest.

### Translation Words - ULT

- unclean spirit
- unclean
- seeking
- rest

### Translation Words - UST

- an evil...spirit
- an evil
- seeking
- someone in whom he can rest

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> Now when the **unclean** spirit departs from the man, it passes through waterless places, **seeking rest** and not finding {it}.

### UST

<sup>43</sup> "Sometimes when **an evil spirit** leaves a person, it wanders around in desolate areas, **seeking someone in whom he can rest**. If he does not find anyone,



## **Matthew 12:44**

**Then it says, 'I will return to my house from which I departed (ULT)  
he says to itself, 'I will return to the person in whom I used to live (UST)**

You can translate this as a statement rather than a quotation.  
Alternate translation: "So, the unclean spirit decides to return to the house from which it departed"

**to my house...from which I departed (ULT)  
to itself...to the person in whom I used to live (UST)**

Here, **my house** is a metaphor for the person in whom the unclean spirit was living. Alternate translation: "to the person I left" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**it finds {it} being empty, having been swept out and put in order (ULT)  
and finds that the Spirit of God is not in control of that person's life. The person's life is like a house that has been swept clean and everything put in order, but it is empty (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the unclean spirit finds that someone has swept the house clean and has put everything in the house where it belongs" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**being empty, having been swept out and put in order (ULT)  
and finds that the Spirit of God is not in control of that person's life...The person's life is like a house that has been swept clean and everything put in order, but it is empty (UST)**

Here, **swept out and put in order** suggests that no one is living in the house. Jesus means when an unclean spirit leaves a person, the person must invite the Holy Spirit to live in him or else the demon will come back. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will return](#)
- [house](#)
- [having been swept out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [itself](#)
- [I will return](#)
- [The person's life is like a house that has been swept clean](#)

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> Then it says, 'I will return to my house from which I departed.' And having come, it finds {it} being empty, [having been swept out](#) and put in order.

### UST

<sup>44</sup> he says to [itself](#), 'I will return to the person in whom I used to live.' So he goes back and finds that the Spirit of God is not in control of that person's life. [The person's life is like a house that has been swept clean](#) and everything put in order, but it is empty.

## Matthew 12:45

**Then it goes and takes along with itself seven other spirits more evil than itself, and having entered, they live there. And the end of that man becomes worse than the first. It will be the same way also with this evil generation**

Jesus tells a parable to warn the people of the danger of not believing him. (See: [Parables](#))

### **It will be the same way also with this evil generation**

This means that if the people of Jesus' generation do not believe him and become his disciples, they will be in a worse situation than they were before he came.

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [spirits](#)
- [more evil than](#)
- [evil](#)
- [with...generation](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [spirits](#)
- [more evil](#)
- [wicked](#)
- [you...people who have heard me teach will experience](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>45</sup> Then it goes and takes along with itself seven other [spirits more evil than](#) itself, and having entered, they live there. And the end of that man becomes worse than the first. It will be the same way also with this [evil generation](#)."

### **UST**

<sup>45</sup> Then this evil spirit goes and gets seven other [spirits](#) that are even [more evil](#), and they all enter that person and begin living there. So although that person's condition was bad before, it becomes much worse. That is what you [wicked people who have heard me teach will experience](#)."

## Matthew 12:46

### General Information:

The arrival of Jesus' mother and brothers becomes an opportunity for him to describe his spiritual family.

### behold (ULT) his mother (UST)

The word **behold** alerts us to a new people in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

### his} mother (ULT) his mother (UST)

This is Mary, Jesus' human mother.

### he...brothers (ULT) Jesus...younger brothers arrived. They (UST)

Most people understand **his brothers** to refer to other sons born to Mary after Jesus—his younger brothers. Some people believe the word **brothers** here refers to Jesus' cousins.

### seeking...to speak (ULT) they wanted...to speak (UST)

Alternate translation: "wanting to speak"

### Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- seeking

### Translation Words - UST

- younger brothers arrived. They
- they wanted

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> {While} he is still speaking to the crowds, behold, {his} mother and his **brothers** standing outside, **seeking** to speak to him.

### UST

<sup>46</sup> While Jesus was still speaking to the crowd, his mother and his **younger brothers arrived**. **They** stood outside the house, and **they wanted** to speak with him.

## Matthew 12:47

**Now someone said to him, “Behold, your mother and your brothers stand outside, seeking to speak to you (ULT)**

**Someone said to him, “Your mother and your younger brothers are standing outside the house, and they want to talk to you (UST)**

You can translate this direct quotation as an indirect quotation.  
Alternate translation: “Someone told Jesus that his mother and brothers were outside and wanted to speak to him” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [seeking](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [younger brothers](#)
- [and they want](#)

#### ULT

<sup>47</sup> Now someone said to him, “Behold, your mother and your [brothers](#) stand outside, [seeking](#) to speak to you.”

#### UST

<sup>47</sup> Someone said to him, “Your mother and your [younger brothers](#) are standing outside the house, [and they want](#) to talk to you.”



**Matthew 12:48**

**to the one speaking to him (ULT)**  
**to the person who told him that, "I will tell you (UST)**

The details of the message the person told Jesus are understood and not repeated here. Alternate translation: "to the one who told Jesus that his mother and brothers wanted to speak to him" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Who is my mother and who are my brothers (ULT)**  
**who are really my mother and brothers (UST)**

Jesus uses this question to teach the people. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will tell you who are really my mother and brothers." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [brothers](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [brothers](#)

**ULT**

<sup>48</sup> But answering, he said to the one speaking to him, "Who is my mother and who are my [brothers](#)?"

**UST**

<sup>48</sup> Then Jesus said to the person who told him that, "I will tell you who are really my mother and [brothers](#)."

## Matthew 12:49

### Behold (ULT)

### These are ones who take the place of (UST)

Alternate translation: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

### my mother and my brothers (ULT)

### my mother and my brothers (UST)

This is a metaphor that means Jesus' disciples belong to Jesus' spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [brothers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He then pointed toward](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [brothers](#)

### ULT

<sup>49</sup> And having stretched out his [hand](#) toward his [disciples](#), he said, "Behold, my mother and my [brothers](#)!"

### UST

<sup>49</sup> [He then pointed toward](#) his [disciples](#) and said, "These are ones who take the place of my mother and my [brothers](#)."

**Matthew 12:50****whoever...does (ULT)****Those who...do (UST)**

Alternate translation: "anyone who does"

**of my Father (ULT)****God my Father (UST)****Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))**he is my brother, and sister, and mother (ULT)****take the place of my brother, my sister, or my mother (UST)**This is a metaphor meaning that those who obey God belong to Jesus' spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family. (See: [Metaphor](#))**Translation Words - ULT**

- [will of...Father](#)
- [of...Father](#)
- [the} heavens](#)
- [brother](#)
- [sister](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [what...God...Father...wants](#)
- [God...Father](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [brother](#)
- [my sister](#)

**ULT**

<sup>50</sup> For whoever does the [will of](#) my [Father](#) in [{the} heavens](#), he is my [brother](#), and [sister](#), and mother."

**UST**

<sup>50</sup> Those who do [what God](#) my [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#) [wants](#) take the place of my [brother](#), [my sister](#), or my mother."

## Matthew 13

### Matthew 13 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 13:14-15, which are words from the Old Testament.

This chapter begins a new section. It contains some of Jesus' parables about the kingdom of heaven.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Metonymy

Jesus often says The word **heaven** when he wants his hearers to think of God, who lives in heaven ([13:11](#)).

##### Implicit information

Speakers usually do not say things that they think their hearers already understand. When Matthew wrote that Jesus "sat beside the sea" ([Matthew 13:1](#)), he probably expected his hearers to know that Jesus was about to teach the people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

##### Metaphor

Speakers often use words for things that can be touched to speak of things that cannot be touched. Jesus spoke of a bird eating a seed to describe how Satan kept people from understanding Jesus' message ([13:19](#)).

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Passive voice

Many sentences in this chapter tell that a person had something happen to him without saying who caused that something to happen. For example, "they were scorched" ([13:6](#)). You may have to translate the sentence so that it tells the reader who performed the action. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

##### Parables

The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth ([13:11-13](#)).

## Matthew 13:1

### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story where Jesus begins to teach the crowds, using parables, about the kingdom of heaven.

### On that day (ULT)

### That same day (UST)

These events happened on the same **day** as those in the previous chapter.

### having gone out...of the house (ULT)

### left...the house where he was teaching and went to (UST)

It is not mentioned at whose **house** Jesus was staying.

### was sitting beside the sea (ULT)

### the shore of the Sea of Galilee. He sat down there (UST)

It is implied that the reason he sat down was to teach the people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- day
- Jesus
- of the house
- sea

### Translation Words - UST

- That same day
- Jesus, along with the disciples
- house where he was teaching and went to
- Sea of Galilee

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> On that **day**, **Jesus**, having gone out **of the house**, was sitting beside the **sea**.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> **That same day** **Jesus**, along with the **disciples**, left the **house where he was teaching and went to** the shore of the **Sea of Galilee**. He sat down there,

## Matthew 13:2

**As a result, having stepped into a boat, he sat down (ULT)**

**listen to him teach. In order to have a little room, he got into a boat...sat down to teach them (UST)**

It is implied that Jesus got into a boat because it would make it easier to teach the people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**a boat (ULT)**

**he got (UST)**

This **boat** was probably an open, wooden fishing boat with a sail. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were gathered](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gathered around](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And very large crowds [were gathered](#) around him. As a result, having stepped into a boat, he sat down, and the whole crowd stood on the beach.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> and a very large crowd [gathered around](#) him to listen to him teach. In order to have a little room, he got into a boat and sat down to teach them. The crowd stood on the shore and listened to him.

## Matthew 13:3

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a person who sows seeds.

**And he spoke many {things} to them in parables (ULT)**

**He taught them using many parables (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And Jesus told them many things in parables"

**to them (ULT)**

**them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to the people in the crowd"

**Behold (ULT)**

**Listen (UST)**

The word **Behold** calls attention to what is to be said next. Alternate translation: "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you" or "Look" or "Listen"

**the sower went out to sow (ULT)**

**A man went out to his field to sow seeds (UST)**

Alternate translation: "a farmer went out to scatter seeds in a field"

### Translation Words - ULT

- parables
- sower
- to sow

### Translation Words - UST

- parables
- A man...to sow
- seeds

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And he spoke many {things} to them in parables, saying, "Behold, the sower went out to sow.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> He taught them using many parables. He said, "Listen! A man went out to his field to sow seeds.

**Matthew 13:4**

**And as he sowed it (ULT)**  
**As he was scattering the seeds over the soil,**  
**some of the seeds (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And as the farmer scattered the seed"

**beside the road (ULT)**  
**on the path (UST)**

Here, **road** may refer to a path next to the field. The ground there would have been hard from people walking on it.

**devoured them (ULT)**  
**ate those seeds (UST)**

Alternate translation: "ate all the seeds"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- as he sowed
- devoured

**Translation Words - UST**

- was scattering...seeds over the soil, some of the seeds
- ate

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> And as he sowed it, some fell beside the road, and the birds came and devoured them.

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> As he was scattering the seeds over the soil, some of the seeds fell on the path. But some birds came and ate those seeds.



## Matthew 13:5

**the rocky ground (ULT)**

**the rock (UST)**

This is ground full of rocks with just a thin layer of soil on top of the rocks.

**And immediately it sprang up (ULT)**

**Those seeds sprouted very soon (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And the seeds quickly sprouted and grew"

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> But others fell on the rocky ground, where it did not have much soil. And immediately it sprang up, because the soil had no depth.

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> Other seeds fell on ground where there was not much soil on top of the rock. Those seeds sprouted very soon, because the sun quickly warmed the shallow soil.

## Matthew 13:6

**it was scorched (ULT)**

**they became too hot in the sunlight (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the sun scorched the plants, and they became too hot” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**it withered (ULT)**

**they dried up (UST)**

Alternate translation: “the plants became dry and died”

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But {when} {the} sun had risen, it was scorched, and because it had no root, it withered.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But when the young plants came up, they became too hot in the sunlight, and they dried up because they did not have deep roots.

**Matthew 13:7****fell among the thorns (ULT)****fell...on ground that had thorny weeds (UST)**

Alternate translation: "fell where plants with thorns grew"

**choked them (ULT)****they crowded out the plants (UST)**

Translate **choked** with a word your language uses for the way weeds prevent other plants from growing well. Alternate translation: "choked the new sprouts" or "crowded around the new plants and prevented them from growing"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- thorns
- thorns

**Translation Words - UST**

- ground that had thorny weeds
- thorny weeds

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> But others fell among the thorns, and the thorns grew up and choked them.

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> Other seeds fell on ground that had thorny weeds. The thorny weeds grew together with the young plants, and they crowded out the plants.

## Matthew 13:8

### produced a crop (ULT) produced...lot of grain (UST)

Alternate translation: "grew more seeds" or "gave more grain"

### some one 100 times as much, and some 60, and some 30

The words "seeds," "produced," and "crop" are understood from the previous phrase. These can be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: "some seeds produced 100 times as much crop, some seeds produced 60 times as much crop, and some seeds produced 30 times as much crop" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- good
- a crop

### Translation Words - UST

- good
- lot of grain

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But others fell on [good](#) soil and produced [a crop](#), some 100 {times as much}, and some 60, and some 30.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> But other seeds fell on [good](#) soil, and the plants grew and produced a [lot of grain](#). Some plants produced one hundred times as many seeds as were planted. Some plants produced sixty times as much. Some plants produced thirty times as much.

## Matthew 13:9

**The one having ears, let him hear (ULT)**  
**If you are able to understand this, you should consider carefully what I have just said (UST)**

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase **having ears** here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated a similar phrase in [11:15](#). Alternate translation: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen" or "The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The one having ears, let him hear (ULT)**  
**If you are able to understand this, you should consider carefully what I have just said (UST)**

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated a similar phrase in [11:15](#). Alternate translation: "If you are willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The one having ears, let him hear."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> If you are able to understand this, you should consider carefully what I have just said."

## Matthew 13:10

### General Information:

Jesus explains to his disciples why he teaches with parables.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [parables](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [parables](#)

### ULT

**10** And having approached, the [disciples](#) said to him, “For what reason do you speak to them in [parables](#)?”

### UST

**10** The [disciples](#) approached Jesus later and asked him, “Why do you use [parables](#) when you speak to the crowd?”



## **Matthew 13:11**



**To you has been given to understand the mysteries of the kingdom of the heavens, but to those it has not been given (ULT)  
God is revealing...to you...what he did not reveal before, about how he is ruling from heaven. But he has not revealed it to these other people (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God has given to you to understand mysteries of the kingdom of the heavens, but God has not given it to these people" or "God has made you able to understand mysteries of the kingdom of the heavens, but he has not enabled these people to understand" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**To you has been given to understand the mysteries of the kingdom of the heavens, but to those it has not been given (ULT)  
God is revealing...to you...what he did not reveal before, about how he is ruling from heaven. But he has not revealed it to these other people (UST)**

You can state the implied information clearly. Alternate translation: "God has given you the privilege of understanding mysteries of the kingdom of the heavens, but God has not given it to these people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**To you (ULT)  
to you (UST)**

The word **you** is plural here and refers to the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**the mysteries of the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)  
what he did not reveal before, about how he is ruling from heaven (UST)**

Here, **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule. The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** occurs only in the book of Matthew. If possible, try to keep it in your translation. Alternate translation: "the secrets about our God in heaven and his rule" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to understand](#)
- [mysteries](#)
- [of the kingdom...of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God is revealing](#)
- [what he did not reveal before](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But he, answering, said to them, "To you has been given [to understand](#) the [mysteries of the kingdom of the heavens](#), but to those it has not been given.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> He answered, "[God is revealing](#) to you [what he did not reveal before, about how he is ruling from heaven](#). But he has not revealed it to these other people.

- about how he is ruling...from heaven
- heaven

**Matthew 13:12****whoever...has (ULT)**

**Those who are able to think about what I say and understand it...Those who are able to think about what I say and understand it (UST)**

Alternate translation: "whoever has understanding" or "whoever receives what I teach"

**it will be given (ULT)**

**God will enable them to understand more (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will give him more understanding" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**whoever does not have**

Alternate translation: "whoever does not have understanding" or "whoever does not receive what I teach"

**even what he has will be taken away from him (ULT)**  
**will forget even what they already know (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will take away even what he has" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> For whoever has, it will be given to him, and he will have an abundance. But whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken away from him.

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> Those who are able to think about what I say and understand it, God will enable them to understand more. But those who are not able think carefully about what I say will forget even what they already know.



## **Matthew 13:13**

**to them...they do not see...they do not hear (ULT)**  
**when I speak to people...they do not understand what it means...they do not really learn what it means (UST)**

All occurrences of **them** and **they** refer to the people in the crowd.

**because seeing, they do not see; and hearing, they do not hear nor understand (ULT)**  
**because although they see what I do, they do not understand what it means, and although they hear what I say, they do not really learn what it means (UST)**

Jesus uses this parallelism to tell and emphasize to the disciples that the crowd refuses to understand God's truth. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**seeing (ULT)**  
**they see what I do (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) them **seeing** what Jesus does. Alternate translation: "though they see what I do" (2) their ability to see. Alternate translation: "though they are able to see"

**they do not see (ULT)**  
**they do not understand what it means (UST)**

Here, **see** represents understanding. Alternate translation: "they do not understand" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**hearing (ULT)**  
**they hear what I say (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) them **hearing** what Jesus teaches. Alternate translation: "though they hear what I say" (2) their ability to hear. Alternate translation: "though they are able to hear"

**they do not hear (ULT)**  
**they do not really learn what it means (UST)**

Here, **hear** represents listening well. Alternate translation: "they do not listen well" or "they do not pay attention" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [parables](#)
- [understand](#)

## ULT

<sup>13</sup> For this reason I speak to them in [parables](#); because seeing, they do not see; and hearing, they do not hear nor [understand](#).

## UST

<sup>13</sup> That is why [I use parables](#) when I speak to people, because although they see what I do, they do not understand what it means, and although they hear what I say, [they do not really learn what it means](#).

## **Translation Words - UST**

- I use parables
- they do...really learn what it means

## Matthew 13:14

### And to them the prophecy of Isaiah is being fulfilled, which says

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "And they are fulfilling what God said long ago through the prophet Isaiah"

**In hearing you will hear, but you will certainly not understand; and seeing, you will see, but you will certainly not perceive (ULT)**  
**You will hear what I say, but you will not understand it. You will see what I do, but you will not learn what it means (UST)**

This begins a quote from the prophet Isaiah about the unbelieving people of Isaiah's day. Jesus uses this quote to describe the very crowd that was listening to him. These statements are again parallel and emphasize that the people refused to understand God's truth. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**In hearing you will hear, but you will certainly not understand (ULT)**  
**You will hear what I say, but you will not understand it (UST)**

You can make explicit what the people **will hear**. Alternate translation: "You will hear what God says through the prophets, but you will not understand its true meaning" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**seeing, you will see, but you will certainly not perceive (ULT)**  
**You will see what I do...but you will not learn what it means (UST)**

You can make explicit what the people **will see**. Alternate translation: "you will see what God does through the prophets, but you will not understand it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophecy](#)
- [of Isaiah](#)
- [is being fulfilled](#)
- [you will...understand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [do completely fulfills](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [you will...understand it](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And in them the [prophecy of Isaiah is being fulfilled](#), which says, "In hearing you will hear, but [you will](#) certainly not [understand](#); and seeing, you will see, but you will certainly not perceive.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> What these people [do completely fulfills](#) what God told the [prophet Isaiah](#) to say long ago, You will hear what I say, but [you will](#) not [understand it](#). You will see what I do, but you will not learn what it means.





## **Matthew 13:15**

**For the heart of this people was made dull, and {their} ears heard with difficulty, and they closed their eyes, lest they see with {their} eyes, and hear with {their} ears, and understand with {their} hearts, and turn back, and I will heal them (ULT)**

**God also said to Isaiah, “These people are able to hear what I say, but they will never understand the message. They have eyes that can see, but they will never see clearly what it is they are looking at. They have closed their eyes so they cannot see. They cannot see with their eyes, and they cannot hear with their ears, and they cannot understand. If they could see and hear and understand, then they would turn to me,” God says, “and I would heal them (UST)**

In 13:15 God describes the people of Israel as if they have physical diseases that cause them to be unable to learn, to **see**, and to **hear**. God wants them to come to him so he will **heal** them. This is all a metaphor describing the people’s spiritual condition. It means the people are stubborn and refuse to receive and understand God’s truth. If they would, then they would repent and God would forgive them and welcome them back as his people. If the meaning is clear, keep the metaphor in your translation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**For the heart of this people was made dull (ULT) said to Isaiah, “These people...the message. They have eyes that can see, but they will...so they cannot see. They cannot see with their eyes (UST)**

Here, **heart** refers to the mind. Alternate translation: “For these people’s minds are slow to learn” or “For these people can no longer learn” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**their} ears heard with difficulty (ULT) are able to hear what I say, but they will never understand (UST)**

They are not physically deaf. Here, **heard with difficulty** means they refuse to listen and learn God’s truth. Alternate translation: “they refuse to use their ears to listen” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**they closed their eyes (ULT) never see clearly what it is they are looking at. They have closed...their eyes (UST)**

They have not literally **closed their eyes**. This means they refuse to understand. Alternate translation: “they refuse to use their eyes to see” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> For the **heart** of this **people** was made dull, and {their} ears heard with difficulty, and they closed their eyes, lest they see with {their} eyes, and hear with {their} ears, and **understand** with {their} **hearts**, and **turn back**, and **I will heal** them.’

### UST

<sup>15</sup> God also said to Isaiah, “These **people** are able to hear what I say, but they will never understand **the message**. **They have eyes that can see, but they will** never see clearly what it is they are looking at. They have closed their eyes so they cannot see. They cannot see with their eyes, and they cannot hear with their ears, and they cannot understand. If they could see and hear and **understand**, then **they would turn to me,**” **God says,** “and **I would heal** them.”

## **lest they might see with their eyes, and might hear with their ears, and might understand with their hearts, and they might turn back**

Alternate translation: “so that they are not able to see with their eyes, hear with their ears, or understand with their heart, and as a result turn again”

### **understand with {their} hearts (ULT) understand (UST)**

The word **hearts** here is a metonym for people’s innermost being. You may need to use the word in your language for the source of people’s thinking and feelings. Alternate translation: “understand with their minds” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### **turn back (ULT) they would turn to me,” God says (UST)**

Alternate translation: “they might turn back to me” or “they might repent”

### **I will heal them (ULT) I would heal them (UST)**

Here, to **heal them** means God would restore them spiritually by forgiving their sins and receiving them again as his people. Alternate translation: “have me receive them again” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- [heart](#)
- [with...their} hearts](#)
- [of...people](#)
- [understand](#)
- [turn back](#)
- [I will heal](#)

## **Translation Words - UST**

- [people](#)
- [the message...They have eyes that can see, but they will](#)
- [understand](#)
- [understand](#)
- [they would turn to me,” God says](#)
- [I would heal](#)

## Matthew 13:16

**But blessed {are} your eyes, for they see; and your ears, for they hear (ULT)**

**But as for you, God has made you able because you realize what I have done and because you understand what I say (UST)**

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that they have pleased God because they have believed what Jesus has said and done. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But [blessed {are}](#) your eyes, for they see; and your ears, for they hear.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> But as for you, God has [made you able](#) because you realize what I have done and because you understand what I say.

**But blessed {are} your eyes, for they see (ULT)**

**But as for you, God has made you able because you realize (UST)**

Here, **eyes** refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "You are blessed because your eyes are able to see" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**your...your (ULT)**

**as for you, God has...because you understand what I say (UST)**

Both occurrences of **your** are plural and refer to the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**your ears, for they hear (ULT)**

**what I have done...because you understand what I say (UST)**

Here, **ears** refer to the whole person. Alternate translation: "you, for you hear" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**your ears, for they hear (ULT)**

**what I have done...because you understand what I say (UST)**

You can clearly explicitly the implied information. Alternate translation: "you are blessed because your ears are able to hear" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blessed {are}](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [made you able](#)

## Matthew 13:17

### For truly I say to you (ULT)

#### Note this: Many (UST)

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "For I tell you the truth"

### to you...you see...you hear (ULT)

#### Note this: Many...you are seeing me do...you have been hearing me say (UST)

All occurrences of **you** are plural and refer to the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### what you see (ULT)

#### what you are seeing me do (UST)

You can state explicitly what they have seen. Alternate translation: "the things you have seen me do" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### what you hear (ULT)

#### the things that you have been hearing me say (UST)

You can state explicitly what they have heard. Alternate translation: "the things you have heard me say" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- truly
- prophets
- righteous {ones}

## Translation Words - UST

- Note this: Many
- prophets
- righteous people who lived long ago

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> For truly I say to you that many prophets and righteous {ones} longed to see what you see, and did not see them, and to hear what you hear, and did not hear them.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Note this: Many prophets and righteous people who lived long ago longed to see what you are seeing me do, but they did not see it. They longed to hear the things that you have been hearing me say, but they did not hear what you hear me say."

## Matthew 13:18

### Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus begins to explain to his disciples the parable about a person who sows seeds, which he began in [13:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [parable](#)
- [of the sower](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the parable](#)
- [parable about the man who sowed seeds in various kinds of soil](#)

#### ULT

**18** You, therefore, listen to the [parable of the sower](#).

#### UST

**18** Now listen to me explain [the parable parable about the man who sowed seeds in various kinds of soil](#).





## **Matthew 13:19**

**the word of the kingdom (ULT)**  
**Some people hear...about how God is ruling (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the message about God's rule as king"

**the evil one comes and snatches away {what} had been sown in his heart (ULT)**  
**Satan, the evil one, comes and causes...to forget what they have heard (UST)**

Jesus speaks of Satan causing the person to forget what he has heard as if Satan were a bird snatching the seed from the ground.

Alternate translation: "The evil one causes him to forget the message that he has heard just as a bird snatches away seed from the ground" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the evil one (ULT)**  
**Satan, the evil one (UST)**

Here, **the evil one** refers to Satan. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**snatches away (ULT)**  
**to forget what they have heard (UST)**

Translate **snatches** with a word in your language that means to grab something away from someone who is the rightful owner.

**what} had been sown in his heart (ULT)**  
**to forget what they have heard (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the message that God sowed in his heart" or "the message that he heard" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in his heart (ULT)**  
**to forget what they have heard (UST)**

Here, **heart** refers to the mind of the hearer. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the...This is...was sown beside the road (ULT)**  
**They are...the path where some of the seeds fell. Satan, the evil one...these people (UST)**

Alternate translation: "This is the meaning of the seed that was sown beside the road" or "The road where seed was sown represents this person"

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> Everyone hearing the word of the kingdom and not understanding, the evil one comes and snatches away {what} had been sown in his heart. This is {what} was sown beside the road.

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> Some people hear about how God is ruling but do not understand it. They are like the path where some of the seeds fell. Satan, the evil one, comes and causes these people to forget what they have heard.

## **beside the road (ULT) the path where (UST)**

See how you translated this in [13:4](#).

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- of the kingdom
- understanding
- evil one
- snatches away
- had been sown
- was sown
- heart

### **Translation Words - UST**

- about how God is ruling
- do...understand it
- to forget what they have heard
- some of the seeds fell
- Satan, the evil one
- to forget what they have heard
- to forget what they have heard

## Matthew 13:20

**Now the one having been sown on the rocky ground (ULT)**

**rocky places where some seeds fell (UST)**

The phrase **that sown** refers to seed that fell. Alternate translation: “Now the seed that fell on rocky ground” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Now the one having been sown on the rocky ground, this is (ULT)**

**They are...rocky places where some seeds fell (UST)**

Alternate translation: “Now the rocky ground where seed was sown represents” or “Now the rocky ground where seed fell represents”

**the one...hearing the word (ULT)**

**Some people hear God’s message...the rocky places where some seeds fell (UST)**

In the parable, the seed represents **the word**.

**the word (ULT)**

**God’s message...the (UST)**

Here, **the word** represents God’s message. Alternate translation: “the message” or “God’s teaching” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**receiving it with joy (ULT)**

**accept it joyfully (UST)**

Believing the word is spoken of as **receiving it**. Alternate translation: “joyfully believing it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having been sown](#)
- [receiving](#)
- [joy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [accept](#)
- [joyfully](#)
- [rocky places where some seeds fell](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Now the one [having been sown](#) on the rocky ground, this is the one hearing the word and immediately [receiving](#) it with [joy](#);

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Some people hear God’s message and immediately [accept](#) it [joyfully](#). They are like the [rocky places where some seeds fell](#).

**Matthew 13:21**

**but he has no root in himself, but is temporary (ULT)**

**But because it does not penetrate deeply into their hearts, they believe it for only a short time. They are like...plants that did not have deep roots (UST)**

The **root** represents what makes a person continue to believe God's message. Alternate translation: "But like a plant that does not grow deep roots, he only endures for a little while" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**immediately he stumbles (ULT)**  
**they sin by refusing to believe in it any longer (UST)**

Here, **is caused to stumble** means stops believing. Alternate translation: "he quickly stops believing the message" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [tribulation](#)
- [persecution](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [When others treat them badly](#)
- [make them suffer](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> but he has no root in himself, but is temporary; but [tribulation](#) or [persecution](#) having happened because of the word, immediately he stumbles.

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> But because it does not penetrate deeply into their hearts, they believe it for only a short time. They are like the plants that did not have deep roots. [When others treat them badly](#) and [make them suffer](#) because they believe in what I have told them, they sin by refusing to believe in it any longer.



## **Matthew 13:22**

**the one...having been sown (ULT)**  
**thorny weeds in it...soil that had the roots of (UST)**

This refers to seed that was **sown** or that fell. Alternate translation: “the seed that was sown” or “the seed that fell” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Now the one having been sown among the thorns (ULT)**  
**soil that had the roots of thorny weeds in it (UST)**

Alternate translation: “Now the ground with the thorn plants where seed was sown”

**the one...this is (ULT)**  
**These people are...thorny weeds in it (UST)**

Alternate translation: “this represents the person”

**the word (ULT)**  
**God’s message...the (UST)**

Alternate translation: “the message” or “God’s teaching”

**the worry of this age and the deceitfulness of riches choke the word (ULT)**  
**desire to be rich, so they worry only about money and what they can buy with money. As a result, they forget God’s message (UST)**

Jesus speaks about the **cares** of the world and the **deceitfulness of riches** distracting a person from obeying God’s word as if they were weeds that could wind around a plant and keep it from growing. Alternate translation: “as weeds prevent good plants from growing, the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of riches keep this person from listening to God’s word” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the worry of this age (ULT)**  
**so they worry only about money and what they can buy with money (UST)**

Alternate translation: “the things in this world that people worry about”

**the deceitfulness of riches (ULT)**  
**desire to be rich (UST)**

Jesus describes **riches** as if it were a person who could deceive someone. This means people think having more money will make them happy, but it will not. Alternate translation: “the love of money” (See: [Personification](#))

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> Now the one [having been sown](#) among the [thorns](#), this is the one hearing the word, but the worry of this [age](#) and the [deceitfulness](#) of riches choke the word, and it becomes [unfruitful](#).

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> Some people hear God’s message, but they [desire to be rich](#), so they worry [only about money and what they can buy with money](#). As a result, they forget God’s message and [they do not do the things that God wants them to do](#). These people are like the [soil that had the roots of thorny weeds in it](#).



**it becomes unfruitful (ULT)**  
**they do not do the things that God wants them to do (UST)**

The person is spoken of as if he were a plant. Being **unfruitful** represents being unproductive. Alternate translation: "he becomes unproductive" or "he does not do what God wants" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having been sown](#)
- [thorns](#)
- [of...age](#)
- [deceitfulness](#)
- [unfruitful](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [desire to be rich](#)
- [so they worry only about money and what they can buy with money](#)
- [they do not do the things that God wants them to do](#)
- [soil that had the roots of](#)
- [thorny weeds in it](#)

## Matthew 13:23

**the one...having been sown on the good soil (ULT)**

**But...good...But...good...soil where some of the seeds fell (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the good soil where seeds were sown"

**who indeed produces a crop and yields, some (ULT)**

**and some do very many things that please God (UST)**

The person is spoken of as if he were a plant. Alternate translation: "like a healthy plant that is productive, some bear a crop that yields" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**some yield 100 times, and some 60, and some 30**

The phrase "as much as was planted" is understood following each of these numbers. See how you translated this in [13:8](#). Alternate translation: "some people produce 100 times as much as was planted, some produce 60 times as much, and some produce 30 times as much" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having been sown](#)
- [good](#)
- [understanding {it}](#)
- [produces a crop](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [But...good](#)
- [understand it](#)
- [things that please God](#)
- [where some of the seeds fell](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Now the one [having been sown](#) on the [good](#) soil, this is the one hearing the word and [understanding {it}](#), who indeed [produces a crop](#) and yields, some 100 {times}, and some 60, and some 30."

### UST

<sup>23</sup> [But](#) some people hear my message and [understand it](#). Some of them do many things that please God, some do even more things that please God, and some do very many [things that please God](#). They are like the [good soil where some of the seeds fell](#)."

## Matthew 13:24

### Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a field with both wheat and weeds growing in it. (See: [Parables](#))

### The kingdom of the heavens is compared to a man (ULT)

### When God rules from heaven, it will be like a landowner who sent his servants (UST)

The translation should not equate the **kingdom of the heavens** to a man, but rather the **kingdom of the heavens** is like the situation described in the parable. (See: [Simile](#))

### The kingdom of the heavens is compared to (ULT)

### When God rules from heaven, it will be like a landowner (UST)

Here, **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** is used only in Matthew. if possible, use **heavens** in your translation. Alternate translation: "When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### good seed (ULT)

### good seed (UST)

The audience probably thought that Jesus was talking about wheat. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)) Alternate translation: "good food seeds" or "good grain seeds"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [parable](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)
- [is compared to](#)
- [having sown](#)
- [good](#)
- [seed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [parable](#)
- [When God rules...from heaven](#)
- [from heaven](#)
- [it will be like a landowner](#)
- [to sow](#)
- [good](#)
- [seed](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> He set before them another [parable](#), saying, "The [kingdom of the heavens](#) is compared to a man [having sown good seed](#) in his field.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Jesus also told the crowd another [parable](#). He said, "[When God rules from heaven, it will be like a landowner](#) who sent his servants [to sow good seed](#) in his field.

**Matthew 13:25****his enemy came (ULT)  
an enemy of the landowner came (UST)**

Alternate translation: "his enemy came to the field"

**darnel (ULT)  
weed seeds (UST)**

The **darnel** that was sown looks like food plants when it is young, but its grain is poison. Alternate translation: "bad seed" or "weed seeds"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- slept
- enemy
- sowed
- wheat

**Translation Words - UST**

- While those servants were sleeping and not guarding the field
- an enemy of the landowner
- scattered
- wheat

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> But while the men **slept**, his **enemy** came and **sowed** darnel among the **wheat** and went away.

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> While those servants were sleeping and not guarding the field, an enemy of the landowner came and scattered weed seeds in the midst of the **wheat**. Then he left.

## Matthew 13:26

**Now when the blades sprouted (ULT)  
After the seeds sprouted...the green plants  
grew (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But when the wheat seeds sprouted" or "But after the plants came up"

**produced a crop (ULT)  
the heads of grain began (UST)**

Alternate translation: "produced grain" or "produced the wheat crop"

**and...then the darnel became visible (ULT)  
and...to form. But the weeds...grew (UST)**

Alternate translation: "then people could see there were weeds in the field also"

### Translation Words - ULT

- a crop

### Translation Words - UST

- the heads of grain

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Now when the blades sprouted and produced a crop, then the darnel became visible also.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> After the seeds sprouted and the green plants grew, the heads of grain began to form. But the weeds also grew.

## Matthew 13:27

### of the landowner (ULT)

### of the landowner (UST)

The **landowner** is the same person who sowed good seed in his field.

### did you not sow good seed in your field (ULT) certainly...good seeds and those are the ones we sowed in your field (UST)

The servants used a question to emphasize their surprise. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "you sowed good seed in your field!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### not...did you...sow (ULT) certainly...sowed (UST)

The landowner probably had his servants plant the seeds. Alternate translation: "did we not sow" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [servants](#)
- [Master](#)
- [did you...sow](#)
- [good](#)
- [seed](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [servants](#)
- [Sir, you...gave us](#)
- [good](#)
- [seeds](#)
- [sowed](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Now the [servants](#) of the landowner, having approached, said to him, '[Master, did you](#) not [sow good seed](#) in your field? From where then does it have darnel?'

### UST

<sup>27</sup> So the [servants](#) of the landowner came and said to him, '[Sir, you](#) certainly [gave us good seeds](#) and those are the ones we [sowed](#) in your field. So where did the weeds come from?'

## Matthew 13:28

**But he was saying to them (ULT)**  
**The landowner said to them, 'My (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But the landowner said to the servants"

**Do you therefore desire {that (ULT)**  
**Do you want us to pull up (UST)**

The word **us** refers to the servants.

### Translation Words - ULT

- hostile
- servants

### Translation Words - UST

- enemy
- His servants

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> But he was saying to them, 'A **hostile** man did this.' But the **servants** say to him, 'Do you therefore desire {that}, having gone out, we would gather them?'

### UST

<sup>28</sup> The landowner said to them, 'My **enemy** did this.' **His servants** said to him, 'Do you want us to pull up the weeds?'

## Matthew 13:29

**But he says (ULT)**

**He said to them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But the landowner said to his servants"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [wheat](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [wheat at the same time](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> But he says, 'Certainly not, lest gathering up the darnel, you might uproot the [wheat](#) along with them.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> He said to them, 'No, do not do that, because you might pull up some of the [wheat at the same time](#).



## Matthew 13:30

**I will say to the reapers, “First gather up the darnel and tie them in bundles to burn them up, but gather the wheat into my barn (ULT)  
I will say to those who will reap, ‘First gather the weeds, tie them into bundles to be burned. Then gather the wheat and put it into my barns (UST)**

You can translate this direct quotation as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: “I will tell the reapers to first gather up the darnel and tie them in bundles to burn them, and then gather the wheat into my barn” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**barn (ULT)**

**barns (UST)**

A **barn** is a farm building that can be used for storing grain, animals, and other farm items.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [harvest](#)
- [of the harvest](#) (2)
- [to the reapers](#)
- [the} time](#)
- [tie](#)
- [wheat](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [harvest time](#)
- [that time](#) (2)
- [who will reap](#)
- [that time](#)
- [tie](#)
- [the wheat](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Permit both to grow together until the [harvest](#), and at [{the} time of the harvest](#) I will say [to the reapers](#), “First gather up the darnel and [tie](#) them in bundles to burn them up, but gather the [wheat](#) into my barn.””

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Let the wheat and the weeds grow together until [harvest time](#). At [that time](#) I will say to those [who will reap](#), ‘First gather the weeds, [tie](#) them into bundles to be burned. Then gather [the wheat](#) and put it into my barns.””

## Matthew 13:31

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a very small seed that grows into a very big plant. (See: [Parables](#))

### The kingdom of the heavens is similar to (ULT) When God rules from heaven, it is like (UST)

Here, **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** is used only in Matthew. if possible, use **heavens** in your translation. See how you translated this in [13:24](#). Alternate translation: "When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### a mustard seed (ULT) mustard seeds (UST)

A **mustard seed** is a very small seed that grows into a large plant. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [parable](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)
- [a...seed](#)
- [sowed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [this parable](#)
- [When God rules...from heaven, it](#)
- [from heaven, it](#)
- [seeds](#)
- [plants them](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> He set before them another [parable](#), saying, "The [kingdom of the heavens](#) is similar to a mustard [seed](#) which, having taken, a man [sowed](#) in his field;

### UST

<sup>31</sup> Jesus also told [this parable](#): "[When God rules from heaven, it](#) is like mustard [seeds](#) that grow after a man [plants them](#) in his field.

## Matthew 13:32

**which is indeed {the} smallest of all the seeds (ULT)**

**Although mustard seeds are among the smallest of all the seeds that people plant, here in Israel they become large plants (UST)**

Mustard seeds were the **smallest seeds** known to the original hearers. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**But when it grows (ULT)**

**When the plants have fully grown (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But when the plant has grown"

**greater than...it is (ULT)**

**they...larger...are (UST)**

Alternate translation: "it is larger than"

**becomes a tree (ULT)**

**They become shrubs as big as...trees (UST)**

A mustard plant can grow about 2 to 4 meters tall—the height of a small **tree**.

**the birds of the sky (ULT)**

**and they are large enough for the birds to (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the birds"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...the seeds](#)
- [of the sky](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [seeds](#)
- [and they are large enough for the birds to](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> which is indeed {the} smallest of all [the seeds](#). But when it grows, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds [of the sky](#) come and nest in its branches."

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Although mustard seeds are among the smallest of all the [seeds](#) that people plant, here in Israel they become large plants. When the plants have fully grown, they are larger than the other garden plants. They become shrubs as big as trees, [and they are large enough for the birds to](#) build nests in their branches."



## **Matthew 13:33**

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about the effect that yeast has on flour. (See: [Parables](#))

## The kingdom of the heavens is similar to yeast (ULT) When God rules from heaven, it is like...yeast (UST)

The **kingdom** is not like the **yeast**, but the spread of the **kingdom** is like the spreading of the **yeast**. (See: [Simile](#))

## The kingdom of the heavens is similar to (ULT) When God rules from heaven, it is like (UST)

Here, **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** is used only in Matthew. if possible, use **heavens** in your translation. See how you translated this in [13:24](#). Alternate translation: "When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## three measures of flour (ULT) about forty liters of flour and (UST)

You can translate this phrase as "a large amount of flour" or use a term that your culture uses for measuring large amounts of flour. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

## a woman...mixed with three measures of flour until it all was leavened (ULT) a woman who was making bread. She...about forty liters of flour and mixed into...and the bread rose (UST)

The implied information is that the yeast and the three measures of flour were made into dough for baking. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [parable](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)
- [yeast](#)
- [was leavened](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [this parable](#)
- [When God rules...from heaven](#)
- [from heaven](#)
- [yeast](#)
- [and the bread rose](#)

## ULT

<sup>33</sup> He told them another [parable](#): "The [kingdom of the heavens](#) is similar to [yeast](#) which, a woman having taken, mixed with three measures of flour until it all [was leavened](#)."

## UST

<sup>33</sup> Jesus also told [this parable](#): "[When God rules from heaven](#), it is like a woman who was making bread. She took about forty liters of flour and mixed into it a little bit of [yeast](#), and the [bread rose](#)."

## Matthew 13:34

**All these {things} Jesus spoke in parables to the crowds, and he was speaking nothing to them without a parable (ULT)**

**Jesus told the crowd parables to teach them all these things. When he spoke to them he habitually told stories like these (UST)**

Both sentences mean the same thing. They are combined to emphasize that Jesus taught **the crowds** only with **parables**. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**All these {things (ULT)  
told...he...like these (UST)**

Here, **All these things** refers to what Jesus taught beginning at [13:1](#).

**he was speaking nothing to them without a parable (ULT)  
spoke to them...habitually told stories (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **nothing ... without**, you can express it in a positive way. Alternate translation: "everything he taught them he said in parables" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [parables](#)
- [a parable](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [parables](#)
- [habitually told stories](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> All these {things} [Jesus](#) spoke in [parables](#) to the crowds, and he was speaking nothing to them without a [parable](#),

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> [Jesus](#) told the crowd [parables](#) to teach them all these things. When he spoke to them he [habitually told stories](#) like these.





## **Matthew 13:35**

**what} had been said through the prophet  
might be fulfilled, saying (ULT)  
he made come true what God told one of the  
prophets to write long ago (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “what God told one of the prophets to write long ago might come true” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**saying (ULT)  
to write long ago (UST)**

Alternate translation: “when the prophet said”

**what...I will open my...mouth...in parables. I will declare {what} has been  
hidden from {the} foundation of {the} world (ULT)  
what God told one of...I will speak in parables; I...will tell parables...to teach  
what I have kept secret since I created the world (UST)**

Here the author quotes from the Psalms to show that Jesus’ teaching in parables fulfilled prophecy.

**I will open...my mouth (ULT)  
I will speak...I will tell parables (UST)**

This is an idiom that means “to speak.” Alternate translation: “I will speak” (See: [Idiom](#))

**what} has been hidden (ULT)  
what I have kept secret (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “things that God has kept hidden” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**from {the} foundation of {the} world (ULT)  
since I created the world (UST)**

Alternate translation: “since the beginning of the world” or “since God created the world”

## Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet](#)
- [might be fulfilled](#)
- [parables](#)
- [the} foundation of {the} world](#)
- [the} foundation](#)
- [of {the} world](#)

## ULT

<sup>35</sup> so that {what} had been said through the [prophet might be fulfilled](#), saying, “I will open my mouth in [parables](#). I will declare {what} has been hidden from [{the} foundation of {the} world](#).”

## UST

<sup>35</sup> By doing that, [he made come true](#) what God told one of the [prophets](#) to write long ago. I will speak in [parables](#); I will tell parables to teach what I have kept secret since [I created the world](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- he made come true
- prophets
- parables
- I created the world
- I created
- the world

## Matthew 13:36

### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to the house where Jesus and his disciples were staying. Jesus begins to explain to them the parable of the field that had both wheat and weeds, which he told beginning in 13:24.

### he went into the house (ULT)

### he went into the house (UST)

Alternate translation: "he went indoors" or "he went into the house where he was staying"

### Translation Words - ULT

- house
- disciples
- parable

### Translation Words - UST

- house
- disciples
- parable

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Then, having left the crowds, he went into the house. And his disciples approached him, saying, "Explain to us the parable of the darnel of the field."

### UST

<sup>36</sup> After Jesus sent the crowd away, he went into the house. Then the disciples approached him and said, "Explain to us the parable about the weeds that grew in the wheat field."

## Matthew 13:37

**he...sowing the good seed (ULT)**

**He answered...sows the good seed (UST)**

Alternate translation: "The one who sows the good seed" or "The sower of the good seed"

**the Son of Man (ULT)**

**the Son of Man (UST)**

Jesus is referring to himself as the **Son of Man**. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sowing](#)
- [good](#)
- [seed](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sows](#)
- [good](#)
- [seed](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> Now answering, he said, "The one [sowing](#) the [good seed](#) is the [Son of Man](#),

### UST

<sup>37</sup> He answered, "The one who [sows](#) the [good seed](#) represents me, the [Son of Man](#)."

## Matthew 13:38

### the sons of the kingdom (ULT) that...the people who have God as their father (UST)

The idiom **sons of** refers to those who belong to or to have the same character as someone or something. Alternate translation: “the people who belong to the kingdom” (See: [Idiom](#))

### of the kingdom (ULT) that...who have God as their father (UST)

Here, **kingdom** refers to God the king. Alternate translation: “of God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the sons of the evil one (ULT) the people who have the devil as their father (UST)

The idiom **sons of** refers those who belong to or to have the same character as someone or something. Alternate translation: “the people who belong to the evil one” (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- world
- good
- seed
- sons
- sons (2)
- of the kingdom
- of the evil one

## Translation Words - UST

- world, where people live
- seeds...grew well
- seeds...grew well
- people
- people (2)
- who have God as their father
- have the devil as their father

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> and the field is the world, and the good seed—these are the sons of the kingdom. And the darnel are the sons of the evil one,

### UST

<sup>38</sup> The field represents this world, where people live. The seeds that grew well represent the people who have God as their father. The weeds represent the people who have the devil as their father.

**Matthew 13:39****the...the enemy...having sowed...them (ULT)****The...The...enemy...sowed the weed seeds****(UST)**

Alternate translation: "the enemy who sowed the weeds"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- enemy
- having sowed
- devil
- harvest
- reapers
- of {the} age
- angels

**Translation Words - UST**

- enemy
- sowed
- devil
- time when the reapers will harvest the grain
- reapers
- the world
- The...the angels

**ULT**

<sup>39</sup> and the enemy having sowed them is the devil. And the harvest is {the} end of {the} age, and the reapers are angels.

**UST**

<sup>39</sup> The enemy who sowed the weed seeds represents the devil. The time when the reapers will harvest the grain represents the time when the world will end. The reapers represent the angels.

## Matthew 13:40

**Therefore, just as the darnel are gathered up and burned with fire (ULT)**

**The weeds are gathered and burned...It will be like this (UST)**

You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation:  
 "Therefore, as people gather up weeds and burn them in the fire"  
 (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [with fire](#)
- [of the age](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [burned](#)
- [when the world will end](#)
- [It will be like this](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> Therefore, [just as](#) the darnel are gathered up and burned [with fire](#), thus will it be at the end [of the age](#).

### UST

<sup>40</sup> The weeds are gathered and [burned](#). That represents what will happen when God judges all people, [when the world will end](#). [It will be like this](#):



## Matthew 13:41

### The Son of Man will send out his angels (ULT) I, the Son of Man, will send my angels (UST)

Here Jesus is speaking of himself as the **Son of Man**. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will send out my angels" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### angels...doing lawlessness (ULT) angels...that...all...who violate God's will (UST)

Alternate translation: "those who are lawless" or "evil people"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son of Man](#)
- [will send out](#)
- [angels](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [lawlessness](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Son of Man](#)
- [will send](#)
- [angels](#)
- [among...that I am ruling the things](#)
- [God's will](#)

#### ULT

<sup>41</sup> The [Son of Man will send out](#) his [angels](#), and they will gather up from his [kingdom](#) all the stumbling blocks and the ones doing [lawlessness](#).

#### UST

<sup>41</sup> I, the [Son of Man](#), [will send](#) my [angels](#), and they will gather from [among](#) all [that I am ruling the things](#) that cause others to sin and all those who violate [God's will](#).

**Matthew 13:42****the furnace of fire (ULT)  
the fires of hell. There (UST)**

This is a metaphor for the fires of hell. If the term **furnace** is not known, "oven" can be used. Alternate translation: "fiery furnace" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**weeping and grinding of the teeth (ULT)  
those people will weep...and grind their teeth  
because of the great pain that they are  
suffering (UST)**

Here, **grinding of teeth** is a symbolic act, representing extreme sadness and suffering. See how you translated this in [8:12](#). Alternate translation: "weeping and showing that they are suffering very much" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [furnace](#)
- [of fire](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [fires of hell. There](#)
- [fires of hell. There](#)

**ULT**

<sup>42</sup> And they will throw them into the [furnace of fire](#), where there will be weeping and grinding of the teeth.

**UST**

<sup>42</sup> The angels will throw those people into the [fires of hell](#). [There](#) those people will weep and grind their teeth because of the great pain that they are suffering.

**Matthew 13:43**

**will shine as the sun (ULT)**  
**will shine out as brightly as the sun shines.**  
**They will shine out because God (UST)**

If this simile is not understandable in your language, you can use:  
 “will be as easy to see as the sun.” (See: [Simile](#))

**of their Father (ULT)**  
**their Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**The one having ears, let him hear (ULT)**  
**If you are able to understand this, you should think carefully about what I have just said (UST)**

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase **having ears** here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated a similar phrase in [11:15](#). Alternate translation: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The one having ears, let him hear (ULT)**  
**If you are able to understand this, you should think carefully about what I have just said (UST)**

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this in [11:15](#). Alternate translation: “If you are willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [righteous](#)
- [as](#)
- [kingdom of...Father](#)
- [of...Father](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [people who have lived as he wants them to](#)
- [as brightly as](#)
- [Father...will rule over them](#)
- [Father](#)

**ULT**

<sup>43</sup> Then the [righteous](#) will shine [as](#) the sun in the [kingdom of their Father](#). The one having ears, let him hear.

**UST**

<sup>43</sup> However, the [people who have lived as he wants them to](#) will shine out [as brightly as](#) the sun shines. They will shine out because God, their [Father](#), [will rule over them](#). If you are able to understand this, you should think carefully about what I have just said.”



## **Matthew 13:44**

## Connecting Statement:

In verses 44-46, Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling two parables about people who sold their possessions to purchase something of great value. (See: [Parables](#))

## The kingdom of the heavens is similar to (ULT) God's ruling from heaven is so precious it is like (UST)

Here, **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** is used only in Matthew. if possible, use **heavens** in your translation. See how you translated this in [13:24](#). Alternate translation: "When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## is similar to...a treasure hidden in a field (ULT) is like...a great treasure that another person had buried in a field (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "is like a treasure that someone had hidden in a field" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## a treasure (ULT) a great treasure that another person (UST)

A **treasure** is a very valuable and precious thing or collection of things.

## hid (ULT) buried it again (UST)

Alternate translation: "covered it up"

## sells everything, as much as he has, and buys that field (ULT) sold all...possessions...to buy that field. He then went...bought the field, and so he was able to acquire that treasure (UST)

The implied information is that the person **buys** the **field** to take possession of the hidden treasure. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [kingdom](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)
- [similar to](#)
- [joy](#)

## ULT

<sup>44</sup> The [kingdom of the heavens](#) is [similar to](#) a treasure hidden in a field, which, having found, a man hid. And from his [joy](#), he goes and sells everything, as much as he has, and buys that field.

## UST

<sup>44</sup> "God's ruling from heaven is so [precious it is like](#) a man who found a great treasure that another person had buried in a field. When this man dug it up, he buried it again so no one else would find it. Then he [happily](#) went and sold all his possessions to obtain money to buy that field. He then went and bought the field, and so he was able to acquire that treasure.

## Translation Words - UST

- God's ruling
- God's ruling...from heaven is so precious it
- from heaven is so precious it
- like
- happily

## Matthew 13:45

**similar to...a man, a merchant, seeking fine pearls (ULT)**

**is so precious it...like what...a merchant did who was looking for good quality pearls to buy (UST)**

The implied information is that the man was looking for valuable **pearls** that he could buy. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**a man, a merchant (ULT)**

**a merchant did who (UST)**

A **merchant** is a trader or wholesale dealer who often obtains merchandise from distant places.

**fine pearls (ULT)**

**good quality pearls to buy (UST)**

A pearl is a smooth, hard, shiny, white or light-colored bead formed inside mollusks in the sea and highly prized as a gem or to make into valuable jewelry. Alternate translation: "fine valuable" or "beautiful pearls" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)
- [similar to](#)
- [seeking](#)
- [fine](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God ruling...from heaven](#)
- [from heaven](#)
- [is so precious it...like what](#)
- [was looking for](#)
- [good quality](#)

#### ULT

<sup>45</sup> Again, the [kingdom of the heavens](#) is [similar to](#) a man, a merchant, [seeking fine](#) pearls.

#### UST

<sup>45</sup> Also, [God ruling from heaven is so precious it is like what](#) a merchant did who [was looking for good quality](#) pearls to buy.



## Matthew 13:46

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [very valuable](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [very costly](#)

#### ULT

<sup>46</sup> And having found one [very valuable](#) pearl, having gone away, he sold everything, as much as he possessed, and bought it.

#### UST

<sup>46</sup> When he found one [very costly](#) pearl that was for sale, he sold all his possessions to acquire enough money to buy that pearl. Then he went and bought it.

## Matthew 13:47

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about fishermen who use a large net to catch fish. (See: [Parables](#))

### the kingdom of the heavens is like a net (ULT)

The **kingdom** is not like the **net**, but the **kingdom** draws all kinds of people like a **net** catches all kinds of fish. (See: [Simile](#))

### the kingdom of the heavens is like (ULT)

Here, **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** is used only in Matthew. if possible, use **heavens** in your translation. See how you translated this in [13:24](#). Alternate translation: "When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### like...a net having been cast into the sea (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "like a net that some fishermen cast into the sea" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### having been cast into the sea (ULT)

Alternate translation: "that was thrown into the sea"

### having gathered from every kind (ULT)

### They caught all kinds of fish, both useful (UST)

Alternate translation: "having caught all kinds of fish"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)
- [like](#)
- [kind](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [When God rules...from heaven](#)
- [from heaven](#)
- [it is like what certain fishermen did with](#)
- [kinds](#)

### ULT

<sup>47</sup> Again, the [kingdom of the heavens](#) is [like](#) a net having been cast into the sea, and having gathered from every [kind](#),

### UST

<sup>47</sup> [When God rules from heaven, it is like what certain fishermen did with](#) the fish they caught in a lake with a large net. They caught all [kinds](#) of fish, both useful and worthless fish.

## Matthew 13:48

**they dragged onto the beach (ULT)**  
**pulled it up onto the shore (UST)**

Alternate translation: “they pulled the net up onto the beach” or “they pulled the net ashore”

**the good things (ULT)**  
**the good fish (UST)**

Alternate translation: “the good fish”

**the worthless things**

Alternate translation: “the bad fish” or “the inedible fish”

**they threw away (ULT)**  
**away (UST)**

Alternate translation: “they did not keep”

### Translation Words - ULT

- good things
- worthless things

### Translation Words - UST

- good fish
- worthless ones

### ULT

<sup>48</sup> which, when it had been filled, they dragged onto the beach, and having sat down, they gathered the **good things** into containers, but the **worthless things** they threw away.

### UST

<sup>48</sup> When the net was full, the fishermen pulled it up onto the shore. Then they sat there and put the **good fish** into buckets, but they threw the **worthless ones** away.

**Matthew 13:49**

**will go out (ULT)**  
**will come to where God is judging people (UST)**

Alternate translation: “will come out” or “will go out” or “will come from heaven”

**the wicked from among the righteous (ULT)**  
**the wicked people from the righteous ones (UST)**

If your language does not use the nominal adjectives **wicked** and **righteous**, you can express them as adjectives. Alternate translation: “the wicked people from the righteous people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of the age](#)
- [angels](#)
- [wicked](#)
- [righteous](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [world](#)
- [angels](#)
- [wicked people](#)
- [righteous ones](#)

**ULT**

<sup>49</sup> Thus it will be at the end [of the age](#): The [angels](#) will go out and will separate the [wicked](#) from among the [righteous](#),

**UST**

<sup>49</sup> This is like what will happen to people when the [world](#) ends. The [angels](#) will come to where God is judging people and will separate the [wicked people](#) from the [righteous ones](#).

## Matthew 13:50

**they will throw them (ULT)**

**They will throw...the wicked people (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the angels will throw the wicked people"

**the furnace of fire (ULT)**

**the fire in hell (UST)**

This is a metaphor for the fires of hell. If the term **furnace** is not known, you can translate it as "oven." See how you translated this in [13:42](#). Alternate translation: "the fiery furnace" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**weeping and grinding of the teeth (ULT)**

**will weep and gnash their teeth because of the intense pain they (UST)**

Here, **grinding of teeth** is a symbolic act, representing extreme sadness and suffering. See how you translated this in [8:12](#). Alternate translation: "weeping and expressing their extreme suffering." (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [furnace](#)
- [of fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the fire in hell](#)
- [the fire in hell](#)

#### ULT

<sup>50</sup> and they will throw them into the [furnace of fire](#), where there will be weeping and grinding of the teeth.

#### UST

<sup>50</sup> They will throw the wicked people into [the fire in hell](#). And those wicked people will weep and gnash their teeth because of the intense pain they are suffering."

## Matthew 13:51

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a person who manages a household. This is the end of the part of the story about Jesus teaching the crowds about the kingdom of heaven through using parables.

**Have you understood all these {things}?" They say to him, "Yes (ULT)**

**Then Jesus asked the disciples, "Do you understand all these parables I have told you?" They said to him, "Yes, we understand them (UST)**

If necessary, both direct quotations can be translated as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "Jesus asked them if they had understood all this, and they said that they did understand." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Have you understood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Then Jesus asked the disciples, "Do you understand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>51</sup> [Have you understood](#) all these {things}?" They say to him, "Yes."

#### UST

<sup>51</sup> [Then Jesus asked the disciples, "Do you understand](#) all these parables I have told you?" They said to him, "Yes, we understand them."

## Matthew 13:52

**having been disciplined for the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)  
and interpreters who understand these parables and act accordingly...under the rule of God from heaven (UST)**

Here, **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "has learned the truth about our God in heaven, who is king" or "has submitted himself to God's rule" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**is like a man, an owner of a house, who draws out new and old from his treasure (ULT)  
are like a house owner who shares both new things and old things out of his storage room (UST)**

Jesus speaks another parable. He compares scribes, who know very well the scriptures that Moses and the prophets wrote, and who also now accept Jesus' teachings, to a **house owner** who uses both **old** and **new** treasures. (See: [Parables](#))

**his treasure (ULT)  
his storage room (UST)**

A **treasure** is a very valuable and precious thing or a collection of things. Here it may refer to the place where these things are stored, the "treasury" or "storeroom."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [scribe](#)
- [having been disciplined](#)
- [for...kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)
- [like](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and interpreters who understand these parables and act accordingly](#)
- [and interpreters who understand these parables and act accordingly](#)
- [under the rule of God...from heaven](#)
- [from heaven](#)
- [like](#)

### ULT

<sup>52</sup> Now he said to them, "For this reason, every [scribe having been disciplined](#) for the [kingdom of the heavens](#) is [like](#) a man, an owner of a house, who draws out new and old from his treasure."

### UST

<sup>52</sup> Then he said, "Those teachers [and interpreters who understand these parables and act accordingly under the rule of God from heaven](#) are [like](#) a house owner who shares both new things and old things out of his storage room."

## Matthew 13:53

### And it happened that when (ULT) When...had finished telling...and (UST)

This phrase shifts the story from Jesus' teachings to what happened next. Alternate translation: "And then" or "And after"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- parables

#### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- parables, he took

#### ULT

<sup>53</sup> And it happened that when Jesus finished these parables, he departed from there.

#### UST

<sup>53</sup> When Jesus had finished telling these parables, he took the disciples and left that area.





## **Matthew 13:54**

## General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that runs through [17:27](#), where Matthew tells of continued opposition to Jesus' ministry and teaching about the kingdom of heaven. Here, the people of Jesus' home town reject him.

### his hometown (ULT) the hometown of Jesus (UST)

Here, **his hometown** refers to the town of Nazareth, where Jesus grew up. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### in their synagogue (ULT) in the synagogue (UST)

The pronoun **their** is referring to the people of the region.

### them...to astonish (ULT) On the Sabbath he...were astonished (UST)

Alternate translation: "they were amazed"

### From where to this one {is} this wisdom and {these} miracles (ULT) So how is it that he knows so much and understands so much? And how is it that he is able to do such miracles (UST)

The people believed that Jesus was just an ordinary man. Alternate translation: "How can an ordinary man like this be so wise and do such great miracles?" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### From where to this one {is} this wisdom and {these} miracles (ULT) So how is it that he knows so much and understands so much? And how is it that he is able to do such miracles (UST)

The people use this question to express their amazement that he was so wise and was able to do miracles. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is strange that he is able to speak with such wisdom and do these miracles!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [he taught](#)
- [synagogue](#)
- [to astonish](#)
- [is...wisdom](#)
- [miracles](#)

## ULT

<sup>54</sup> And having entered into his hometown, [he taught](#) them in their [synagogue](#) so as [to astonish](#) them, and they say, "From where to this one {is} this [wisdom](#) and {these} [miracles](#)?"

## UST

<sup>54</sup> Then they went to the town of Nazareth, the hometown of Jesus. On the Sabbath he [began to teach the people](#) in the [synagogue](#). The result was that the people there [were astonished](#). But some said, "This man is just an ordinary person like us! So how is it that he [knows so much and understands so much](#)? And how is it that he is able to do such [miracles](#)?"

## Translation Words - UST

- began to teach the people
- synagogue
- were astonished
- knows so much and understands so much
- miracles

## Matthew 13:55

**Is not this the son of the carpenter? Is not his mother called Mary, and his brothers, James and Joseph and Simon and Judas (ULT)  
He is just the son of the carpenter. Certainly! His mother is named Mary, and his younger brothers are James, Joseph, Simon and Judas (UST)**

The crowd uses these questions to express their belief that they know who Jesus is and that he is just an ordinary man. If your readers would misunderstand these questions, you can express them as statements. Alternate translation: "He is just the son of a carpenter. We know his mother Mary, and his brothers James, Joseph, Simon, and Judas." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>55</sup> Is not this the [son](#) of the carpenter? Is not his mother [called Mary](#), and his [brothers, James](#) and Joseph and Simon and Judas?

### UST

<sup>55</sup> He is just the [son](#) of the carpenter. Certainly! His mother [is named Mary](#), and his [younger brothers are James](#), Joseph, Simon and Judas!

**the son of the carpenter (ULT)  
just the son of the carpenter (UST)**

A **carpenter** is someone who makes things with wood or stone. If **carpenter** is not known, "builder" can be used.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Is...called](#)
- [Mary](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [James](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [is named Mary](#)
- [is named Mary](#)
- [younger brothers](#)
- [are James](#)

## Matthew 13:56

**are not all his sisters with us (ULT)**  
**all of his sisters also live here in our town (UST)**

The crowd uses this question to express their belief that they know who Jesus is and that he is just an ordinary man. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "all his sisters are with us, too." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**From where, therefore, to this one {are} all these {things (ULT)**  
**So how is he able to teach and do all these things (UST)**

The crowd uses this question to show their understanding that Jesus must have gotten his abilities from somewhere. They were probably expressing their doubt that he got his abilities from God. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "He must have gotten his ability to do these things from somewhere!" or "We do not know where he got these abilities!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**are} all these {things (ULT)**  
**he able to teach and do all these things (UST)**

Here, **all these things** refers to Jesus' wisdom and ability to do miracles.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sisters](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sisters also](#)

### ULT

<sup>56</sup> And are not all his [sisters](#) with us? From where, therefore, to this one {are} all these {things}?"

### UST

<sup>56</sup> And all of his [sisters also](#) live here in our town. So how is he able to teach and do all these things?"

**Matthew 13:57**

**they were offended by him (ULT)**  
**refused to accept that Jesus had such authority (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the people of Jesus’ hometown took offense at him” or “the people rejected Jesus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**A prophet is not without honor (ULT)**  
**prophets everywhere...not honored...not honor us (UST)**

You can state this double-negative **not ... without** in positive form. Alternate translation: “A prophet receives honor everywhere” or “People everywhere honor a prophet” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**his} hometown (ULT)**  
**hometowns we are (UST)**

Alternate translation: “his own region”

**by...his...his...house (ULT)**  
**Jesus...hometowns we are...our own...families do (UST)**

Alternate translation: “in his own home”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jesus](#)
- [A prophet](#)
- [house](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jesus](#)
- [prophets everywhere](#)
- [families do](#)

**ULT**

<sup>57</sup> And they were offended by him. But [Jesus](#) said to them, “A [prophet](#) is not without honor except in {his} hometown and in his [house](#).”

**UST**

<sup>57</sup> The people there refused to accept that Jesus had such authority. So [Jesus](#) said to them, “People honor me and other [prophets everywhere](#) else we go, but in our hometowns we are not honored, and even our own [families do](#) not honor us!”

## Matthew 13:58

**he did not do many miracles there (ULT)**  
**Jesus did not perform many miracles there (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Jesus did not do many miracles in his own hometown"

### Translation Words - ULT

- miracles
- unbelief

### Translation Words - UST

- miracles
- did not believe

#### ULT

<sup>58</sup> And he did not do many miracles there, because of their unbelief.

#### UST

<sup>58</sup> Jesus did not perform many miracles there because the people did not believe that he had such authority.



## Matthew 14

### Matthew 14 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Verses 1 and 2 continue the account from chapter 13. Verses 3-12 stop the account and speak of things that happened earlier, possibly soon after Satan tempted Jesus (see [4:12](#)). Verse 13 continues the account from verse 2. Be sure to have words in verses 3-12 that tell the reader that Matthew has stopped his account to give new information before he continues. (See: [Background Information](#))

#### Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Passive voice

Many sentences in this chapter tell that a person had something happen to him without saying who caused that something to happen. For example, the writer does not tell who brought John's head to Herodias's daughter ([14:11](#)). You may have to translate the sentence so that it tells the reader who performed the action. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Matthew 14:1

### General Information:

These verses explain Herod's reaction when he heard about Jesus. This event happens some time after the events that follow in the narrative. (See: [Order of Events](#))

### At that time (ULT)

### During that time (UST)

Alternate translation: "In those days" or "While Jesus was ministering in Galilee"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [time](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [tetrarch](#)
- [about Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [time](#)
- [ruler](#)
- [Herod Antipas](#)
- [Jesus performing miracles](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> At that [time](#), [Herod](#) the [tetrarch](#) heard the news [about Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> During that [time](#) the ruler [Herod Antipas](#) heard reports about [Jesus performing miracles](#).

**Matthew 14:2****he said (ULT)****He said to (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Herod said"

**has been raised from the dead (ULT)****risen from the dead (UST)**The words **from the dead** speak of all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from the dead speaks of coming alive again.**because of this the miraculous powers are at work in him (ULT)****that is why he has power to do these miracles (UST)**Some Jews at that time believed if a person came back from the dead he would have **powers** to do mighty things.**Translation Words - ULT**

- to...servants
- John the Baptist
- has been raised
- dead
- miraculous powers

**Translation Words - UST**

- servants
- John the Baptizer. He must have
- risen
- dead
- he has power to do

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> And he said to his **servants**, "This is **John the Baptist**. He **has been raised** from the **dead**, and because of this the **miraculous powers** are at work in him."

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> He said to his **servants**, "That must be **John the Baptizer**. He **must have risen** from the **dead**, and that is why **he has power to do** these miracles."

## Matthew 14:3

### Connecting Statement:

Here the author begins to tell about how Herod had executed John the Baptist. These events occur some time before the event in the previous verses. (See: [Order of Events](#))

### For John was saying to him, “It is not lawful for you to have her.”

If needed, you can present the events of 14:3-4 in the order that they happened, as in the UST. (See: [Order of Events](#))

### For Herod, having arrested John, bound him, and put him in prison (ULT)

It says that **Herod** did these things because he ordered others to do them for him. Alternate translation: “Herod ordered his soldiers to arrest and bind John the Baptist and put him in prison” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the wife of Philip (ULT)

**Philip** was Herod’s brother. Herod had taken Philip’s wife to be his own **wife**. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Herod
- having arrested
- John
- bound
- prison
- Herodias
- brother

### Translation Words - UST

- bind, bond, bound
- brother
- Herod, Herod Antipas
- Herodias
- John (the Baptist)
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- seize, seizure, capture

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> For **Herod**, having arrested John, bound him, and put him in prison because of **Herodias**, the wife of Philip, his brother.

### UST

<sup>3-4</sup> This is what happened to make Herod think this. Herod had married Herodias, the wife of his brother Philip, while Philip was still living. So John kept saying to him, “What you have done is against God’s law!” Then, to please Herodias, Herod told his soldiers to arrest John. They bound him with chains and put him in prison.

## Matthew 14:4

### For John was saying to him, “It is not lawful for you to have her (ULT)

This direct quotation can be expressed as an indirect quote, if needed. Alternate translation: “For John had said to Herod that it was not lawful for Herod to have Herodias as his wife.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### For John was saying to him (ULT)

Alternate translation: “For John had kept saying to Herod”

### It is not lawful (ULT)

Philip was still alive when Herod married Herodias. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [It is...lawful](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [John \(the Baptist\)](#)
- [lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For [John](#) was saying to him, “[It is not lawful](#) for you to have her.”

### UST

<sup>3-4</sup> This is what happened to make Herod think this. Herod had married Herodias, the wife of his brother Philip, while Philip was still living. So John kept saying to him, “What you have done is against God’s law!” Then, to please Herodias, Herod told his soldiers to arrest John. They bound him with chains and put him in prison.

## Matthew 14:5

**he feared (ULT)**

**he was afraid (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Herod feared"

**him...they regarded (ULT)**

**John...believed (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they regarded John"

### Translation Words - ULT

- he feared
- as
- a prophet

### Translation Words - UST

- he was afraid
- that John was...speaking for God
- a prophet

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And wanting to put him to death, he feared the people, because they regarded him as a prophet.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Herod wanted to order his men to execute John, but he was afraid of the general public, because they believed that John was a prophet speaking for God.

## Matthew 14:6

### in the midst (ULT) for his guests (UST)

You can make explicit the implicit information. Alternate translation: “in the midst of the guests attending the birthday celebration” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- of Herod
- Herod
- of Herodias

#### Translation Words - UST

- One day, Herod gave a
- Herod very much
- Herodias

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But {the} birthday of Herod having come about, the daughter of Herodias danced in the midst and pleased Herod,

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> One day, Herod gave a party to celebrate his birthday, and Herodias' daughter danced for his guests. Her dancing pleased Herod very much,

## Matthew 14:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- he promised
- an oath

### Translation Words - UST

- he promised...he asked God to be a witness that he had made this promise
- he promised...he asked God to be a witness that he had made this promise

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> because of which he promised with an oath to give her whatever she asked.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> so he promised to give her whatever she asked, and he asked God to be a witness that he had made this promise.



## Matthew 14:8

**Now she, having been urged beforehand by her mother (ULT)**

**So Herodias' daughter went and asked her mother what to ask for. Her mother told her what to say. So her daughter went back and (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "But after her mother instructed her" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Now she, having been urged beforehand (ULT)  
So Herodias' daughter went and asked...to ask for. Her mother told her what to say. So her daughter went back and (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But having been coached beforehand"

**said (ULT)**

**said to Herod...I want you to...here (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the daughter of Herodias said to Herod"

**a platter (ULT)**

**a platter to show that he is really dead (UST)**

A **platter** is a very large plate used for serving food.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [of John the Baptist](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [head of](#)
- [John the Baptizer](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now she, having been urged beforehand by her mother, said, "Give me here, on a platter, the [head of John the Baptist](#)."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> So Herodias' daughter went and asked her mother what to ask for. Her mother told her what to say. So her daughter went back and said to Herod, "I want you to cut off the [head of John the Baptizer](#) and bring it here on a platter to show that he is really dead!"

## Matthew 14:9

**And the king, having been grieved (ULT)  
The king was now very sorry that he had  
promised to give Herodias' daughter  
whatever she wanted. But because (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "And although her request made the king very upset" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the king (ULT)  
The king (UST)**

Alternate translation: "King Herod"

**commanded {it} to be granted to her (ULT)  
he ordered his servants to do what she  
wanted (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "ordered his men to do what she said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [king](#)
- [oath](#)
- [commanded {it}](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [king](#)
- [he had called on God to hear him make that promise](#)
- [he ordered](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And the [king](#), having been grieved, because of {his} [oath](#) and the ones reclining to eat with him, [commanded {it}](#) to be granted to her.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> The [king](#) was now very sorry that he had promised to give Herodias' daughter whatever she wanted. But because [he had called on God to hear him make that promise](#), and because all his guests had heard him do so, he felt that he had to do what he had said. So [he ordered](#) his servants to do what she wanted.

## Matthew 14:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- having sent
- John
- prison

### Translation Words - UST

- He sent soldiers to go
- prison
- John's head

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And **having sent**, he beheaded **John** in the **prison**.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> **He sent soldiers to go** to the **prison** and cut off **John's head**.

**Matthew 14:11**

**his head was brought on a platter and given to the girl (ULT)**

**put John's head on a platter and brought it to the girl (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "someone brought his head on a platter and gave it to the girl" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**a platter (ULT)**

**a platter (UST)**

A **platter** is a very large plate used for serving food. See how you translated this in verse 8.

**to the girl (ULT)**

**to the girl (UST)**

Translate **girl** with the word for a young, unmarried girl.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [head](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [head](#)

**ULT**

<sup>11</sup> And his [head](#) was brought on a platter and given to the girl and she carried {it} to her mother.

**UST**

<sup>11</sup> They did that, and they put John's [head](#) on a platter and brought it to the girl. Then the girl took it to her mother.

## Matthew 14:12

### his disciples (ULT)

### Later John's disciples...John's (UST)

Alternate translation: "the disciples of John"

### the corpse (ULT)

### body (UST)

Alternate translation: "the dead body"

### having come, they reported {it} to Jesus (ULT) to...they went...told Jesus what had happened (UST)

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the disciples of John went and told Jesus what had happened to John the Baptist" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [corpse](#)
- [buried](#)
- [they reported {it}](#)
- [to Jesus](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Later John's disciples](#)
- [body](#)
- [buried](#)
- [told](#)
- [Jesus what had happened](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And having come up, his [disciples](#) took away the [corpse](#), and [buried](#) it. And having come, [they reported {it}](#) to [Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [Later John's disciples](#) went to the prison, took John's [body](#) and [buried](#) it. Then they went and [told Jesus what had happened](#).



## **Matthew 14:13**

**General Information:**

Verses 13-14 give background information about the miracle that Jesus is about to perform by feeding five thousand people in verses 15-21. (See: [Background Information](#))

**Now (ULT)  
and (UST)**

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

**having heard {this (ULT)  
After...heard that news, he took just (UST)**

Alternate translation: "having heard what happened to John" or "having heard the news about John"

**Jesus withdrew (ULT)  
Jesus...the disciples with him...went (UST)**

It is implied that Jesus' disciples went with him. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples left" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**from there (ULT)  
went (UST)**

Alternate translation: "from that place"

**And having heard of {it}, the crowds (ULT)  
After the crowds heard about where they had gone, they...and (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And when the crowds heard where Jesus had gone, they" or "And when the crowds heard that he had left, they"

**the crowds (ULT)  
After the crowds (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the crowds of people" or "the huge group of people" or "the people"

**on foot (ULT)  
walking along the shore (UST)**

Here, **on foot** means that the people in the crowd were walking. (See: [Idiom](#))

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> Now having heard {this}, [Jesus](#) withdrew from there in a boat to a [desolate](#) place by himself. And having heard of {it}, the crowds followed him on foot from the cities.

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> After [Jesus](#) heard that news, he took just the disciples with him and went by boat on the Sea of Galilee to [a place where no one lived](#). After the crowds heard about where they had gone, they left their towns and followed them, walking along the shore.



## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- desolate

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- a place where no one lived

## Matthew 14:14

### And having come out (ULT) When...came to the shore (UST)

Alternate translation: "And when Jesus came ashore"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- had compassion
- healed

#### Translation Words - UST

- felt sorry
- he healed

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And having come out, he saw a large crowd, and had compassion on them, and healed their sick.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> When Jesus came to the shore, he saw a very large crowd waiting for him. He felt sorry for them, and he healed the sick people who were among them.

## Matthew 14:15

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus feeding five thousand people with only five small loaves of bread and two small fish.

### the disciples came to him (ULT) the disciples...came...to Jesus (UST)

Alternate translation: "Jesus' disciples came to him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- desolate
- hour

### Translation Words - UST

- disciples
- is a place where nobody lives
- it is very late

### ULT

**15** Now evening having come, the disciples came to him, saying, "{This} place is desolate, and the hour is already late. Dismiss the crowds so that, having gone away to the villages, they might buy food for themselves."

### UST

**15** When it was nearly evening, the disciples came to Jesus and said, "This is a place where nobody lives, and it is very late. Tell the crowds to go away so they can buy food in the towns nearby."

## Matthew 14:16

**They have no need (ULT)**

**They do not need (UST)**

Alternate translation: "It is not necessary for the people in the crowd"

**You give them (ULT)**

**to get food. Instead, you yourselves give them (UST)**

The word **You** is plural, referring to the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But [Jesus](#) said to them, "They have no need to go away. You give them to eat."

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> But [Jesus](#) said to his disciples, "They do not need to leave to get food. Instead, you yourselves give them something to eat!"

## Matthew 14:17

**But they say to him (ULT)**  
**The disciples said, "But we (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But the disciples said to Jesus"

**five loaves (ULT)**  
**five loaves of bread (UST)**

A loaf of bread is a lump of dough that is shaped and baked.

### Translation Words - ULT

- loaves

### Translation Words - UST

- loaves of bread

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> But they say to him, "We have nothing here except five loaves and two fish."

### UST

<sup>17</sup> The disciples said, "But we have only five loaves of bread and two cooked fish here!"

## Matthew 14:18

**Bring them here to me (ULT)**

**Bring them to me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Bring the loaves and fish to me"

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> But he said, "Bring them here to me."

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> He said, "Bring them to me!"



## **Matthew 14:19**



**to recline (ULT)****sit (UST)**

Use the verb for the position people in your culture usually are in when they eat. Alternate translation: "lie down" or "sit down"

**having taken (ULT)****Then he took (UST)**

This does not mean that he stole them. Alternate translation: "he held in his hands" (See: [Idiom](#))

**having broken {them}, he gave...the...loaves (ULT)****broke them into pieces. Then he gave...the...loaves (UST)**

Alternate translation: "after tearing the loaves into pieces, he gave them"

**the...loaves (ULT)****the...loaves (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the pieces of the loaves of bread"

**having looked up (ULT)****He looked (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) while they were looking up. (2) after they looked up.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having commanded](#)
- [loaves](#)
- [loaves \(2\)](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [he blessed {them}](#)
- [to the disciples](#)
- [disciples](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jesus told](#)
- [loaves](#)
- [pieces \(2\)](#)
- [toward heaven](#)
- [thanked God for them](#)
- [disciples](#)

**ULT**

**19** And [having commanded](#) the crowd to recline on the grass, having taken the five [loaves](#) and the two fish, having looked up to [heaven](#), [he blessed {them}](#), and having broken {them}, he gave the [loaves to the disciples](#), and the [disciples](#) to the crowds.

**UST**

**19** [Jesus told](#) the crowd of people who had gathered there to sit on the grass. Then he took the five [loaves](#) and the two fish. He looked up [toward heaven](#), [thanked God for them](#), and broke them into pieces. Then he gave the [pieces](#) to his [disciples](#), and [they distributed them](#) to the crowd.

- they distributed them

## Matthew 14:20

**and were filled (ULT)**  
**no longer hungry. Then some people (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “until they were full” or “until they were no longer hungry” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they took up (ULT)**  
**gathered (UST)**

Alternate translation: “the disciples gathered up” or “some people gathered up”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [baskets](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [baskets with them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> And they all ate and were filled. And they took up the remaining of the broken pieces—12 [baskets](#) full.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> All the people ate until they were no longer hungry. Then some people gathered the pieces that were left over and filled twelve [baskets with them](#).

## Matthew 14:21

### Now the ones eating (ULT) ate at that time (UST)

Alternate translation: "Now those who ate the bread and the fish"

### men...5,000 (ULT) men...five thousand (UST)

Alternate translation: "five thousand men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [children](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [children](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Now the ones eating were about 5,000 men, besides women and [children](#).

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> About five thousand men ate at that time, not counting the women and [children](#)!

## Matthew 14:22

### General Information:

Verses 22-24 give background information about the miracle that Jesus is about to perform of walking on water.

### And immediately he made (ULT) Right after that happened, Jesus told (UST)

Alternate translation: "And as soon as Jesus had finished feeding all the people, he made"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And immediately he made the [disciples](#) to get into the boat and to go before him to the other side, while he sent away the crowds.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Right after that happened, Jesus told the [disciples](#) to get in the boat and to go ahead of him to the other side of the Sea of Galilee. In the meantime, he was going to send the crowd home.

## Matthew 14:23

### Now evening having come about (ULT) When it was evening, he was...alone (UST)

Alternate translation: "Now late in the evening" or "Now when it became dark"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- to pray

#### Translation Words - UST

- to pray

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> And having sent away the crowds, he went up on the mountain by himself to pray. Now evening having come about, he was there alone.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> After he sent the crowd away, he went up into the hills to pray by himself. When it was evening, he was still there alone.

## Matthew 14:24

**was being tossed about by the waves (ULT)  
was...the wind made very large waves...  
tossing...in (UST)**

Alternate translation: "and the disciples could not control the boat because of the large waves"

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But the boat, already in the middle of the sea, was being tossed about by the waves, for the wind was contrary.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> By this time the disciples were a long distance from the shore. The wind was blowing very hard opposite to how the disciples were trying to sail; the wind made very large waves that were tossing the boat back and forth in the water.

## Matthew 14:25

**Now in {the} fourth watch of the night (ULT)  
Sometime between three and six o'clock in the morning (UST)**

The fourth watch is between 3 AM and sunrise. Alternate translation: "Now just before dawn"

**walking on the sea (ULT)  
he walked on the water (UST)**

Alternate translation: "walking on top of the water"

### Translation Words - ULT

- in {the...}watch
- walking
- sea

### Translation Words - UST

- Sometime between three and six o'clock in the morning
- he walked
- water

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Now in {the} fourth watch of the night he came to them, walking on the sea.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then Jesus came down from the hills to the water. Sometime between three and six o'clock in the morning he walked on the water toward the boat.



## Matthew 14:26

**were greatly troubled (ULT)**  
**terrified (UST)**

Alternate translation: "were very afraid"

**a ghost (ULT)**  
**a ghost. They were (UST)**

The people of that time believes that a **ghost** was a spirit that has left the body of a person who had died.

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- walking
- sea
- were greatly troubled
- they cried out
- fear

### Translation Words - UST

- disciples
- walking
- water, they thought
- terrified
- they
- fear

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But the **disciples**, having seen him **walking** on the **sea**, **were greatly troubled**, saying, "It is a ghost," and **they cried out** from **fear**.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> When the **disciples** saw him **walking** on the **water**, **they thought** that he must be a ghost. They were **terrified**, and **they** screamed in **fear**.

## Matthew 14:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Take courage
- Do...be afraid

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- courage
- Do...be afraid

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But immediately Jesus spoke to them, saying, "Take courage! It is I! Do not be afraid."

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> Immediately Jesus said to them, "Take courage! It is I. Do not be afraid!"

## Matthew 14:28

### But answering him, Peter said (ULT) Peter said to him (UST)

Alternate translation: "but Peter answered Jesus and said"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- Lord
- command
- water

#### Translation Words - UST

- Peter said to him
- Lord
- tell
- water

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> But answering him, Peter said, "Lord, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water."

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> Peter said to him, "Lord, if it is you, tell me to walk on the water to you!"

## Matthew 14:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- walked
- water
- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- He walked
- water
- Jesus

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> And he said, "Come." And Peter, having gotten out from the boat, walked on the water to go to Jesus.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> Jesus said, "Come!" So Peter got out of the boat. He walked on the water toward Jesus.

## Matthew 14:30

### seeing...the strong wind (ULT)

### Peter paid attention...to the strong wind, he became (UST)

Here, **seeing** the **wind** means he became aware of the wind.  
Alternate translation: "when Peter saw that the wind was tossing the waves back and forth" or "when he realized how strong the wind was" (See: **Idiom**)

### Translation Words - ULT

- strong
- he became afraid
- he cried out
- Lord
- save

### Translation Words - UST

- strong
- afraid
- cried out
- Lord
- rescue

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But seeing the strong wind, he became afraid, and having begun to sink, he cried out, saying, "Lord, save me!"

### UST

<sup>30</sup> But when Peter paid attention to the strong wind, he became afraid. He began to sink in the water and cried out, "Lord, rescue me!"

## Matthew 14:31

### You of little faith, why (ULT) You only trust a little bit in my power! Why (UST)

Jesus addressed Peter this way because Peter became afraid. It can also be translated as an exclamation. Alternate translation: "You have so little faith! Why"

### why did you doubt (ULT) in my power! Why did you doubt...I could keep you from sinking (UST)

You can make explicit what Peter doubted. Alternate translation: "why did you doubt that I could keep you from sinking?" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### why did you doubt (ULT) in my power! Why did you doubt...I could keep you from sinking (UST)

Jesus uses a question to tell Peter that he should not have doubted. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "you should not have doubted!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [with his hand and](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> But immediately, [Jesus](#), having stretched out {his} [hand](#), took hold of him, and says to him, "You of little faith, why did you doubt?"

### UST

<sup>31</sup> Right away [Jesus](#) reached out [with his hand and](#) grabbed Peter. He said to him, "You only trust a little bit in my power! Why did you doubt that I could keep you from sinking?"

## Matthew 14:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> And {when} they had gotten into the boat, the wind ceased blowing.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Then Jesus and Peter got in the boat, and the wind immediately stopped blowing.

## Matthew 14:33

### the} Son of God (ULT)

### the Son of God (UST)

**Son of God** is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [worshiped](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [the} Son of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bowed down](#)
- [really](#)
- [the Son of God](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> And the disciples in the boat [worshiped](#) him, saying, "[Truly](#) you are [{the} Son of God.](#)"

### UST

<sup>33</sup> All of the disciples who were in the boat [bowed down](#) to Jesus and said, "You are [really the Son of God!](#)"



## Matthew 14:34

**And having crossed over (ULT)  
When they had gone further around the lake  
in the boat, they reached (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And when Jesus and his disciples had crossed over the lake"

**Gennesaret (ULT)**

**Gennesaret (UST)**

**Gennesaret** is a small town on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> And having crossed over, they came to the land at Gennesaret.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> When they had gone further around the lake in the boat, they reached the shore at the town of Gennesaret.

## Matthew 14:35

**sent (ULT)**

**sent people (UST)**

Alternate translation: "sent messages"

### Translation Words - ULT

- having recognized
- sent

### Translation Words - UST

- recognized
- sent people

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> And having recognized him, the men in that place sent into all that surrounding area, and they brought to him all the ones having sickness.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> The men of that area recognized Jesus, so they sent people to inform those who lived in the whole region that Jesus had come. So the people brought to Jesus everyone who was sick.

## Matthew 14:36

**And they were begging him (ULT)**  
**The sick people kept begging him...even (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And the sick people were begging him"

**the...of...his...garment (ULT)**  
**only the...his robe (UST)**

Alternate translation: "of his robe" or "of what he was wearing"

**were healed (ULT)**  
**were healed (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "became well" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- they were begging
- of...garment
- were healed

### Translation Words - UST

- The sick people kept begging
- robe
- were healed

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> And **they were begging** him so that they might only touch the edge of his **garment**, and as many as touched {it} **were healed**.

### UST

<sup>36</sup> **The sick people kept begging** him to allow them to touch him or even only the edge of his **robe** so that they would be healed. Everyone who touched him or his robe **were healed**.

## Matthew 15

### Matthew 15 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 15:8-9, which are words from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The “traditions of the elders”

The “traditions of the elders” were oral laws that the Jewish religious leaders developed because they wanted to make sure that everyone obeyed the law of Moses. However, they often worked harder to obey these rules than to obey the law of Moses itself. Jesus rebuked the religious leaders for this, and they became angry as a result. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#))

#### Jews and Gentiles

The Jews of Jesus’ time thought that only Jews could please God by the way they lived. Jesus healed a Canaanite Gentile woman’s daughter to show his followers that he would accept both Jews and Gentiles as his people.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Sheep

The Bible often speaks of people as if they were sheep because sheep need someone to take care of them. This is because they do not see well and they often go to where other animals can kill them easily. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Matthew 15:1

### General Information:

The scene shifts to events that occurred some time after events of the previous chapter. Here Jesus responds to the criticisms of the Pharisees. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharisees](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [some Pharisees](#)
- [men who taught the Jewish laws](#)
- [Jerusalem to talk](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then [Pharisees](#) and [scribes](#) come to [Jesus](#) from [Jerusalem](#), saying,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then [some Pharisees](#) and [men who taught the Jewish laws](#) came from [Jerusalem to talk](#) to [Jesus](#). They said,

## Matthew 15:2

### Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders (ULT)

### We see that your disciples disobey the traditions of our ancestors! They do (UST)

The Pharisees and scribes use this question to criticize Jesus and his disciples. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Your disciples do not respect the rules that our ancestors have given us." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the traditions of the elders (ULT) traditions of our ancestors! They do (UST)

These **traditions of the elders** are not the same as the law of Moses. This refers to later teachings and interpretations of the law given by religious leaders after Moses.

### not...they do...wash {their} hands (ULT) not perform the proper ritual of...washing their hands (UST)

This washing is not only to clean hands. This refers to a ceremonial washing according to the tradition of the elders. Alternate translation: "they do not wash their hands properly" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [traditions](#)
- [of the elders](#)
- [hands](#)
- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [traditions](#)
- [of our ancestors! They do](#)
- [hands](#)
- [they eat](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Why do your [disciples](#) violate the [traditions of the elders](#)? For they do not wash {their} [hands](#) when they eat [bread](#)."

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> "We see that your [disciples](#) disobey the [traditions of our ancestors! They do](#) not perform the proper ritual of washing their [hands](#) before [they eat!](#)"

## Matthew 15:3

**Why do you also violate the commandment of God because of your traditions (ULT)  
And I see that you refuse to obey God's commands just so that you can follow what your ancestors taught you (UST)**

Jesus answers with a question to criticize what the religious leaders do. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "And I see that you refuse to obey God's commands just so that you can follow what your ancestors taught you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [commandment](#)
- [of God](#)
- [traditions](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God's](#)
- [commands just](#)
- [can follow what your ancestors taught](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But he, answering, said to them, "Why do you also violate the [commandment of God](#) because of your [traditions](#)?"

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Jesus answered them, "And I see that you refuse to obey [God's commands just](#) so that you [can follow what your ancestors taught](#) you!"

## Matthew 15:4

### General Information:

In verse 4, Jesus quotes twice from Exodus to show how God expects people to treat their parents.

### let him end in death (ULT) must be executed (UST)

Alternate translation: "the people must surely execute him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- commanded
- Honor
- father
- his} father (2)
- in death
- let him end

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- gave these two commands
- Honor your
- father
- about their father (2)
- must be executed
- must be executed

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For God commanded, saying, 'Honor {your} father and {your} mother,' and 'The one reviling {his} father or mother, let him end in death.'

### UST

<sup>4</sup> God gave these two commands: 'Honor your father and your mother,' and 'People who speak evil about their father or mother must be executed.'



## Matthew 15:5

**you (ULT)**

**you (UST)**

Here, **you** is plural and refers to the Pharisees and scribes. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to...his} father
- might have been helpful
- is} a gift

### Translation Words - UST

- your father or
- to help provide for you
- I have now promised to give to God

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But you say, 'Whoever says to {his} father or mother "Whatever from me might have been helpful {is} a gift,"'

### UST

<sup>5</sup> But you tell the people, 'You can say to your father or mother, "What I was going to give to you to help provide for you, I have now promised to give to God."'

## Matthew 15:6

### he will certainly not honor his father (ULT) not...give anything to your parents (UST)

The words beginning with "But you say" (verse 5) have a quotation within a quotation. If necessary you can translate them as indirect quotations. "But you teach that a person does not need to honor his parents by giving them something that may help them if the person tells his parents that he has already given it as a gift to God" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

### he will certainly not honor his father (ULT) not...give anything to your parents (UST)

It is implied that **his father** means "his parents." This means the religious leaders taught that a person does not need to show respect to his parents by taking care of them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### father...you have made void...word of God (ULT) When you do that, you think that you do...need to...your parents. In that way you ignore what God...commanded, just (UST)

Here, **word of God** refers specifically to his commands. Alternate translation: "you have treated the word of God as if it were invalid" or "you have ignored God's commands"

### because of your traditions (ULT) so that you can follow what your ancestors taught you (UST)

Alternate translation: "because you want to follow your traditions"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [he will...honor](#)
- [father](#)
- [word of God](#)
- [traditions](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [give anything to](#)
- [your parents](#)
- [In that way you ignore what God...commanded, just](#)
- [you can follow what your ancestors taught](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> [he will](#) certainly not [honor](#) his [father](#).  
And so you have made void the [word of God](#) <sup>[1]</sup> because of your [traditions](#).

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> When you do that, you think that you do not need to [give anything to your parents](#). [In that way you ignore what God commanded, just](#) so that you can [follow what your ancestors taught you!](#)

## Matthew 15:7

### General Information:

In verses 8 and 9, Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah to rebuke the Pharisees and scribes.

### Well did Isaiah prophesy about you (ULT) Isaiah also...the truth about you when he spoke God's thoughts about your ancestors (UST)

Alternate translation: "Isaiah told the truth in this prophecy about you"

### saying (ULT) told (UST)

It is implied that Isaiah is speaking what God told him. Alternate translation: "when he told what God said" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- You hypocrites
- Isaiah
- did...prophesy

### Translation Words - UST

- You only pretend to be good
- Isaiah
- when he spoke God's thoughts about your ancestors

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> You hypocrites! Well did Isaiah prophesy about you, saying,

### UST

<sup>7</sup> You only pretend to be good! Isaiah also told the truth about you when he spoke God's thoughts about your ancestors.

**Matthew 15:8****This people honors me with {their} lips (ULT)****These people talk as if they honor me (UST)**

Here, **lips** refers to speaking. Alternate translation: “These people say all the right things to me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**me...me (ULT)****me...they do not care about me (UST)**

Both occurrences of **me** refer to God.

**but their heart is far away from me (ULT)****but they do not care about me (UST)**

Here, **heart** refers to a person’s thoughts or emotions. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**but their heart is far away from me (ULT)****but they do not care about me (UST)**

This phrase is a way of saying the people are not truly devoted to God. Alternate translation: “but they do not really love me” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [people](#)
- [honors](#)
- [heart](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [people](#)
- [they honor](#)
- [they do not care about me](#)

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> ‘This [people honors](#) me with {their} lips, but their [heart](#) is far away from me.

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> ‘These [people](#) talk as if [they honor](#) me, but [they do not care about me,](#)’

## Matthew 15:9

**But they worship me in vain (ULT)**  
**It is useless for them to worship me, because (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But their worship means nothing to me" or "But they only pretend to worship me"

**the commandments of men (ULT)**  
**people...as their authoritative teachings (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the rules that people make up"

### Translation Words - ULT

- they worship
- in vain
- teaching
- as doctrines
- the commandments

### Translation Words - UST

- It is useless for them to
- worship
- they teach
- what...thought up
- as their authoritative teachings

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But they worship me in vain, teaching as doctrines the commandments of men."

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> It is useless for them to worship me, because they teach what people thought up as their authoritative teachings."

## Matthew 15:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- having summoned
- understand

### Translation Words - UST

- called...to come nearer to him
- try to understand it

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And **having summoned** the crowd, he said to them, "Listen and **understand**:

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Then Jesus again **called** the crowd **to come nearer to him**. He said to them, "Listen to what I am about to tell you and **try to understand it**.

## Matthew 15:11

**enters into the mouth...comes out from the mouth (ULT)**

**puts into his mouth to eat...say—the words... come from their mouths (UST)**

Jesus is contrasting what a person eats to what a person says. Jesus means that God is concerned with what a person says rather than what a person eats. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [defiles](#)
- [defiles](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [makes him contaminated](#)
- [makes...degraded](#) (2)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Nothing {that} enters into the mouth [defiles](#) the man, but {what} comes out from the mouth, this [defiles](#) the man."

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Nothing that a person puts into his mouth to eat [makes him contaminated](#). Instead, it is what people say—the words that come from their mouths—that [makes](#) a person [degraded](#)."

## Matthew 15:12

**the Pharisees, having heard {this} word, were offended (ULT)**

**the Pharisees heard what you said and became angry at you (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "this statement made the Pharisees angry" or "this statement offended the Pharisees" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Do you know](#)
- [Pharisees](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [Do you know](#)
- [Pharisees](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then having come up, the [disciples](#) said to him, "[Do you know](#) that the [Pharisees](#), having heard {this} word, were offended?"

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Later the [disciples](#) went to Jesus and said, "[Do you know](#) that the [Pharisees](#) heard what you said and became angry at you?"



## Matthew 15:13

**Every plant that my heavenly Father has not planted will be uprooted (ULT)**

**My Father in heaven will get rid of all those who teach things that are against what he says, just like a farmer gets rid of plants that he did not plant by pulling them up by their roots (UST)**

Jesus speaks of the Pharisees as if they were worthless plants that his **Father** would uproot. This means the Pharisees do not actually belong to God, so God will remove them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**my heavenly Father (ULT)**

**My Father in heaven will get rid of...like a farmer gets rid of (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**will be uprooted (ULT)**

**by pulling them up by their roots (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “my Father will uproot” or “he will take out of the ground” or “he will remove” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heavenly](#)
- [Father](#)
- [has...planted](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Father](#)
- [in heaven will get rid of](#)
- [he did...plant](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But he answering said, “Every plant that my [heavenly Father](#) has not [planted](#) will be uprooted.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> Then Jesus told them this parable.

“My [Father in heaven will get rid of](#) all those who teach things that are against what he says, just like a farmer gets rid of plants that [he did not plant](#) by pulling them up by their roots.

## Matthew 15:14

**Let them go (ULT)**

**Do not pay any attention to the Pharisees.**

**They do not help people to (UST)**

The word **them** refers to the Pharisees.

**They are blind guides. But if {the} blind guide {the} blind, both will fall into a pit (ULT) understand what God commands, just like blind guides do not help blind people to see where they should walk. Instead, they all fall into the same hole (UST)**

Jesus speaks of the Pharisees as if they were blind people trying to **guide** other **blind** people. Jesus means that the Pharisees do not understand God's commands or how to please him. Therefore, they cannot teach others how to please God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a pit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [hole](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Let them go! They are blind guides. But if {the} blind guide {the} blind, both will fall into [a pit](#)."

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Do not pay any attention to the Pharisees. They do not help people to understand what God commands, just like blind guides do not help blind people to see where they should walk. Instead, they all fall into the same [hole](#)."

## Matthew 15:15

### Connecting Statement:

Peter asks Jesus to explain the parable that Jesus told in verses 13-14.

to us (ULT)

us (UST)

Alternate translation: "to us disciples"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- parable

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter said
- parable about what a person eats

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Now responding, Peter said to him, "Explain the parable to us."

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> Peter said to Jesus, "Explain to us the parable about what a person eats."

## Matthew 15:16

**Are you also still without understanding (ULT)  
You should certainly understand...  
disappointed that you do not (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the disciples for not understanding the parable. Also, the word **you** is emphasized. Jesus cannot believe his own disciples do not understand. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am disappointed that you, my disciples, still do not understand what I teach!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But he said, "Are you also still without understanding?"

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Jesus replied to them, "You should certainly understand what I teach, but I am disappointed that you do not."

## Matthew 15:17

**Do you not yet understand that everything {that} enters into the mouth passes into the stomach and is passed out into {the} latrine (ULT)**

**You ought to understand that whatever food people eat enters their stomachs, and later what remains passes out of their bodies (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the disciples for not understanding the parable. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely you that everything that enters into the mouth passes into the stomach and is passed out into the latrine." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**into...passes...the stomach (ULT)**  
**to...stomachs (UST)**

Alternate translation: "goes into the stomach"

**the} latrine (ULT)**  
**passes...of their bodies (UST)**

A **latrine** a polite term for the place where people bury body waste.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Do you...understand](#)
- [is passed out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You ought...understand](#)
- [passes...of their bodies](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> [Do you](#) not yet [understand](#) that everything {that} enters into the mouth passes into the stomach and [is passed out](#) into {the} latrine?

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> [You ought](#) to [understand](#) that whatever food people eat enters their stomachs, and later what remains [passes out of their bodies](#).

## Matthew 15:18

**the {things...proceeding out from the mouth (ULT)**

**the evil words that...the mouth speaks are what makes God reject (UST)**

This phrase refers to what a person says. Alternate translation: "the words that a person says" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**from the heart (ULT)**

**in his innermost being (UST)**

Here, **heart** refers to a person's mind or innermost being. Alternate translation: "from inside the person" or "from a person's mind" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [defile](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the evil things that the person thinks](#)
- [his innermost being](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> But the {things} proceeding out from the mouth come from the [heart](#), and those [defile](#) the man.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> Instead, the evil words that the mouth speaks are what makes God reject a person, because they come from [the evil things that the person thinks](#) in [his innermost being](#).

## Matthew 15:19

### murder (ULT)

### to murder people (UST)

Murder is the act of killing innocent people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- evil
- adultery
- sexual immorality
- false witness
- and} slander

### Translation Words - UST

- people's innermost beings
- evil
- to commit adultery
- to commit other sexual sins
- to testify falsely, and
- to speak evil about others

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> For from the heart proceed evil thoughts, murder, adultery, sexual immorality, theft, false witness, {and} slander.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> This is because it is people's innermost beings that cause them to think things that are evil, to murder people, to commit adultery, to commit other sexual sins, to steal things, to testify falsely, and to speak evil about others.

## Matthew 15:20

### to eat...with unwashed hands (ULT) to eat with unwashed hands does (UST)

This refers to eating without first ceremonially washing one's **hands** according to the traditions of the elders. Alternate translation: "eating without first washing one's hands"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- defiling
- does...defile
- with...hands

#### Translation Words - UST

- cause God to consider...to be unacceptable to him
- cause God to reject
- hands does

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> These are the {things} **defiling** the man, but to eat with unwashed **hands** does not **defile** the man."

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> It is these actions that **cause God to consider** people **to be unacceptable to him**. But to eat with unwashed **hands** does not **cause God to reject** people."



## Matthew 15:21

### General Information:

This begins an account of Jesus healing the daughter of a Canaanite woman.

### Jesus withdrew (ULT)

### Jesus took the disciples and...they all went (UST)

It is implied that the disciples went with Jesus. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples went away" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of Tyre
- Sidon

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus took the disciples and
- of Tyre
- Sidon are located

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> And having come out from there, Jesus withdrew into the regions of Tyre and Sidon.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> After Jesus took the disciples and left the district of Galilee, they all went toward the region where the cities of Tyre and Sidon are located.



## **Matthew 15:22**

**behold, a Canaanite woman...having come out (ULT)**

**A woman...the group of people called Canaanites, who live in...that...came to Jesus (UST)**

The word **behold** alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "Now there was a Canaanite woman who came"

**a Canaanite woman having come out from that region was crying out (ULT)**

**A woman...from the group of people called Canaanites, who live in that region, came to Jesus. She kept shouting (UST)**

The country of Canaan no longer existed by this time. This woman was a part of a people group that lived near the cities of Tyre and Sidon. Alternate translation: "a woman who was from that region and who belonged to the group of people called Canaanites came and cried out"

**Have mercy on me (ULT)**

**Have pity on me (UST)**

This phrase implies that the woman is asking Jesus to heal her daughter. Alternate translation: "Have mercy and heal my daughter" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Son of David (ULT)**

**the descendant of King David, you are the Messiah (UST)**

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "Descendant of David." However, **Son of David** is also a title for the Messiah, and the woman may have been calling Jesus by this title.

**My daughter is severely demon-possessed (ULT)**

**my daughter! She is suffering very much because a demon controls her (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "A demon is controlling my daughter terribly" or "A demon is tormenting my daughter severely" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Canaanite](#)
- [was crying out](#)
- [Have mercy](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Son](#)
- [of David](#)
- [is...demon-possessed](#)

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> And behold, a [Canaanite](#) woman having come out from that region [was crying out](#), saying, "[Have mercy](#) on me, [Lord, Son of David](#)! My daughter is severely [demon-possessed](#)."

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> A woman from [the group of people called Canaanites, who live in that region](#), came to Jesus. [She kept shouting to him](#), "[Lord, you are the descendant of King David, you are the Messiah! Have pity](#) on me and my daughter! She is suffering very much because [a demon controls her](#)."

## Translation Words - UST

- the group of people called Canaanites, who live in
- She kept shouting
- to him, "Lord, you are
- the descendant
- of King David, you are the Messiah
- Have pity
- a demon controls her

## Matthew 15:23

### did not answer her a word (ULT)

### did not answer her at all (UST)

Here, **word** refers to what a person says. Alternate translation: “said nothing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [she is crying out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The disciples said to him](#)
- [she keeps bothering us by shouting](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But he did not answer her a word. And having approached, his [disciples](#) were begging him, saying, “Send her away, for [she is crying out](#) after us.”

### UST

<sup>23</sup> But Jesus did not answer her at all. [The disciples said to him](#), “Tell her to leave because [she keeps bothering us by shouting](#) behind us as we go along.”

## Matthew 15:24

### I was not sent (ULT) has sent me (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God did not send me to anyone" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to the lost sheep of {the} house of Israel (ULT) to the people of Israel...like sheep who have lost their way (UST)

This is a metaphor comparing the entire nation of **Israel** to **sheep** who have gone away from their shepherd. See how you translated this in [10:6](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I was...sent
- lost
- sheep
- of {the} house
- of Israel

### Translation Words - UST

- has sent me
- the people
- of Israel
- like sheep
- have lost their way

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But he answering said, "I was not sent, except to the lost sheep of {the} house of Israel."

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Jesus said to her, "God has sent me only to the people of Israel, because they are like sheep who have lost their way."

## Matthew 15:25

**she (ULT)**  
**the woman (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the Canaanite woman"

**bowed down to him (ULT)**  
**knelt down in front of him (UST)**

This action shows that the woman humbled herself before Jesus.  
(See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bowed down](#)
- [Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [knelt down in front](#)
- [Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But she, having come, [bowed down](#) to him, saying, "[Lord](#), help me."

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> But the woman came closer to Jesus and [knelt down in front](#) of him. She pled, "[Lord](#), help me!"



## Matthew 15:26

**It is not good to take the bread of the children and to throw {it} to the little dogs (ULT)**

**It is not good for someone to take food that has been prepared for his children and throw it to the little dogs in the house (UST)**

Jesus responds to the woman with a proverb. The basic meaning is that it is not right to take what is supposed to belong to Jews and give it to non-Jews. (See: [Proverbs](#))

**the bread of the children (ULT)**

**food that has been prepared for his children (UST)**

Here, **bread** refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "the children's food" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**to the little dogs (ULT)**

**to the little dogs in the house (UST)**

The Jews considered **dogs** to be unclean animals. Here they are used as an image for non-Jews.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [bread](#)
- [of the children](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [good for someone](#)
- [food that has been prepared](#)
- [for his children](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Now he answering said, "It is not [good](#) to take the [bread of the children](#) and to throw {it} to the little dogs."

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Then he told her, "It is not [good for someone](#) to take [food that has been prepared for his children](#) and throw it to the little dogs in the house."

## Matthew 15:27

**even...the little dogs eat from the crumbs falling from the tables of their masters (ULT)  
own tables and eat...the little dogs eat the crumbs that fall to the floor when their masters sit at their (UST)**

The woman responds by using the same imagery as Jesus used in the proverb he just spoke. She means non-Jews should be able to have a small amount of the good things Jews are throwing away. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the little dogs (ULT)**

**the little dogs (UST)**

Use words here for **dogs** of any size that people keep as pets. See how you translated this in [15:26](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [of...masters](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [when their masters sit at](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But she said, "Yes, [Lord](#), yet even the little dogs eat from the crumbs falling from the tables of their [masters](#)."

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> But the woman replied, "[Lord](#), what you say is correct, but even the little dogs eat the crumbs that fall to the floor [when their masters sit at](#) their own tables and eat!"

## Matthew 15:28

### let it be done (ULT) believe...in me, I will heal your daughter (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "I will do" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### her daughter was healed (ULT) her daughter...she became well (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed her daughter" or "her daughter became well" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### from that hour (ULT) At that moment the demon left (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "at exactly the same time" or "immediately" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- is...faith
- just as
- was healed
- hour

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus said
- believe...in me, I will heal your daughter
- as
- moment the demon left
- she became well

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Then answering, Jesus said to her, "Woman, great {is} your faith; let it be done for you just as you desire." And her daughter was healed from that hour.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Then Jesus said to her, "O woman, because you believe firmly in me, I will heal your daughter as you desire!" At that moment the demon left her daughter, and she became well.

## Matthew 15:29

### General Information:

Verses 29-31 give background information about the miracle that Jesus is about to perform by feeding four thousand people. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Sea of Galilee
- of Galilee

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus and his disciples
- Sea of Galilee
- of Galilee

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> And having left from there, Jesus went along the Sea of Galilee, and having gone up on a hill, he was sitting there.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Then Jesus and his disciples went away from that area, back to the Sea of Galilee. Then Jesus climbed the hill near there and sat down to teach the people.

## Matthew 15:30

**the} lame, {the} blind, {the} crippled, {the} mute (ULT)**

**lame, crippled...blind people, those who were unable to talk (UST)**

Alternate translation: "those who could not walk, those who could not see, those whose arms or legs did not function, those who could not talk"

**they laid them at his feet (ULT)**

**They laid them in front of Jesus so that he would heal (UST)**

Apparently some of these sick or crippled people were unable to stand up, so when their friends brought them to Jesus, they placed them on the ground in front of him. Alternate translation: "the crowds placed the sick people on the ground in front of Jesus"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he healed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he healed](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> And large crowds came up to him, having with them {the} lame, {the} blind, {the} crippled, {the} mute, and many others. And they laid them at his feet, and [he healed](#) them,

### UST

<sup>30</sup> Large crowds kept coming to him for the next two days and brought lame, crippled, and blind people, those who were unable to talk, and many others who had various sicknesses. They laid them in front of Jesus so that he would heal them. And [he healed](#) them.

## Matthew 15:31

### the} crippled healthy (ULT) crippled people, lame people, and blind people (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the crippled become well” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the} crippled...the} lame...the} blind (ULT) crippled people...lame people, and blind people (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand these nominal adjectives, you could express them as adjectives. Alternate translation: “people who were crippled ... people who were lame ... people who were blind” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> so that the crowd [marveled](#), seeing {the} mute speak, {the} crippled healthy, and {the} lame [walking](#), and {the} blind seeing, and [they glorified](#) the [God of Israel](#).

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> The crowd saw him heal people who could not talk, crippled people, [lame people, and blind people](#), and [they were amazed](#). They said, “Praise God who [rules over us in Israel!](#)”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [marveled](#)
- [walking](#)
- [they glorified](#)
- [God](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lame people, and blind people](#)
- [they were amazed](#)
- [They said, “Praise](#)
- [God who rules over us in](#)
- [Israel](#)

## Matthew 15:32

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus feeding 4,000 people with seven loaves of bread and a few small fish.

**hungry...lest they might faint on the way (ULT)**  
**while they are still hungry...because if I did... they might faint on the way home (UST)**

Alternate translation: "without eating because they might faint on the way"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- having summoned
- disciples
- I have compassion
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- called
- disciples to him
- for...days
- I feel sorry

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> But Jesus, having summoned his disciples, said, "I have compassion on the crowd, because they have remained with me three days already and do not have anything to eat. And I do not want to send them away hungry, lest they might faint on the way."

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Then Jesus called his disciples to him and said, "This crowd of people has been with me for three days and have nothing left to eat. I feel sorry for them. I do not want to send them away while they are still hungry, because if I did that, they might faint on the way home."

## Matthew 15:33

**From where {would be} to us in a wilderness enough bread so as to satisfy so large a crowd (ULT)**

**In this place where nobody lives, we cannot possibly obtain enough food to feed such a large crowd (UST)**

The disciples use a question to state that there is nowhere to get food for the **crowd**. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is nowhere in this wilderness where we can get enough bread for such a large crowd." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [a wilderness](#)
- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [where nobody lives](#)
- [food](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> And the [disciples](#) say to him, "From where {would be} to us in [a wilderness](#) enough [bread](#) so as to satisfy so large a crowd?"

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> The [disciples](#) said to him, "In this place [where nobody lives](#), we cannot possibly obtain enough [food](#) to feed such a large crowd!"



## Matthew 15:34

### Seven, and a few small fish (ULT) Seven small loaves and a few small cooked fish (UST)

The understood information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Seven loaves of bread, and a few small fish" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [loaves](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [loaves](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> And [Jesus](#) says to them, "How many [loaves](#) do you have?" And they said, "Seven, and a few small fish."

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> [Jesus](#) asked them, "How many [loaves](#) do you have?" They answered him, "Seven small loaves and a few small cooked fish."

## Matthew 15:35

**to recline on the (ULT)**

**to sit on the (UST)**

Use your language's word for how people customarily eat when there is no table, whether sitting or lying down.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having commanded](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus told](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> And [having commanded](#) the crowd to recline on the ground,

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> Then [Jesus told](#) the people to sit on the ground.

## Matthew 15:36

### he took the seven loaves and the fish

Alternate translation: "Jesus held the seven loaves and the fish in his hands"

#### he broke {them} (ULT)

#### he broke them into pieces (UST)

Alternate translation: "he broke the loaves"

#### was giving {them} (ULT)

#### he kept giving them (UST)

Alternate translation: "continued giving the bread and the fish"

### Translation Words - ULT

- loaves
- to the disciples
- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- loaves
- to the disciples
- Then the disciples kept distributing them

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> he took the seven loaves and the fish, and having given thanks, he broke {them} and was giving {them} to the disciples, and the disciples to the crowds.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> He took the seven loaves and the cooked fish. After he had thanked God for them, he broke them into pieces and he kept giving them to the disciples. Then the disciples kept distributing them to the crowd.

## Matthew 15:37

### they took away (ULT) the disciples collected (UST)

Alternate translation: "the disciples gathered up" or "some people gathered up"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- baskets

#### Translation Words - UST

- large baskets with them

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> And they all ate and were satisfied. And they took away seven baskets full of the remaining of the broken pieces.

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> Because Jesus made the food multiply miraculously, all those people ate and had plenty to satisfy them. Then the disciples collected the pieces of food that were left over, and they filled seven large baskets with them.

## Matthew 15:38

**those...eating (ULT)**

**who...ate (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the people who ate"

**4,000 men (ULT)**

**four thousand men (UST)**

Alternate translation: "four thousand men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [children](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the women and the children who also ate](#)

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> But those eating were 4,000 men, besides women and [children](#).

#### UST

<sup>38</sup> There were four thousand men who ate, but no one counted [the women and the children who also ate](#).

## Matthew 15:39

**the region (ULT)**

**the region (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the area"

**of Magadan (ULT)**

**of Magadan (UST)**

This region is sometimes called "Magdala." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> And having sent away the crowds, he got into the boat and went into the region of Magadan.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> After Jesus sent the crowd away, he and the disciples got in a boat and sailed around the lake to the region of Magadan.

## Matthew 16

### Matthew 16 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Yeast

Jesus spoke of the way people thought about God as if it were bread, and he spoke of what people taught about God as if it were the yeast that makes bread dough become larger and the baked bread taste good. He did not want his followers to listen to what the Pharisees and Sadducees taught. This was because if they did listen, they would not understand who God is and how he wants his people to live. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Jesus told his people to obey his commands. He did this by telling them to “follow” him. It is as if he were walking on a path and they were walking after him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Background information

Matthew continues his account from chapter 15 in verses 1-20. The account stops in verse 21 so Matthew can tell the reader that Jesus told his disciples again and again that people would kill him after he arrived in Jerusalem. Then the account continues in verses 22-27 with what happened the first time Jesus told the disciples that he would die.

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, “Whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it” ([Matthew 16:25](#)).

## Matthew 16:1

### testing {him (ULT) that God has really sent you (UST)

Here, **testing** is used in a negative sense. Alternate translation: “challenging him” or “wanting to trap him”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- Sadducees
- testing {him
- a sign
- heaven

#### Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- Sadducees
- that God has really sent you
- Do a miracle
- sky and use his power to convince us

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And the Pharisees and Sadducees, having approached—testing {him}—asked him to show them a sign from heaven.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Some Pharisees and Sadducees came to Jesus and said to him, “Show us that God has really sent you to us! Do a miracle in the sky and use his power to convince us!”



## Matthew 16:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> But he answering said to them, <sup>[1]</sup>  
[“When it is evening, you say, ‘It will be  
fair weather, for the sky is red.’

### UST

<sup>2</sup> He answered them, <sup>[1]</sup> [“In our  
country, if the sky is red in the evening,  
we say, ‘It will be good weather  
tomorrow.’

## Matthew 16:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And early today, 'It will be stormy, for the sky is red, being overcast.' You know to interpret the appearance of the sky, but you are not able the signs of the times."]

### UST

<sup>3</sup> But if the sky is red in the morning we say, 'It will be stormy weather today.' By looking at the sky, you can tell what the weather will be, but when you see the things that are now happening all around you, you do not understand what God is doing.]



## **Matthew 16:4**

**An evil and adulterous generation (ULT)  
You evil people have seen me perform...not  
faithfully worship God (UST)**

Jesus is speaking to his present **generation**. Alternate translation: "You are an evil and adulterous generation" See how you translated this in [12:39](#). (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

**An evil and adulterous generation (ULT)  
You evil people have seen me perform...not  
faithfully worship God (UST)**

Here, **adulterous** is a metaphor for people who are not faithful to God. See how you translated this in [12:39](#). Alternate translation: "An unfaithful generation" or "A godless generation" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a sign...will not be given to it (ULT)  
miracle...I will do no...for you (UST)**

Jesus would not give them **a sign** because, though he had already performed many miracles, they refused to believe him. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. See how you translated this in [12:39](#). Alternate translation: "I will not give it a sign" or "God will not give you a sign" (See: [Active](#) or [Passive](#))

**a sign...except the...of Jonah (ULT)  
miracle...except the miracle that happened to Jonah the prophet, who spent  
three days (UST)**

See how you translated this in [12:39](#). Alternate translation: "except the same sign God gave to Jonah the prophet"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [evil](#)
- [adulterous](#)
- [An...generation](#)
- [seeks](#)
- [a sign](#)
- [a sign \(2\)](#)
- [sign \(3\)](#)
- [of Jonah](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [You evil people have seen me perform](#)
- [You evil people have seen me perform](#)
- [miracle](#)
- [miracles, but you do \(2\)](#)
- [miracle that happened to \(3\)](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> "An [evil](#) and [adulterous generation](#) [seeks a sign](#), but [a sign](#) will not be given to it except the [sign of Jonah](#)." And having left them, he went away.

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> [You evil people have seen me perform miracles, but you do not faithfully worship God](#). So I will do no [miracle](#) for you, except the [miracle that happened to Jonah the prophet, who spent three days](#) inside a huge fish but came out again." Then Jesus left them and sailed away, along with his disciples.

- not faithfully worship God
- miracle
- Jonah the prophet, who spent three days

## Matthew 16:5

### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a later time. Jesus uses an opportunity to warn his disciples about the Pharisees and Sadducees.

### the other side (ULT)

### the other side of the Sea of Galilee (UST)

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: “the other side of the lake” or “the other side of the Sea of Galilee” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the disciples realized that they](#)
- [anything to eat](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And the [disciples](#), having come to the other side, had forgotten to take [bread](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> They all sailed to the other side of the Sea of Galilee. Then [the disciples realized that they](#) had forgotten to take [anything to eat](#) with them.

## Matthew 16:6

### the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees (ULT)

### the yeast...the Pharisees and Sadducees want to give you (UST)

Here, **yeast** is a metaphor that refers to evil ideas and wrong teaching. Translate as **yeast** here and do not explain its meaning in your translation. This meaning will be made clear in 16:12. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Take heed](#)
- [yeast](#)
- [of the Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Be careful](#)
- [yeast](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees want to give you](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Now [Jesus](#) said to them, “[Take heed](#) and beware of the [yeast of the Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#).”

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> At that point, [Jesus](#) said to them, “[Be careful](#) not to accept the [yeast](#) that the [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#) want to give you.”



## Matthew 16:7

**were reasoning among themselves (ULT)**  
**They tried to make sense...to each other, "He must have said that (UST)**

Alternate translation: "were discussing this with each other" or "were thinking about this"

### Translation Words - ULT

- bread

### Translation Words - UST

- anything to eat

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But they were reasoning among themselves, saying, "{It is} because we did not take bread."

### UST

<sup>7</sup> They tried to make sense out of what Jesus had told them, and they said to each other, "He must have said that because we forgot to bring anything to eat!"

## Matthew 16:8

### You of little faith (ULT)

#### You believe only a little what I am able to do for you (UST)

Jesus addresses his disciples this way because their concern about not bringing bread shows they have **little faith** in Jesus to provide for them. See how you translated this in 6:30. Alternate translation: "You who have such little faith"

### You of little faith, why do you reason among yourselves that {it is because} you do not have bread (ULT)

#### what...I am disappointed that you think it was because you forgot bring bread that I talked about...You believe only a little what I am able to do for you (UST)

Jesus uses this question to rebuke his disciples for not understanding what he just said. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am disappointed that you think it was because you forgot to bring bread that I talked about the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- having known {this}
- You of little faith
- bread

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- knew
- bread that I talked
- You believe only a little what I am able to do for you

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But Jesus, having known {this}, said, "You of little faith, why do you reason among yourselves that {it is because} you do not have bread?"

### UST

<sup>8</sup> But Jesus knew what they were saying and answered them, "I am disappointed that you think it was because you forgot bring bread that I talked about the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees. You believe only a little what I am able to do for you."

## Matthew 16:9

**Do you not yet perceive nor remember the five loaves of the 5,000, and how many baskets you gathered up (ULT)**  
**Do not think I am worried about having food. Have you really forgotten how I fed the five thousand with five loaves, or how many baskets of leftover food you gathered up (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the disciples. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement.  
 Alternate translation: "Surely you remember the five loaves of the 5,000, and how many baskets you gathered up!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**of the 5,000 (ULT)**  
**the five thousand (UST)**

Alternate translation: "of the five thousand" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Do you...perceive](#)
- [loaves](#)
- [baskets](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Do...think](#)
- [I am worried about having food. Have you](#)
- [baskets of leftover food you](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [Do you](#) not yet [perceive](#) nor remember the five [loaves](#) of the 5,000, and how many [baskets](#) you gathered up?

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Do not [think I am worried about having food](#). [Have you](#) really forgotten how I fed the five thousand with five loaves, or how many [baskets of leftover food you](#) gathered up?

## Matthew 16:10

**Or the seven loaves of the 4,000, and how many baskets you took up (ULT)**

**Or what about the four thousand people who ate when I multiplied the seven small loaves?**

**And how many baskets of scraps did you gather up then (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to rebuke his disciples. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement.  
Alternate translation: "Surely you also remember the seven loaves of the 4,000, and how many baskets you took up!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**of the 4,000 (ULT)**

**about the four thousand people who ate when I multiplied (UST)**

Alternate translation: "of the four thousand" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [loaves](#)
- [baskets](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [small loaves](#)
- [baskets of scraps did you](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Or the seven [loaves](#) of the 4,000, and how many [baskets](#) you took up?

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Or what about the four thousand people who ate when I multiplied the seven [small loaves](#)? And how many [baskets of scraps did you](#) gather up then?

## Matthew 16:11

**How do you not understand that I did not speak to you about bread (ULT)**

**You should have understood that I was not really speaking about bread. Do not (UST)**

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the disciples. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have understood that I was not really speaking about bread." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees (ULT)**

**yeast...the Pharisees and the Sadducees (UST)**

Here, **yeast** represents evil ideas and wrong teaching. Translate as "yeast" and do not explain the meaning in your translation. In 16:12 the disciples will understand the meaning. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [do you...understand](#)
- [bread](#)
- [yeast](#)
- [of the Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [have understood](#)
- [bread. Do not](#)
- [yeast](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [the Sadducees](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> How [do you](#) not [understand](#) that I did not speak to you about [bread](#)? But beware of the [yeast of the Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#)."

### UST

<sup>11</sup> You should [have understood](#) that I was not really speaking about [bread](#). [Do not](#) accept [yeast](#) from the [Pharisees](#) and the [Sadducees](#)."

## Matthew 16:12

### they understood (ULT) the disciples understood (UST)

Here, **they** refer to the disciples.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- they understood
- yeast
- of the bread
- teaching
- of the Pharisees
- Sadducees

#### Translation Words - UST

- the disciples understood
- yeast that is in
- bread
- teaching
- Pharisees
- Sadducees

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then **they understood** that he had not told them to beware of the **yeast of the bread**, but of the **teaching of the Pharisees** and **Sadducees**.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then **the disciples understood** that Jesus was not talking about the **yeast that is in bread**. Instead, he was talking about the wrong **teaching** of the **Pharisees** and **Sadducees**.

## Matthew 16:13

### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a later time. Jesus asks his disciples if they understand who he is.

### Now (ULT)

### When Jesus and (UST)

**Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line or to introduce a new person. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

### the Son of Man (ULT)

### that I, the Son of Man, really (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself as the **Son of Man**. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of Caesarea](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [When Jesus and](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [Son of Man, really](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Now [Jesus](#), having come to the regions of [Caesarea](#) Philippi, asked his [disciples](#), saying, "Who do men say the [Son of Man](#) is?"

### UST

<sup>13</sup> [When Jesus and](#) his [disciples](#) entered into the region near the city of [Caesarea](#) Philippi, he asked them, "Who do people say that I, the [Son of Man](#), really am?"

## Matthew 16:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- John the Baptist
- Elijah
- Jeremiah
- of the prophets

### Translation Words - UST

- John...the Baptizer, who has come back to life
- Elijah, who has returned from heaven as God promised
- Still others say that you are the prophet Jeremiah
- prophets who lived long ago, who has come back to life

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And they said, "Some, [John the Baptist](#); and some, [Elijah](#); and others, [Jeremiah](#), or one of the prophets."

### UST

<sup>14</sup> They answered, "Some people say that you are [John the Baptizer, who has come back to life](#) again. Others say that you are the prophet [Elijah, who has returned from heaven as God promised](#). Still others say that you are the prophet [Jeremiah](#) or one of the other [prophets who lived long ago, who has come back to life](#) again."



## Matthew 16:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> He says to them, "But who do you say I am?"

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Jesus said to them, "What about you? Who do you say that I am?"

## Matthew 16:16

### the Son of the living God (ULT) the Son of the all-powerful God (UST)

**Son** is an important title for Jesus that shows his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### of the living God

Here, **living** contrasts the God of Israel to all the false gods and idols that people worshiped. Only the God of Israel is alive and has power to act.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Simon Peter](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Son of the...God](#)
- [living](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Simon Peter said to him...You are](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [Son of...God](#)
- [all-powerful](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> And answering, [Simon Peter](#) said, "You are the [Christ](#), the [Son of the living God](#)."

### UST

<sup>16</sup> [Simon Peter](#) said to him, "You are the [Messiah](#)! You are the [Son of the all-powerful God](#)."



## **Matthew 16:17**

## Simon Bar Jonah (ULT) Simon, son of Jonah (UST)

Alternate translation: "Simon son of Jonah" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## flesh and blood did not reveal {this (ULT) no human has revealed this...who has revealed this (UST)

Here, **flesh and blood** refers to a human being. Alternate translation: "a human did not reveal this" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## did not reveal {this (ULT) no...who has revealed this (UST)

Here, **this** refers to Peter's statement that Jesus is the Christ and the Son of the Living God.

## but my Father who is in the heavens

You can make the understood information explicit. Alternate translation: "but it was my Father in the heavens who revealed this to you" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

## my Father (ULT) my Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Blessed](#)
- [Simon Bar Jonah](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [blood](#)
- [did...reveal {this](#)
- [Father](#)
- [heavens](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Then Jesus said](#)
- [Simon, son of Jonah](#)
- [God is pleased](#)
- [human has revealed this](#)
- [human has revealed this](#)
- [Father](#)
- [heaven](#)

## ULT

<sup>17</sup> Now answering, [Jesus](#) said to him, "[Blessed](#) are you, [Simon Bar Jonah](#), because [flesh](#) and [blood](#) did not [reveal {this}](#) to you, but my [Father](#) in the [heavens](#)."

## UST

<sup>17</sup> Then [Jesus](#) said to him, "[Simon, son of Jonah](#), [God is pleased](#) with you. What you just said—no [human has revealed this](#) to you. Instead, it was my [Father](#) who lives in [heaven who has revealed this](#) to you."

- [who has revealed this](#)

## Matthew 16:18

**And I also say to you (ULT)**

**I will also tell you (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

**you are Peter (ULT)**

**You...are Peter, which means (UST)**

The name **Peter** means “rock.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**upon this rock I will build my church (ULT)**

**this...rock.’ You will be the support for the group of those who believe in me (UST)**

Here, **build my church** is a metaphor for uniting the people who believe in Jesus into a community. The phrase **this rock** could represent: (1) Peter. (2) the truth that Peter had just said in [16:16](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the} gates of Hades will not prevail against it (ULT)**

**the powers of death will not be strong enough to stand up against it (UST)**

Here, **Hades** represents death, and its **gates** represent its power. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the} gates of Hades will not prevail against it (ULT)**

**the powers of death will not be strong enough to stand up against it (UST)**

Here, **Hades** is spoken of as if it were a city surrounded by walls with gates that keep dead people in and other people out. This could mean: (1) Jesus is saying the powers of death will not overcome his church. (2) Jesus is saying his church will break down the power of death the way an army breaks into a city. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [church](#)
- [of Hades](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter, which means](#)
- [the group of those who believe in me](#)
- [death](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And I also say to you that you are [Peter](#), and upon this rock I will build my [church](#), and {the} gates of [Hades](#) will not prevail against it.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> I will also tell you this: You are [Peter](#), [which means](#) ‘rock.’ You will be the support for [the group of those who believe in me](#), like a large rock supports a great building. And even the powers of [death](#) will not be strong enough to stand up against it.”





## **Matthew 16:19**

**I will give to you (ULT)  
said, "I will enable you to open or close the  
way for people to come under (UST)**

Here, **you** is singular and refers to Peter. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**the keys of the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)  
said...I will enable you to open or close the  
way for people to come under...the rule of God  
from heaven (UST)**

Keys are objects that are used to lock or unlock doors. Here they represent authority. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)  
the rule of God from heaven (UST)**

This refers to God's rule as king. The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** is used only in the book of Matthew. if possible, use **heavens** in your translation. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**whatever you have bound on the earth will be bound in the heavens, and  
whatever you have loosed on the earth will be loosed in the heavens (ULT)  
Whatever you permit on earth, God will permit in heaven. Whatever you  
prohibit on earth, God will prohibit in heaven (UST)**

Here, **bound** is a metaphor meaning to forbid something, and **loosed** is a metaphor meaning to allow something. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**whatever you have bound on the earth will be bound in the heavens, and  
whatever you have loosed on the earth will be loosed in the heavens (ULT)  
Whatever you permit on earth, God will permit in heaven. Whatever you  
prohibit on earth, God will prohibit in heaven (UST)**

Here, **in the heavens** is a metonym that represents God himself. Alternate translation: "God in heaven will approve whatever you forbid or allow on earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [of the kingdom...of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)
- [heavens](#)
- [heavens \(2\)](#)
- [you have bound](#)
- [bound](#)
- [earth](#)
- [earth \(2\)](#)

## ULT

<sup>19</sup> I will give to you the keys [of the kingdom of the heavens](#), and whatever [you have bound](#) on the [earth](#) will be [bound](#) in the [heavens](#), and whatever you have loosed on the [earth](#) will be loosed in the [heavens](#)."

## UST

<sup>19</sup> Then he said, "I will enable you to open or close the way for people to come under the [rule of God from heaven](#). Whatever you permit on [earth](#), God will permit in [heaven](#). Whatever [you prohibit](#) on [earth](#), [God will prohibit](#) in [heaven](#)."

## Translation Words - UST

- the...rule of God...from heaven
- heaven
- heaven
- heaven (2)
- earth
- earth (2)
- you prohibit
- God will prohibit

## Matthew 16:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- he commanded
- disciples
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus warned...strongly
- disciples
- Messiah

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then he commanded the disciples that they tell no one that he is the Christ.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Then Jesus warned the disciples strongly not to tell anyone at that time that he was the Messiah.



## **Matthew 16:21**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus tells his disciples for the first time that he will die soon.

**scribes and to be killed and to be raised on the third day (ULT)**  
**the men who taught the Jewish laws...and die.**  
**Then on the third day after that, he would come alive again (UST)**

Here, **to be raised** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. (See: [Idiom](#))

**scribes and to be killed and to be raised on the third day (ULT)**  
**the men who taught the Jewish laws...and die.**  
**Then on the third day after that, he would come alive again (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. The elders and chief priests would accuse Jesus so that others would kill him. Alternate translation: "scribes. People will then kill him, and on the third day God will make him become alive again" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**on the third day (ULT)**  
**on the third day (UST)**

The word **third** is the ordinal form of "three." (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [to suffer](#)
- [elders](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [to be raised](#)
- [on the...day](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [he would come alive again](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [to the city of Jerusalem](#)
- [There...would cause him to suffer](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> From that time [Jesus Christ](#) began to show his [disciples](#) that it is necessary for him to go to [Jerusalem](#) and [to suffer](#) much from the [elders](#) and [chief priests](#) and [scribes](#) and to be killed and to be [raised on the third day](#).

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> From that time [Jesus, the Messiah](#), began to teach the [disciples](#) that it was necessary for him to go [to the city of Jerusalem](#). [There](#) the [ruling elders](#), the [chief priests](#), and the [men who taught the Jewish laws](#) would cause him to [suffer](#) and die. Then on the [third day](#) after that, [he would come alive again](#).

- ruling elders, the
- chief priests
- the men who taught the Jewish laws
- day



## Matthew 16:22

### And having taken him aside, Peter (ULT) But Peter took Jesus aside and...that (UST)

Jesus tells them for the first time that he will die soon in verse 21. He will tell them the same thing many times after this first time. It is after this first time that **Peter** takes Jesus **aside**. (See: [Background Information](#))

### having taken him aside, Peter (ULT) But Peter took Jesus aside...that (UST)

Alternate translation: "Peter spoke to Jesus when no one else could hear them and"

### Merciful to you (ULT) Lord, may God never permit...to happen (UST)

This is an idiom that means "May God be merciful to you." (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [to rebuke](#)
- [Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [But Peter](#)
- [to scold](#)
- [Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And having taken him aside, [Peter](#) began [to rebuke](#) him, saying, "Merciful to you, [Lord](#); may this never be to you."

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [But Peter](#) took Jesus aside and began [to scold](#) him for saying these things. He said, "[Lord](#), may God never permit that to happen to you! That must certainly not happen!"

## Matthew 16:23

**Get behind me, Satan! You are a stumbling block to me (ULT)**

**Get out of my sight...Satan is speaking through you. You are trying to get me to sin (UST)**

Jesus means that Peter is acting like **Satan** because Peter is trying to prevent Jesus from accomplishing what God sent him to do.

Alternate translation: "Get behind me, because you are acting like Satan! You are a stumbling block to me" or "Get behind me, Satan! I call you Satan because you are a stumbling block to me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Get behind me (ULT)**

**Get out of my sight (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Get away from me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having turned](#)
- [to Peter](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [a stumbling block](#)
- [you are...setting your mind](#)
- [of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [turned to look](#)
- [at Peter, and](#)
- [Satan is speaking through you](#)
- [to get...to sin](#)
- [You are...thinking](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But, he, [having turned](#), said [to Peter](#), "Get behind me, [Satan](#)! You are a [stumbling block](#) to me, because [you are not setting your mind](#) on the {things} of [God](#), but on the {things} of men."

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Then Jesus [turned to look at Peter](#), [and](#) he said to him, "Get out of my sight, because [Satan is speaking through you](#). You are trying [to get me to sin](#). You are not [thinking](#) what [God](#) thinks, but only what people think!"

**Matthew 16:24**

**to come after me (ULT)**  
**go where I am going (UST)**

To **come after** Jesus here represents being one of his disciples.  
 Alternate translation: “be my disciple” or “be one of my disciples”  
 (See: [Metaphor](#))

**let him deny himself (ULT)**  
**he must put away his own desires and purposes...he must (UST)**

Alternate translation: “he must not give in to his own desires” or “he must forsake his own desires”

**take up his cross and follow me (ULT)**  
**take up his own cross, and go where I go (UST)**

To **take up** a **cross** represents being willing to suffer and die. Alternate translation: “obey me even to the point of suffering and dying” or “he must obey me even to the point of suffering and dying” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**take up his cross and follow me (ULT)**  
**take up his own cross, and go where I go (UST)**

The **cross** represents suffering and death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**and follow me (ULT)**  
**and go where I go (UST)**

To **follow** Jesus here represents obeying him. Alternate translation: “and obey me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jesus](#)
- [to...disciples](#)
- [cross](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [cross](#)

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> Then [Jesus](#) said to his [disciples](#), “If anyone wants to come after me, let him deny himself and take up his [cross](#) and follow me.”

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> Then [Jesus](#) said to his [disciples](#), “If anyone wants to trust me and go where I am going, he must put away his own desires and purposes, and he must take up his own [cross](#), and go where I go.”

**Matthew 16:25****will lose it (ULT)****will lose it (UST)**

This does not mean the person must necessarily die. It is a metaphor that means the person who considers his own life as being more important than obeying Jesus will not attain spiritual life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for my sake (ULT)****for me (UST)**

Alternate translation: “because he trusts me” or “on my account” or “because of me”

**will find it (ULT)****he will find his life (UST)**

This metaphor means the person will experience spiritual life with God. Alternate translation: “will find true life” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [to save](#)
- [life](#)
- [life \(2\)](#)
- [will lose](#)
- [loses](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to save](#)
- [life](#)
- [life \(2\)](#)
- [will lose](#)
- [loses](#)

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> For whoever wants [to save](#) his [life](#) [will lose](#) it, but whoever [loses](#) his [life](#) for my sake will find it.

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> Whoever tries [to save](#) his own [life](#), will find that instead of saving his life, he [will lose](#) it. But whoever [loses](#) his [life](#) for me, he will find his life.

## Matthew 16:26

**For what will it profit a man if he gains the whole world but forfeits his life (ULT)**

**What good would it be for a person to get everything he wants in this world, but then for him to lose his life (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "It does not profit a man to gain the whole world if he forfeits his life." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**if he gains the whole world (ULT)**  
**to get everything he wants in this world (UST)**

The words **the whole world** are an exaggeration for great riches. Alternate translation: "if he would gain everything he desires" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**but forfeits his life (ULT)**  
**but then for him to lose his life (UST)**

Alternate translation: "but he would lose his life"

**Or what will a man give in exchange for his life (ULT)**  
**What will a man gain in his possessions that would be as valuable as his own life (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is nothing that a person can give to regain his life." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- will it profit
- he gains
- world
- life
- for...life

### Translation Words - UST

- good would it be
- to get everything he wants in this world
- to get everything he wants in this world
- to lose
- life

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> For what **will it profit** a man if **he gains** the whole **world** but forfeits his **life**? Or what will a man give in exchange for his **life**?

### UST

<sup>26</sup> What **good would it be** for a person **to get everything he wants in this world**, but then for him **to lose** his life? What will a man gain in his possessions that would be as valuable as his own **life**?



## **Matthew 16:27**

**is about...the Son...of Man...of...Father...his...  
he will recompense (ULT)  
At that time...Listen carefully. I, the Son...  
Man...that...my...I...reward (UST)**

Here Jesus refers to himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of man, am about ... my ... I will repay" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

**is about...of Man...to come in the glory...of...  
his...Father (ULT)  
At that time...of...will leave this earth, but I  
will return, and...I will have the glorious  
light...my Father has (UST)**

Alternate translation: "will come, having the same glory as his Father;"

**with his angels (ULT)  
the angels of heaven will accompany me (UST)**

If you translate the first part of the sentence with Jesus speaking in the first person, you can translate this as "and my Father's angels will be with me." (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

**of his Father (ULT)  
that my Father has (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and the Son of Man, Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**his...according to...actions (ULT)  
my...according to what they did when they were alive in this world (UST)**

Alternate translation: "according to what each person has done"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son of Man](#)
- [glory](#)
- [of...Father](#)
- [angels](#)
- [actions](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Son of Man](#)
- [angels of heaven](#)
- [glorious light](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> For the [Son of Man](#) is about to come in the [glory](#) of his [Father](#) with his [angels](#). And then he will recompense each one according to his [actions](#).

### UST

<sup>27</sup> Listen carefully. I, the [Son of Man](#), will leave this earth, but I will return, and the [angels of heaven](#) will accompany me. At that time I will have the [glorious light](#) that my [Father has](#), and I will reward everyone according to [what they did when they were alive in this world](#).



- Father has
- what they did when they were alive in this world

**Matthew 16:28****Truly I say to you (ULT)  
Listen carefully...you (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

**to you (ULT)  
Listen carefully...you (UST)**

Here, **you** is plural and refers to the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**will certainly not taste death (ULT)  
before you die (UST)**

Here, **tasted** means to experience. Alternate translation: "will not have experienced death" or "will still be alive" (See: [Idiom](#))

**until they see the Son of Man coming in his kingdom (ULT)  
will see me, the one who came from heaven, when I return as king. You will see this (UST)**

Here, **his kingdom** represents him being King. Alternate translation: "until they see the Son of Man coming as King" or "until they see the evidence that the Son of Man is King" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Truly
- death
- Son of Man
- kingdom

**Translation Words - UST**

- Listen carefully...you
- one who came from heaven
- when I return as king
- before you die

**ULT**

**28 Truly** I say to you that there are some of the ones standing here who will certainly not taste **death** until they see the **Son of Man** coming in his **kingdom**." 16:2 <sup>[1]</sup>

**UST**

**28 Listen carefully!** Some of **you** who are here now will see me, the **one who came from heaven, when I return as king**. You will see this **before you die!**" 16:2 <sup>[1]</sup>

## Matthew 17

### Matthew 17 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Elijah

The Old Testament prophet Malachi lived many years before Jesus was born. Malachi had said that before the Messiah came a prophet named Elijah would return. Jesus explained that Malachi had been talking about John the Baptist. Jesus said this because John the Baptist had done what Malachi had said that Elijah would do. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [Christ, Messiah](#))

#### “transfigured”

Scripture often speaks of God's glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Matthew says in this chapter that Jesus' body shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God's Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#) and [fear](#), [afraid](#), [frighten](#))

## Matthew 17:1

### General Information:

This begins the account of Jesus' transfiguration.

### Peter, James, and John his brother

Alternate translation: "Peter, James, and James's brother John"

### Translation Words - ULT

- days
- Jesus
- Peter
- James
- John
- brother

### Translation Words - UST

- A week after...said that
- Jesus
- Peter
- James
- John
- younger brother

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And six days later Jesus takes along Peter, and James, and John his brother, and brings them up onto a high mountain by themselves.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> A week after Jesus said that, he took Peter, James, and John, the younger brother of James, and led them up a high mountain where they were away from other people.



## **Matthew 17:2**

**he was transfigured before them (ULT)  
the three disciples saw Jesus' appearance  
change (UST)**

When they looked at him, his appearance was different from what it had been.

**he was transfigured (ULT)  
appearance change (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "his appearance had changed" or "he appeared very different" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**before them (ULT)  
the three disciples saw Jesus (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in front of them" or "so they could clearly him"

**his face shone like the sun, and his garments became brilliant as the light (ULT)  
His face...shone...like the sun, and his clothing shone and became as brilliant as light (UST)**

These are similes that emphasize how bright Jesus' appearance became. (See: [Simile](#))

**garments...his...garments (ULT)  
and...His...clothing shone (UST)**

Alternate translation: "what he was wearing"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [face](#)
- [like](#)
- [as \(2\)](#)
- [garments](#)
- [light](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [face](#)
- [like](#)
- [as brilliant as \(2\)](#)
- [clothing shone](#)
- [light](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> And he was transfigured before them, and his [face](#) shone [like](#) the sun, and his [garments](#) became brilliant [as](#) the [light](#).

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> While they were there, the three disciples saw Jesus' appearance change. His [face](#) shone [like](#) the sun, and his [clothing shone](#) and became [as brilliant as light](#).

**Matthew 17:3****behold (ULT)**  
**Suddenly (UST)**

The word **behold** alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**to them (ULT)**  
**who were important prophets many years ago, appeared and (UST)**

Here, **them** refers to Peter, James, and John.

**with him (ULT)**  
**with him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "with Jesus"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Moses](#)
- [Elijah](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Moses](#)
- [Elijah](#)

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> And behold, there appeared to them [Moses](#) and [Elijah](#) talking with him.

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> Suddenly [Moses](#) and [Elijah](#), who were important prophets many years ago, appeared and started talking with him.



## Matthew 17:4

### responding...Peter said (ULT) saw them...Peter...said to (UST)

Peter is not responding to a question. Alternate translation: "Peter said"

### it is good for us to be here (ULT) it is excellent for us to be here (UST)

It is not clear whether **us** refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- to Jesus
- Lord
- good
- for Moses
- for Elijah

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- Jesus
- Lord
- excellent
- for Moses
- for Elijah

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And responding, Peter said to Jesus, "Lord, it is good for us to be here. If you desire, I will make here three shelters—one for you, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Peter saw them and said to Jesus, "Lord, it is excellent for us to be here! If you want me to, I will set up three tents, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah."

## Matthew 17:5

### behold (ULT)

### a...cloud (UST)

The word **behold** alerts the reader to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### overshadowed them (ULT)

### came over them (UST)

Alternate translation: "came over them"

### a voice from the cloud (ULT)

### They heard God speaking about Jesus...from inside the cloud (UST)

Here, **voice** refers to God speaking. Alternate translation: "God spoke to them from the cloud" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- a voice
- beloved
- Son
- I am well-pleased

## Translation Words - UST

- They heard God speaking about Jesus
- Son
- I love him
- He pleases me very much

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> {While} he was still speaking, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them, and behold, a voice from the cloud, saying, "This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well-pleased. Listen to him."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> While Peter was speaking, a bright cloud came over them. They heard God speaking about Jesus from inside the cloud. He said to them, "This is my Son. I love him. He pleases me very much. So you must listen to him!"

## Matthew 17:6

**And having heard that, the disciples (ULT)  
When the three disciples heard God speaking  
(UST)**

Alternate translation: "And when the disciples heard God speak, they"

**fell on their face (ULT)  
they fell facedown on the ground (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "fell forward, with their faces to the ground" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [fell](#)
- [face](#)
- [were...afraid](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [they were...afraid](#)
- [fell](#)
- [facedown](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And having heard that, the [disciples](#) [fell](#) on their [face](#) and were very [afraid](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> When the three [disciples](#) heard God speaking, [they were](#) exceedingly [afraid](#). As a result, they [fell facedown](#) on the ground.

## Matthew 17:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Get up
- do...be afraid

### Translation Words - UST

- But Jesus
- Stand up
- Do...be afraid anymore

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And Jesus, having approached and having touched them, said, “Get up and do not be afraid.”

### UST

<sup>7</sup> But Jesus went to them and touched them and said to them, “Stand up! Do not be afraid anymore!”

## Matthew 17:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But having lifted up their eyes, they saw no one except only [Jesus](#) himself.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> And when they looked up, they saw that [Jesus](#) was the only one who was still there.

## Matthew 17:9

**And {as} they were coming down (ULT)**

**While they were walking down (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And as Jesus and the disciples were coming down"

**the Son of Man (ULT)**

**the Son...of Man, to (UST)**

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- commanded
- vision
- Son of Man
- might have risen
- the} dead

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- instructed
- you saw on
- the Son...of Man, to
- become alive again
- I die

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And {as} they were coming down from the mountain, **Jesus commanded** them, saying, "Tell the **vision** to no one until the **Son of Man might have risen** from {the} dead."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> While they were walking down the mountain, **Jesus instructed** them, "Do not tell anyone what **you saw on** the mountain top until God has caused me, **the Son of Man, to become alive again** after **I die**."

## Matthew 17:10

**Why then do the scribes say that it is necessary for Elijah to come first (ULT)  
If what you...is true, why do the men who teach the Jewish laws say that it is necessary for Elijah to come back to earth before the Messiah comes (UST)**

(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [Elijah](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Those three disciples](#)
- [men who teach the Jewish laws](#)
- [Elijah](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And his [disciples](#) questioned him, saying, "Why then do the [scribes](#) say that it is necessary for [Elijah](#) to come first?"

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Those three disciples](#) asked Jesus, "If what you say is true, why do the [men who teach the Jewish laws](#) say that it is necessary for [Elijah](#) to come back to earth before the Messiah comes?"

## Matthew 17:11

**will restore all {things (ULT)  
to prepare many people for the Messiah's  
coming (UST)**

Alternate translation: "will put things in order" or "will get the people ready to receive the Messiah"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Elijah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But he, answering, said, "[Elijah](#) indeed is coming and will restore all {things}.

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Jesus answered them, "It is true that God promised that [Elijah](#) would come to prepare many people for the Messiah's coming.



**Matthew 17:12****But I say to you (ULT)****But note this (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

**they did...them (ULT)****they treated...in the same manner (UST)**

Here, **they** and **them** could refer to: (1) the Jewish leaders. (2) all the Jewish people.

**the Son of Man (ULT)****me, the one who came from heaven (UST)**

Jesus is referring to himself. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Elijah](#)
- [they did...recognize](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [to suffer](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Elijah](#)
- [recognize...as the one who would come before the Messiah](#)
- [treat](#)
- [one who came from heaven](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> But I say to you that [Elijah](#) already came, but [they did](#) not [recognize](#) him. Instead, they did whatever they wanted to him. In the same way also, the [Son of Man](#) is going [to suffer](#) by them.”

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> But note this: [Elijah](#) has already come and our leaders have seen him, but they did not [recognize](#) him [as the one who would come before the Messiah](#). Instead, they treated him badly, just as they desired. And those same rulers will soon [treat](#) me, the [one who came from heaven](#), in the same manner.”

## Matthew 17:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [understood](#)
- [John the Baptist](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [understood](#)
- [John the Baptizer](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then the [disciples understood](#) that he spoke to them about [John the Baptist](#).

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> Then the three [disciples understood](#) that when he was talking about Elijah, he was referring to [John the Baptizer](#).

## Matthew 17:14

### Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus healing a boy who had an evil spirit. These events happen immediately after Jesus and his disciples descend from the mountain.

#### ULT

**14** And having come to the crowd, a man, having approached him, is kneeling before him

#### UST

**14** When Jesus and the three disciples returned to the rest of the disciples and to the crowd that had gathered, a man approached Jesus and knelt before him.

## Matthew 17:15

### have mercy on my son (ULT)

### have mercy on my son (UST)

It is implied that the man wants Jesus to heal his son. You can state this explicitly. Alternate translation: “have mercy on my son and heal him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### he is epileptic (ULT)

### heal him! He has epilepsy (UST)

The phrase **he is epileptic** means that he sometimes had seizures. He would become unconscious and move uncontrollably. Alternate translation: “he has seizures”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- have mercy on
- son
- fire
- water

### Translation Words - UST

- Sir
- have mercy on
- son
- fire
- water

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> and saying, “Lord, have mercy on my son, because he is epileptic and has sickness, for he often falls into the fire and often into the water.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> He said to him, “Sir, have mercy on my son and heal him! He has epilepsy and suffers very much. Because of this illness, he has fallen in the fire and in the water many times.

## Matthew 17:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- to...disciples
- to heal

### Translation Words - UST

- disciples
- to heal

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> And I brought him to your **disciples**, but they were not able **to heal** him."

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> I brought him to your **disciples** in order that they might heal him, but they were not able **to heal** him."

## Matthew 17:17

**O unbelieving and perverse generation, how long (ULT)**

**You people of this time...do not believe at all in God's power. How confused you are! How long (UST)**

Alternate translation: "O you generation that does not believe in God and does not know what is right or wrong. How long"

**how long will I be with you? How long will I bear with you (ULT)**

**How...you are! How long do I have to be with you before you are able to do what I do (UST)**

These questions show Jesus is unhappy with the people. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am tired of being with you! I am tired of your unbelief and corruption!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [unbelieving](#)
- [perverse](#)
- [generation](#)
- [will I bear with](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [You people of this time](#)
- [do not believe at all in God's power](#)
- [confused](#)
- [before...are able to do what I do](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> But answering, [Jesus](#) said, "O [unbelieving](#) and [perverse generation](#), how long will I be with you? How long [will I bear with](#) you? Bring him here to me."

### UST

<sup>17</sup> [Jesus](#) responded, "[You people of this time do not believe at all in God's power](#). How [confused](#) you are! How long do I have to be with you [before](#) you [are able to do what I do](#)? Bring the boy here to me!"

## Matthew 17:18

### the boy was healed (ULT)

### the boy was healed (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the boy became well” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### from that hour (ULT)

### from that time onward (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “immediately” or “at that moment” (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [rebuked](#)
- [demon](#)
- [was healed](#)
- [hour](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus spoke severely](#)
- [demon](#)
- [was healed](#)
- [time onward](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And [Jesus rebuked](#) it, and the [demon](#) came out from him, and the boy [was healed](#) from that [hour](#).

### UST

<sup>18</sup> When they brought the boy to [Jesus](#), [Jesus spoke severely](#) to the demon that was causing the epilepsy. As a result, the [demon](#) came out of the boy, and the boy [was healed](#) from that [time onward](#).

**Matthew 17:19****we (ULT)****we (UST)**

Here, **we** refers to the speakers but not the hearers and so is exclusive. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**For what reason were we not able to cast it out (ULT)**

**Why were we not able to drive out the demon (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Why could we not make the demon come out of the boy?"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [disciples](#)
- [to Jesus](#)
- [to cast...out](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [disciples](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [to drive out](#)

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> Then the [disciples](#), having come to [Jesus](#) privately, said, "For what reason were we not able to cast it out?"

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> Later, some of the [disciples](#) approached [Jesus](#) when he was by himself and asked him, "Why were we not able to drive out the demon?"



## Matthew 17:20

### For I truly say to you (ULT)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "For I tell you the truth"

### if you would have faith as a mustard seed (ULT)

Jesus compares the size of **a mustard seed** to the amount of **faith** needed to do a miracle. A mustard seed is very small, but it grows into a large plant. Jesus means it only takes a small amount of faith to do a great miracle. (See: [Simile](#))

### nothing will be impossible for you (ULT)

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **nothing ... impossible**, you could state this in a positive form. Alternate translation: "you will be able to do anything" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- truly
- faith
- as
- a...seed

### Translation Words - UST

- amen, truly
- faith
- grain, grainfields
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

### ULT

**20** And he says to them, "Because of your little faith. For I **truly** say to you, if you would have **faith as** a mustard **seed**, you will say to this mountain, 'Move from here to there,' and it will move, and nothing will be impossible for you.

### UST

**20** He answered them, "It is because you did not believe very much in God's power. Think about this: Mustard seeds are very small, but they grow and produce large plants. Similarly, if you believe even a little bit that God will do what you ask him to, you will be able to do anything! You could even say to this mountain, 'Move from here to there!' and it would go where you told it to go."

## Matthew 17:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>21[1]</sup> [But this kind does not go out except with prayer and fasting.]

### UST

<sup>21[1]</sup> [But this kind of demon does not go out except with prayer and fasting.]

## Matthew 17:22

### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts momentarily, and Jesus foretells his death and resurrection a second time.

**as...are gathered together...they (ULT)**  
**had gathered together...the disciples (UST)**

Alternate translation: "as Jesus and his disciples were gathered together"

**The Son of Man is about to be handed over (ULT)**

**Someone will soon hand me, the Son of Man (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone will deliver the Son of Man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to be handed over into {the} hands of men (ULT)**  
**hand me...over to the authorities (UST)**

The word **hands** here is a metonym for the power that people use hands to exercise. Alternate translation: "to be taken and put under the power of people" or "to be taken and given to people who will control him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The Son of Man (ULT)**  
**the Son of Man (UST)**

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Galilee](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [the} hands](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [district of Galilee](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [the authorities](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Now {as} they are gathered together in [Galilee](#), [Jesus](#) said to them, "The [Son of Man](#) is about to be handed over into {the} [hands](#) of men,

### UST

<sup>22</sup> When the disciples had gathered together in the [district of Galilee](#), [Jesus](#) said to them, "Someone will soon hand me, the [Son of Man](#), over to [the authorities](#)."

## Matthew 17:23

**him...he will be raised up (ULT)**

**me...become alive again (UST)**

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**on the third day (ULT)**

**on the third day after I am killed (UST)**

The word **third** is the ordinal form of “three.” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**he will be raised up (ULT)**

**become alive again (UST)**

Here to be **raised up** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. (See: [Idiom](#))

**he will be raised up (ULT)**

**become alive again (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “God will raise him up” or “God will cause him to become alive again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [on the...day](#)
- [he will be raised up](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [become alive again](#)
- [day after I am killed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> and they will kill {him}, and [on the third day he will be raised up.](#)” And they became very upset.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> They will kill me, but God will cause me to [become alive again](#) on the third [day after I am killed.](#)” When the disciples heard that, they became very sad.

## Matthew 17:24

### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts again to a later time when Jesus teaches Peter about paying the temple tax.

### when...had come...they (ULT) came...Jesus and the disciples (UST)

Alternate translation: "when Jesus and his disciples had come"

### the two-drachma tax (ULT) the...taxes...temple (UST)

This was a **tax** that Jewish men paid to support the temple in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "the temple tax" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the two-drachma tax (ULT) the...taxes...temple (UST)

The **drachma** was equivalent to the "denarius," which was worth about one day's wage. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Capernaum](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [teacher](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the city of Capernaum](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [teacher](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Now {when} they had come to [Capernaum](#), the ones collecting the two-drachma tax came to [Peter](#) and said, "Does not your [teacher](#) pay the two-drachma tax?"

### UST

<sup>24</sup> When Jesus and the disciples came to [the city of Capernaum](#), the men who collected taxes for the temple approached [Peter](#) and said to him, "Your [teacher](#) pays the temple tax, does he not?"

## Matthew 17:25

### the house (ULT)

### house (UST)

Alternate translation: "the place where Jesus was staying"

**What do you think, Simon? From whom do the kings of the earth receive taxes or tolls? From their sons or from strangers (ULT)**

**Simon, from whom do you think rulers collect revenue or taxes? Do they collect taxes from the citizens of their own country, or from citizens of countries they have conquered (UST)**

Jesus asks these questions to teach Simon, not to gain information for himself. If your readers would misunderstand these questions, you can express them as a statement. Alternate translation: "Listen, Simon. We know that when kings collect taxes, they collect it from people who are not members of their own family." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> He says, "Yes." And having entered into the **house**, **Jesus** spoke to him first, saying, "What do you think, **Simon**? From whom do the **kings of the earth** receive taxes or tolls? From their **sons** or from strangers?"

### UST

<sup>25</sup> He answered them, "Yes, he does pay it." When the disciples came into Jesus' **house**, before Peter began to speak, **Jesus** said to him, "**Simon**, from whom do you think **rulers collect revenue** or **taxes**? Do they collect **taxes** from the **citizens** of their own country, or from citizens of countries they have conquered?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [kings](#)
- [of the earth](#)
- [do...receive](#)
- [taxes](#)
- [tolls](#)
- [sons](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [collect](#)
- [revenue](#)
- [taxes...taxes](#)
- [citizens](#)

## Matthew 17:26

**But having said, “From strangers,” Jesus said to him (ULT)**

**Peter answered him, “From citizens of other countries...Jesus said to him (UST)**

If you translated Jesus' questions as statements in 17:25, you may need to give an alternate response here. You could also state it as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “But when Peter said, ‘Yes, that is true. Kings collect taxes from people who are not their family,’ Jesus said” or “But after Peter agreed with Jesus, Jesus said” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**the sons (ULT)**

**citizens of their own country (UST)**

Here, **the sons** refers to people who are not part of the ruler's family.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- sons
- free

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- citizens of their own country
- do not need to pay taxes

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But having said, “From strangers,” Jesus said to him, “Therefore, the sons are free.”

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Peter answered him, “From citizens of other countries.” Then Jesus said to him, “So citizens of their own country do not need to pay taxes.”





## **Matthew 17:27**

**But in order that we might not offend them, having gone (ULT)**

**But go ahead and pay the tax for us so that the temple tax collectors will not become angry with us. In order to get the money to pay it, go (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But we do not want to make the tax collectors angry. So, go"

**throw in a fishhook (ULT)**

**cast your fish line and hook (UST)**

Fishermen tied a **fishhook** to the end of a line, then threw it in the water to catch fish. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**its mouth (ULT)**

**its mouth, you (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the fish's mouth"

**a shekel (ULT)**

**a silver coin that is worth enough to pay the tax (UST)**

A **shekel** was a silver coin worth four days' wages. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

**Having taken that, give {it} (ULT)**

**Take that coin and give (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Take the shekel and give it"

**on behalf of me and you (ULT)**

**for you and me...to the temple tax collectors (UST)**

Here, **you** is singular and refers to Peter. Each man had to pay a half shekel tax. So one shekel would be enough for Jesus and Peter to pay their taxes. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the sea](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the Sea of Galilee](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> But in order that we might not offend them, having gone to [the sea](#), throw in a fishhook, and draw in the first fish having come up. And having opened its mouth, you will find a shekel. Having taken that, give {it} to them on behalf of me and you."

17:21 <sup>[1]</sup>

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> But go ahead and pay the tax for us so that the temple tax collectors will not become angry with us. In order to get the money to pay it, go to [the Sea of Galilee](#), cast your fish line and hook, and take the first fish that you catch. When you open its mouth, you will find a silver coin that is worth enough to pay the tax for you and me. Take that coin and give it to the temple tax collectors."

17:21 <sup>[1]</sup>

## Matthew 18

### Matthew 18 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### What should Jesus' followers do when other followers sin against them?

Jesus taught that his followers must treat each other well and not be angry with each other. They should forgive anyone who is sorry for his sin, even if he has committed the same sin before. If he is not sorry for his sin, Jesus' followers should speak with him alone or in a small group. If he is still not sorry after that, then Jesus' followers can treat him as guilty. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

## Matthew 18:1

### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that runs through [18:35](#), where Jesus teaches about life in the kingdom of heaven. Here, Jesus uses a little child to teach the disciples.

### Who then is greatest (ULT)

### Who among us will be...most important (UST)

Alternate translation: "Who therefore is the most important" or "Who then among us will be the most important"

### in the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)

### the...when God makes you king from heaven (UST)

The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use **heavens** in your translation. Alternate translation: "in God's kingdom" or "when our God in heaven establishes his rule on earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hour](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [At that precise time](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [God makes you king from heaven](#)
- [God makes you king from heaven](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> At that [hour](#) the [disciples](#) came to [Jesus](#), saying, "Who then is greatest in the [kingdom of the heavens](#)?"

### UST

<sup>1</sup> At that [precise time](#) the [disciples](#) approached [Jesus](#) and asked him, "Who among us will be the most important when [God makes you king from heaven](#)?"

## Matthew 18:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- having called to himself
- a little child

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus called...to come
- a child

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And having called to himself a little child, he set him in the midst of them

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Jesus called a child to come, and he placed that child in their midst.

## Matthew 18:3

### Truly I say to you (ULT)

### He said...I tell you the truth (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

### unless you turn and become like little children, you will certainly not enter (ULT) If you do not change and become as humble as little children, surely you will not come (UST)

You can state this in positive form. Alternate translation: "you must change and become like little children in order to enter" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### become like little children (ULT)

### become as humble as little children (UST)

Jesus uses a simile to teach the disciples that they should not be concerned with who is most important. They should be concerned with becoming humble like a child. (See: [Simile](#))

### you will certainly not enter into the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)

### surely you will not come under the rule of God from heaven (UST)

The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is used only in the book of Matthew. if possible, use **heavens** in your translation. Alternate translation: "you will certainly not enter God's kingdom" or "you will never belong to our God in heaven when he establishes his rule on earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- you turn
- like
- little children
- kingdom of the heavens
- of the heavens

## Translation Words - UST

- He said...I tell you the truth
- you do...change
- as humble as
- little children
- rule of God from heaven
- rule of God from heaven

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and said, "Truly I say to you, unless you turn and become like little children, you will certainly not enter into the kingdom of the heavens.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> He said, "I tell you the truth: If you do not change and become as humble as little children, surely you will not come under the rule of God from heaven.

## Matthew 18:4

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching the disciples that they need to be humble like a child if they want to be important in God's kingdom. (See: [Simile](#))

### is the greatest (ULT) will be the most important people (UST)

Alternate translation: "is the most important" or "will be the most important"

### in the kingdom of the heavens (ULT) among those over whom God will rule from heaven (UST)

The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use **heavens** in your translation. Alternate translation: "in God's kingdom" or "when our God in heaven establishes his rule on earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- will humble
- like
- little child
- kingdom of the heavens
- of the heavens

### Translation Words - UST

- as humble
- as
- child
- God will rule from heaven
- God will rule from heaven

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Therefore, whoever will humble himself like this little child, he is the greatest in the kingdom of the heavens.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The people who become as humble as this child will be the most important people among those over whom God will rule from heaven.

## Matthew 18:5

### in my name (ULT) because they love me (UST)

Here, **my name** refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: “because of me” or “because he is my disciple” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### in my name receives me (ULT) because they love me, God considers that they are welcoming me (UST)

Jesus means that receiving the child is the same as welcoming Jesus himself. Alternate translation: “in my name, it is like he is welcoming me” or “in my name, it is as if he were welcoming me”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- receives
- receives
- little child
- like this
- name

#### Translation Words - UST

- welcome
- God considers that they are welcoming
- a child
- like this one
- because they love

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And whoever receives a little child like this in my name receives me.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Also, whenever people welcome a child like this one because they love me, God considers that they are welcoming me.”



## Matthew 18:6

**that a millstone of a donkey would have been hung about his neck and he would have been sunk into the depth of the sea (ULT) even if it is someone who people think is...God will severely punish that person. He will punish that person...if someone had thrown him into the sea's deep waters with a heavy stone tied to his neck (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "if someone put a great millstone around his neck and threw him into the deep sea" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**a millstone (ULT)**  
**a heavy stone tied to...neck (UST)**

A **millstone** is a large, heavy, circular stone used for grinding wheat grain into flour. Alternate translation: "a very heavy stone"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [causes...to stumble](#)
- [believing](#)
- [it is better](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [causes...to sin](#)
- [who believes](#)
- [worse than](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But whoever [causes](#) one of these little ones [believing](#) in me [to stumble](#), [it is better](#) for him that a millstone of a donkey would have been hung about his neck and he would have been sunk into the depth of the sea.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> "If a person [causes](#) someone [who believes](#) in me [to sin](#), even if it is someone who people think is as unimportant as this little child, God will severely punish that person. He will punish that person [worse than](#) if someone had thrown him into the sea's deep waters with a heavy stone tied to his neck!

## Matthew 18:7

### to the world (ULT)

### How terrible it will be (UST)

Here, **world** refers to people. Alternate translation: “to the people of the world” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the stumbling blocks...that} the stumbling blocks come...to the man through whom the stumbling block comes (ULT)**  
**those who cause others to sin...be... temptations to sin...anyone to cause another person to sin (UST)**

Here, **stumbling** is a metaphor for sin. Alternate translation: “things that cause people to sin ... that things come that cause people to sin ... to any person who causes others to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> **Woe to the world** because of the **stumbling blocks!** For it is necessary {that} the **stumbling blocks** come, but **woe** to the man through whom the **stumbling block** comes!

### UST

<sup>7</sup> **How terrible it will be** for those who **cause others to sin**. There will always be **temptations to sin**, but **how terrible it will be** for anyone to cause another person **to sin**.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Woe](#)
- [woe \(2\)](#)
- [to the world](#)
- [stumbling blocks](#)
- [stumbling blocks](#)
- [stumbling block](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [How terrible it will be](#)
- [how terrible it will be for \(2\)](#)
- [How terrible it will be](#)
- [cause others to sin](#)
- [temptations to sin](#)
- [to sin](#)



## **Matthew 18:8**

**Now if your hand or your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw {it} away from you (ULT)**

**So if you are wanting to use one of your hands or feet to sin, stop using that hand or foot! Even if you have to cut it off so you will not sin! Suppose you had (UST)**

Jesus exaggerates here to emphasize that people must do anything necessary to remove from their lives what causes them to sin. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**your...you...you...for you (ULT)  
to sin...foot! Even if you have to...so you will not sin! Suppose you had...you (UST)**

All occurrences of **your** and **you** are singular. Jesus is speaking to all people in general. It may be more natural for your language to translate with a plural "you." (See: [Forms of You](#))

**into life (ULT)  
lived forever with God (UST)**

Alternate translation: "into eternal life"

**than to be thrown into the eternal fire having two hands or two feet (ULT)  
than if you had...both hands and...both feet and God threw...into the eternal fire in hell because of your sin (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "than to have both hands and feet when God throws you into the eternal fire" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [hands](#)
- [causes...to stumble](#)
- [cut...off](#)
- [better](#)
- [life](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [your hands](#)
- [both hands and](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now if your [hand](#) or your foot [causes](#) you [to stumble](#), [cut](#) it [off](#) and throw {it} away from you. It is [better](#) for you to enter into [life](#) maimed or lame than to be thrown into the [eternal fire](#) having two [hands](#) or two feet.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> So if you are wanting to use one of [your hands](#) or feet [to sin](#), stop using that hand or foot! Even if you have to [cut it off](#) so you will not sin! Suppose you had only one hand or one foot and still [lived forever with God](#), [how much better is that](#) than if you had [both hands and](#) both feet and God threw you into the [eternal fire in hell because of your sin](#).

- to sin
- cut it off
- lived forever with God
- how much better is that
- eternal
- fire in hell because of your sin



## **Matthew 18:9**



**And if your eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw {it} away from you (ULT)  
Yes, and if what you see makes you want to sin, stop looking at those things! Even if you have to gouge out one of your eyes and throw it away to keep from sinning! Suppose (UST)**

The command to destroy the **eye**, perhaps the most important part of the body, is probably an exaggeration for his hearers to do anything necessary to remove from their lives anything that causes them to sin. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**causes you to stumble (ULT)  
makes you want to sin, stop looking at those things (UST)**

Here, **stumble** is a metaphor for sin. Alternate translation: “causes you to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**your...you...you...for you (ULT)  
you...you...away to keep from sinning! Suppose...you (UST)**

All occurrences of **your** and **you** are singular. Jesus is speaking to all people in general. It may be more natural for your language to translate with a plural “you.” (See: [Forms of You](#))

**into life (ULT)  
and still lived forever with God (UST)**

Alternate translation: “into eternal life”

**than to be thrown into the Gehenna of fire having two eyes (ULT)  
that than if you had both eyes and God threw you into the eternal fire in hell (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “than to have both eyes when God throws you into the eternal fire” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [causes...to stumble](#)
- [better](#)
- [life](#)
- [Gehenna](#)
- [of fire](#)

## ULT

<sup>9</sup> And if your eye [causes](#) you [to stumble](#), pluck it out and throw {it} away from you. It is [better](#) for you to enter into [life](#) with one eye than to be thrown into the [Gehenna of fire](#) having two eyes.

## UST

<sup>9</sup> Yes, and if what you see [makes](#) you [want to sin](#), [stop looking at those things](#)! Even if you have to gouge out one of your eyes and throw it away to keep from sinning! Suppose you had only one eye [and still lived forever with God](#), [how much better](#) is that than if you had both eyes and God threw you into the [eternal fire in hell](#).”

## **Translation Words - UST**

- makes...want to sin, stop looking at those things
- and still lived forever with God
- how much better
- eternal fire
- in hell



## **Matthew 18:10**

**See that (ULT)****Be sure (UST)**

Alternate translation: “Be careful that” or “Be sure that”

**you would not despise one of these little ones (ULT)****not to look down on even one of these children (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **not despise**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation:

“you show respect to these little ones” or “you do not think of these little ones as being unimportant”

**For I say to you (ULT)****I tell you truly (UST)**

This phrase add emphasis to what Jesus says next.

**in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in the heavens**

Jewish teachers taught that only the most important **angels** could be in God’s presence. Jesus means that the most important angels speak to God about these little ones. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**always look on the face of my Father (ULT)****can always go to...my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children (UST)**

This is an idiom that means they are in God’s presence. Alternate translation: “are always close to my Father” or “are always in the presence of my Father” (See: [Idiom](#))

**of my Father (ULT)****my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [heaven](#)
- [the} heavens](#) (2)
- [angels](#)
- [on the face](#)
- [of...Father](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> See that you would not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in [heaven](#) their [angels](#) always look [on the face](#) of my [Father](#) in {[the](#)} [heavens](#).

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> “Be sure not to look down on even one of these children. I tell you truly that the [angels](#) who protect them [can always go to my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children](#).”

## Translation Words - UST

- angels
- can always go to
- my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children (2)
- my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children
- my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children

## Matthew 18:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**11<sup>[1]</sup>** [For the Son of Man came to save the one{that} had been lost.]

### UST

**11<sup>[1]</sup>** [For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.]

## Matthew 18:12

### What do you think (ULT) What do you think you would do in the following situation (UST)

Jesus uses this question to get people's attention. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Think about how people act." or "Think about this." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**you (ULT)**

**you (UST)**

Here, **you** is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**having left the 99 on the hillside and having  
gone out, does he not seek the one wandering  
(ULT)**

**leave the ninety-nine sheep that were on the hillside and go and search for  
the lost one, would you not (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "he will always leave the 99 where they are and go out so seek the one that has gone astray." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sheep](#)
- [goes astray](#)
- [wandering](#)
- [does he...seek](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sheep](#)
- [got lost, you would surely](#)
- [for the lost one](#)
- [and search](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> What do you think? If a certain man has 100 [sheep](#), and one of them [goes astray](#), having left the 99 on the hillside and having gone out, [does he not seek](#) the one [wandering](#)?

### UST

<sup>12</sup> What do you think you would do in the following situation? If you had one hundred [sheep](#) and one of them [got lost, you would surely](#) leave the ninety-nine sheep that were on the hillside and go [and search for the lost one](#), would you not?



## Matthew 18:13

### truly I say to you (ULT)

### I affirm to you (UST)

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. The word **you** is plural. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth" (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [truly](#)
- [he rejoices](#)
- [have...gone astray](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I affirm](#)
- [you would rejoice](#)
- [did...stray away](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And if he happens to find it, [truly](#) I say to you that [he rejoices](#) over it more than over the 99 {that} have not [gone astray](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> If you found it, [I affirm](#) to you that [you would rejoice](#) very much. You would be happy that ninety-nine sheep did not [stray away](#), but you would rejoice even more because you had found the sheep that had strayed away.

## Matthew 18:14

**it is not the will before your Father who is in the heavens that one of these little ones would perish**

Alternate translation: “your Father in heaven does not want any of these little ones to die” or “your Father in heaven does not want even one of these little ones to die”

**your (ULT)**

**your (UST)**

Here, **your** is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**Father (ULT)**

**Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the} will before...Father](#)
- [Father](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [would perish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Father...does...want even](#)
- [Father](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [to go to hell](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> In the same way, it is not [{the} will before](#) your [Father](#) in [the heavens](#) that one of these little ones [would perish](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> In the same way that the shepherd does not want one of his sheep to stray away, so God, your [Father](#) in [heaven](#), does not [want even](#) one of these children [to go to hell](#).”

## Matthew 18:15

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples about forgiveness and reconciliation.

### **your brother (ULT) a fellow believer...you (UST)**

Here, **your brother** refers to a fellow believer in God, not a physical brother. Alternate translation: "your fellow believer"

### **your...you have gained...brother (ULT) you...will be good brothers once more (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you will have made your relationship with your brother good again"

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- sins
- reprove
- you have gained

### Translation Words - UST

- a fellow believer
- good brothers
- sins
- reprove
- will be...once more

### ULT

**15** But if your **brother sins** against you, go, **reprove** him between you and him alone. If he listens to you, **you have gained** your **brother**.

### UST

**15** "If **a fellow believer sins** against you, go to him when you can be alone with him, and **reprove** him for sinning against you. If that person listens to you and feels sorry that he has sinned against you, you and he **will be good brothers once more**.

## Matthew 18:16

**so that by {the} mouth of two or three witnesses every word might be verified (ULT) so that, as the law says, 'there must be two or three witnesses to confirm every accusation (UST)**

Here, **mouth** and **word** refer to what a person says. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**so that by {the} mouth of two or three witnesses every word might be verified (ULT) so that, as the law says, 'there must be two or three witnesses to confirm every accusation (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "so that two or three witnesses may verify that what you say about your brother is true" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...witnesses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [two...witnesses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But if he does not listen, take with you yet one or two {others}, so that by {the} mouth of two or three [witnesses](#) every word might be verified.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> If, however, that person does not listen to you, go get one or two other fellow believers. Have them go with you so that, as the law says, 'there must be [two](#) or three [witnesses](#) to confirm every accusation.'

## Matthew 18:17

**if...he refuses to listen to them (ULT)  
If the one who has sinned against you...does  
not listen to them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "if your fellow believer refuses to listen to the witnesses who came with you"

**the church (ULT)  
to the congregation, exclude him from among  
(UST)**

Alternate translation: "the whole community of believers"

**let him be to you even as the Gentile and the  
tax collector (ULT)  
you, just as you would exclude pagans and tax  
collectors as hopeless sinners (UST)**

This implies that they should remove him from the community of believers. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to the church](#)
- [church](#)
- [even as](#)
- [Gentile](#)
- [tax collector](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [entire congregation](#)
- [congregation, exclude him from among](#)
- [just as you would exclude](#)
- [pagans](#)
- [tax collectors as hopeless sinners](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> But if he refuses to listen to them, speak [to the church](#). But if he also refuses to listen to the [church](#), let him be to you [even as](#) the [Gentile](#) and the [tax collector](#).

### UST

<sup>17</sup> If the one who has sinned against you does not listen to them, tell the matter to the [entire congregation](#) so that they can correct him. And if the person does not listen to the [congregation, exclude him from among you, just as you would exclude pagans and tax collectors as hopeless sinners](#).



## **Matthew 18:18**

**Truly I say to you (ULT)**  
**Keep this...mind (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

**to you...you bind...you release (ULT)**  
**Keep this...mind...you decide...about**  
**punishing or...not punishing a member of your**  
**congregation...in (UST)**

All occurrences of **you** are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**whatever you bind on the earth will be bound in heaven; and whatever you**  
**release on the earth will be released in heaven (ULT)**  
**in...Whatever you decide on earth about punishing or not punishing a**  
**member of your congregation is what has also been decided by God in**  
**heaven (UST)**

Here, **in heaven** is a metonym that represents God himself. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**whatever you bind on the earth will be bound in heaven; and whatever you**  
**release on the earth will be released in heaven (ULT)**  
**in...Whatever you decide on earth about punishing or not punishing a**  
**member of your congregation is what has also been decided by God in**  
**heaven (UST)**

Here, **bind** is a metaphor meaning to forbid something, and **release** is a metaphor meaning to allow something. See how you translated similar phrases in [16:19](#). Alternate translation: "God in heaven will approve whatever you forbid or allow on earth" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I say to you (ULT)**  
**Keep this...mind (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Truly
- you bind
- bound
- earth
- earth (2)
- heaven
- heaven (2)

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> Truly I say to you, whatever you bind on the earth will be bound in heaven; and whatever you release on the earth will be released in heaven.

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> Keep this in mind: Whatever you decide on earth about punishing or not punishing a member of your congregation is what has also been decided by God in heaven.



## Translation Words - UST

- Keep this...mind
- you decide...about punishing or
- has also been
- earth
- not punishing a member of your congregation...in (2)
- heaven
- decided by God (2)

## Matthew 18:19

### if two...of you (ULT)

### If at least...two...of you (UST)

It is implied that Jesus means “if at least two of you” or “if two or more of you.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### if...they ask...for them (ULT)

### If at least...you ask...you what you ask for (UST)

These refer to the “two of you.” Alternate translation: “you might ask ... for you”

### my Father (ULT)

### my Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- truly
- earth
- Father
- the} heavens

## Translation Words - UST

- note this
- earth
- Father
- heaven

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Again I [truly](#) say to you that if two of you agree together on the [earth](#) about any matter that they ask, it will be done for them by my [Father](#) in {the} heavens.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Also [note this](#): If at least two of you who live here on [earth](#) agree together about whatever you ask for, my [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#), will give you what you ask for.

**Matthew 18:20****two or three (ULT)****two...or three of you (UST)**

It is implied that Jesus means “two or more” or “at least two.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**gathered together (ULT)****assemble (UST)**

Alternate translation: “meeting together”

**in my name (ULT)****because you believe in me (UST)**

Here, **name** refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: “because of me” or “because they are my disciples” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [name](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [because you believe in me](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> For where two or three are gathered together in my [name](#), there I am in their midst.”

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> This is true, because wherever at least two or three of you assemble [because you believe in me](#), I am with you.”

## Matthew 18:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- Lord
- brother
- will...sin
- I will forgive

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- Lord
- a fellow believer who
- keeps on sinning
- I forgive

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then having approached, Peter said to him, "Lord, how often will my brother sin against me and I will forgive him? Until seven times?"

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Then Peter approached Jesus and said to him, "Lord, how many times must I forgive a fellow believer who keeps on sinning against me? If he keeps asking me to forgive him, must I forgive him as many as seven times?"

## Matthew 18:22

### seventy times seven (ULT) seventy...seven...times (UST)

This could mean: (1) 70 times 7. (2) 77 times. If using a number would be confusing, you can translate it as “more times than you can count” or “you must always forgive him.” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> [Jesus](#) said to him, “I do not say to you up to seven times, but up to seventy times seven.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [Jesus](#) said to him, “I tell you that the number of times you must forgive someone is not just up to seven, but you must forgive him seventy-seven times.

## Matthew 18:23

**the kingdom of the heavens may be compared to (ULT)**

**God's rule from heaven...is like (UST)**

This introduces a parable. See how you translated a similar parable introduction in 13:24. (See: [Parables](#))

**of the heavens...to settle accounts with his... slaves (ULT)**

**from...and his officials...his...officials...to pay what they owed him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "his slaves to pay him what they owed"

### Translation Words - ULT

- kingdom of the heavens
- of the heavens
- may be compared to
- a king
- slaves

### Translation Words - UST

- God's rule...from heaven
- heaven
- is like
- a king
- officials

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> For this reason, the kingdom of the heavens may be compared to a man, a king, who wanted to settle accounts with his slaves.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> God's rule from heaven is like a king and his officials. He wanted his officials to pay what they owed him.

## Matthew 18:24

**one...was brought to him (ULT)**

**One of the officials brought to the king (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "someone brought one of the king's servants to him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**of 10,000 talents (ULT)**

**that was worth the value of more than three metric tons of gold (UST)**

Alternate translation: "of ten thousand talents" or "more money than the servant could ever repay" (See: [Numbers](#))

**of 10,000 talents (ULT)**

**that was worth the value of more than three metric tons of gold (UST)**

A "talent" was equal to one day's wage. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> Now {when} he had begun to settle, one debtor of 10,000 talents was brought to him.

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> So those officials came to the king to settle their accounts with him. One of the officials brought to the king owed him a debt that was worth the value of more than three metric tons of gold.

## Matthew 18:25

**the master commanded him to be sold, together with {his} wife and children and everything, as much as he had, and repayment to be made (ULT)  
the king demanded that he, his wife, his children and all he possessed be sold to someone else and that the king be repaid with the money that was paid for them (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the king commanded his servants to sell the man along with his wife and children and everything that he had, and to pay the debt with the money from the sale” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [children](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [king](#)
- [demanded that](#)
- [his children](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But, he not being able to repay, the [master commanded](#) him to be sold, together with {his} wife and [children](#) and everything, as much as he had, and repayment to be made.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> But because he did not have enough money to pay what he owed, the [king demanded that](#) he, his wife, [his children](#) and all he possessed be sold to someone else and that the king be repaid with the money that was paid for them.



## Matthew 18:26

**So, having fallen down, the slave was bowing down before (ULT)**

**Then that official, knowing that...not have the money to pay that huge debt, fell on his knees in front of the (UST)**

This shows that the **slave** approached the king in the most humble way possible. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**was bowing down before him (ULT)**  
**he did...in front of the (UST)**

Alternate translation: "was bowing down before the king"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having fallen down](#)
- [slave](#)
- [was bowing down before](#)
- [Master](#)
- [have patience](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that official, knowing that](#)
- [fell on his knees](#)
- [in front of the](#)
- [king](#)
- [Be patient](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> So, [having fallen down](#), the [slave](#) was [bowing down before](#) him, saying, 'Master, [have patience](#) with me, and I will repay you everything.'

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Then [that official, knowing that](#) he did not have the money to pay that huge debt, [fell on his knees in front of the king](#) and he begged him, 'Be [patient](#) with me, and I will pay you all of it, eventually.'

## Matthew 18:27

**having felt compassion (ULT)**  
**felt sorry for him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "feeling compassion for the slave"

**released him (ULT)**  
**and released him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "let him go"

### Translation Words - ULT

- having felt compassion
- master
- of...slave
- forgave

### Translation Words - UST

- king, knowing that
- official
- felt sorry for him
- canceled

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Now **having felt compassion**, the **master** of that **slave** released him and **forgave** him the debt.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> The **king, knowing that** the **official** could never pay all that huge debt, **felt sorry for him**. So he **canceled** his debt and released him.

## Matthew 18:28

### 100 denarii (ULT) a bit less than a year's wages (UST)

Alternate translation: "one hundred days' wages" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### having grasped him (ULT) He grabbed...him...by the throat (UST)

Alternate translation: "when first slave had grasped his fellow slave"

### having grasped (ULT) He grabbed...by the throat (UST)

Alternate translation: "having taken hold of" or "having seized"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [slave](#)
- [of...fellow slaves](#)
- [having grasped](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [official](#)
- [officials](#)
- [He grabbed...by the throat](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> But having gone out, that [slave](#) found one of his [fellow slaves](#), who owed him 100 denarii, and [having grasped](#) him, he choked {him}, saying, 'Repay whatever you owe.'

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Then this same [official](#) went to another one of the king's [officials](#) who owed him a bit less than a year's wages. [He grabbed](#) him [by the throat](#), started choking him, and said to him, 'Pay back what you owe me!'

## Matthew 18:29

### having fallen down (ULT) fell on his knees (UST)

This shows that the fellow slave approached the first slave in the most humble way possible. See how you translated this in [18:26](#). (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [having fallen down](#)
- [fellow slave](#)
- [begged](#)
- [Have patience](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [That official](#)
- [fell on his knees](#)
- [and begged](#)
- [Be patient](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then [having fallen down](#), his [fellow slave begged](#) him, saying, '[Have patience](#) with me, and I will repay you.'

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> [That official fell on his knees and begged](#) him saying, '[Be patient](#) with me, and I will pay you all of it, eventually.'

## Matthew 18:30

**having gone out, he threw him into prison  
(ULT)**

**he put that official into prison and (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the first slave went and threw his fellow slave into prison"

### Translation Words - ULT

- prison

### Translation Words - UST

- prison and

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But he was not willing. Instead, having gone out, he threw him into prison until he might repay {what} is owed.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> But the first official kept refusing to cancel that small debt that the man owed him. Instead, he put that official into prison and to stay there until he could pay back all the money that he owed him.

## Matthew 18:31

**his fellow slaves (ULT)**  
**the other officials of the king (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the other slaves"

**they fully explained to their master (ULT)**  
**to the king and reported in detail what (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they told the king"

### Translation Words - ULT

- fellow slaves
- they fully explained
- to...master

### Translation Words - UST

- other officials
- king and
- reported in detail

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Therefore, his fellow slaves, having seen {what} had happened, were very upset. And having come, they fully explained to their master everything {that} had happened.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> When the other officials of the king learned that this had happened, they were very distressed. So they went to the king and reported in detail what had happened.

## Matthew 18:32

**Then, having called him, his master (ULT)  
Then the king summoned the official who had  
owed him a debt worth more (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Then the king called the first slave and"

### Translation Words - ULT

- having called
- master
- wicked
- You...slave
- I forgave
- you begged

### Translation Words - UST

- the king...the official who had owed him a debt worth more
- summoned
- You wicked
- servant
- I canceled
- you begged

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Then, **having called** him, his **master** said to him, 'You **wicked slave**, I forgave you all that debt because **you begged** me.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Then **the king summoned the official who had owed him a debt worth more than three metric tons of gold**. He said to him, 'You **wicked servant!** I canceled that huge debt that you owed me because **you begged** me to do so!

## Matthew 18:33

**Was it not necessary for you to also have had mercy on your fellow slave, just as I also had mercy on you (ULT)**

**You should have been merciful and canceled your fellow official's debt, just like I was merciful to you and canceled your debt (UST)**

The king uses a question to scold the first servant. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have had mercy on your fellow slave, just as I also had mercy on you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to...have had mercy
- had mercy
- on...fellow slave
- just as

### Translation Words - UST

- have been merciful
- was merciful
- fellow official's debt
- just like

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Was it not necessary for you to also **have had mercy** on your **fellow slave**, **just as** I also **had mercy** on you?'

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> You should **have been merciful** and canceled your **fellow official's debt**, **just like** I **was merciful** to you and canceled your debt!'



**Matthew 18:34**

**his master (ULT)**  
**The king...He (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the king"

**handed him over (ULT)**  
**handed this official (UST)**

Most likely the king himself did not take the first slave to the torturers. Alternate translation: "he ordered his slaves to give him over" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to the torturers (ULT)**  
**over to some jailers who would torture him severely (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to those who would torture him"

**that} is owed (ULT)**  
**the debt...he owed (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "that the first slave owed the king" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [master](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [king](#)

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> And having been provoked, his [master](#) handed him over to the torturers until he would repay all {that} is owed.

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> The [king](#) was very angry. He handed this official over to some jailers who would torture him severely until he paid all of the debt that he owed."

## Matthew 18:35

### my heavenly Father (ULT) my Father in heaven (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### to you...each of you...your (ULT) to you...who sins against...feel merciful... sincerely...you (UST)

All occurrences of **you** and **your** are plural. Jesus is speaking to his disciples, but this parable teaches a general truth that applies to all believers. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### from your heart (ULT) feel merciful...sincerely...you (UST)

Here, **heart** is a metonym for a person's inner being. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### from your heart (ULT) feel merciful...sincerely...you (UST)

The phrase **from your heart** is an idiom that means "sincerely." Alternate translation: "sincerely" or "completely" (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [my heavenly...Father](#)
- [heavenly](#)
- [do...forgive](#)
- [brother](#)
- [heart](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [my...Father...in heaven](#)
- [in heaven](#)
- [feel merciful...sincerely...you](#)
- [forgive](#)
- [a fellow believer](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> In this way also [my heavenly Father](#) will do to you, if each of you do not [forgive](#) his [brother](#) from your [heart](#)." 18:11 <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>35</sup> Then Jesus continued by saying, "That is what my [Father in heaven](#) will do to you if you do not [feel merciful](#) and [sincerely forgive a fellow believer](#) who sins against [you](#)." 18:11 <sup>[1]</sup>

## **Matthew 19**

### **Matthew 19 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Divorce**

Jesus taught about divorce because the Pharisees wanted people to think Jesus' teachings about divorce were wrong ([19:3-12](#)). Jesus talked about what God had first said about marriage when he created it.

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metonymy**

Jesus often says the word "heaven" when he wants his hearers to think of God, who lives in heaven ([1:12](#)).

## Matthew 19:1

### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that runs through [22:46](#), which tells of Jesus ministering in Judea. These verses provide background information of how Jesus came to be in Judea. (See: [Background Information](#))

### had finished...these words (ULT) After Jesus had said...After Jesus had said... that (UST)

Here, **these words** refers to what Jesus taught starting in [18:1](#). Alternate translation: “had finished teaching these things” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [Jordan](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [After Jesus had said](#)
- [district of Galilee](#)
- [of Judea that is](#)
- [Jordan River](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And it happened that when [Jesus](#) had finished these words, he departed from [Galilee](#) and came to the region of [Judea](#) beyond the [Jordan](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [After Jesus had said](#) that, he took his disciples and left the [district of Galilee](#). They went to the part of the district of [Judea that is](#) east of the [Jordan River](#).

## Matthew 19:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- he healed

### Translation Words - UST

- he healed

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And great crowds followed him, and he healed them there.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Large crowds followed him there, and he healed the sick among them.

## Matthew 19:3

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about marriage and divorce.

**approached him (ULT)**  
**approached...him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "came to Jesus"

**And...testing him...saying (ULT)**  
**approached...said...him...in order to be able to debate with him (UST)**

Here, **testing** is used in a negative sense. Alternate translation: "and challenged him by asking him" or "and wanted to trap him by asking him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- testing
- lawful
- to divorce

### Translation Words - UST

- Some Pharisees
- to...Does our Jewish law permit
- to divorce
- in order to be able to debate with him

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And Pharisees approached him, testing him, and saying, "Is it lawful for a man to divorce his wife for any cause?"

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Some Pharisees approached him and said to him, "Does our Jewish law permit a man to divorce his wife for any reason whatever?" They asked that in order to be able to debate with him.

## Matthew 19:4

**Have you not read that the one having made {them} from {the} beginning made them male and female (ULT)**

**You have read...that at the time when God first created people, 'He made one man, and he made one woman (UST)**

This rhetorical question continues to the end of the next verse. Jesus uses this question to remind the Pharisees of what the scripture says about men, women, and marriage. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely you have read that in the beginning when God created people he made them male and female," (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But he, answering, said, "Have you not read that the one having made {them} from {the} beginning made them male and female,

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Jesus said to them, "You have read the scriptures, so you should know that at the time when God first created people, 'He made one man, and he made one woman.'





## **Matthew 19:5**

In this verse, Jesus quotes from Genesis to show that a husband and wife should not divorce.

**and said, 'On account of this, a man will leave {his} father and mother and will be joined to his wife, and the two will be one flesh (ULT)  
That explains why God said, 'That is why a man leaves his father and mother and marries his wife. The two of them will live together as though they were one person (UST)**

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> and said, 'On account of this, a man will leave {his} [father](#) and mother and will be joined to his wife, and the two will be one [flesh](#)?

### UST

<sup>5</sup> That explains why God said, 'That is why a man leaves [his father](#) and mother and marries his wife. The two of them will live together as though they were one [person](#).'

This verse is the second part of the rhetorical question that Jesus began in the previous verse. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**and said, 'On account of this, a man will leave {his} father and mother and will be joined to his wife, and the two will be one flesh (ULT)  
That explains why God said, 'That is why a man leaves his father and mother and marries his wife. The two of them will live together as though they were one person (UST)**

The direct quotation can be expressed as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "and said that this is the reason that a man will leave his father and mother and will be joined to his wife, and the two will be one flesh?" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**On account of this (ULT)  
God said...That is why...leaves (UST)**

This phrase is a part of the quotation from Genesis story about Adam and Eve. In that context the reason a man will leave his father and mother is because God created a woman to be the man's companion.

**will be joined to his wife (ULT)  
marries his wife (UST)**

Alternate translation: "will stay close to his wife" or "will live with his wife"

**the two will be one flesh (ULT)  
The two of them will live together...as though they were...one person (UST)**

This is a metaphor that emphasizes the unity of a husband and a wife. Alternate translation: "they will become like one person" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [father](#)

- [flesh](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [his father](#)
- [person](#)

## Matthew 19:6

**So then, they are no longer two, but one flesh (ULT)**

**Consequently, although they functioned as two separate people before, they now become as if they were one person. Since that is true (UST)**

This is a metaphor that emphasizes the unity of a husband and a wife. Alternate translation: "So a husband and wife are no longer like two persons, but they are like one person" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [person. Since that is true](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So then, they are no longer two, but one [flesh](#). Therefore, what [God](#) has joined together, let man not separate."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Consequently, although they functioned as two separate people before, they now become as if they were one [person. Since that is true](#), a man must not separate from his wife whom [God](#) has joined to him."

## Matthew 19:7

**They say to him (ULT)  
said to him, "If that is true (UST)**

Alternate translation: "The Pharisees said to Jesus"

**has Moses commanded {us (ULT)  
did Moses command that a man who wanted  
to divorce his wife (UST)**

Alternate translation: "has Moses command us Jews"

**a certificate of divorce (ULT)  
a paper stating his reason for divorcing her  
(UST)**

A **certificate of divorce** is a document that legally ends a marriage.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- has...commanded {us
- to send...away

### Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- did...command that a man who wanted to divorce his wife
- send...away

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> They say to him, "Why then has **Moses commanded {us}** to give a certificate of divorce and **to send her away?**"

### UST

<sup>7</sup> The Pharisees then said to him, "If that is true, why did **Moses command that a man who wanted to divorce his wife** should give her a paper stating his reason for divorcing her, and then **send her away?**"

## Matthew 19:8

**For your hardness of heart (ULT)  
It was because your ancestors stubbornly  
wanted their own ways (UST)**

The phrase **hardness of heart** is a metaphor that means “stubbornness.” Alternate translation: “Because of your stubbornness” or “Because you are stubborn” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**your hardness of heart...allowed you...your  
wives (ULT)  
stubbornly wanted their own ways...allowed  
them...their wives, and you are no different  
(UST)**

Here, **you** and **your** are plural. Jesus is speaking to the Pharisees, but Moses gave this command many years earlier to their ancestors. Moses’ command applied to all Jewish men in general. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**but from {the} beginning (ULT)  
from them. But when God first created a man and a woman, he did (UST)**

Here, **the beginning** refers to when God first created man and woman. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hardness of heart](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [to divorce](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [stubbornly wanted...own ways](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [to divorce](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> He says to them, “For your [hardness of heart](#), [Moses](#) allowed you [to divorce](#) your wives, but from {the} beginning it was not that way.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Jesus said to them, “It was because your ancestors [stubbornly wanted](#) their [own ways](#) that [Moses](#) allowed them [to divorce](#) their wives, and you are no different from them. But when God first created a man and a woman, he did not intend for them to separate from each other.

## Matthew 19:9

**I say...to you (ULT)**

**I am telling...you emphatically (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

**marries another (ULT)**

**marries another woman is committing adultery (UST)**

You can state the understood information explicitly. Alternate translation: "may marry another woman" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**and the one having been divorced, having married, commits adultery (ULT)**

**marries another woman is committing adultery (UST)**

Many early texts do not include these words. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [divorces](#)
- [having been divorced](#)
- [sexual immorality](#)
- [commits adultery](#)
- [commits adultery](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [divorces](#)
- [marries another woman is committing adultery](#)
- [marries another woman is committing adultery](#)
- [marries another woman is committing adultery](#) (2)
- [has committed adultery](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But I say to you that whoever [divorces](#) his wife, except for [sexual immorality](#), and marries another, [commits adultery](#); and the one [having been divorced](#), having married, [commits adultery](#)."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> I am telling you emphatically that God considers that any man who [divorces](#) his wife and [marries another woman is committing adultery](#), unless his first wife [has committed adultery](#)."

## Matthew 19:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- it is better

### Translation Words - UST

- disciples
- better

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> The disciples say to him, "If thus is the case of the man with {his} wife, it is better not to marry."

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> The disciples said to him, "If that is true, it is better for men never to marry!"



## Matthew 19:11

### the ones to whom it has been given (ULT) the men whom God enables to accept it (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “those whom God allows” or “those whom God enables” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [can accept](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [is able to accept](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But he said to them, “Not everyone [can accept](#) this word, but the ones to whom it has been given.

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> He answered, “Not every man [is able to accept](#) this teaching, but only the men whom God enables to accept it.



## **Matthew 19:12**

**For there are eunuchs who were born thus from {their} mother's womb (ULT)  
There are men who do not marry because their private parts have been defective ever since they were born (UST)**

You can make explicit the implicit information. Alternate translation: "For there are different reasons that men do not marry. For instance, there are men who were born eunuchs" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**there are eunuchs who were made eunuchs by men (ULT)  
There are other men who do not marry because they have been...there are still other men who decide not to marry (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "there are men whom other men have made eunuchs" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**eunuchs who made themselves eunuchs (ULT)  
castrated...there are still other men who decide not to marry...in order to serve God better as (UST)**

This could mean: (1) Jesus is referring to men who have **made themselves eunuchs** by removing their private parts. (2) Jesus is referring to men who choose to remain unmarried and sexually pure. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for the sake of the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)  
castrated...in order to serve God better as...he rules from heaven (UST)**

Here, **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is found only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use **heavens** in your translation. Alternate translation: "so they can better serve our God in heaven" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to accept {this}, let him accept {it} (ULT)  
to understand what I have said about marriage should accept it and obey it (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to accept this teaching, let him accept it"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [eunuchs](#)
- [eunuchs \(2\)](#)
- [were made eunuchs](#)

## ULT

<sup>12</sup> For there are [eunuchs](#) who were born thus from {their} mother's [womb](#), and there are [eunuchs](#) who [were made eunuchs](#) by men, and there are [eunuchs](#) who [made](#) themselves [eunuchs](#) for the sake of the [kingdom of the heavens](#). The one being able [to accept {this}](#), [let him accept {it}](#)."

## UST

<sup>12</sup> There are [men who do not marry because their private parts have been defective ever since they were born](#). There are [other men who do not marry because they have been castrated](#). Then [there are still other men who decide not to marry in order to serve God better as he rules from heaven](#). You who are able [to understand what I have said about marriage should accept it and obey it](#)."

- eunuchs (3)
- made...eunuchs
- womb
- kingdom of the heavens
- of the heavens
- to accept {this
- let him accept {it

## Translation Words - UST

- men who do not marry because their private parts have been defective ever since
- other men who do not marry because (2)
- they have been
- there are still other men who decide not to marry (3)
- castrated...in order to serve God better as
- they were born
- to understand what I have said about marriage
- should accept it and obey it
- he rules...from heaven
- heaven

## Matthew 19:13

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus receives and blesses little children.

### little children were brought to him (ULT) little children were brought to Jesus (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "some people brought little children to Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- little children
- hands
- would pray
- disciples
- rebuked

### Translation Words - UST

- little children
- his hands
- pray for them
- disciples
- scolded

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then little children were brought to him so that he would lay {his} hands on them and would pray, but the disciples rebuked them.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Then some little children were brought to Jesus in order that he might lay his hands on them and pray for them. But the disciples scolded the people for doing that.

**Matthew 19:14**

**do not forbid them to come to me (ULT)**  
**come to me...do not stop them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "do not stop them from coming to me"

**for the kingdom of the heavens is of the ones  
 such as these (ULT)**

**It is people who are humble and trusting like  
 they are who belong to the rule of God from  
 heaven (UST)**

Here, **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is found only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use **heavens** in your translation. Alternate translation: "for when our God in heaven establishes his rule on earth, he will be king over such as these" or "for God will allow such as these into his kingdom" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of the ones...the kingdom of the heavens is...such as these (ULT)**  
**people who are humble and trusting like they are who belong to...It is...**  
**people who are humble and trusting like they are who belong to...the rule of  
 God from heaven (UST)**

This is a simile that means those who are humble like children will enter God's kingdom. Alternate translation: "the kingdom of the heavens belongs to those who are like children" (See: [Simile](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jesus](#)
- [little children](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jesus](#)
- [children](#)
- [the rule of God from heaven](#)
- [the rule of God from heaven](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> But [Jesus](#) said, "Permit the [little children](#), and do not forbid them to come to me, for the [kingdom of the heavens](#) is of the ones such as these."

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> But [Jesus](#) said, "Let the [children](#) come to me, and do not stop them! It is people who are humble and trusting like they are who belong to [the rule of God from heaven](#)."

## Matthew 19:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- hands

### Translation Words - UST

- hands on the children to bless them. Then

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And having placed {his} hands on them, he went on from there.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Jesus then laid his hands on the children to bless them. Then he left that place.



## Matthew 19:16

### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a different time when Jesus explains to a rich man what it will cost to follow him.

### behold, a {man} (ULT)

### As Jesus was walking along, a young man approached (UST)

The word **behold, a man** alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

### good thing (ULT)

### good deeds (UST)

Here, **good thing** means a thing that pleases God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Teacher
- good thing
- eternal
- life

### Translation Words - UST

- Teacher
- good deeds
- live with God
- forever

### ULT

**16** And behold, a {man}, having approached him, said, "Teacher, what **good thing** might I do in order that I might have **eternal life**?"

### UST

**16** As Jesus was walking along, a young man approached him and said to him, "Teacher, what **good deeds** must I do in order to **live with God forever**?"

## Matthew 19:17

**Why do you ask me about {what} {is} good (ULT)**

**Why are you asking me about...is good? Only (UST)**

Jesus uses this rhetorical question to encourage the man to think about his reason for asking Jesus about what is good. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You ask me about what is good" or "Think about why you ask me about what is good." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**he...One is...good (ULT)**  
**one being is...good...and really knows what is good. That being (UST)**

Alternate translation: "God alone is completely good"

**to enter into life (ULT)**  
**to live with God forever, I will tell you (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to receive eternal life"

### Translation Words - ULT

- good
- good
- life
- keep
- commandments

### Translation Words - UST

- is good? Only
- good
- to live with God forever, I will tell you
- to keep
- commandments that God gave Moses

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> But he said to him, "Why do you ask me about {what} {is} good? One is good, but if you want to enter into life, keep the commandments."

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Jesus said to him, "Why are you asking me about what is good? Only one being is good and really knows what is good. That being is God. But in order to answer your question about desiring to live with God forever, I will tell you to keep the commandments that God gave Moses."

## Matthew 19:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- do...commit adultery
- do...bear false witness

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- do...commit adultery
- do...testify falsely

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> He says to him, "Which ones?" And Jesus said, "Do not kill, do not commit adultery, do not steal, do not bear false witness,

### UST

<sup>18</sup> The man asked Jesus, "Which commandments must I keep?" Jesus answered him, "Do not murder anyone, do not commit adultery, do not steal things, do not testify falsely,

## Matthew 19:19

**your...love your...neighbor (ULT)**  
**your father...love...every other person (UST)**

The Jewish people believed that their neighbors were only other Jews. Jesus is extending that definition to include all people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- honor
- father
- love
- neighbor
- as

### Translation Words - UST

- honor
- your father
- love
- every other person
- as much as

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> honor {your} father and {your} mother, and love your neighbor as yourself.”

### UST

<sup>19</sup> honor your father and your mother, and love every other person as much as you love yourself.”

## Matthew 19:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> The young man says to him, "All these {things} I have obeyed. What do I still lack?"

### UST

<sup>20</sup> The young man said to Jesus, "I have always obeyed all those commandments. What else must I do in order to live with God forever?"

## Matthew 19:21

### to {the} poor (ULT) to poor people. The result will be that (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the nominal adjective **poor**, you can express it as an adjective. Alternate translation: "to those who are poor" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### you will have treasure in {the} heavens (ULT) you will be wealthy...in heaven (UST)

The phrase **treasure in the heavens** is a metaphor that refers to a reward from God. Alternate translation: "God will reward you in the heavens" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [perfect](#)
- [possess](#)
- [the} heavens](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [exactly how God wants you to be](#)
- [everything that](#)
- [heaven](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> [Jesus](#) said to him, "If you want to be [perfect](#), go, sell {what} you [possess](#), and give to {the} poor, and you will have treasure in {the} heavens; and come, follow me."

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> [Jesus](#) said to him, "If you desire to be [exactly how God wants you to be](#), go home, sell [everything that](#) you have, and give the money to poor people. The result will be that you will be wealthy in [heaven](#). Then come, follow me, and be my disciple!"

## Matthew 19:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [possessions](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [rich and did not want to give away everything he owned](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But the young man, having heard the word, went away being grieved, for he had many [possessions](#).

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> When the young man heard those words, he went away feeling sad, because he was very [rich and did not want to give away everything he owned](#).

## Matthew 19:23

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains to his disciples the rewards of giving up material possessions and relationships to follow him.

### Truly I say to you (ULT) Keep this in mind (UST)

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

### will enter with difficulty into the kingdom of the heavens (ULT)

### It is very difficult...to agree to let God rule their lives (UST)

Here, **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is found only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use **heavens** in your translation. Alternate translation: "to accept with difficulty our God in heaven as their king" or "to enter with difficulty into God's kingdom" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- to...disciples
- Truly
- with difficulty
- kingdom of the heavens
- of the heavens

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- disciples
- Keep this in mind
- It is very difficult
- God rule their lives
- God rule their lives

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Now Jesus said to his disciples, "Truly I say to you, a rich {man} will enter with difficulty into the kingdom of the heavens.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Then Jesus said to the disciples, "Keep this in mind: It is very difficult for rich people to agree to let God rule their lives.



## Matthew 19:24

**it is easier for a camel to pass through an eye of a needle than for a rich {man} to enter into the kingdom of God (ULT)**

**It is impossible for a camel to go through the eye of a needle. It is even more difficult for rich people to come under the rule of God (UST)**

Jesus uses an exaggeration to illustrate how very difficult it is for **rich** people to enter the **kingdom of God**. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**an eye of a needle (ULT)**

**the eye of a needle. It is even more difficult for (UST)**

The **eye** is the hole near one end of a needle, through which thread is passed.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for a camel](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a camel](#)
- [rule of God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> And again I say to you, it is easier [for a camel](#) to pass through an eye of a needle than for a rich {man} to enter into the [kingdom of God](#)."

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> Note this also: It is impossible for [a camel](#) to go through the eye of a needle. It is even more difficult for rich people to come under the [rule of God](#)."

## Matthew 19:25

**were very astonished (ULT)**  
**they were very astounded. They thought that**  
**rich people were the ones whom (UST)**

It is implied that they were astonished because they believed having riches was proof that God approved of someone. Alternate translation: "the disciples were amazed" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Who then is able to be saved (ULT)**  
**If that is so, it does not seem likely that**  
**anyone will be saved (UST)**

The disciples use a question to emphasize their surprise. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Who then is able to be saved (ULT)**  
**If that is so, it does not seem likely that anyone will be saved (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Then there is no one whom God will save!" or "Then there is no one who will receive eternal life!" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [were...astonished](#)
- [to be saved](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [they were...astounded. They thought that rich people were the ones whom](#)
- [it does not seem likely that anyone will be saved](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Now having heard {this}, the [disciples](#) were very [astonished](#), saying, "Who then is able [to be saved](#)?"

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> When the [disciples](#) heard this, [they](#) were very [astounded](#). [They thought that rich people were the ones whom](#) God blesses the most. So they said to Jesus, "If that is so, [it does not seem likely that anyone will be saved!](#)"

## Matthew 19:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- God

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- God

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But Jesus, having looked at {them}, said to them, "With men this is impossible, but with God all {things} are possible."

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Then Jesus looked intently at them and said, "Yes, it is impossible for people to save themselves. But God can save them, because God is able to do anything!"

## Matthew 19:27

**we have left everything (ULT)**  
**You know that we...have left everything**  
**behind (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we have left all our wealth" or "we have given up all our possessions"

**What then will there be for us (ULT)**  
**So what benefit will we get for doing that**  
**(UST)**

Alternate translation: "What good thing will God give us?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter said

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Then answering, Peter said to him, "Behold, we have left everything and followed you. What then will there be for us?"

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> Then Peter said to him, "You know that we have left everything behind and we have become your disciples in order to follow you. So what benefit will we get for doing that?"



## **Matthew 19:28**

## Truly I say to you (ULT) Keep this in mind (UST)

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

## in the renewal (ULT) the new earth and (UST)

This refers to when God restores all things. Alternate translation: "at the time when God makes all things new" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## the Son of Man (ULT) the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

## sits...on his glorious throne (ULT) I...sit...on my throne in my glory, those of (UST)

Sitting on his **throne** represents ruling as a king. His throne being **glorious** represents his rule being glorious. Alternate translation: "may sit as king on his glorious throne" or "will rule gloriously as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## will also sit...upon 12 thrones (ULT) will each sit...a throne, and you will judge...on...the people of the twelve tribes (UST)

Here sitting on **thrones** refers to ruling as kings. The disciples will not be equal to Jesus who is also on a throne. They will receive authority from him. Alternate translation: "will also sit as kings on 12 thrones" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## the 12 tribes of Israel (ULT) the people of the twelve tribes...of Israel (UST)

Here, **tribes** refers to people from those tribes. Alternate translation: "the people of the 12 tribes of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [renewal](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [glorious](#)
- [throne](#)
- [thrones](#)
- [judging](#)
- [12 tribes of Israel](#)

## ULT

<sup>28</sup> And [Jesus](#) said to them, "Truly I say to you, in the [renewal](#) when the [Son of Man](#) sits on his [glorious throne](#), you, the ones have followed me, you will also sit upon 12 [thrones](#), [judging](#) the 12 [tribes of Israel](#)."

## UST

<sup>28</sup> [Jesus](#) said to them, "Keep this in mind: You will get many benefits. When God makes the [new earth and](#) when I, the [Son of Man](#), sit on [my throne](#) in my [glory](#), those of you who have accompanied me will each sit on a throne, and you will judge the [people of the twelve tribes of Israel](#)."

- tribes

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Keep this in mind
- of Israel
- new earth and
- Son of Man
- my throne
- the people of the twelve tribes
- in...glory, those of
- the people of the twelve tribes
- the people of the twelve tribes...of Israel
- the people of the twelve tribes



## Matthew 19:29

### for the sake of my name (ULT) because they were my disciples (UST)

Here, **name** refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: “because of me” or “because he believes in me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### will receive 100 times {as much} (ULT) God will give them a hundred times as many benefits as they have given up (UST)

Alternate translation: “will receive from God one hundred times as many good things as they gave up”

### will inherit eternal life (ULT) they will live with God forever (UST)

This is an idiom that means “God will bless them with eternal life” or “God will cause them to live forever.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- houses
- brothers
- sisters
- father
- children
- name
- will receive
- will inherit
- eternal
- life

### Translation Words - UST

- because they were my disciples
- a house
- their brothers
- their sisters
- their father
- their children
- God will give them
- they will live with God forever
- they will live with God forever
- they will live with God forever

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> And everyone who has left [houses](#), or [brothers](#), or [sisters](#), or [father](#), or mother, or wife, or [children](#), or land for the sake of my [name](#), [will receive](#) 100 times {as much} and [will inherit eternal life](#).

### UST

<sup>29</sup> God will reward those who, [because they were my disciples](#), left behind a [house](#) or a plot of ground, [their brothers](#), [their sisters](#), [their father](#), their mother, [their children](#), or any other family members. [God will give them](#) a hundred times as many benefits as they have given up. And [they will live with God forever](#).

## Matthew 19:30

### But many who will be first will be last, and the last, first

Here, **first** and **last** refer to people's status or importance. Jesus is contrasting people's status now with their status in the kingdom of heaven. Alternate translation: "But many who seem to be important now will be the least important, and many who seem to be unimportant now will be very important"

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But many first will be last, and last, first.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> But many people who are important in this life now will be unimportant at that future time, and many people who are unimportant now will be important at that future time."

## **Matthew 20**

### **Matthew 20 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The parable of the landowner and his vineyard**

Jesus tells this parable (20:1-16) to teach his disciples that what God says is right is different from what people say is right.

## Matthew 20:1

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about a landowner who hires workers, to illustrate how God will reward those who belong to the kingdom of heaven.

### For the kingdom of the heavens is like (ULT) The way God rules from heaven compares to what (UST)

This is the beginning of a parable. See how you translated the introduction to the parable in [13:24](#). (See: [Parables](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)
- [like](#)
- [workers](#)
- [vineyard](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [way God rules from heaven](#)
- [way God rules from heaven](#)
- [compares to what](#)
- [laborers to work](#)
- [vineyard](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> For the [kingdom of the heavens](#) is [like](#) a man, a landowner, who went out with {the} morning to hire [workers](#) for his [vineyard](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> "The [way God rules from heaven](#) [compares to what](#) the owner of an estate did. Early in the morning the owner of the estate went to the marketplace, where people who wanted work gathered. He went there to hire [laborers to work](#) in his [vineyard](#).

**Matthew 20:2****having agreed (ULT)****He promised...that he would pay them the (UST)**

Alternate translation: "after the landowner had agreed"

**a denarius (ULT)****standard wage for working (UST)**

A **denarius** was a coin equal to the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "one day's wages" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

**he sent them into his vineyard (ULT)****he sent them to his vineyards (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he sent them to work in his vineyard"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [workers](#)
- [for the day](#)
- [he sent](#)
- [vineyard](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [men whom he hired](#)
- [one day](#)
- [sent them](#)
- [vineyards](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> Now having agreed with the [workers](#) for a denarius [for the day](#), [he sent](#) them into his [vineyard](#).

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> He promised the [men whom he hired](#) that he would pay them the standard wage for working [one day](#). Then he [sent them](#) to his [vineyards](#).

**Matthew 20:3**

**And having gone out (ULT)  
he went back (UST)**

Alternate translation: "The landowner went out again"

**the} third hour (ULT)  
nine o'clock that same morning (UST)**

The **third hour** is around 9 AM. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**having stood idle in the marketplace (ULT)  
to the marketplace...who did not have work (UST)**

Alternate translation: "standing in the marketplace not doing anything" or "standing in the marketplace with no work to do"

**the marketplace (ULT)  
to the marketplace...who did not have work (UST)**

A **marketplace** a large, open-air area where people buy and sell food and other items.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the...hour](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [that same morning](#)

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> And having gone out about {the} third [hour](#), he saw others having stood idle in the marketplace.

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> At nine o'clock [that same morning](#) he went back to the marketplace. There he saw more men who did not have work.

## Matthew 20:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- vineyard
- is right

### Translation Words - UST

- my vineyard as other men have done, and work there
- whatever wage is right

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And to them he said, 'You also, go into the vineyard, and whatever is right I will give you.'

### UST

<sup>4</sup> He said to them, 'Go to my vineyard as other men have done, and work there. I will pay you whatever wage is right.' So they also went to his vineyard and began to work.

**Matthew 20:5**

**Having gone out again (ULT)**  
**he again went to the marketplace and (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Again the landowner went out"

**about {the} sixth and ninth hour (ULT)**  
**At noon and at three o'clock (UST)**

The **sixth** hour is around noon. The **ninth** hour is around 3 PM. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**he did likewise (ULT)**  
**found other laborers whom he promised to pay a fair wage (UST)**

This means the landowner went to the marketplace and hired workers.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the...hour](#)
- [likewise](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [at three o'clock](#)
- [found other laborers whom he promised to pay a fair wage](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> So they went out. Having gone out again about {the} sixth and ninth hour, he did [likewise](#).

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> At noon and [at three o'clock](#) he again went to the marketplace and [found other laborers whom he promised to pay a fair wage](#).



## Matthew 20:6

**the eleventh {hour} (ULT)**

**five o'clock (UST)**

The **eleventh hour** is about 5 PM. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**having stood (ULT)**

**standing there who were not working (UST)**

Alternate translation: "not doing anything" or "not having any work"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [day and](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Now having gone out about the eleventh {hour}, he found others having stood, and he says to them, 'Why have you stood here idle the whole [day](#)?'

### UST

<sup>6</sup> At five o'clock he went to the marketplace once again and saw other men standing there who were not working. He said to them, 'Why are you standing here all [day and](#) not working?'

## Matthew 20:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- vineyard

### Translation Words - UST

- my vineyard as other men have done

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> They say to him, 'Because no one hired us.' He says to them, 'You also go into the vineyard.'

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> They said to him, 'Because no one has hired us.' He said to them, 'I will hire you. Go to my vineyard as other men have done, and work there.' So they went.

## Matthew 20:8

### having begun from the last to the first

You can make explicit the understood information. Alternate translation: “beginning with the workers who started working last, then the workers who started working earlier, and finally the workers who started working first” or “first paying the workers I hired last, then paying the workers I hired earlier in the day, and finally paying the workers I hired first”

### Translation Words - ULT

- owner
- of the vineyard
- to...manager
- Call
- workers

### Translation Words - UST

- owner of
- vineyard
- to...manager
- Tell...to come
- men

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And evening having come, the owner of the vineyard says to his manager, ‘Call the workers and pay them {their} wages, having begun from the last to the first.’

### UST

<sup>8</sup> When evening came, the owner of the vineyard said to his manager, ‘Tell the men to come so that you can give them their wages. First, pay the men who started working last, and pay the men last who started working first.’

## Matthew 20:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- hour
- received

### Translation Words - UST

- The manager paid
- in the afternoon

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And having come, the ones about the eleventh hour each received a denarius.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> The manager paid a standard day's wage to each of the men who did not start working until five o'clock in the afternoon.

## Matthew 20:10

### a denarius (ULT) standard wage (UST)

A **denarius** was a coin equal to the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "one day's wages" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- they will receive
- received

#### Translation Words - UST

- they would receive
- received only the

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But having come, the first thought that **they will receive** more, but they also **received** a denarius each.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> When the men who had begun working early in the morning went to get their wages, they thought that **they would receive** more than the standard wage. But they also **received only the** standard wage.

## Matthew 20:11

### having received {it} (ULT) their payment was unfair (UST)

Alternate translation: "when the workers who had worked the longest had received a denarius"

### the landowner (ULT) to the...owner of the vineyard because they thought (UST)

Alternate translation: "the vineyard owner"

### Translation Words - ULT

- having received {it}
- landowner

### Translation Words - UST

- owner of the vineyard because they thought
- their payment was unfair

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But having received {it}, they were murmuring against the landowner,

### UST

<sup>11</sup> So they complained to the owner of the vineyard because they thought their payment was unfair.

## Matthew 20:12

**you made them equal to us (ULT)**  
**You have paid them the same wage as you paid us (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you have paid them the same amount of money as you paid us"

**the ones having borne the burden of the day and the scorching heat (ULT)**  
**You have paid them the same wage as you paid us...But we worked hard all day. We even worked through the hottest part (UST)**

The phrase **borne the burden of the day** is an idiom that means "worked the entire day." Alternate translation: "who have worked the entire day, even during the hottest part" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hour](#)
- [having borne](#)
- [burden](#)
- [of the day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [hour](#)
- [But we worked hard](#)
- [But we worked hard](#)
- [all day](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> saying, 'These last ones have done one [hour](#), but you made them equal to us, the ones [having borne](#) the [burden of the day](#) and the scorching heat.'

### UST

<sup>12</sup> They said to him, 'You are not being fair! The men who started working after all of the rest of us worked for only one [hour](#)! You have paid them the same wage as you paid us! [But we worked hard all day](#). We even worked through the hottest part!'

**Matthew 20:13****to one of them (ULT)  
of those who complained (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to one of the workers who had worked the longest"

**Friend (ULT)  
Friend (UST)**

Translate **Friend** a word that one man would use to address another man whom he is politely rebuking.

**Did you not agree with me for a denarius  
(ULT)****I did not treat you unfairly...You agreed with me to work the whole day for a  
standard day's wage (UST)**

The landowner uses a question to rebuke the workers who were complaining. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "We already agreed that I would give you one denarius." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**for a denarius (ULT)  
a standard day's wage (UST)**

A **denarius** was a coin equal to the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "for one day's wages" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [I am...wronging](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [I did not treat you unfairly](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> But he, answering, said to one of them, 'Friend, **I am** not **wronging** you. Did you not agree with me for a denarius?

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> The owner of the vineyard said to one of those who complained, 'Friend, **I did not treat you unfairly**. You agreed with me to work the whole day for a standard day's wage.



## Matthew 20:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- as

### Translation Words - UST

- the same wage

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Take {what is} yours and go away. But I desire to give to these last **as** also to you.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> Stop complaining to me! Take your wages and go! I desire to give **the same wage** that I gave you to the men who began working after all of you had begun working.

## Matthew 20:15

**Or is it not lawful for me to do what I desire with my {things} (ULT)**

**I certainly have a right to spend my money as I desire, do I not (UST)**

The landowner uses a question to correct the workers who were complaining. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I can do what I want with my own possessions." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Or is your eye evil because I am good (ULT)**  
**You should not be envious about my being generous (UST)**

The landowner uses a question to rebuke the workers who were complaining. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Do not be jealous when I am generous to other people." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- is it...lawful
- evil
- good

### Translation Words - UST

- I certainly have a right
- You should not...envious about
- being generous

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Or is it not lawful for me to do what I desire with my {things}? Or is your eye evil because I am good?

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> I certainly have a right to spend my money as I desire, do I not? You should not be envious about my being generous! "

## Matthew 20:16

### In the same way, the last will be first, and the first last

Here, **first** and **last** refer to people's status or importance. Jesus is contrasting people's status now with their status in the kingdom of heaven. See how you translated a similar statement in [19:30](#).  
Alternate translation: "So those who seem to be unimportant now will be the most important, and those who seem to be the most important now will be the least important"

**In the same way, the last will be first (ULT)  
Similarly, God will reward well some people  
who seem to be less important now, and...people who seem to be more  
important now (UST)**

Here the parable has ended and Jesus is speaking. Alternate translation: "Then Jesus said, 'In the same way, the last will be first'"

#### ULT

**16** In the same way, the last will be first, and the first last." [1]

#### UST

**16** "Similarly, God will reward well some people who seem to be less important now, and he will not reward some people who seem to be more important now."

## Matthew 20:17

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus foretells his death and resurrection a third time as he and his disciples travel to Jerusalem.

### Jesus, going up to Jerusalem (ULT) When Jesus...was walking...up...to Jerusalem along with the (UST)

**Jerusalem** was on top of a hill, so people had to travel **up** to get there.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jerusalem
- the 12 disciples
- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- When Jesus
- Jerusalem along with the
- twelve disciples...them to a place
- disciples

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> And **Jesus**, going up to **Jerusalem**, took **the 12 disciples** aside by themselves, and on the way he said to them,

### UST

<sup>17</sup> **When Jesus** was walking on the road up to **Jerusalem along with the twelve disciples**, he took **them to a place** by themselves in order that he could talk to them privately. Then he said to them,



## **Matthew 20:18**

**Behold, we are going up (ULT)**  
**Listen carefully! We are now going up (UST)**

Jesus uses the word **Behold** to tell the disciples they must pay attention to what he is about to tell them.

**we are going up (ULT)**  
**We are now going up (UST)**

Here, **we** refers to Jesus and the disciples. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**the Son of Man will be handed over (ULT)**  
**someone will enable...to seize me...the...Son of Man (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will deliver the Son of Man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the Son of Man...him (ULT)**  
**the...Son of Man...me (UST)**

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate these in the first person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**they will condemn (ULT)**  
**They will condemn...and say (UST)**

The chief priests and scribes will condemn Jesus.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [to the chief priests](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [they will condemn](#)
- [to death](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jerusalem. While we are there](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [the men who teach the Jewish laws](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [They will condemn...and say](#)
- [that I should die](#)

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> "Behold, we are going up to [Jerusalem](#), and the [Son of Man](#) will be handed over [to the chief priests](#) and [scribes](#), and [they will condemn](#) him [to death](#)

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> "Listen carefully! We are now going up to [Jerusalem](#). [While we are there](#), someone will enable the [chief priests](#) and [the men who teach the Jewish laws](#) to seize me, the [Son of Man](#), and they will put me on trial. [They will condemn](#) me [and say that I should die](#).





## **Matthew 20:19**

**and will hand him over to the Gentiles for them to mock (ULT)**  
**Then they will put me in the hands of non-Jews so that they can make fun of me (UST)**

The chief priests and scribes will deliver Jesus to the **Gentiles**, and the Gentiles will **mock** him.

**to flog (ULT)**  
**whip me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to whip him" or "to beat him with whips"

**on the third day (ULT)**  
**on the third day after that (UST)**

The word **third** is the ordinal form of "three." (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**him...to crucify him...he will be raised up (ULT)**  
**they...kill me by nailing me to a cross...God will cause me to live again (UST)**

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate these in the first person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**he will be raised up (ULT)**  
**God will cause me to live again (UST)**

The words **be raised up** are an idiom for "be made alive again." If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will raise him up" or "God will make him alive again" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to the Gentiles
- to mock
- to crucify him
- on the...day
- he will be raised up

### Translation Words - UST

- non-Jews so that
- they can make fun of me
- kill me by nailing me to a cross
- day after that
- God will cause me to live again

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> and will hand him over to the Gentiles for them to mock and to flog and to crucify him. But on the third day he will be raised up."

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Then they will put me in the hands of non-Jews so that they can make fun of me, whip me, and kill me by nailing me to a cross. But on the third day after that, God will cause me to live again."

## Matthew 20:20

### of the sons of Zebedee (ULT) of...the sons of Zebedee (UST)

The **sons of Zebedee** were James and John.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- of the sons
- sons (2)
- of Zebedee
- bowing down

#### Translation Words - UST

- sons
- her two sons (2)
- of Zebedee
- She bowed down

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then the mother of the sons of Zebedee approached him with her sons, bowing down and asking for something from him.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Then the mother of James and John, the sons of Zebedee, brought her two sons to Jesus. She bowed down before Jesus and asked him to do her a favor.

## Matthew 20:21

### at your right hand...at your left hand (ULT) on your right hand...on your left (UST)

These phrases refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### in your kingdom (ULT) when you become king (UST)

Here, **kingdom** refers to Jesus ruling as king. Alternate translation: "when you are king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [your right hand](#)
- [kingdom](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sons](#)
- [become king](#)
- [your right hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But he said to her, "What do you desire?" She says to him, "Say that these my two [sons](#) might sit, one at [your right hand](#) and one at your left hand, in your [kingdom](#)."

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Jesus said to her, "What do you want me to do for you?" She said to him, "Permit these two [sons](#) of mine to sit in the places of most honor when you [become king](#), one on [your right hand](#) and the other on your left."

## Matthew 20:22

### You do not know (ULT)

### You do not understand (UST)

**You** is plural and refers to the mother and the sons. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Are you able (ULT)

### Can you (UST)

Here, **you** is plural, but Jesus is only talking to the two sons. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### to drink the cup that I am about to drink (ULT) suffer...I am about to suffer?" James and John (UST)

To **drink the cup** or "drink from the cup" is an idiom that means to experience suffering. Alternate translation: "to suffer what I am about to suffer" (See: [Idiom](#))

### They say (ULT)

### answered (UST)

Alternate translation: "The sons of Zebedee said" or "James and John said"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [You do...know](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [You do...understand](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But answering, [Jesus](#) said, "You do not [know](#) what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup that I am about to drink?" They say to him, "We are able."

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [Jesus](#) said to her and her sons, "You do not [understand](#) what you are asking for. Can you suffer like I am about to suffer?" James and John answered him, "Yes, we are able to do that."

**Matthew 20:23****My cup you will drink (ULT)****Yes, you will suffer as I will suffer (UST)**

To **drink** a **cup** or “drink from a cup” is an idiom that means to experience suffering. Alternate translation: “You will indeed suffer as I will suffer” (See: [Idiom](#))

**right hand...my left hand (ULT)****next to me and rule with me...next to me and rule with me (UST)**

These phrases refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor. See how you translated this in [20:21](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to the ones {that} have been prepared by my Father (ULT)****God, my Father...to the ones whom he appoints (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “my Father has prepared those places, and he will give them to whom he chooses” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**my Father (ULT)****God, my Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [right hand](#)
- [Father](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [next to me and rule with me](#)
- [God...Father](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> He says to them, “My cup you will drink. But to sit at my [right hand](#) and at my left hand is not mine to give, but to the ones {that} have been prepared by my [Father](#).”

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> Then Jesus said to them, “Yes, you will suffer as I will suffer. But I am not the one who chooses the ones who will sit [next to me and rule with me](#). [God](#), my [Father](#), will give those places to the ones whom he appoints.”

## Matthew 20:24

### having heard {this (ULT) other disciples heard what (UST)

Alternate translation: "having heard what James and John had asked Jesus"

### were very angry with the two brothers (ULT) James and John had requested, they became angry with them because they also wanted to rule with Jesus in the positions of most honor (UST)

If necessary, you can make explicit why the ten disciples **were angry**. Alternate translation: "were very angry with the two brothers because each of them also wanted to sit in a place of honor next to Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [James and John had requested, they](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> And having heard {this}, the ten {disciples} were very angry with the two [brothers](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> When the ten other disciples heard what [James and John had requested](#), [they](#) became angry with them because they also wanted to rule with Jesus in the positions of most honor.

## Matthew 20:25

**having called them to himself (ULT)  
called all of them together (UST)**

Alternate translation: "having called the 12 disciples"

**the rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them (ULT)  
those who rule the non-Jews enjoy showing them that they are powerful (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the Gentile kings forcefully rule over their people"

**the...great ones (ULT)  
those who rule...Their chief rulers (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the important men among the Gentiles"

**them...exercise authority over (ULT)  
them...enjoy commanding (UST)**

Alternate translation: "have control over the people"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- having called...to himself
- You know
- rulers
- of the Gentiles
- exercise authority over

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- called...together
- You know
- those who rule
- non-Jews
- enjoy commanding

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But Jesus, having called them to himself, said, "You know that the rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them, and the great ones exercise authority over them.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> So Jesus called all of them together and said to them, "You know that those who rule the non-Jews enjoy showing them that they are powerful. Their chief rulers enjoy commanding the people under them.



## Matthew 20:26

**whoever desires (ULT)**  
**everyone...who wants (UST)**

Alternate translation: "whoever wants"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a servant](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> It is not this way among you. Instead, whoever desires to become great among you will be your [servant](#),

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> You should not be like them. On the contrary, everyone among you who wants God to consider him great must become [a servant](#) for the rest of you.

## Matthew 20:27

**to be first (ULT)**

**to be the most important (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to be most important"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a servant for the rest of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> and whoever desires to be first among you will be your [servant](#),

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> Yes, and everyone among you who wants God to consider him to be the most important must become [a servant for the rest of](#) you.



## **Matthew 20:28**

**the Son of Man...his life (ULT)**  
**the Son of Man...to allow them to kill me...my dying (UST)**

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate this in the first person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**did not come to be served (ULT)**  
**I did not come for others to serve me (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "did not come so that other people would serve him" or "did not come so that other people would serve me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**but to serve (ULT)**  
**On the contrary, I came in order to serve them (UST)**

You can state the understood information explicitly. Alternate translation: "but to serve other people" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**and to give his life as a ransom in exchange for many (ULT)**  
**and to allow them to kill me, so that my dying would be like a payment to rescue many people from being punished for their sins (UST)**

Jesus' **life** being a **ransom** is a metaphor for his being punished in order to set people free from being punished for their own sins. Alternate translation: "to give his life as a substitute for many" or "to give his life as a substitute to set many free" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**and to give his life (ULT)**  
**and to allow them to kill me...my dying (UST)**

To give one's **life** is an idiom meaning to die voluntarily, usually in order to help others. Alternate translation: "and to die" (See: [Idiom](#))

**in exchange for many (ULT)**  
**so that...many people from being punished for their sins (UST)**

You can state the understood information explicitly. Alternate translation: "in exchange for many people" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- just as
- Son of Man
- to be served
- to serve

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> just as the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom in exchange for many."

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> You should imitate me. Even though I am the Son of Man, I did not come for others to serve me. On the contrary, I came in order to serve them and to allow them to kill me, so that my dying would be like a payment to rescue many people from being punished for their sins."

- life
- as a ransom

## **Translation Words - UST**

- You should imitate me. Even though I am
- Son of Man
- for others to serve me
- I came in order to serve them
- to allow them to kill me...my dying
- would be like a payment to rescue

## Matthew 20:29

### Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus healing two blind men.

### as} they were proceeding (ULT) As...they...were leaving the city (UST)

Here, **they** refers to the disciples and Jesus.

### followed him (ULT) followed them (UST)

Alternate translation: "followed Jesus"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jericho](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jericho](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> And {as} they were proceeding from [Jericho](#), a great crowd followed him.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> As they were leaving the city of [Jericho](#), a large crowd of people followed them.

## Matthew 20:30

### Having heard (ULT) When they heard (UST)

Alternate translation: "When the two blind men heard"

### is passing by (ULT) was passing by (UST)

Alternate translation: "was walking by them"

### Son of David (ULT) Descendant of King David (UST)

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "Descendant of King David." However, **Son of David** is also a title for the Messiah, and the men were probably calling Jesus by this title.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- they cried out
- Have mercy
- Lord
- Son
- of David

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- they yelled to him
- Lord
- Descendant
- of King David
- you are the Messiah! Take pity on

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> And behold, two blind men are sitting beside the road. Having heard that Jesus is passing by, they cried out, saying, "Have mercy on us, Lord, Son of David."

### UST

<sup>30</sup> As they walked along, they saw two blind men sitting alongside the road. When they heard that Jesus was passing by, they yelled to him, "Lord, Descendant of King David, you are the Messiah! Take pity on us!"



## Matthew 20:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- rebuked
- cried out
- Lord
- have mercy
- Son
- of David

### Translation Words - UST

- scolded
- blind men yelled
- Lord
- Descendant of
- King David
- Have pity on

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Now the crowd rebuked them, so that they would be silent, but they cried out even more, saying, "Lord, have mercy on us, Son of David."

### UST

<sup>31</sup> People in the crowd scolded them and told them to be quiet. But the blind men yelled even louder, "Lord, Descendant of King David, you are the Messiah! Have pity on us!"

## Matthew 20:32

**called to them (ULT)**

**called them to come to him. Then (UST)**

Alternate translation: "called to the blind men"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- called

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- called...to come to him. Then

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> And having stood still, Jesus called to them and said, "What do you want that I might do for you?"

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Jesus stopped and called them to come to him. Then he said to them, "What do you want me to do for you?"

## Matthew 20:33

**that our eyes might be opened (ULT)**  
**heal our eyes so that we can see (UST)**

The men speak of becoming able to see as if their **eyes** were to **be opened**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**that our eyes might be opened (ULT)**  
**heal our eyes so that we can see (UST)**

Because of Jesus' previous question, we understand that they were expressing their desire. Alternate translation: "we want you to open our eyes" or "we want to be able to see" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> They say to him, "[Lord](#), that our eyes might be opened."

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> They said to him, "[Lord](#), heal our eyes so that we can see!"

## Matthew 20:34

### having been moved with compassion (ULT) felt sorry for them (UST)

Alternate translation: "having compassion on them" or "feeling compassion for them"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [having been moved with compassion](#)
- [Jesus](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [felt sorry for them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Now [having been moved with compassion](#), [Jesus](#) touched their eyes. And immediately they received their sight and followed him.

20:16 <sup>[1]</sup>

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> [Jesus felt sorry for them](#) and touched their eyes. Immediately they were able to see, and they went after Jesus.

# Matthew 21

## Matthew 21 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 21:5,16 and 42, which are words from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The donkey and the colt

Jesus rode into Jerusalem on an animal. In this way he was like a king who came into a city after he had won an important battle. Also, the kings of Israel in the Old Testament rode on a donkeys. Other kings rode on horses. So Jesus was showing that he was the king of Israel and that he was not like other kings.

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about this event. Matthew and Mark wrote that the disciples brought Jesus a donkey. John wrote that Jesus found a donkey. Luke wrote that they brought him a colt. Only Matthew wrote that there were both a donkey had a colt. No one knows for sure whether Jesus rode the donkey or the colt. It is best to translate each of these accounts as it appears in the ULT without trying to make them all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 21:1-7](#) and [Mark 11:1-7](#) and [Luke 19:29-36](#) and [John 12:14-15](#))

#### Hosanna

This is what the people shouted to welcome Jesus into Jerusalem. This word meant "Save us," but people used it to praise God.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "The kingdom of God will be taken away from you"

No one knows for sure what this phrase means. No one knows if Jesus meant that God would someday give the kingdom back or not.

## Matthew 21:1

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus' entry into Jerusalem. Here he gives his disciples instructions about what they are to do.

### Bethphage (ULT)

**Bethphage** was a village near Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [sent](#)
- [disciples](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disciple](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)

### ULT

**1** And when they approached [Jerusalem](#) and came to Bethphage, to the [Mount of Olives](#), then [Jesus sent](#) two [disciples](#),

### UST

**1-2** As Jesus and his disciples approached Jerusalem, they came to the village of Bethphage, near the Mount of Olives. Jesus said to two of his disciples, "Go to the village just ahead of you. As soon as you enter it, you will see a donkey and her colt that are tied up. Untie them and bring them here to me.

## Matthew 21:2

### a donkey tied up (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “a donkey that someone has tied up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### tied up (ULT)

You can make explicit how the donkey is **tied up**. Alternate translation: “tied up to a post” or “tied up to a tree” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### a colt (ULT)

This **colt** was a young male donkey.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a donkey](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [donkey, mule](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> saying to them, “Go into the village {that is} in front of you, and you will immediately find [a donkey](#) tied up, and a colt with her. Having untied {them}, bring {them} to me.

### UST

<sup>1-2</sup> As Jesus and his disciples approached Jerusalem, they came to the village of Bethphage, near the Mount of Olives. Jesus said to two of his disciples, “Go to the village just ahead of you. As soon as you enter it, you will see a donkey and her colt that are tied up. Untie them and bring them here to me.

## Matthew 21:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- he will send

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- lead...away

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And if anyone says anything to you, you will say, 'The Lord has need of them,' and immediately he will send them."

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> If anyone says anything to you about your doing that, tell him, 'The Lord needs them.' He will then allow you to lead them away."



## Matthew 21:4

### General Information:

Here the author quotes the prophet Zechariah to show that Jesus fulfilled prophecy by riding a donkey into Jerusalem.

### Now (ULT)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew explains how Jesus' actions fulfill scripture.

### this...had come about so that {what} was spoken through the prophet might be fulfilled (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "this happened so that Jesus would fulfill what God spoke through the prophet long ago" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### through the prophet (ULT)

There were many prophets. Matthew was speaking of Zechariah. Alternate translation: "the prophet Zechariah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet
- might be fulfilled

### Translation Words - UST

- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Now this had come about so that {what} was spoken through the prophet might be fulfilled, saying,

### UST

<sup>4-5</sup> When all this happened, what one of the prophets had written came true. That prophet had written, "Tell the people who live in Jerusalem, 'Look! Your king is coming to you! He will come humbly. He will show that he is humble, because he will be riding on a colt, the offspring of a donkey.'"

## Matthew 21:5

### the daughter of Zion (ULT)

The **daughter** of a city means the people of the city. Alternate translation: “the people of Zion” or “the people who live in Zion”

### of Zion (ULT)

**Zion** is another name for Jerusalem.

### on a donkey—and on a colt, the foal of a beast of burden

The phrase **on a colt, the foal of a beast of burden** is explaining that the donkey is a young animal. Alternate translation: “on a young, male donkey”

### Translation Words - ULT

- daughter of Zion
- of Zion
- King
- a donkey
- a foal

### Translation Words - UST

- daughter of Zion
- son
- Zion, Mount Zion
- donkey, mule
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> “Tell the **daughter of Zion**, ‘Behold, your **King** is coming to you, Humble and riding on **a donkey**— and on a colt, **a foal** of a beast of burden.’”

### UST

<sup>4-5</sup> When all this happened, what one of the prophets had written came true. That prophet had written, “Tell the people who live in Jerusalem, ‘Look! Your king is coming to you! He will come humbly. He will show that he is humble, because he will be riding on a colt, the offspring of a donkey.’”

## Matthew 21:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- just as
- Jesus
- had directed

### Translation Words - UST

- two disciples
- what
- Jesus
- told...to do

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Now the disciples, having gone and having done just as Jesus had directed them,

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> So the two disciples went and did what Jesus told them to do.

## Matthew 21:7

### cloaks (ULT)

### cloaks (UST)

These **cloaks** were outer clothing or long coats.

### Translation Words - ULT

- donkey
- cloaks

### Translation Words - UST

- donkey
- cloaks

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> brought the donkey and the colt and put their cloaks on them, and he sat upon them.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> They brought the donkey and its colt to Jesus. They placed their cloaks on them to make something for him to sit on. Then Jesus mounted and sat on the cloaks.

## Matthew 21:8

**the} crowd spread their cloaks on the road, and others were cutting branches from the trees and were spreading {them} in the road (ULT)**

**crowd spread some of their outer clothing on the road, and other people cut off branches from palm trees and spread them on the road (UST)**

The crowd did these acts to show honor to Jesus as he was entering Jerusalem. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**the} crowd spread their cloaks on the road, and others were cutting branches from the trees and were spreading {them} in the road (ULT)**

**crowd spread some of their outer clothing on the road, and other people cut off branches from palm trees and spread them on the road (UST)**

You can state clearly that they did this to honor Jesus. Alternate translation: “the crowd spread their cloaks on the road, and others were cutting branches from the trees and were spreading them in the road in order to show honor to Jesus” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [cloaks](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [outer clothing](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now most of {the} crowd spread their [cloaks](#) on the road, and others were cutting branches from the trees and were spreading {them} in the road.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then a large crowd spread some of their [outer clothing](#) on the road, and other people cut off branches from palm trees and spread them on the road.

## Matthew 21:9

### Hosanna (ULT)

### Praise (UST)

**Hosanna** means "Save us," but it can also mean "Praise God!"

### to the Son of David (ULT)

### the Messiah...descendant of King David (UST)

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "descendant of king David." However, **Son of David** is also a title for the Messiah, and the crowd was probably calling Jesus by this title.

### in {the} name of {the} Lord (ULT)

### as God's representative...with God's authority (UST)

Here, **in the name** means "in the power" or "as a representative."

Alternate translation: "in the power of the Lord" or "as the representative of the Lord" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Hosanna in the highest {places} (ULT)

### Praise God, who is in the highest heaven (UST)

Here, **highest** refers to God who rules from the highest heaven. Alternate translation: "Praise God, who is in the highest heaven" or "Praise be to God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- were crying out
- to the Son
- of David
- Blessed is
- the} name
- of {the} Lord
- highest {places}

## Translation Words - UST

- shouting
- descendant of
- King David
- May the Lord God bless
- God's representative
- with God's authority
- highest heaven

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Now the crowds going before him and following [were crying out](#), saying, "Hosanna [to the Son of David](#)! Blessed is the one coming in [{the} name of {the} Lord](#)! Hosanna in the [highest {places}](#)!"

### UST

<sup>9</sup> The crowds that walked in front of him and those who walked behind him were [shouting](#), "Praise the Messiah, the [descendant of King David](#)!" "May the Lord God [bless](#) this one who comes as [God's representative](#) and [with God's authority](#)." "Praise God, who is in the [highest heaven](#)!"

## Matthew 21:10

**the whole city was stirred (ULT)**  
**many people from all over the city became excited (UST)**

Here, **city** refers to the people living there. Alternate translation: "many people from all over the city were stirred" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**was stirred (ULT)**  
**became excited (UST)**

Alternate translation: "was excited"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And {when} he had entered into [Jerusalem](#), the whole city was stirred, saying, "Who is this?"

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> As Jesus entered [Jerusalem](#), many people from all over the city became excited and were saying, "Why are they honoring this man like that?"

## Matthew 21:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- prophet
- Nazareth
- of Galilee

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- prophet
- Nazareth
- in Galilee

### ULT

**11** And the crowds answered, "This is Jesus the prophet from Nazareth of Galilee."

### UST

**11** The crowd that was already following him answered, "This is Jesus, the prophet from Nazareth in Galilee!"



## Matthew 21:12

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus entering into the temple.

### Jesus entered into the temple (ULT) Jesus went into the temple courtyard (UST)

Jesus did not enter the actual **temple**. He entered the courtyard around the temple. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### And...the ones buying...selling (ULT) Then...those who were buying...selling things there. He (UST)

Merchants were **selling** animals and other items that travelers bought to offer the proper sacrifices at the temple.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- temple
- temple
- cast out
- doves

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- temple courtyard
- temple
- chased out
- pigeons for sacrifices

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And Jesus entered into the temple and cast out all the ones buying and selling in the temple and overturned the tables of the money changers and the seats of the ones selling the doves.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then Jesus went into the temple courtyard and chased out all of those who were buying and selling things there. He also overturned the tables of those who were changing Roman coins for temple tax money, and he overturned the seats of those who were selling pigeons for sacrifices.



## **Matthew 21:13**

**My house will be called a house of prayer,' but you make it a den of robbers (ULT)**  
**my house to be a place where people pray to me,' but you people have made it into a place where robbers gather (UST)**

In this verse, Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah to rebuke the vendors and money changers.

**he says to them (ULT)**  
**he said to them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Jesus said to those who were changing money and buying and selling things"

**It is written (ULT)**  
**A prophet wrote in the scriptures that God said, 'I want (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "The prophets wrote long ago" or "God said long ago" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**My house...will be called (ULT)**  
**my house to be a...people pray to me (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "People should call my house" or "My house will be" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**My house (ULT)**  
**my house to be a (UST)**

Here, **My** refers to God and **house** refers to the temple.

**a house of prayer (ULT)**  
**place where people pray to me (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "a place where people pray" (See: [Idiom](#))

**a den of robbers (ULT)**  
**a place where robbers gather (UST)**

Jesus uses a metaphor to scold the people for buying and selling items in the temple. Alternate translation: "like a place where robbers hide" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [It is written](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And he says to them, "It is written, 'My house will be called a house of prayer,' but you make it a den of robbers."

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Then he said to them, "A prophet wrote in the scriptures that God said, 'I want my house to be a place where people pray to me,' but you people have made it into a place where robbers gather!"

- house
- a house
- will be called
- of prayer
- of robbers

## Translation Words - UST

- A prophet wrote in the scriptures that God said, 'I want
- house to be a
- place where
- people pray to me
- people pray to me
- robbers

## Matthew 21:14

### the} blind and {the} lame (ULT) many blind people and lame people (UST)

If your language does not use the nominal adjectives **blind** and **lame**, you can express them as adjectives. Alternate translation: “those who were blind and those who were lame” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### the} lame (ULT) lame people (UST)

To be **lame** is to have an injured foot or leg that makes walking difficult.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [he healed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [he would heal](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And {the} blind and {the} lame came to him in the [temple](#), and [he healed](#) them.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> After that, many blind people and lame people came to Jesus in the [temple](#) in order that [he would heal](#) them, and he did so.

## Matthew 21:15

### the marvelous things (ULT) the marvelous deeds (UST)

This phrase refers to Jesus healing the blind and lame people in [21:14](#). Alternate translation: “the wonderful things” or “the miracles”

### Hosanna (ULT) We praise the Messiah (UST)

**Hosanna** means “Save us” but can also mean “Praise God!” See how you translated this in [21:9](#).

### the...to the Son...of David (ULT) the...descendant of King David (UST)

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as “descendant of king David.” However, “Son of David” is also a title for the Messiah, and the children were probably calling Jesus by this title. See how you translated this in [21:9](#).

### they became very angry (ULT) They were indignant (UST)

It is implied that they were **very angry** because they did not believe Jesus was the Christ and they did not want other people praising him. Alternate translation: “they became very angry because people were praising him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [chief priests](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [marvelous things](#)
- [children](#)
- [crying out](#)
- [temple](#)
- [to the Son](#)
- [of David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [high priests](#)
- [men who taught the people the Jewish laws](#)
- [marvelous deeds](#)
- [children](#)
- [shouting](#)
- [temple](#)
- [descendant](#)
- [of King David](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But the [chief priests](#) and the [scribes](#), having seen the [marvelous things](#) that he did, and the [children crying out](#) in the [temple](#) and saying, “Hosanna to the [Son of David](#),” they became very angry.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> The [high priests](#) and the [men who taught the people the Jewish laws](#) saw the [marvelous deeds](#) that Jesus did. They also saw the [children shouting](#) in the [temple](#), “We praise the Messiah, the [descendant of King David](#)!” They were indignant.





## **Matthew 21:16**

**From {the} mouths of little children and nursing infants you have prepared praise (ULT)**

**in...You have taught infants and other children to praise you perfectly (UST)**

In verse 16, Jesus quotes from the Psalms to justify how the people had responded to him.

**Do you hear what they are saying (ULT)  
Do you hear what these people are shouting (UST)**

The chief priests and scribes ask this question to rebuke Jesus because they are angry with him. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not allow them to say these things about you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Have you never read, 'From the mouths of little children and nursing infants you have prepared praise'?**

Jesus asks this question to remind the chief priests and scribes of what they had studied in the scriptures. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I hear them, but you should remember what you read in the scriptures, 'From the mouths of little children and nursing infants you have prepared praise'?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**From {the} mouths of little children and nursing infants you have prepared praise (ULT)  
in...You have taught infants and other children to praise you perfectly (UST)**

**From the mouths** refers to speaking. Alternate translation: "You caused little children and nursing infants to prepare to give praise to God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jesus](#)
- [of little children](#)
- [you have prepared](#)
- [praise](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jesus](#)
- [You have taught](#)
- [other children](#)
- [to praise you perfectly](#)

**ULT**

**16** And they said to him, "Do you hear what they are saying?" But [Jesus](#) says to them, "Yes! Have you never read, 'From {the} mouths of [little children](#) and nursing infants [you have prepared praise](#)'?"

**UST**

**16** They asked him, "How can you tolerate this? Do you hear what these people are shouting?" Then [Jesus](#) said to them, "Yes, I hear them, but if you remembered what you have read in the scriptures about children praising me, you would know that God is pleased with them. The psalmist wrote, saying to God, '[You have taught](#) infants and [other children to praise you perfectly.](#)'"

## Matthew 21:17

**having left them (ULT)**

**Jesus left (UST)**

Alternate translation: "after Jesus left the chief priests and scribes"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Bethany](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the village of Bethany](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> And having left them, he went out from the city to [Bethany](#) and spent the night there.

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> Then Jesus left the city. The disciples went with him to [the village of Bethany](#), and they stayed there that night.

## Matthew 21:18

### Now (ULT) when (UST)

The word **when** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew explains that Jesus is hungry and that is why he stops at the fig tree.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [returning](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they were returning](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Now in {the} morning, [returning](#) to the city, he was hungry.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> Early the next morning when [they were returning](#) to the city, Jesus was hungry.

## Matthew 21:19

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus uses a fig tree to teach his disciples about faith and prayer.

### withered (ULT)

### dried up (UST)

Alternate translation: "died and dried up"

### Translation Words - ULT

- fig tree
- fig tree
- fruit
- eternity

### Translation Words - UST

- fig tree
- fig tree
- again
- figs

### ULT

**19** And having seen one **fig tree** along the road, he went to it and found nothing on it except leaves only. And he says to it, "May there no longer be **fruit** from you to **eternity**," and immediately the **fig tree** withered.

### UST

**19** He saw a **fig tree** near the road, so he went over to it to pick some figs to eat. But when he got close, he saw that there were no figs on the tree, but only leaves. So he said to the fig tree, "May you never **again** produce **figs**!" As a result, the **fig tree** immediately dried up.

## Matthew 21:20

### How did the fig tree immediately wither away (ULT)

### How did the fig tree dry up so quickly (UST)

The disciples use a question to emphasize how surprised they are. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "We are astonished that the fig tree has dried up so quickly!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### did...wither away (ULT)

### did...dry up (UST)

Alternate translation: "did ... dry up and die"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [marveled](#)
- [fig tree](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [They were astonished](#)
- [fig tree](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> And having seen {this}, the [disciples](#) [marveled](#), saying, "How did the [fig tree](#) immediately wither away?"

### UST

<sup>20</sup> The next day the [disciples](#) saw that the fig tree was completely dead. [They were astonished](#) and said to Jesus, "How did the [fig tree](#) dry up so quickly?"

## Matthew 21:21

### Truly I say to you (ULT)

### Think about this (UST)

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

### if you have faith and do not doubt (ULT) If you believe that God has power to do...and you do not doubt that (UST)

Jesus expresses the same idea both positively and negatively to emphasize that this faith must be genuine. Alternate translation: "if you truly believe" (See: [Doublet](#))

### even if you say to this mountain, 'Be taken up and be thrown into the sea (ULT) You will even be able to do marvelous deeds... like saying to that hill over there, 'Uproot yourself and throw yourself into the sea,' and (UST)

You can translate this direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "you will even be able to tell this mountain to be taken up and be thrown into the sea," (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### even if you say to this mountain, 'Be taken up and be thrown into the sea (ULT)

### You will even be able to do marvelous deeds...like saying to that hill over there, 'Uproot yourself and throw yourself into the sea,' and (UST)

You can translate this direct quotation as an indirect quotation. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "you will even be able to tell this mountain to get up and throw itself into the sea," (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [faith](#)
- [of...fig tree](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus said...what you ask him to](#)
- [Think about this](#)
- [you believe that God has power to do](#)
- [fig tree](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But answering, [Jesus](#) said to them, "Truly I say to you, if you have [faith](#) and do not doubt, you will not only do {what was} of the [fig tree](#), but even if you say to this mountain, 'Be taken up and be thrown into the sea,' it will happen.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [Jesus](#) said to them, "Think about this: If you believe that God has power to do what you ask him to and you do not doubt that, you will be able to do things like what I have done to this [fig tree](#). You will even be able to do marvelous deeds like saying to that hill over there, 'Uproot yourself and throw yourself into the sea,' and it will happen!

## Matthew 21:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- prayer
- believing
- you will receive

### Translation Words - UST

- you pray to him, if
- you believe that he will give it to you
- you will receive it from him

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And everything, whatever you request in prayer, believing, you will receive.”

### UST

<sup>22</sup> In addition to that, whenever you ask God for something when you pray to him, if you believe that he will give it to you, you will receive it from him.”



## Matthew 21:23

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of the religious leaders questioning Jesus' authority.

### when} he had come into the temple (ULT) Jesus went into the temple courtyard. While (UST)

It is implied that Jesus did not enter the actual **temple**. He entered the courtyard around the temple. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### these {things (ULT) these things (UST)

Here, **these things** refers to Jesus teaching and healing in the temple. It probably also refers to Jesus driving out the buyers and sellers the previous day.

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- chief priests
- elders
- of the people
- as} he is teaching
- authority
- authority

### Translation Words - UST

- temple courtyard. While
- he was teaching the people
- chief priests
- elders
- people
- authority
- authorized

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> And {when} he had come into the temple, the chief priests and the elders of the people came to him {as} he is teaching, saying, "By what authority do you do these {things}, and who gave you this authority?"

### UST

<sup>23</sup> After that, Jesus went into the temple courtyard. While he was teaching the people, the chief priests and the elders of the people approached him. They asked, "By what authority are you doing these things? Who authorized you to do what you did here yesterday?"

## Matthew 21:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [authority](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus said](#)
- [who authorized me](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But answering, [Jesus](#) said to them, “I also will ask you one word, that if you tell me, I also will tell you by what [authority](#) I am doing these {things}.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> [Jesus said](#) to them, “I also will ask you a question, and if you answer me, I will tell you [who authorized me](#) to do these things.

## Matthew 21:25

### from where was it (ULT)

### Where did...It was (UST)

Alternate translation: "where did he get the authority to do that?"

**If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say to us, 'Why then did you not believe him (ULT) those who came to him? Did he get it...about what they should answer...If we say...from God,' he will say to us, 'Then you should have believed his message (UST)**

This has quotes within a quote. You could translate the direct quotations as an indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "If we say that we believe John received his authority from heaven, then Jesus will ask us why we did not believe John." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

### From heaven (ULT)

### from God (UST)

Here, **heaven** refers to God. Alternate translation: "from God in heaven" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Why then did you not believe him (ULT) those who came to him? Did he get it...about what they should answer...Then you should have believed his message (UST)**

The religious leaders know that Jesus could scold them with this rhetorical question. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Then you should have believed John the Baptist" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [baptism](#)
- [of John](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [heaven \(2\)](#)
- [did you...believe](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [John](#)
- [Baptizer get his authority to baptize](#)
- [God](#)
- [God \(2\)](#)
- [you should have believed](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The [baptism of John](#)—from where was it? From [heaven](#) or from men?" But they were debating among themselves, saying, "If we say, 'From [heaven](#),' he will say to us, 'Why then [did you](#) not [believe](#) him?"

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Where did [John](#) the [Baptizer](#) get his [authority to baptize](#) those who came to him? Did he get it from [God](#) or from people?" The chief priests and elders debated among themselves about what they should answer. They said to each other, "If we say, 'It was from [God](#),' he will say to us, 'Then [you should have believed](#) his message!'

## Matthew 21:26

**But if we say, 'From men (ULT)**

**But if we say, 'It was from people (UST)**

This is a quote within a quote. You could translate the direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "But if we say that we believe John received his authority from men" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**we fear the crowd (ULT)**

**the crowd might react violently against us (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we fear what the crowd would think or even do to us"

**all...the...they...regard...John...as a prophet (ULT)**

**all the people...the...believe that...John...was a prophet whom God had sent (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they believe John is a prophet"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we fear](#)
- [John](#)
- [as](#)
- [a prophet](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [might react violently against us](#)
- [John](#)
- [was](#)
- [a prophet whom God had sent](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But if we say, 'From men,' [we fear](#) the crowd, for they all regard [John as a prophet.](#)"

### UST

<sup>26</sup> But if we say, 'It was from people,' the crowd [might react violently against us](#), because all the people believe that [John was a prophet whom God had sent.](#)"

## Matthew 21:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- We do...know
- authority

### Translation Words - UST

- they answered Jesus
- We do...know where John got his authority from
- who gave me the right

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> And answering Jesus, they said, "We do not know." He also said to them, "Neither do I tell you by what authority I do these {things}.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> So they answered Jesus, "We do not know where John got his authority from." Then Jesus said to them, "Because you did not answer my question, I will not tell you who gave me the right to do the things I did here yesterday."

## Matthew 21:28

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about two sons to rebuke the religious leaders and to illustrate their unbelief. (See: [Parables](#))

### But what do you think (ULT)

### Tell me what you think about what I am about (UST)

Jesus uses a question to challenge the religious leaders to think deeply about the parable he will tell them. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Tell me what you think about what I am about to tell you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [Son](#)
- [work](#)
- [vineyard](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sons](#)
- [My son](#)
- [work](#)
- [my vineyard](#)

### ULT

**28** But what do you think? A man had two [sons](#), and having gone to the first, said, 'Son, go [work](#) today in the [vineyard](#).'

### UST

**28** "Tell me what you think about what I am about to tell you. There was a man who had two [sons](#). He went to his older son and said, 'My son, go and [work](#) in [my vineyard](#) today!'

## Matthew 21:29

### having changed his mind (ULT) he changed his mind (UST)

This refers to the son reconsidering his thoughts and deciding to act differently from how he had said he would act. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [having changed his mind](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [he changed his mind](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> But he, answering, said, 'I will not,' but afterward, [having changed his mind](#), he went.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> But the son said to his father, 'I will not go!' But later [he changed his mind](#), and he went to the vineyard and worked.

## Matthew 21:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- likewise
- sir

### Translation Words - UST

- said what he had said to his older son. That son
- Sir

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But having gone to the second son, he said **likewise**. And he, answering, said, 'I will, **sir**,' but he did not go.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Then the father approached his younger son and **said what he had said to his older son**. **That son** said, 'Sir, I will go and work in the vineyard today.' But he did not go there.





## **Matthew 21:31**

**They say (ULT)**

**They answered (UST)**

Alternate translation: "The chief priests and elders said"

**The...Jesus...says to them (ULT)**

**The...Then Jesus...said to them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Jesus said to the chief priests and elders"

**Truly I say to you (ULT)**

**So think about this (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

**the tax collectors and the prostitutes enter into the kingdom of God before you (ULT)**

**God will be kind to the tax collectors and prostitutes by agreeing to rule over them much sooner than he will agree to rule over you. This is true, even though you condemn those people...they ignore the law of Moses (UST)**

Here, **kingdom of God** refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "when God establishes his rule on earth, he will agree to bless the tax collectors and prostitutes by ruling over them before he agrees to do that for you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**enter...before you (ULT)**

**much sooner...over you. This is true, even though you condemn those people (UST)**

This could mean: (1) God will accept the tax collectors and prostitutes sooner than he will accept the Jewish religious leaders. (2) God will accept the tax collectors and prostitutes instead of the Jewish religious leaders.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of...his} father](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [prostitutes](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [their father](#)
- [Then Jesus](#)
- [So think about this](#)

**ULT**

<sup>31</sup> Which of the two did the will of {his} father?" They say, "The first one." Jesus says to them, "Truly I say to you, the tax collectors and the prostitutes enter into the kingdom of God before you.

**UST**

<sup>31</sup> So which of the man's two sons did what their father desired?" They answered, "The older son." Then Jesus said to them, "So think about this: God will be kind to the tax collectors and prostitutes by agreeing to rule over them much sooner than he will agree to rule over you. This is true, even though you condemn those people because they ignore the law of Moses.

- God will be kind to...rule
- tax collectors
- prostitutes by agreeing to rule over them...than he will agree

## Matthew 21:32

**came...John...to you (ULT)**

**I say this to you because, even though...John the Baptizer explained to you (UST)**

Here, **you** is plural and refers to all the people of Israel not just the religious leaders. Alternate translation: "John came to the people of Israel" (See: [Forms of You](#))

**in {the} way of righteousness (ULT)**

**how to live in the right way (UST)**

This is an idiom that means John showed the people the right way to live. Alternate translation: "and told you the way God wants you to live" (See: [Idiom](#))

**you did not believe him (ULT)**

**you did...not...believe his message (UST)**

Here, **you** is plural and refers to the religious leaders. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [of righteousness](#)
- [you did...believe](#)
- [believed](#)
- [to believe](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [prostitutes](#)
- [did...repent](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [John the Baptizer explained](#)
- [how to live in the right way](#)
- [you did...believe](#)
- [believed](#)
- [you did not believe](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [prostitutes](#)
- [you refused to stop sinning, and](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> For [John](#) came to you in {the} way of [righteousness](#), but [you did not believe](#) him. But the [tax collectors](#) and the [prostitutes believed](#) him. But you, having seen {this}, did not [repent](#) afterward [to believe](#) in him.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> I say this to you because, even though [John the Baptizer explained](#) to you [how to live in the right way](#), [you did not believe](#) his message. But [tax collectors](#) and [prostitutes believed](#) his message, and they turned away from their sinful behavior. In contrast, even though you saw that they changed, [you refused to stop sinning, and you did not believe](#) John's message."



## **Matthew 21:33**

**Connecting Statement:**

To rebuke the religious leaders and illustrate their unbelief, Jesus tells a parable about rebellious servants. (See: [Parables](#))

**a landowner (ULT)****a landowner (UST)**

Alternate translation: "a person who owned a piece of property"

**a hedge (ULT)****a fence (UST)**

Alternate translation: "a wall" or "a fence made of bushes"

**it...dug a winepress in (ULT)****it...He made...a place to collect the juice that would come out of the grapes (UST)**

Alternate translation: "dug a hole in the vineyard in which to press the grapes"

**rented it out to farmers (ULT)****He rented the vineyard to some men who would care for it (UST)**

The owner still owned the vineyard, but he allowed the **vine growers** to take care of it. When the grapes became ripe, they were to give some of them to the owner and keep the rest.

**to farmers (ULT)****to some men who would care for it (UST)**

These **vine growers** were people who knew how to take care of vines and grapes.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [parable](#)
- [a vineyard](#)
- [a winepress](#)
- [a watchtower](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [parable that I will tell you. There was](#)
- [a vineyard](#)
- [a place to collect the juice that would come out of the grapes](#)
- [a tower in which someone could sit to guard that vineyard](#)

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> Listen to another [parable](#). There was a man, a landowner, who planted a [vineyard](#) and put a hedge around it and dug a [winepress](#) in it and built a [watchtower](#) and rented it out to farmers and went into another country.

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> "Listen to another [parable that I will tell you](#). There was a landowner who planted a [vineyard](#). He built a fence around it. He made a [place to collect the juice that would come out of the grapes](#). He also built a [tower in which someone could sit to guard that vineyard](#). He rented the vineyard to some men who would care for it and give him some of the grapes in return. Then he went away to another country.



## Matthew 21:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- fruit
- fruit
- season
- he sent
- servants
- to receive

### Translation Words - UST

- time to harvest
- grapes
- grapes that the vineyard had produced
- the landowner sent
- some of...servants
- to get

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Now when the fruit season approached, he sent his servants to the farmers to receive his fruit.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> When it was time to harvest the grapes, the landowner sent some of his servants to the men who were caring for the vineyard to get his share of the grapes that the vineyard had produced.

## Matthew 21:35

**his servants (ULT)**  
**the servants...one of them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the landowner's servants"

### Translation Words - ULT

- servants
- they stoned

### Translation Words - UST

- servants
- killed...by throwing stones at him

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> But the farmers having taken hold of his **servants**, one they beat, and one they killed, and one **they stoned**.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> But the renters seized the **servants**. They beat one of them, they killed another one, and **killed** a third one of them **by throwing stones at him**.

## Matthew 21:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- he sent
- servants
- likewise

### Translation Words - UST

- So the landowner sent
- servants
- the same way

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Again, he sent other servants, more than the first, but they did to them likewise.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> So the landowner sent more servants than he had sent the first time. The renters treated those servants the same way that they had treated the other servants.

## Matthew 21:37

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- he sent
- son
- son

### Translation Words - UST

- the landowner sent
- son
- son and give him my share of the grapes

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> But afterward, he sent to them {his} own son, saying, 'They will respect my son.'

### UST

<sup>37</sup> After he heard about this, the landowner sent his own son to the renters to get his share of the grapes. When he sent him, he said to himself, 'They will certainly respect my son and give him my share of the grapes.'

## Matthew 21:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- heir
- have
- inheritance

### Translation Words - UST

- his son arriving
- man who will inherit this vineyard
- divide the...among
- property

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> But the farmers, having seen the son, said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, that we might kill him and have his inheritance.'

### UST

<sup>38</sup> But when the renters saw his son arriving, they said to each other, 'This is the man who will inherit this vineyard! Let us join together and kill him and divide the property among ourselves.'

## Matthew 21:39

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- they threw him out
- vineyard

### Translation Words - UST

- dragged him
- vineyard

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> And having laid hold of him, they threw him out from the vineyard and killed {him}.

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> So they grabbed him, dragged him outside the vineyard, and killed him.

## Matthew 21:40

### Therefore (ULT)

### Now I ask you, when (UST)

The word **Therefore** indicates that what follows is the result of what has happened in the previous verse. (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- owner
- of...vineyard

### Translation Words - UST

- landowner
- to his vineyard

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> Therefore, when the [owner](#) of the [vineyard](#) comes, what will he do to those farmers?"

### UST

<sup>40</sup> Now I ask you, when the [landowner](#) returns [to his vineyard](#), what do you think he will do to those renters?"

## Matthew 21:41

### They say to him (ULT)

### The people replied (UST)

Matthew does not make clear who answered Jesus. If you need to specify an audience you can translate as "The people said to Jesus."

### Translation Words - ULT

- He will...destroy
- vineyard
- fruit
- season

### Translation Words - UST

- He will thoroughly destroy those wicked men
- vineyard
- grapes
- are ripe

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> They say to him, "He will severely **destroy** those evil ones, and will rent out the **vineyard** to other farmers who will give him the **fruit** at their **season**."

### UST

<sup>41</sup> The people replied, "He will **thoroughly destroy those wicked men!** Then he will rent the **vineyard** to others. They will give him his share of the **grapes** when they **are ripe**."





## **Matthew 21:42**

**in...A stone which the builders rejected, this has become {the} head of {the} corner. This came about from {the} Lord, and it is marvelous...our eyes (ULT)**

**in...The men who were building a large building rejected a certain stone. But others put that same stone in its proper place, and it has become the most important stone of the building. The Lord has done this, and we marvel as we...look at it (UST)**

Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that God will honor the one whom the religious leaders reject.

### Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus begins to explain the parable of the rebellious servants.

**Jesus says to them (ULT)**

**Jesus said to them, "You need to think carefully about these words that (UST)**

It is unclear to whom Jesus asks the following question. If you need to make **them** specific, use the same audience as you did in 21:41.

**Did you never read in the Scriptures, 'A stone which the builders rejected, this has become {the} head of {the} corner. This came about from {the} Lord, and it is marvelous in our eyes (ULT)**

**you have read in the scriptures: 'The men who were building a large building rejected a certain stone. But others put that same stone in its proper place, and it has become the most important stone of the building. The Lord has done this, and we marvel as we look at it (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to make his audience think deeply about what this scripture means. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Think about what you have read in the scriptures, 'The stone which the builders rejected, this has become the head of the corner. This was from the Lord, and it is marvelous in our eyes.'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Jesus says to them, "Did you never read in the [Scriptures](#), 'A stone which the builders [rejected](#), this has become [{the} head of {the} corner](#). This came about from [{the} Lord](#), and it is [marvelous](#) in our eyes?"

### UST

<sup>42</sup> Jesus said to them, "You need to think carefully about these words that you have read in the [scriptures](#): 'The men who were building a large building [rejected](#) a certain stone. But others put that same stone in its proper place, and it has become the [most important stone of the building](#). [The Lord](#) has done this, and [we marvel as we look at it](#).'"

**A stone which the builders rejected, this has become {the} head of {the} corner (ULT)**

**The men who were building a large building rejected a certain stone. But others put that same stone in its proper place, and it has become the most important (UST)**

Jesus is quoting from the Psalms. This is a metaphor that means the religious leaders, like builders, will reject Jesus, but God will make him the most important in his kingdom, like the cornerstone in a building. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**has become {the} head of {the} corner (ULT)  
in its proper place, and it has become the most important (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "is now the cornerstone" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**This came about from {the} Lord (ULT)  
stone of the building. The Lord has done this (UST)**

Alternate translation: "The Lord has caused this great change"

**it is marvelous in our eyes (ULT)  
we marvel as we look at it (UST)**

Here, **in our eyes** refers to seeing. Alternate translation: "it is wonderful to see" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Scriptures](#)
- [rejected](#)
- [the} head](#)
- [the} head...of {the} corner](#)
- [the} Lord](#)
- [marvelous](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [scriptures](#)
- [rejected](#)
- [most important](#)
- [most important](#)
- [stone of the building. The Lord](#)
- [we marvel as](#)

## Matthew 21:43

**I say to you (ULT)**

**I am telling you (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

**to you (ULT)**

**you (UST)**

Here, **you** is plural. Jesus was speaking to the religious leaders who had rejected him. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**the kingdom of God will be taken away from you and will be given to a nation (ULT)**

**God...will no longer let...you be the people who belong to him. Instead, he will take as his own a people (UST)**

Here, **kingdom of God** refers to God's rule as king. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will reject you and he will be king over people from other nations" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the kingdom of God will be taken away from you and will be given to a nation (ULT)**

**God...will no longer let...you be the people who belong to him. Instead, he will take as his own a people (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will take his kingdom away from you and will give it to a nation" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**producing its fruits (ULT)**

**who do what he requires them to do (UST)**

Here, **fruits** is a metaphor for "results" or "outcomes." Alternate translation: "that produces good results" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [kingdom of God](#)
- [to a nation](#)
- [fruits](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God...be the people who belong...to him](#)
- [a people](#)
- [what he requires them to do](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> For this reason I say to you that the [kingdom of God](#) will be taken away from you and will be given to [a nation](#) producing its [fruits](#).

### UST

<sup>43</sup> So I am telling you this: [God](#) will no longer let you [be the people who belong to him](#). Instead, he will take as his own [a people](#) who do [what he requires them to do](#).

**Matthew 21:44**

**the one having fallen on this stone will be broken to pieces (ULT)**

**Anyone who falls...on this stone will break into pieces (UST)**

Here, **this stone** is the same stone as in [21:42](#). This is a metaphor that means the Christ will destroy anyone who rebels against him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the one having fallen on this stone will be broken to pieces (ULT)**

**Anyone who falls...on this stone will break into pieces (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the stone will break into pieces anyone who falls on it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**but on whomever it falls, it will crush him (ULT)**  
**and the stone will crush anyone on whom it falls (UST)**

This means basically the same thing as the previous sentence. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**but on whomever it falls, it will crush him (ULT)**  
**and the stone will crush anyone on whom it falls (UST)**

This is a metaphor that means the Christ will have the final judgment and will destroy everyone who rebels against him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>44</sup> And the one having fallen on this stone will be broken to pieces, but on whomever it falls, it will crush him."

**UST**

<sup>44</sup> Anyone who falls on this stone will break into pieces, and the stone will crush anyone on whom it falls."

## Matthew 21:45

### Connecting Statement:

The religious leaders react to the parable that Jesus told.

### his parables (ULT) this parable, they (UST)

Alternate translation: "Jesus' parables"

### Translation Words - ULT

- chief priests
- Pharisees
- parables
- understood

### Translation Words - UST

- chief priests
- elders who were Pharisees
- parable
- realized

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> And the chief priests and the Pharisees, having heard his parables, understood that he is speaking about them.

### UST

<sup>45</sup> When the chief priests and the elders who were Pharisees heard this parable, they realized that he was accusing them because they did not believe that he was the Messiah.

## Matthew 21:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- seeking
- to arrest
- they were afraid
- a prophet

### Translation Words - UST

- They wanted
- to seize
- they were afraid of
- a prophet

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> And seeking to arrest him, they were afraid of the crowds, because they regarded him as a prophet.

### UST

<sup>46</sup> They wanted to seize him, but they did not do so because they were afraid of what the crowds would do if they did that, because the crowds considered that Jesus was a prophet.



## Matthew 22

### Matthew 22 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in verse 44, which are words from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Wedding Feast

In the parable of the wedding feast ([Matthew 22:1-14](#)), Jesus taught that when God offers to save a person, that person needs to accept the offer. Jesus spoke of life with God as a feast that a king prepares for his son, who has just gotten married. In addition, Jesus emphasized that not everyone whom God invites will properly prepare themselves to come to the feast. God will throw these people out from the feast.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Implicit information

Speakers usually do not say things that they think their hearers already understand. When the king in the parable said, "My oxen and fattened calves have been killed" ([Matthew 22:4](#)), he assumed that the hearers would understand that those who had killed the animals had also cooked them.

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. To the Jews, the ancestors were the masters of the descendants, but in one psalm David calls one of his descendants "Lord." Jesus tells the Jewish leaders that this is a paradox, saying, "If David then calls the Christ 'Lord,' how is he David's son?" ([Matthew 22:45](#)).

## Matthew 22:1

### Connecting Statement:

To rebuke the religious leaders and to illustrate their unbelief, Jesus tells a parable about a marriage feast. (See: [Parables](#))

### to them (ULT)

### This is (UST)

Alternate translation: "to the people"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [parables](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [parables](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And answering, [Jesus](#) again spoke to them in [parables](#), saying,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then [Jesus](#) told the Jewish leaders other [parables](#). This is one of those parables.

## Matthew 22:2

### The kingdom of the heavens is like (ULT) God ruling from heaven is like (UST)

This is the beginning of a parable. See how you translated this in [13:24](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- kingdom of the heavens
- of the heavens
- is like
- a king
- a wedding feast
- for...son

#### Translation Words - UST

- God ruling from heaven
- God ruling from heaven
- is like
- a king
- a wedding feast
- for...son

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "The kingdom of the heavens is like a man, a king, who prepared a wedding feast for his son.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> "God ruling from heaven is like a king who told his servants that they should make a wedding feast for his son.

## Matthew 22:3

**the ones {that} had been invited (ULT)  
the people whom he had invited that it was  
time for them (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the people the king had invited” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- he sent out
- servants
- to call
- had been invited
- wedding feast

### Translation Words - UST

- the feast was ready, the king sent
- servants
- to tell
- had invited that it was time for them
- wedding feast. The servants went out and told the people

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And he sent out his servants to call the ones {that} had been invited to the wedding feast, but they were not willing to come.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> When the feast was ready, the king sent his servants to tell the people whom he had invited that it was time for them to come to the wedding feast. The servants went out and told the people. But the people who had been invited did not want to come.



## **Matthew 22:4**

**servants, saying, 'Tell the ones {that} have been invited (ULT)  
servants...tell those people to come to the feast. He said to those servants (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "servants, saying, 'Tell those whom I have invited'" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**servants, saying, 'Tell the ones {that} have been invited (ULT)  
servants...tell those people to come to the feast. He said to those servants (UST)**

You can state this direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "servants, ordering them to tell those whom he invited" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**Behold (ULT)  
the (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

**My oxen and fattened calves have been killed (ULT)  
I...The oxen and the fattened calves have been butchered and cooked (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "My servants have killed my oxen and my fattened calves" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**My oxen and fattened calves have been killed (ULT)  
I...The oxen and the fattened calves have been butchered and cooked (UST)**

It is implied that the animals are cooked and ready to eat. Alternate translation: "My servants have killed and cooked my oxen and my fattened calves" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**my...oxen and fattened calves (ULT)  
Say to the people whom I invited to come to the feast...The oxen and the fattened calves (UST)**

Alternate translation: "My best oxen and calves for eating"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [he sent](#)
- [servants](#)
- [wedding feasts](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> Again [he sent](#) other [servants](#), saying, "Tell the ones {that} have been invited, "Behold, I have prepared my dinner. My oxen and fattened calves have been killed, and all {things} are ready. Come to the [wedding feasts](#)."

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> [So the king sent](#) other [servants](#) to again tell those people to come to the feast. He said to those servants, "Say to the people whom I invited to come to the feast, "This is what the king says to you, 'I have prepared the meal. The oxen and the fattened calves have been butchered and cooked. Everything is ready. It is time now for you to come to the [wedding feast!](#)'"

## Translation Words - UST

- So the king sent
- servants
- wedding feast



## Matthew 22:5

**But they, having paid no attention (ULT)  
But when the servants told them...they  
disregarded what the servants said. Some of  
them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But the guests the king invited, ignoring the invitation"

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But they, having paid no attention, went away, one to {his} own field and one to his business.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> But when the servants told them that, they disregarded what the servants said. Some of them went to their own fields. Others went to their places of business.

## Matthew 22:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having seized](#)
- [servants](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [seized](#)
- [king's servants](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But the others, [having seized](#) his [servants](#), treated {them} shamefully and killed {them}.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> The rest of them [seized](#) the [king's servants](#), mistreated them, and killed them.

## Matthew 22:7

### he killed those murderers (ULT) and kill those murderers (UST)

It is implied that it was the king's soldiers who killed the **murderers**.  
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- king
- having sent
- he killed

#### Translation Words - UST

- king heard what had happened, he
- He commanded...to go
- and kill

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But the king was provoked, and having sent his soldiers, he killed those murderers and burned their city.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> When the king heard what had happened, he became furious. He commanded his soldiers to go and kill those murderers and burn their city.

## Matthew 22:8

### the ones {that...had been invited (ULT)

### the...people who were invited (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom I invited" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to...servants
- wedding feast
- worthy

### Translation Words - UST

- servants
- wedding feast
- do...deserve

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then he says to his [servants](#), 'The [wedding feast](#) is ready, but the ones {that} had been invited were not [worthy](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> After his soldiers had done that, the king said to his other [servants](#), 'I have prepared the [wedding feast](#), but the people who were invited do not [deserve](#) to come to it.

## Matthew 22:9

### the crossings of the roads (ULT) the intersections of the main roads (UST)

The king is sending the servants to the place where they are most likely to find people. Alternate translation: “the crossroads” or “where the main roads of the city cross”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [wedding feasts](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [wedding feast](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Therefore, go to the crossings of the roads and invite as many as you find to the [wedding feasts](#).’

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> So go to the intersections of the main roads. Tell whomever you find that they should come to the [wedding feast](#).’

## Matthew 22:10

**And...both evil...good (ULT)  
there, and they...They gathered both bad  
people and good people (UST)**

Alternate translation: "both the good people and the bad people"

**and the wedding hall was filled {with those}  
reclining to eat (ULT)  
where the wedding feast was about to take  
place. The hall was filled with people (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "So the guests filled the wedding hall" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the wedding hall (ULT)  
where the wedding feast was about to take place. The hall (UST)**

A **wedding hall** was a large room where weddings were performed.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [servants](#)
- [gathered together](#)
- [evil](#)
- [good](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [servants](#)
- [gathered](#)
- [bad people](#)
- [good people](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And those [servants](#), having gone out to the roads, [gathered together](#) all whom they found, both [evil](#) and [good](#), and the wedding hall was filled {with those} reclining to eat.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> So the [servants](#) went there, and they [gathered](#) everyone they could find. They gathered both [bad people](#) and [good people](#). They brought them into the hall where the wedding feast was about to take place. The hall was filled with people.

## Matthew 22:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- king
- wearing
- clothes

### Translation Words - UST

- king
- wearing clothes
- that had been provided

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But the king, having come in to look at the ones reclining to eat, saw there a man not wearing wedding clothes.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> But when the king went into the hall to see the guests, he saw someone who was not wearing clothes that had been provided for the guests to wear at a wedding feast.

**Matthew 22:12**

**how did you come in here, not having wedding clothes (ULT)  
you should never have entered this hall, because you are not wearing the clothes that guests wear at wedding feasts (UST)**

The king uses a question to scold the guest. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "you are not wearing proper clothes for a wedding. You should not be here." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**he...was speechless (ULT)  
because he did not know what to say...The man did not say anything (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the man was silent"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [clothes](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the clothes](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> And he said to him, 'Friend, how did you come in here, not having wedding [clothes](#)?' But he was speechless.

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> The king said to him, 'Friend, you should never have entered this hall, because you are not wearing [the clothes](#) that guests wear at wedding feasts!' The man did not say anything, because he did not know what to say.



## Matthew 22:13

### Having bound him foot and hand (ULT)

### Tie this person's feet and hands (UST)

Alternate translation: "After you have tied him up so that he cannot move his hands or feet"

### the outer darkness (ULT)

### total darkness, where people...of the pain they are in (UST)

Here, **outer darkness** is a metonym for the place where God sends those who reject them. This is a place that is completely separated from God forever. See how you translated this in [8:12](#). Alternate translation: "the dark place away from God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### weeping and grinding of the teeth (ULT)

### cry out and gnash their teeth because (UST)

Here, **the grinding of teeth** is symbolic action, representing extreme sadness and suffering. See how you translated this in [8:12](#). Alternate translation: "weeping and expressing their extreme suffering" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- king
- to the servants
- Having bound
- hand
- throw...out
- darkness

## Translation Words - UST

- king
- servants
- Tie
- hands
- and throw
- darkness, where people

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then the king said to the servants, 'Having bound him foot and hand, throw him out into the outer darkness, where there will be weeping and grinding of the teeth.'

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Then the king said to his servants, 'Tie this person's feet and hands and throw him outside where there is total darkness, where people cry out and gnash their teeth because of the pain they are in.'

## Matthew 22:14

**For many are called, but few chosen (ULT)  
Then Jesus said, “The point of this parable is that God has invited many to come to him, but only a few people are the ones whom he has chosen to be there (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “For God invites many people, but he only chooses a few” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**For (ULT)  
many (UST)**

Here, **For** marks a transition. Jesus has ended the parable and will now explain the point of the parable.

### Translation Words - ULT

- called
- chosen

### Translation Words - UST

- Then Jesus said, “The point of this parable is that God has invited...to come to him
- chosen to be there

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For many are called, but few chosen.”

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> Then Jesus said, “The point of this parable is that God has invited many to come to him, but only a few people are the ones whom he has chosen to be there.”

## Matthew 22:15

### Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of the religious leaders trying to trap Jesus with several difficult questions. Here the Pharisees ask him about paying taxes to Caesar.

### how they might entrap him in {his} words (ULT) in order to...could cause him to say something that would enable them to accuse him (UST)

Alternate translation: "how they could cause Jesus to say something wrong so they could arrest him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- counsel
- they might entrap

### Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- together...plan how they
- could cause him to say something that would enable them to accuse

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Then having gone, the Pharisees took counsel how they might entrap him in {his} words.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> After Jesus said that, the Pharisees met together in order to plan how they could cause him to say something that would enable them to accuse him.

## Matthew 22:16

### their disciples...the Herodians (ULT) some of their disciples along with...those of the Herodian party (UST)

The **disciples** of the Pharisees supported paying taxes only to Jewish authorities. The **Herodians** supported paying taxes to the Roman authorities. It is implied that the Pharisees believed that no matter what Jesus said, he would offend one of these groups. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Herodians (ULT) Herodian party (UST)

The **Herodians** were officials and followers of the Jewish king Herod. He was friends with Roman authorities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### for you do not look at the face of men

Alternate translation: "you do not show special honor to anyone" or "you do not consider anyone more important than anyone else"

### Translation Words - ULT

- they send
- disciples
- Teacher
- we know
- truthful
- truth
- you teach
- of God
- the face

### Translation Words - UST

- They sent
- disciples
- Teacher
- we know
- truthful
- truth
- God
- teach
- what kind of...they are

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> And **they send** to him their **disciples** with the Herodians, saying, "Teacher, **we know** that you are **truthful**, and **you teach** the way of God in **truth**, and it is not a concern to you about anyone, for you do not look at **the face** of men.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> **They sent** to him some of their **disciples** along with those of the Herodian party. Those said to Jesus, "Teacher, **we know** that you are **truthful** and that you teach the **truth** about what God wants us to do. We also know that you do not change what you **teach** because of what someone says about you, no matter **what kind of** person **they are**.

## Matthew 22:17

### to give a poll tax to Caesar (ULT) that we pay taxes to the Roman government (UST)

People did not pay taxes directly to **Caesar** but to one of his **tax** collectors. Alternate translation: "to pay the taxes that Caesar requires" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Is it lawful](#)
- [a poll tax](#)
- [to Caesar](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Is it right](#)
- [taxes](#)
- [to the Roman government](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Therefore, tell us, what do you think? [Is it lawful](#) to give a poll tax to Caesar, or not?"

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> So tell us what you think about this matter: [Is it right](#) that we pay [taxes to the Roman government](#), or not?"

## Matthew 22:18

**Why are you testing me, you hypocrites (ULT)  
what...to them, "You are hypocrites; you want  
me to say something for which you can accuse  
me (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to scold those who were trying to trap him. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Do not test me, you hypocrites!" or "I know that you hypocrites are only trying to test me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- having perceived
- wickedness
- are you testing
- you hypocrites

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- knew that
- really wanted to do was evil. They were wanting him to say something that would get him
- to them, "You are hypocrites
- you want me to say something for which you can accuse me

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> But Jesus, having perceived their wickedness, said, "Why are you testing me, you hypocrites?"

### UST

<sup>18</sup> But Jesus knew that what they really wanted to do was evil. They were wanting him to say something that would get him in trouble with either the Jewish authorities or the Roman authorities. So he said to them, "You are hypocrites; you want me to say something for which you can accuse me."

## Matthew 22:19

### a denarius (ULT)

### a coin called a denarius (UST)

The **denarius** was a Roman coin worth one day's wages. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the poll tax](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [with which people pay the Roman tax](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Show me the coin [of the poll tax.](#)"  
And they brought a denarius to him.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Show me one of the coins [with which people pay the Roman tax.](#)" So they showed him a coin called a denarius.

## Matthew 22:20

**to them (ULT)**

**to them (UST)**

Here, **them** refers to the Herodians and the disciples of the Pharisees.

**Whose image and inscription {is} this (ULT)**

**Whose picture is on this coin? And whose name is on it (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to get the people to think deeply about what he is saying. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Tell me whose image and name you see on this coin." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [image](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [picture](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> And he says to them, "Whose [image](#) and inscription {is} this?"

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> He said to them, "Whose [picture](#) is on this coin? And whose name is on it?"



## Matthew 22:21

### Caesar's (ULT)

#### Caesar, the head of (UST)

You can make clear the understood information in their response.  
Alternate translation: "The coin has Caesar's image and name on it"  
(See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Caesar's...the {things (ULT)

#### Caesar, the head of the Roman government (UST)

Alternate translation: "the things that belong to Caesar"

### the {things...of God (ULT)

#### the Roman government...to God (UST)

Alternate translation: "the things that belong to God"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Caesar's](#)
- [of Caesar \(2\)](#)
- [to Caesar](#)
- [of God](#)
- [to God](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Caesar, the head of](#)
- [to the government \(2\)](#)
- [what they require](#)
- [to God](#)
- [what he requires](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> They say, "[Caesar's](#)." Then he says to them, "Therefore, give [to Caesar](#) the {things} [of Caesar](#), and [to God](#) the {things} [of God](#)."

### UST

<sup>21</sup> They answered, "It has the picture and name of [Caesar, the head of](#) the Roman government." Then he said to them, "So give [to the government what they require](#), and give [to God what he requires](#)."

## Matthew 22:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- they marveled

### Translation Words - UST

- they marveled that his answer did not enable anyone to accuse him

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And having heard {it}, they marveled, and having left him, they went away.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> When those men heard Jesus say that, they marveled that his answer did not enable anyone to accuse him. Then they left Jesus.

## Matthew 22:23

### Connecting Statement:

The Sadducees try to trap Jesus by asking him a difficult question about marriage and the resurrection of the dead.

### Translation Words - ULT

- day
- Sadducees
- resurrection

### Translation Words - UST

- same day
- some Sadducees
- people will become alive again after they die

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> On that day Sadducees, saying there is no resurrection, came to him, and questioned him,

### UST

<sup>23</sup> During that same day, some Sadducees came to Jesus. They are a Jewish group who do not believe that people will become alive again after they die. They asked Jesus,

## Matthew 22:24

**Teacher, Moses said, 'If someone has died (ULT)**

**Teacher...Moses wrote in the scriptures, 'If a man dies who (UST)**

The religious leaders were asking Jesus about what **Moses** had written in the Scriptures. If your language does not allow quotes within quotes, you could state this as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Teacher, Moses said that if a man dies" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**his brother...his...wife...his...for...brother (ULT)**

**his brother...his...the...widow...his...by him.**

**The child will be considered the descendant of the man who died (UST)**

Here, **his** refers to the dead man.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Teacher](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [has died](#)
- [children](#)
- [brother](#)
- [for...brother](#)
- [will raise up](#)
- [seed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Teacher](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [dies who](#)
- [any children](#)
- [brother](#)
- [him. The child will be considered the descendant of the man who died](#)
- [she can have](#)
- [a child](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> saying, "Teacher, Moses said, 'If someone [has died](#), not having [children](#), his [brother](#) will marry his wife and [will raise up seed](#) for his [brother](#).'

### UST

<sup>24</sup> "Teacher, Moses wrote in the scriptures, 'If a man [dies who](#) did not have [any children](#), his [brother](#) must marry the dead man's widow in order that [she can have a child](#) by [him](#). [The child will be considered the descendant of the man who died](#), and in that way the dead man will have descendants.'

## Matthew 22:25

### the first (ULT)

### The oldest one (UST)

Alternate translation: "the oldest" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [to...brother](#)
- [died](#)
- [seed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [seven boys in a family](#)
- [So the second brother](#)
- [any children](#)
- [he died](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But there were among us seven [brothers](#), and the first, having married, [died](#). And not having [seed](#), he left his wife to his [brother](#).

### UST

<sup>25</sup> There were [seven boys in a family](#). The oldest one married someone. He and his wife did not have [any children](#), and [he died](#). [So the second brother](#) married the widow. But he also died without having a child.

## Matthew 22:26

**the second...the third...the seventh (ULT)  
to the third brother, and...to the third brother,  
and...to the other four brothers, who one by  
one married this same woman (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the next oldest ... the next oldest ... the youngest" or "his oldest younger brother ... that brother's oldest younger brother ... the youngest" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Likewise](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The same thing happened](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> [Likewise](#) also, the second and the third, up to the seventh.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> [The same thing happened](#) to the third brother, and also to the other four brothers, who one by one married this same woman.

## Matthew 22:27

**last...of all (ULT)**

**Last...of all (UST)**

Alternate translation: "after every brother had died"

### Translation Words - ULT

- died

### Translation Words - UST

- died

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> And last of all, the woman **died**.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> Last of all, the woman also **died**.

## Matthew 22:28

### Therefore (ULT)

### So (UST)

The Sadducees use the word **Therefore** to shift from the story about the seven brothers to their actual question.

### in the resurrection (ULT) at the time when God will raise people from the dead (UST)

Alternate translation: "when dead people come back to life"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [resurrection](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [time when God will raise people from the dead](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Therefore, in the [resurrection](#), whose wife of the seven will she be? For they all had her."

### UST

<sup>28</sup> So, at the [time when God will raise people from the dead](#), which of the seven brothers do you think will be her husband? Keep in mind that they had all been married to her."



## Matthew 22:29

### You have been led astray (ULT) You are certainly wrong in (UST)

It is implied that Jesus means that they are mistaken about what they think about the resurrection. Alternate translation: "You are mistaken about the resurrection" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### You have been led astray (ULT) You are certainly wrong in (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "You are mistaken" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the power of God (ULT) know that God has the power to make people alive again (UST)

Alternate translation: "what God is able to do"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- You have been led astray
- knowing
- scriptures
- power
- of God

#### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- You are certainly wrong in
- You do...know
- what is written in the scriptures. You also
- know that God has
- the power to make people alive again

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> But answering, Jesus said to them, "You have been led astray, not knowing the scriptures or the power of God.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> Jesus replied to them, "You are certainly wrong in what you are thinking. You do not know what is written in the scriptures. You also do not know that God has the power to make people alive again.

## Matthew 22:30

### in...the resurrection (ULT)

**The fact is that the woman will not be the wife of any of them...The fact is that the woman will not be the wife of any of them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "when dead people rise back to life"

### they neither marry (ULT)

**because after God causes all dead people to live again, no one will be married (UST)**

Alternate translation: "people do not marry"

### nor are given in marriage (ULT)

**will be married (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "nor will people give their children in marriage" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- resurrection
- like
- angels
- heaven

## Translation Words - UST

- The fact is that the woman will not be the wife of any of them
- like
- the angels
- heaven. They do not marry

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> For in the resurrection they neither marry nor are given in marriage, but they are like angels in heaven.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> The fact is that the woman will not be the wife of any of them, because after God causes all dead people to live again, no one will be married. Instead, people will be like the angels in heaven. They do not marry.

## Matthew 22:31

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins asking a question to show that people who have died will live again.

**have you not read {what} was spoken to you by God, saying (ULT)  
you have read it. Long after Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob had died, God said to Moses (UST)**

This is the first part of a rhetorical question that continues into the next verse. Jesus scolds the Sadducees by asking a question. He is not looking for an answer. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I know you have read what was spoken to you by God. You know that he said," (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**what} was spoken to you by God (ULT)  
you...have read it. Long after Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob had died...God (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "what God spoke to you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [resurrection](#)
- [of the dead](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [dead people](#)
- [becoming alive again, God said something about that. I am sure](#)
- [God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> But concerning the [resurrection of the dead](#), have you not read {what} was spoken to you by [God](#), saying,

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> But about [dead people becoming alive again](#), [God said something about that. I am sure](#) you have read it. Long after Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob had died, [God](#) said to Moses,



## **Matthew 22:32**

**I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob (ULT)**  
**I am the God whom Abraham worships, the God whom Isaac worships, and the God whom Jacob worships (UST)**

This is the end of the question that begins with the words **have you not read** in verse 31. Jesus asks this question to remind the religious leaders of what they know from scripture. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I know you have read it, but you do not seem to understand what God meant when he said he was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob (ULT)**  
**I am the God whom Abraham worships, the God whom Isaac worships, and the God whom Jacob worships (UST)**

You can translate this direct quotation as an indirect quotation. "God, who said to Moses that he is the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**of {the} dead, but of {the} living (ULT)**  
**dead people who worship...It is living people who worship him. So we are sure that their spirits are still alive (UST)**

If your language does not use the nominal adjectives **dead** and **living**, you can express them as adjectives. Alternate translation: "of dead people, but he is the God of living people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God \(2\)](#)
- [God \(3\)](#)
- [God \(4\)](#)
- [of Abraham](#)
- [of Isaac](#)
- [of Jacob](#)
- [of {the} dead](#)
- [of {the} living](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God \(2\)](#)
- [God \(3\)](#)
- [God \(4\)](#)
- [whom Abraham worships](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> 'I am the [God of Abraham](#), and the [God of Isaac](#), and the [God of Jacob](#)? God is not of {the} dead, but of {the} living.'

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> 'I am the [God whom Abraham worships](#), the [God whom Isaac worships](#), and the [God whom Jacob worships](#).' It is not [dead people who worship God](#). It is [living people who worship him](#). So we are sure that their spirits are still alive!"

- whom Isaac worships
- whom Jacob worships
- dead people who worship
- It is living people

## Matthew 22:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- were astonished
- teaching

### Translation Words - UST

- teach that
- they were amazed

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> And having heard {this}, the crowds were astonished at his teaching.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> When the crowds of people heard Jesus teach that, they were amazed.



## Matthew 22:34

### Connecting Statement:

A Pharisee who was an expert in the law tries to trap Jesus by asking him a difficult question about the greatest commandment.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- Sadducees
- gathered

### Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- Sadducees in such a way
- to respond to him, the Pharisees gathered

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> But the Pharisees, having heard that he had silenced the Sadducees, gathered together.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> But when the Pharisees heard that Jesus had answered the Sadducees in such a way that the Sadducees could not think of anything that they might say to respond to him, the Pharisees gathered together to plan what they would say to him. Then they approached him.

## Matthew 22:35

### a lawyer (ULT)

### a man who was a lawyer (UST)

This is a Pharisee who had special skill in understanding the law of Moses. Alternate translation: "an expert in the law"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [testing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He wanted to debate](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> And one of them, a lawyer, questioned {him}, [testing](#) him—

### UST

<sup>35</sup> One of them was a man who was a lawyer, who had studied well the laws that God gave Moses. [He wanted to debate](#) Jesus. He asked him,

## Matthew 22:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Teacher
- commandment
- law

### Translation Words - UST

- Teacher
- commandment
- laws that God gave Moses

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> "Teacher, which commandment {is} {the} greatest in the law?"

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> "Teacher, which commandment in the laws that God gave Moses is the most important?"

## Matthew 22:37

Jesus quotes a verse from Deuteronomy as the greatest commandment.

**with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind (ULT)  
as...with all your inner being...in all that you feel, and in all that you think (UST)**

These three phrases are used together to mean “completely” or “earnestly.” (See: [Doublet](#))

**with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind (ULT)  
as...with all your inner being...in all that you feel, and in all that you think (UST)**

Here, **heart** and **soul** are metonyms for a person’s inner being. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Love](#)
- [the} Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [soul](#)
- [mind](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You must love](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [inner being](#)
- [feel](#)
- [think](#)

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> But he said to him, “Love {the} Lord your God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind.’

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> Jesus quoted the scriptures as he replied, “You must love the Lord your God with all your inner being. Show that you love him in all that you desire, in all that you feel, and in all that you think.’

## Matthew 22:38

**the great and first commandment (ULT)**  
**the most important commandment in the**  
**laws that God gave Moses (UST)**

Here, **great** and **first** mean the same thing. They emphasize that this is the most important **commandment**. (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [commandment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [commandment](#)

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> This is the great and first [commandment](#).

#### UST

<sup>38</sup> That is the most important [commandment](#) in the laws that God gave Moses.

## Matthew 22:39

**Love your neighbor as yourself (ULT)  
must love the people you come in contact  
with as much as you love yourself (UST)**

Jesus quotes a verse from Leviticus as the second greatest commandment.

**your neighbor (ULT)  
the people you come in contact with (UST)**

Here, **neighbor** means more than just those who live nearby. Jesus means a person must **love** all people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- is} like
- as
- Love
- neighbor

### Translation Words - UST

- The next most important commandment that everyone must surely obey is
- as much as
- must love
- people you come in contact with

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> Now a second {is} like it—'Love your neighbor as yourself.'

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> The next most important commandment that everyone must surely obey is: 'You must love the people you come in contact with as much as you love yourself.'

## Matthew 22:40

**On these two commandments hang the whole law and the prophets (ULT)**

**These two commandments are the basis of every law that Moses wrote in the scriptures and also of all that the prophets wrote (UST)**

Here the phrase **the whole law and the prophets** refers to all of Scripture. Alternate translation: "Everything that Moses and the prophets wrote in the scriptures is based on these two commandments" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [commandments](#)
- [law](#)
- [prophets](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [commandments](#)
- [law](#)
- [prophets wrote](#)

#### ULT

<sup>40</sup> On these two [commandments](#) hang the whole [law](#) and the [prophets](#)."

#### UST

<sup>40</sup> These two [commandments](#) are the basis of every [law](#) that Moses wrote in the scriptures and also of all that the [prophets wrote](#)."

## Matthew 22:41

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus asks the Pharisees a difficult question in order to stop their attempts to trap him.

### Now (ULT)

### While (UST)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story when Jesus asks the religious leaders a question.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- having been gathered together
- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- were still gathered together
- near Jesus, he

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Now the Pharisees having been gathered together, Jesus questioned them,

### UST

<sup>41</sup> While the Pharisees were still gathered together near Jesus, he asked them,



## Matthew 22:42

### son (ULT) descendant (UST)

Here, **son** means “descendant.”

### Of David (ULT) the descendant of King David (UST)

In this reply, it is understood that they are saying whose son the Christ will be. Alternate translation: “He is the son of David” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [son](#)
- [Of David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Messiah](#)
- [descendant](#)
- [descendant of King David](#)

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> saying, “What do you think about the [Christ](#)? Whose [son](#) is he?” They say to him, “[Of David](#).”

### UST

<sup>42</sup> “What do you think about the [Messiah](#)? Whose [descendant](#) is he?” They said to him, “He is the [descendant of King David](#).”

## Matthew 22:43

### General Information:

In verses 43-44, Jesus quotes from the Psalms to show that the Christ is more than just “the son of David.”

### How then does David in {the} Spirit call him Lord (ULT)

Jesus begins to ask a question to make the religious leaders think deeply about the Psalm he is about to quote. The question continues into the next verse. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “Then, tell me why David in the Spirit calls him Lord, saying” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### David in {the} Spirit (ULT)

### King David’s descendant...when David...the Holy Spirit told him to say (UST)

This means the Holy Spirit is influencing what David says. Alternate translation: “David, whom the Holy Spirit is inspiring”

### does...call...him (ULT)

### should not have called...him (UST)

Here, **him** refers to the Christ, who is also the descendant of David.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the} Spirit](#)
- [does...call](#)
- [Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [King David’s descendant](#)
- [should not have called](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [the Holy Spirit told him to say](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> He says to them, “How then does [David](#) in [{the} Spirit](#) call him [Lord](#), saying,

### UST

<sup>43</sup> Jesus said to them, “If the Messiah is [King David’s descendant](#), then David [should not have called](#) him ‘[Lord](#)’ when David was saying what [the Holy Spirit](#) told him to say.

## Matthew 22:44

### The} Lord said (ULT) David wrote this in the scriptures about the Messiah: 'God said (UST)

Here, **Lord** refers to God the Father.

### to my Lord (ULT) to my Lord (UST)

Here, **Lord** refers to the Christ. Also, **my** refers to David. This means the Christ is superior to David, because he is David's "Lord."

### Sit at my right hand (ULT) Sit here beside me on my right, where I will greatly honor you (UST)

To sit at the **right hand** of God is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### until I might put your enemies under your feet (ULT) while I put your enemies under your feet (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "until I conquer your enemies" or "until I make your enemies bow down before you" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The} Lord](#)
- [to...Lord](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [enemies](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David wrote this in the scriptures about the Messiah](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [right, where I will greatly honor you](#)
- [your enemies under](#)

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> {The} Lord said to my Lord, "Sit at my right hand, until I might put your enemies under your feet"?"

### UST

<sup>44</sup> David wrote this in the scriptures about the Messiah: 'God said to my Lord, "Sit here beside me on my right, where I will greatly honor you, while I put your enemies under your feet.'"

## Matthew 22:45

**If David therefore calls him 'Lord,' how is he his son (ULT)**

**So, since King David called the Messiah 'my Lord,' the Messiah cannot be just someone descended from David! He must be much greater than David (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to make the religious leaders think deeply about what he is saying. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation:

"David calls him 'Lord,' so the Christ has to be more than just a descendant of David." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> If [David](#) therefore [calls](#) him 'Lord,' how is he his [son](#)?"

### UST

<sup>45</sup> So, since [King David](#) [called](#) the Messiah 'my Lord,' the Messiah cannot be just [someone descended](#) from David! He must be much greater than David!"

**If David therefore calls him 'Lord (ULT)**

**So, since King David called the Messiah 'my Lord (UST)**

**David** referred to Jesus as **Lord** because Jesus was not only a descendant of David, but he was also superior to him.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [calls](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [son](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [King David](#)
- [called](#)
- [my Lord](#)
- [someone descended](#)

**Matthew 22:46**

**to answer him a word (ULT)**  
**one word to say to him in response. After that (UST)**

Here, **word** refers to what people say. Alternate translation: “to answer him anything” or “to answer him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to question him any longer (ULT)**  
**ever...to ask him another question to try to trap him (UST)**

It is implied that no one asked him the kind of questions that were intended to make him say something wrong so the religious leaders could arrest him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [day](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [ever...to ask him another question to try to trap him](#)

**ULT**

<sup>46</sup> And no one was able to answer him a word, nor did anyone dare from that [day](#) to question him any longer.

**UST**

<sup>46</sup> No one who heard what Jesus said was able to think of even one word to say to him in response. After that, no one else [ever](#) dared [to ask him another question to try to trap him](#).

## Matthew 23

### Matthew 23 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Hypocrites

Jesus calls the Pharisees hypocrites many times ([Matthew 23:13](#)) and carefully tells what he means by doing that. The Pharisees made rules that no one could actually obey, and then they persuaded the ordinary people that they were guilty because they could not obey the rules. Also, the Pharisees obeyed their own rules instead of obeying God's original commands in the law of Moses.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Name calling

In most cultures, it is wrong to insult people. The Pharisees took many of the words in this chapter as insults. Jesus called them "hypocrites," "blind guides," "fools," and "serpents" ([Matthew 23:16-17](#)). Jesus uses these words say that God would surely punish them because they were doing wrong.

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, "He who is greatest among you will be your servant" ([Matthew 23:11-12](#)).

## Matthew 23:1

### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that continues to [25:46](#), where Jesus teaches about salvation and the final judgment. Here he begins to warn the people about the scribes and Pharisees.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to...disciples](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then [Jesus](#) spoke to the crowds and to his [disciples](#),

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then [Jesus](#) said to the crowd and to his [disciples](#),

## Matthew 23:2

**sat in the seat of Moses (ULT)  
have made themselves the ones who  
interpret the laws that God had given Moses...  
for (UST)**

Here, **seat** represents the authority to rule and make judgments.  
Alternate translation: "have authority as Moses had" or "have  
authority to say what the law of Moses means" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [of Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The Pharisees](#)
- [men who teach our Jewish laws](#)
- [laws that God had given Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> saying, "The [scribes](#) and the [Pharisees](#)  
sat in the seat [of Moses](#)."

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> "The [Pharisees](#) and the [men who  
teach our Jewish laws](#) have made  
themselves the ones who interpret the  
[laws that God had given Moses](#) for the  
people of Israel."



## Matthew 23:3

**all...whatever...do and keep (ULT)**  
**Consequently, you...should...whatever they...  
do...that you must do (UST)**

Alternate translation: "all the things ... do them and observe them" or  
"everything ... do it and observe it"

### Translation Words - ULT

- keep
- works

### Translation Words - UST

- that you must do
- do what...do

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Therefore, all, whatever they command you, do and **keep**. But do not do according to their **works**, for they say, but do not do.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Consequently, you should do whatever they tell you **that you must do**. But do not **do what** they **do**, because they themselves do not do those things.

## Matthew 23:4

**And they tie up loads, heavy and difficult to carry, and they put {them} on the shoulders of men, but they themselves are not willing with their finger to move them (ULT)**

**They require you to obey many rules that are difficult to obey. But they themselves do not help anyone obey those rules. It is as if they were tying up very heavy loads and putting them on your shoulders for you to carry. But they will not even move one finger to help you carry them (UST)**

Here, **bind heavy burdens ... put them on people's shoulders** is a metaphor for the religious leaders making many difficult rules and making the people obey them. Alternate translation: "they make you obey many rules that are difficult to follow, but they do not lift a finger to help" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**And they tie up loads, heavy and difficult to carry, and they put {them} on the shoulders of men, but they themselves are not willing with their finger to move them (ULT)**

**They require you to obey many rules that are difficult to obey. But they themselves do not help anyone obey those rules. It is as if they were tying up very heavy loads and putting them on your shoulders for you to carry. But they will not even move one finger to help you carry them (UST)**

Here, **will not move a finger** is an idiom that means the religious leaders will not help the people. Alternate translation: "they make you obey many rules that are difficult to follow. But they do nothing at all to help the people follow the rules" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they tie up](#)
- [loads](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they were tying up](#)
- [loads](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And [they tie up loads](#), heavy and difficult to carry, and they put {them} on the shoulders of men, but they themselves are not willing with their finger to move them.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> They require you to obey many rules that are difficult to obey. But they themselves do not help anyone obey those rules. It is as if [they were tying up](#) very heavy [loads](#) and putting them on your shoulders for you to carry. But they will not even move one finger to help you carry them.

**Matthew 23:5**

**But they do all their deeds to be seen by men (ULT)**

**Whatever they do, they do those things so that other people will see (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "They do all their deeds so that people can see what they do" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**For they broaden their phylacteries and they lengthen {their} tassels (ULT) them and admire them. For example, they make extra wide the tiny boxes containing portions of scripture that they wear on their arms. They enlarge the tassels on their robes to make others think that they honor God (UST)**

Both of these actions are things the Pharisees do to appear as if they honor God more than other people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**phylacteries (ULT)  
tiny boxes containing portions of scripture (UST)**

The **phylacteries** were small leather boxes containing paper with scripture written on it.

**deeds...they lengthen...tassels (ULT)  
do...They enlarge...tassels on their robes to make others think that they honor God (UST)**

The Pharisees made the tassels on the bottom of their robes especially long to show their devotion to God.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [deeds](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [do](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> But they do all their [deeds](#) to be seen by men. For they broaden their phylacteries and they lengthen {their} tassels.

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> Whatever they [do](#), they do those things so that other people will see them and admire them. For example, they make extra wide the tiny boxes containing portions of scripture that they wear on their arms. They enlarge the tassels on their robes to make others think that they honor God.

## Matthew 23:6

**the chief places...the chief seats (ULT)**  
**the seats where the most important people**  
**sit...they want to sit in the same kind of places**  
**(UST)**

Both of these places are the places where the most important people sit.

### Translation Words - ULT

- they love
- banquets
- synagogues

### Translation Words - UST

- They want
- dinners they sit
- synagogues

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Now they love the chief places at the banquets and the chief seats in the synagogues,

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> They want other people to honor them. For example, at dinners they sit in the seats where the most important people sit. In the synagogues they want to sit in the same kind of places.

## Matthew 23:7

### the marketplaces (ULT)

### the markets (UST)

The **marketplace** was a large, open-air area where people bought and sold items.

### to be called 'Rabbi' by men (ULT)

### for people to call them 'Teacher' (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "for people to call them 'Rabbi.'" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to be called
- Rabbi

### Translation Words - UST

- to call
- them 'Teacher'

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> and the greetings in the marketplaces, and to be called 'Rabbi' by men.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> They love for people to greet them with great honor in the markets, and for people to call them 'Teacher.'

## Matthew 23:8

**But you should not be called (ULT)**  
**But you, my disciples, should not allow people to call (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "But you must not let anyone call you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**you...your...you (ULT)**  
**you...your...This means that you (UST)**

All occurrences of **you** and **your** are plural and refer to all of Jesus' followers. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**you...are brothers (ULT)**  
**you...are...brothers (UST)**

Here, **brothers** means "fellow believers."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [should...be called](#)
- [Rabbi](#)
- [brothers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [call](#)
- [you 'Teacher,' as they do other Jewish teachers. I am](#)
- [brothers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But you should not [be called 'Rabbi,'](#) for one is your teacher, and all you are [brothers](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> But you, my disciples, should not allow people to [call you 'Teacher,' as they do other Jewish teachers. I am](#) the only one who is really your teacher. This means that you are all equal to each other, like [brothers](#) and sisters.

**Matthew 23:9**

**you should not call any of you on the earth  
'father (ULT)**

**Do not honor anyone on earth by addressing  
him...Father...your (UST)**

Jesus is using hyperbole to tell his hearers that they must not allow even the most important people to be more important to them than God is. Alternate translation: "do not call any man on earth your father" or "do not say that any man on earth is your father" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**heavenly Father (ULT)**

**Father in heaven (UST)**

**Father** here is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [you should...call](#)
- [earth](#)
- [father](#)
- [heavenly](#)
- [Father](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [earth](#)
- [by addressing him](#)
- [Father](#)
- [Father](#)
- [in heaven](#)

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> And [you should](#) not [call](#) any of you on the [earth 'father,'](#) for you have one [heavenly Father](#).

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> Do not honor anyone on [earth by addressing him](#) as '[Father](#),' because God, your [Father in heaven](#), is your only true father.

## Matthew 23:10

### And you should not be called (ULT) Do not allow people to call you (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Also, do not let anyone call you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### for your teacher is one—the Christ (ULT) because the Messiah is your only teacher (UST)

When Jesus said **the Christ**, he was speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "for I, the Christ, am your only teacher" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [you should...be called](#)
- [Christ](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Do...allow people to call you](#)
- [Messiah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And [you should](#) not [be called](#) 'teacher,' for your teacher is one—the [Christ](#).

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Do not [allow people to call you](#) 'teacher,' because the [Messiah](#) is your only teacher.



## Matthew 23:11

**the...greatest among you (ULT)**  
**Instead...everyone among you who wants God to consider them as important (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the person who is most important among you"

**among you (ULT)**  
**among you (UST)**

Here, **you** is plural and refers to Jesus' followers. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [must serve others as servants do](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But the greatest among you will be your [servant](#).

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Instead, everyone among you who wants God to consider them as important [must serve others as servants do](#).

**Matthew 23:12****will exalt himself (ULT)  
try to make themselves important (UST)**

Alternate translation: "makes himself important"

**will be humbled (ULT)  
God will humble (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will humble" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**will be exalted (ULT)  
God will make them truly important (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will make important" or "God will honor" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- will exalt
- will be exalted
- will be humbled
- will humble

**Translation Words - UST**

- God will humble
- humble
- try to make themselves
- God will make them truly important

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> But whoever will exalt himself will be humbled, and whoever will humble himself will be exalted.

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> God will humble those who try to make themselves important. Those who humble themselves, God will make them truly important."



## **Matthew 23:13**

## General Information:

Jesus speaks of the **kingdom of the heavens** as if it were a house, the door into which the Pharisees have shut from the outside so that neither they nor anyone else can enter the house. If you do not keep the metaphor of the house, be sure to change all instances of “shut” and “enter.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## General Information:

The words **kingdom of the heavens**, which refer to God, who lives in heaven, occur only in Matthew, try to use your language's word for “heaven” in your translation. (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to rebuke the religious leaders because of their hypocrisy.

## But woe to you (ULT)

See how you translated this in [11:21](#). Alternate translation: “But how terrible it will be for you”

## you shut the kingdom of the heavens in front of men. For you do not enter in, nor do you permit the ones entering to enter (ULT)

The phrase **the kingdom of the heavens** refers to God ruling over his people. The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** is found only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use **heavens** in your translation. Alternate translation: “You prevent people from accepting God, who lives in heaven, as king, but you do not accept him as king, and you make it impossible for those about to accept him as king to do so” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## you shut the kingdom of the heavens in front of men. For you do not enter in, nor do you permit the ones entering to enter (ULT)

Jesus is speaking of the **kingdom of the heavens** as if it were a house, the door into which the Pharisees have shut from the outside so that neither they nor anyone else can enter the house. Alternate translation: “You make it impossible for people to enter the kingdom of heaven, but you do not enter it, and neither do you allow those about to enter to do so” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [woe](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)

## ULT

<sup>13</sup> But [woe](#) to you, [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#), [hypocrites](#)! For you shut the [kingdom of the heavens](#) in front of men. For you do not enter in, nor do you permit the ones entering to enter.

## UST

<sup>13</sup> “You teachers of the law and you Pharisees, you are hypocrites! How terribly God will punish you, because you refuse to come under the rule of heaven and also keep others out. You yourselves do not want to go in, and you keep others from entering, too.”

## Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- hypocrite, hypocrisy
- kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven
- Pharisee
- scribe
- woe

## Matthew 23:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>14[1]</sup> [Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you devour widows' houses, while you make a show of long prayers.] You will receive this greater condemnation.

### UST

<sup>14[1]</sup> [Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you devour widows' houses, while you make a show of long prayers.] You will therefore receive greater condemnation.

## Matthew 23:15

**you go over the sea and the dry land (ULT)  
to get even one person to believe what you  
teach. You even travel across seas and lands  
(UST)**

This is an idiom that means they go to distant places. Alternate translation: "you travel great distances" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the sea and the dry land (ULT)  
to get even one person to believe what...seas  
and lands (UST)**

The **sea** and the **dry land** represent the two extremes where people can go on earth. Alternate translation: "everywhere" (See: [Merism](#))

**to make one proselyte (ULT)  
to distant places in order to do...one person  
believes what you teach (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to make one person accept your religion"

**a son of Gehenna (ULT)  
deserve to go to hell (UST)**

Here, **son of** is an idiom that means "one belonging to." Alternate translation: "person who belongs in hell" or "person who should go to hell" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Woe](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [a son](#)
- [of Gehenna](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [are hypocrites, you](#)
- [teachers of the law](#)
- [you Pharisees](#)
- [How terribly God will punish you! You work hard](#)
- [deserve to go to](#)
- [hell](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> [Woe](#) to you, [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#), [hypocrites](#)! For you go over the sea and the dry land to make one proselyte, and when he becomes {one}, you make him twice as much [a son of Gehenna](#) as you.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> "You [are hypocrites, you teachers of the law](#) and [you Pharisees](#)! [How terribly God will punish you!](#) You work hard to get even one person to believe what you teach. You even travel across seas and lands to distant places in order to do that. And as a result, when one person believes what you teach, you make that person [deserve to go to hell](#) much more than you yourselves do."



## Matthew 23:16

**you blind guides (ULT)**  
**blind people who try to lead others. You (UST)**

The Jewish leaders were spiritually **blind**. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth. See how you translated "blind guides" in 15:14. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**by the temple, it is nothing (ULT)**  
**the temple to confirm that he will do something as if the temple...does not do what he promised, it means nothing (UST)**

Alternate translation: "by the temple does not have to keep his oath"

**he is obligated (ULT)**  
**then he must do it (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he is obligated by his oath"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Woe](#)
- [swears](#)
- [swears](#) (2)
- [temple](#)
- [of the temple](#)
- [gold](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [how terribly God will punish you! You are like](#)
- [asks](#)
- [he asks](#) (2)
- [temple](#)
- [temple to confirm that he will do something](#)
- [gold](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> [Woe](#) to you, you blind guides, you saying, 'Whoever [swears](#) by the [temple](#), it is nothing. But whoever [swears](#) by the [gold of the temple](#), he is obligated.'

### UST

<sup>16</sup> "You Jewish leaders, [how terribly God will punish you! You are like](#) blind people who try to lead others. You say, 'If someone [asks](#) the [temple](#) to confirm that he will do something as if the temple were a person, then if he does not do what he promised, it means nothing. But if [he asks](#) the [gold](#) in the [temple to confirm that he will do something](#), then he must do it.'

## Matthew 23:17

### You fools and blind men (ULT)

### You are fools, and you are like people who are blind (UST)

The Jewish leaders were spiritually **blind**. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### For which is greater, the gold or the temple having sanctified the gold (ULT)

### The gold that is in the temple is important, but the temple is even more important, because it is the Temple that the gold is in that sets the gold apart for a special use for God (UST)

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the Pharisees because they treated the **gold** as if it were more important than the **temple**. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "The temple that has dedicated the gold to God is more important than the gold!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the temple that has made the gold holy

Alternate translation: "the temple that makes the gold belong to God alone"

### Translation Words - ULT

- You fools
- gold
- gold
- temple
- having sanctified

### Translation Words - UST

- You are fools
- gold that is in the temple is important, but the temple
- gold
- it is...that the gold is in that sets the...apart
- for a special use for God

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> You fools and blind men! For which is greater, the gold or the temple having sanctified the gold?

### UST

<sup>17</sup> You are fools, and you are like people who are blind! The gold that is in the temple is important, but the temple is even more important, because it is the Temple that the gold is in that sets the gold apart for a special use for God.

## Matthew 23:18

### And (ULT)

### Also you say (UST)

You can make the understood information explicit. Alternate translation: "And you also say" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### it is nothing (ULT)

### then if he does not do what he promised, it means nothing (UST)

Alternate translation: "He does not have to do what he has sworn to do" or "He does not have to keep his oath"

### the...gift (ULT)

### the...gift (UST)

This **gift** was an animal or grain that a person would bring to God by putting it on God's altar.

### he is obligated (ULT)

### then he must do it (UST)

Alternate translation: "he is obligated by his oath"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [swears](#)
- [swears](#) (2)
- [altar](#)
- [gift](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [asks...to confirm that he will do something as if the altar were a person](#)
- [asks...to confirm that he will do something](#) (2)
- [altar](#)
- [gift](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And, 'Whoever [swears](#) by the [altar](#), it is nothing. But whoever [swears](#) by the [gift](#) on top of it, he is obligated.'

### UST

<sup>18</sup> Also you say, 'If someone [asks](#) the [altar to confirm that he will do something as if the altar were a person](#), then if he does not do what he promised, it means nothing. But if he [asks](#) the [gift](#) that he has placed on the altar [to confirm that he will do something](#), then he must do it.'

## Matthew 23:19

### blind {men (ULT)}

#### You are like people who are blind (UST)

The Jewish leaders were spiritually **blind**. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### For which {is} greater, the gift or the altar sanctifying the gift (ULT)

#### The gift that you put on the altar is important, but the altar is even more important because it is the altar that makes the gift only for God (UST)

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the Pharisees for treating the **gift** as if it were more important than the **altar**. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "The altar that makes the gift holy is greater than the gift!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the altar that makes the gift holy

Alternate translation: "the altar that makes the gift special to God"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [You fools](#)
- [gift](#)
- [gift \(2\)](#)
- [altar](#)
- [sanctifying](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You are like people who are blind](#)
- [gift that you put on...is](#)
- [gift \(2\)](#)
- [but the altar is even more important...it is the altar](#)
- [that makes...only for God](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> [You fools](#) and blind {men}! For which {is} greater, the [gift](#) or the [altar sanctifying](#) the [gift](#)?

### UST

<sup>19</sup> [You are like people who are blind](#). The [gift that you put on](#) the altar is important, [but the altar is even more important](#) because [it is the altar that makes](#) the [gift only for God](#).

## Matthew 23:20

**by...everything {that is} on top of it (ULT)  
the...everything...on the altar to do the same  
thing (UST)**

Alternate translation: "by all the gifts that people have placed on it"

### Translation Words - ULT

- having sworn
- swears
- altar

### Translation Words - UST

- promise to do something and then
- ask...to confirm that they will do
- altar

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Therefore, the one **having sworn** by the **altar swears** by it and by everything {that is} on top of it.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> So those who **promise to do something and then ask the altar to confirm that they will do** it, they are also asking everything on the altar to do the same thing.

## Matthew 23:21

**the...inhabiting it (ULT)**  
**the temple...belongs...the same thing (UST)**

This refers to God the Father.

### Translation Words - ULT

- having sworn
- swears
- temple

### Translation Words - UST

- promise to do something and then ask...to confirm that they will do it
- they are...asking that...will confirm
- the temple

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> And the one **having sworn** by the **temple swears** by it and by the one inhabiting it.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Yes, and those who **promise to do something and then ask the temple to confirm that they will do it, they are** also **asking that** God, to whom the temple belongs, **will confirm** the same thing.

## Matthew 23:22

### heaven...sitting on it (ULT) and then...sits on that throne (UST)

As in the previous verse, this refers to God the Father.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- having sworn
- swears
- heaven
- throne
- of God

#### Translation Words - UST

- promise to do something
- ask...to confirm that they will do it
- heaven
- throne...to confirm that they will do it
- of God

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And the one having sworn by heaven swears by the throne of God and by the one sitting on it.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> And those who promise to do something and then ask heaven to confirm that they will do it, they are asking the throne of God to confirm that they will do it, and they are also asking God, who sits on that throne, to confirm the same thing."





## **Matthew 23:23**

**Woe to you...hypocrites (ULT)**  
**You...how terribly God will punish you...You are hypocrites (UST)**

See how you translated this in 11:21. Alternate translation: “How terrible it will be for you”

**the mint and the dill and the cumin (ULT)**  
**of the herbs you produce, such as mint, dill, and cummin (UST)**

These are various leaves and seeds people used to make food taste good. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**you have neglected (ULT)**  
**you do not obey (UST)**

Alternate translation: “you have not obeyed”

**the weightier matters (ULT)**  
**that are more important (UST)**

Alternate translation: “the more important matters”

**But it was necessary to do these (ULT)**  
**but you should also obey these (UST)**

Alternate translation: “But you ought to have obeyed these more important laws”

**and not to neglect those (ULT)**  
**other more important laws (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **not ... neglect**, you can state this in positive form. Alternate translation: “while also obeying the less important laws” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Woe](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [you tithe](#)
- [of the law](#)
- [justice](#)
- [mercy](#)
- [faithfulness](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> [Woe](#) to you, [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#), [hypocrites](#)! For [you tithe](#) the mint and the dill and the cumin, but you have neglected the weightier matters [of the law—justice](#) and [mercy](#) and [faithfulness](#). But it was necessary to do these and not to neglect those.

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> “You [teachers of the law](#) and you [Pharisees](#), [how terribly God will punish you!](#) [You are hypocrites](#) because, [even though you give to God a tenth](#) of the herbs you produce, such as mint, dill, and cummin, you do not obey [God’s laws](#) that are more important. For example, you do not [act justly toward others](#), [you do not act mercifully toward people](#), and you take things away from others using force. It is good to give a tenth of your herbs to God, [but you should also obey these](#) other more important laws.

## Translation Words - UST

- teachers of the law
- you Pharisees
- how terribly God will punish you
- You are hypocrites
- even though you give to God a tenth
- God's laws
- act justly toward others, you do
- not act mercifully toward people
- but you should also obey these



## **Matthew 23:24**

**You blind guides (ULT)**  
**You leaders are like blind people who are trying to lead others (UST)**

Jesus uses this metaphor to describe the Pharisees. Jesus means that the Pharisees do not understand God's commands or how to please him. Therefore, they cannot teach others how to please God. See how you translated this metaphor in [15:14](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the ones straining out the gnat but swallowing the camel (ULT)**  
**You are careful not to offend God by swallowing even the smallest insect when you drink water, but you act as badly as if you were swallowing a camel (UST)**

Being careful to follow the less important laws and ignoring the more important laws is as foolish as being careful not to swallow the smallest unclean animal but eating the meat of the largest unclean animal. Alternate translation: "you are as foolish as a person who strains out a gnat that falls into his drink but swallows a camel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the ones straining out the gnat but swallowing the camel (ULT)**  
**You are careful not to offend God by swallowing even the smallest insect when you drink water, but you act as badly as if you were swallowing a camel (UST)**

Jesus understands that it is impossible for a man to swallow a **camel**. He is exaggerating in order to emphasize how foolish the scribes and Pharisees are to ignore the most important laws. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**the ones straining out the gnat but swallowing the camel (ULT)**  
**You are careful not to offend God by swallowing even the smallest insect when you drink water, but you act as badly as if you were swallowing a camel (UST)**

It is not possible for a person to swallow a camel. Jesus is exaggerating to emphasize how the Pharisees and scribes are ignoring things that should be obvious to them. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**the ones straining out the gnat (ULT)**  
**You are careful not to offend God by swallowing even the smallest insect when you drink water (UST)**

This means to pour a liquid through a cloth to remove a **gnat** from a drink.

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> You blind guides, the ones straining out the gnat but swallowing the **camel**!

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> You leaders are like blind people who are trying to lead others. You are careful not to offend God by swallowing even the smallest insect when you drink water, but you act as badly as if you were swallowing **a camel**!

## **gnat (ULT)**

### **smallest insect when you drink water (UST)**

A **gnat** is a small flying insect.

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- camel

## **Translation Words - UST**

- a camel

## Matthew 23:25

**Woe to you...hypocrites (ULT)  
how terribly God will punish you! You...You  
hypocrites, you (UST)**

See how you translated this in [11:21](#). Alternate translation: "How terrible it will be for you"

**For you clean the outside of the cup and of  
the plate, but inside they are full of greed and  
self-indulgence (ULT)  
make yourselves appear like good people to  
others. You try to make people think you are  
righteous, but in fact you sin against them by  
your greed and taking what belongs to others  
to delight your own pleasures. You are like  
dishes that are clean on the outside but are  
still dirty on the inside (UST)**

This is a metaphor that means the scribes and Pharisees appear pure on the **outside** to others, but on the **inside** they are wicked. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**and...they are full of greed...self-indulgence (ULT)  
and...by your greed and taking what belongs to others...to delight your own  
pleasures. You are like (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they want what others have, and they act in the interest of the self"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Woe](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [you clean](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You hypocrites, you](#)
- [teachers of the law](#)
- [you Pharisees](#)
- [how terribly God will punish](#)
- [are clean on](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> [Woe](#) to you, [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#), [hypocrites](#)! For [you clean](#) the outside of the cup and of the plate, but inside they are full of greed and self-indulgence.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> [You hypocrites, you teachers of the law](#) and [you Pharisees, how terribly God will punish](#) you! You make yourselves appear like good people to others. You try to make people think you are righteous, but in fact you sin against them by your greed and taking what belongs to others to delight your own pleasures. You are like dishes that [are clean on](#) the outside but are still dirty on the inside.



## Matthew 23:26

### You blind Pharisee (ULT)

### You blind Pharisees (UST)

The Pharisees were spiritually blind. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Clean first the inside of the cup and of the plate, so that the outside of it might become clean also (ULT)**

**First you must stop doing evil things like stealing from others. Then you will be able to do what is righteous and will be like a dish that is clean both outside and inside (UST)**

This is a metaphor that means that if they would become pure in their inner being, then the result is that they would be pure on the **outside** as well. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- You...Pharisee
- Clean
- clean

### Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- First you must stop doing evil things
- clean

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> You blind [Pharisee](#)! [Clean](#) first the inside of the cup and of the plate, so that the outside of it might become [clean](#) also.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> You blind [Pharisees](#)! [First you must stop doing evil things](#) like stealing from others. Then you will be able to do what is righteous and will be like a dish that is [clean](#) both outside and inside."

## Matthew 23:27

**you are like whitewashed tombs...**

**uncleanness (ULT)**

**You are like...buildings over people's graves,  
buildings that are painted white...filth (UST)**

This is a simile that means the scribes and Pharisees may appear to be pure on the outside, but they are wicked on the inside. (See: [Simile](#))

**whitewashed tombs (ULT)**

**buildings over people's graves, buildings that  
are painted white (UST)**

The Jews would paint **tombs** white so that people would easily see them and avoid touching them. Touching a tomb would make a person ceremonially unclean. Alternate translation: "tombs that someone has painted white" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Woe](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [tombs](#)
- [of {the} dead](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [hypocrites](#)
- [men who teach the laws](#)
- [you Pharisees...you](#)
- [you...how terribly God will punish](#)
- [buildings over people's graves](#)
- [dead people's](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> [Woe](#) to you, [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#), [hypocrites](#)! For you are like whitewashed [tombs](#), which on the outside appear beautiful, but on the inside are full of bones [of {the} dead](#) and all uncleanness.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> "You [hypocrites](#), you [men who teach the laws](#) and you [Pharisees](#), [how terribly God will punish you](#)! You are like [buildings over people's graves](#), buildings that are painted white so that people can see them and avoid touching them. The outside of those tombs are beautiful, but inside they are full of [dead people's](#) bones and filth.

## Matthew 23:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- righteous
- of hypocrisy
- lawlessness

### Translation Words - UST

- are righteous
- hypocrites
- you disobey God's commands

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> In the same way, you also outwardly appear **righteous** to men, but inwardly you are full of **hypocrisy** and **lawlessness**.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> You are like those tombs. When people look at you, they think that you **are righteous**, but in your inner beings you are **hypocrites**, because **you disobey God's commands.**"

## Matthew 23:29

### of the righteous (ULT) the...righteous people (UST)

If your language does not use the nominal adjective **righteous**, you can express it as an adjective. Alternate translation: "of the righteous people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Woe
- scribes
- Pharisees
- hypocrites
- tombs
- tombs
- of the prophets
- of the righteous

#### Translation Words - UST

- men who teach the Jewish laws
- you Pharisees
- are hypocrites
- How terribly God will punish you
- tombs
- monuments that honor
- prophets whom others killed long ago
- righteous people

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you build the tombs of the prophets and decorate the tombs of the righteous.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> "You men who teach the Jewish laws and you Pharisees are hypocrites! How terribly God will punish you! You rebuild the tombs of the prophets whom others killed long ago. You decorate the monuments that honor righteous people.

**Matthew 23:30**

**in the days of our fathers (ULT)**  
**when our ancestors lived (UST)**

Alternate translation: “during the time of our forefathers”

**we were...we would not have been partners  
 with them (ULT)**  
**we had lived...we would not have helped  
 those who (UST)**

Alternate translation: “we would not have joined with them”

**in the blood of the prophets (ULT)**  
**killed the prophets (UST)**

Here, **blood** is associated with the killing of the prophets. Alternate translation: “in the killing of the prophets” or “in the murder of the prophets” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [days](#)
- [of...fathers](#)
- [blood](#)
- [of the prophets](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [when...lived](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [killed](#)
- [prophets](#)

**ULT**

<sup>30</sup> And you say, ‘If we were in the [days](#) of our [fathers](#), we would not have been partners with them in the [blood of the prophets](#).’

**UST**

<sup>30</sup> You say, ‘If we had lived [when](#) our [ancestors lived](#), we would not have helped those who [killed](#) the [prophets](#).’

## Matthew 23:31

**you are sons (ULT)**

**you are...descendants (UST)**

Here, **sons** means “descendants.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- you testify
- sons
- prophets

### Translation Words - UST

- admit
- descendants
- them

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Therefore you testify against yourselves that you are sons of the ones having killed the prophets,

### UST

<sup>31</sup> In this way you admit that you are the descendants of those murderers; so, you are like them!

## Matthew 23:32

**and you fill up the measure of your fathers (ULT)**

**You are as ready to murder people as your ancestors were (UST)**

Jesus uses this as a metaphor meaning the Pharisees will complete the wicked behavior that their forefathers started when they killed the prophets. Alternate translation: "And you finish the sins your ancestors began" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...fathers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [ancestors were](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> and you fill up the measure of your [fathers](#).

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> You are as ready to murder people as your [ancestors were](#)!

## Matthew 23:33

**You serpents, you offspring of vipers (ULT)**  
**You people are so wicked! You are as dangerous as poisonous snakes (UST)**

Here, **serpents** and **vipers** both refer to poisonous snakes. (See: [Doublet](#))

**You serpents, you offspring of vipers (ULT)**  
**You people are so wicked! You are as dangerous as poisonous snakes (UST)**

Here, **serpents** and **vipers** are dangerous creatures and often symbols of evil. Alternate translation: "You are as evil as dangerous and poisonous snakes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you offspring of vipers (ULT)**  
**You people are so wicked (UST)**

Here, **offspring** means "having the characteristic of." See how you translated a similar phrase in [3:7](#).

**how might you escape from the judgment of Gehenna (ULT)**  
**You foolishly think that you will escape from God punishing you in hell (UST)**

Jesus uses this question as a rebuke. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "there is no way for you to escape the judgment of hell!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [You serpents](#)
- [of vipers](#)
- [you offspring](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [of Gehenna](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You are as dangerous as poisonous snakes](#)
- [You people are so wicked](#)
- [You people are so wicked](#)
- [God punishing you](#)
- [in hell](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> [You serpents, you offspring of vipers, how might you escape from the judgment of Gehenna?](#)

### UST

<sup>33</sup> [You people are so wicked! You are as dangerous as poisonous snakes! You foolishly think that you will escape from God punishing you in hell!](#)



## Matthew 23:34

### I am sending to you prophets and wise men and scribes

Sometimes the present tense is used to show that someone will do something very soon. Alternate translation: "I will send prophets, wise men, and scribes to you"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- am sending
- prophets
- wise men
- scribes
- crucify
- synagogues
- pursue {them}

#### Translation Words - UST

- will send
- prophets
- wise men
- teachers
- by nailing them to crosses
- places where...worship
- you will chase them

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> For this reason, behold, I am sending to you prophets and wise men and scribes. From among them you will kill and crucify, and from among them you will whip in your synagogues and pursue {them} from city to city,

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> Take note that this is why I will send prophets, wise men, and teachers. You will kill some of them by nailing them to crosses, and you will kill some in other ways. You will whip some of them in the places where you worship and you will chase them from city to city.



## **Matthew 23:35**

**might come upon you all {the} righteous blood being shed on the earth (ULT)**  
**God will consider that you and your ancestors are guilty for killing all the righteous people who ever lived on earth, including (UST)**

The phrase **come upon you** is an idiom that means to receive punishment. Alternate translation: "God will punish you for all the righteous blood being shed on the earth" (See: [Idiom](#))

**might come upon you all {the} righteous blood being shed on the earth (ULT)**  
**God will consider that you and your ancestors are guilty for killing all the righteous people who ever lived on earth, including (UST)**

To shed **blood** is a metonym meaning to kill people, so "righteous blood that being shed on the earth" represents **righteous** people who are being killed. Alternate translation: "God will punish you for the murders of all the righteous people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**from the blood...as far as the blood (ULT)**  
**killing...righteous people who ever lived on earth, including...who was a righteous man, and...in the holy place (UST)**

Here the word **blood** represents a person being killed. Alternate translation: "from the murder ... to the murder" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of Abel...of Zechariah (ULT)**  
**Adam's son Abel...Zechariah (UST)**

**Abel** was the first righteous victim of murder, and **Zechariah**, who was murdered by Jews in the temple, was probably thought to be the last. These two men represent all the righteous people who have been murdered. (See: [Merism](#))

**of Zechariah (ULT)**  
**Zechariah (UST)**

This **Zechariah** was not the father of John the Baptist.

**whom you killed (ULT)**  
**whom your ancestors killed (UST)**

Jesus does not mean the people to whom he is speaking actually **killed** Zechariah. He means their ancestors did.

## ULT

<sup>35</sup> so that might come upon you all {the} **righteous blood** being shed on the earth, from the **blood of Abel** the **righteous**, as far as the **blood** of Zechariah **son** of Barachiah, whom you killed between the **temple** and the **altar**.

## UST

<sup>35</sup> So God will consider that you and your ancestors are guilty for **killing** all the **righteous people who ever lived on earth, including Adam's son Abel, who was a righteous man, and Zechariah, the son of Barachiah**, whom your ancestors killed **in the holy place** between the **temple** and the **altar**. **You also killed all the prophets who lived between the times that those two men lived.**

## Translation Words - ULT

- righteous
- righteous
- the...blood
- blood
- blood (2)
- earth
- of Abel
- son
- temple
- altar

## Translation Words - UST

- killing...righteous people who ever lived on earth, including
- killing...righteous people who ever lived on earth, including
- killing...righteous people who ever lived on earth, including
- in the holy place (2)
- the son of
- temple
- altar. You also killed all the prophets who lived between the times that those two men lived
- killing...righteous people who ever lived on earth, including
- who was a righteous man, and
- Adam's son Abel

## Matthew 23:36

### Truly I say to you (ULT)

### Think about this: You people who have observed my ministry (UST)

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- generation

### Translation Words - UST

- Think about this: You people who have observed my ministry
- you

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Truly I say to you, all these {things} will come upon this generation.

### UST

<sup>36</sup> Think about this: You people who have observed my ministry, it is you whom God will punish for killing all those prophets!"



## **Matthew 23:37**



**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus mourns over the people of Jerusalem because they reject every messenger that God sends to them.

**Jerusalem, Jerusalem (ULT)****O people of Jerusalem (UST)**

Jesus speaks as if he were talking only to the city of Jerusalem. (See: [Apostrophe](#))

**Jerusalem, Jerusalem (ULT)****O people of Jerusalem (UST)**

Jesus speaks to the people of Jerusalem as though they were the city itself. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the ones {that} have been sent to you (ULT)****you who...others whom God had sent to you (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “those whom God sends to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**your children (ULT)****to protect you (UST)**

Jesus is speaking to Jerusalem as if it is a woman and the people are her **children**. Alternate translation: “your people” or “your inhabitants” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the way a hen gathers her chicks under {her} wings (ULT)****like a hen gathers her young chicks under her wings (UST)**

This is a simile that emphasizes Jesus’ love for the people and how he wanted to take care of them. (See: [Simile](#))

**a hen (ULT)****a hen (UST)**

A **hen** is a female chicken. You can translate this with any bird that protects her children under her wing. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [stones](#)
- [have been sent](#)
- [children](#)

**ULT**

<sup>37</sup> [Jerusalem, Jerusalem](#), you {who} kill the [prophets](#) and [stones](#) the ones {that} [have been sent](#) to you! How often did I desire to gather your [children](#) together, the way a hen gathers her chicks under {her} wings, but you were not willing!

**UST**

<sup>37</sup> “O [people of Jerusalem](#), you who killed the [prophets who lived long ago](#), and you who [killed with stones others whom God had sent](#) to you. Many, many times I wanted to gather you together to [protect](#) you, like a hen gathers her young chicks under her wings. But you did not want me to do that.

## Translation Words - UST

- O people of Jerusalem
- O people of Jerusalem
- prophets who lived long ago
- killed with stones
- others whom God had sent
- protect

## Matthew 23:38

**your house is left to you desolate (ULT)**  
**Your city will become an uninhabited place (UST)**

Alternate translation: "God will leave your house, and it will be empty"

**your house (ULT)**  
**Your...city (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) the city of Jerusalem. (2) the temple. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [desolate](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [city](#)
- [an uninhabited place](#)

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> Behold, your [house](#) is left to you [desolate](#).

#### UST

<sup>38</sup> So listen to this: Your [city](#) will become [an uninhabited place](#).

## Matthew 23:39

### For I say to you (ULT) Keep this in mind (UST)

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

### Blessed is the one coming in {the} name of {the} Lord (ULT) God is truly pleased with this man who comes with God's authority (UST)

Here, **in the name** means "in the power" or "as a representative." See how you translated this in [21:9](#). Alternate translation: "He who comes in the power of the Lord is blessed" or "He who comes as the representative of the Lord will be blessed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed is](#)
- [the} name](#)
- [of {the} Lord](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God is truly pleased](#)
- [God's](#)
- [authority](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> For I say to you, You will certainly not see me from now on until you say, 'Blessed is the one coming in {the} name of {the} Lord!'"

23:14 <sup>[1]</sup>

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> Keep this in mind: You will see me again only when I return, when you say about me, "God is truly pleased with this man who comes with God's authority."

23:14 <sup>[1]</sup>

## Matthew 24

### Matthew 24 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

In this chapter, Jesus begins to prophesy about the future from that time until he returns as king of everything. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### “The end of the age”

In this chapter, Jesus gives an answer to his disciples when they ask how they will know when he will come again. (See: [\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-apocalypticwriting\]\]](#))

#### The example of Noah

In the time of Noah, God sent a great flood to punish people for their sins. He warned them many times about this coming flood, but it actually began suddenly. In this chapter, Jesus draws a comparison between that flood and the last days. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “Let”

The ULT uses this word to begin several commands of Jesus, such as “let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains” (24:16), “let him who is on the housetop not go down to take anything out of his house” (24:17), and “let him who is in the field not return to take his cloak” (24:18). There are many different ways to form a command. Translators must select the most natural ways in their own languages.

## Matthew 24:1

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to describe events that will happen before he comes again during the end times.

### from the temple (ULT)

### Jesus left...the temple courtyard (UST)

It is implied that Jesus was not in the **temple** itself. He was in the courtyard around the temple. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- temple
- of the temple (2)
- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus left
- temple courtyard
- temple (2)
- disciples

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And **Jesus**, having departed from the **temple**, was going on {his} way. And his **disciples** approached {him} to point out to him the buildings of **the temple**.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> **Jesus left** the **temple courtyard**. As he was walking along, his **disciples** came to him and began talking about how beautiful the **temple** buildings were.

## Matthew 24:2

**Do you not see all these {things (ULT)  
about these buildings...are seeing: an army  
will completely destroy them...every (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to make the disciples think deeply about what he will tell them. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Let me tell you something about all these buildings." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Truly I say to you (ULT)  
truth...you (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

**stone upon stone will certainly not be left  
here that will not be torn down (ULT)  
that...They will throw down...stone in these buildings. Not one stone will  
remain on top of another stone (UST)**

It is implied that enemy soldiers will tear down the stones. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**stone upon stone will certainly not be left here that will not be torn down  
(ULT)  
that...They will throw down...stone in these buildings. Not one stone will  
remain on top of another stone (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "when the enemy soldiers come, they will tear down every stone in these buildings" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly

### Translation Words - UST

- truth

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> But he, answering, said to them, "Do you not see all these {things}? Truly I say to you, stone upon stone will certainly not be left here that will not be torn down."

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> He said to them, "I tell you the truth about these buildings that you are seeing: an army will completely destroy them. They will throw down every stone in these buildings. Not one stone will remain on top of another stone."

## Matthew 24:3

**what {will be} the sign of your coming and of {the} end of the age (ULT)  
to the buildings of the temple? And what...to show that you are about to come again...to show that this world is about to end (UST)**

Here, **your coming** refers to when Jesus will come in power, establishing God's reign on earth and bringing this **age** to an end. Alternate translation: "what will be the sign that you are about to come and that the world is about to end" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [of Olives](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [sign](#)
- [of the age](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [slope...the Mount of Olives](#)
- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [to show that](#)
- [world](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Now {as} he was sitting on the [Mount of Olives](#), the [disciples](#) approached him by themselves, saying, "Tell us, when will these {things} be, and what {will be} the [sign](#) of your coming and of {the} end of [the age](#)?"

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Later, as Jesus was sitting alone on the [slope of the Mount of Olives](#), the [disciples](#) went to him and asked him, "When will this happen to the buildings of the temple? And what will happen [to show that](#) you are about to come again, and to show that this [world](#) is about to end?"



## Matthew 24:4

**Be careful {that} no one might lead you astray (ULT)**

**be sure that no one deceives you about what will happen (UST)**

Here, **might lead you astray** is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: "Be careful that no one deceives you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [might lead...astray](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [deceives...about what will happen](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And answering, [Jesus](#) said to them, "Be careful {that} no one [might lead](#) you [astray](#)."

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> [Jesus](#) replied, "All that I will say is, be sure that no one [deceives](#) you [about what will happen](#)!"

## Matthew 24:5

### many...will come in my name (ULT)

### Many people...will come and...are me (UST)

Here, **in my name** refers to “in my authority” or “as my representative.” Alternate translation: “many will claim that they have come as my representative” or “many will say they speak for me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### will lead many astray (ULT)

### they will deceive many people (UST)

Here, **will lead many astray** is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: “will deceive many people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [will lead...astray](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [are](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [they will deceive](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For many will come in my [name](#) saying, ‘I am the [Christ](#),’ and [will lead](#) many [astray](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Many people will come and say that they [are](#) me. Yes, they will actually say, ‘I am the [Messiah](#),’ and [they will deceive](#) many people.

## Matthew 24:6

### See that you are not troubled (ULT) do not let that trouble you. Keep in mind that (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Do not let these things trouble you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [you are...troubled](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [do...let that trouble you](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And you are going to hear of wars and reports of wars. See that [you are](#) not [troubled](#), for it is necessary for this to happen, but the end is not yet.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> You will hear about wars that are close and wars that are far away, but do not [let that trouble you](#). Keep in mind that God has said that those things must happen. But when they happen, it will not mean that the end of the world has come!

## Matthew 24:7

**For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom (ULT)  
People groups will attack each other, and kings will lead armies against each other (UST)**

Both of these mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that people everywhere will fight each other. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom (ULT)  
People groups will attack each other, and kings will lead armies against each other (UST)**

Here, **nation** and **kingdom** represent the people within them. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [nation](#)
- [nation \(2\)](#)
- [will rise](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [famines](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [People groups](#)
- [each other \(2\)](#)
- [will attack](#)
- [kings](#)
- [will lead armies](#)
- [famines](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> For [nation will rise](#) against [nation](#), and [kingdom](#) against [kingdom](#), and there will be [famines](#) and earthquakes in various places.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> [People groups will attack each other](#), and [kings will lead armies](#) against each other. There will be [famines](#) and earthquakes in various places.

## Matthew 24:8

are {the} beginning of birth pains (ULT)  
first...they will be like when a woman starts to  
suffer pain before she gives birth to a child  
(UST)

Here, **birth pains** refers to the **pains** a woman feels before giving **birth** to a child. This metaphor means these wars, famines, and earthquakes are just the **beginning** of the events that will lead to the end of the age. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But all these {things} are {the} beginning of birth pains.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> These things will happen first, but they will be like when a woman starts to suffer pain before she gives birth to a child.

**Matthew 24:9****they will deliver you up to tribulation and will kill you**

Alternate translation: "people will give you over to the authorities, who will make you suffer and will kill you."

**you will be hated by all the nations (ULT)  
People who live in all the people groups...will hate (UST)**

Here, **nations** is a metonym, referring to the people of nations. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**you will be hated by all the nations (ULT)  
People who live in all the people groups...will hate (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "People from every nation will hate you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**for the sake of my name (ULT)  
because you believe in me (UST)**

Here, **name** refers to the complete person. Alternate translation: "because you believe in me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [tribulation](#)
- [nations](#)
- [of...name](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [suffer](#)
- [People who live...people groups](#)
- [you believe in](#)

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> Then they will hand you over to [tribulation](#) and will kill you, and you will be hated by all the [nations](#) for the sake of my [name](#).

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> More bad things will happen. People who oppose you will take you away to [suffer](#) and die. [People who live](#) in all the [people groups](#) will hate you because [you believe in](#) me.

## Matthew 24:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- will betray

### Translation Words - UST

- They will betray

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And then many will be caused to stumble, and will betray one another and will hate one another.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Also, many people will stop believing because of the way they will suffer. They will betray their own fellow believers and will hate each other.

## Matthew 24:11

### will be raised up (ULT) will come (UST)

Here, **be raised up** is an idiom for “become established.” Alternate translation: “will come” (See: [Idiom](#))

### and will lead many astray (ULT) and they will deceive many people (UST)

Here, **will lead many astray** is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: “and will deceive many people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- false prophets
- will be raised up
- will lead...astray

### Translation Words - UST

- will come
- saying that they are prophets
- they will deceive

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And many false prophets will be raised up and will lead many astray.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Many will come saying that they are prophets, but they will be lying, and they will deceive many people.



## Matthew 24:12

**lawlessness will be increased (ULT)  
more and more people will disobey God's laws  
(UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **lawlessness**, you can express it with the phrase "disobeying the law." Alternate translation: "disobeying the law will increase" or "people will disobey God's law more and more" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the love of many will grow cold (ULT)  
many believers will no longer love each other  
(UST)**

This could mean: (1) many people will no longer love other people. (2) many people will no longer love God. (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lawlessness](#)
- [will be increased](#)
- [love](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [more and more people](#)
- [will disobey God's laws](#)
- [love](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And because [lawlessness will be increased](#), the [love](#) of many will grow cold.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Because [more and more people will disobey God's laws](#), many believers will no longer [love](#) each other.

**Matthew 24:13**

**the one...having endured to {the} end, he will be saved (ULT)**

**those who...keep on believing to the end of their lives, God will save them (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will save the person who endures to the end" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**But the one having endured (ULT)**

**But all those who keep on believing (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But the person who stays faithful"

**to {the} end (ULT)**

**to the end of their lives (UST)**

It is not clear whether **the end** refers to when a person dies or when the persecution ends or the end of the age when God shows himself to be king. The main point is that they endure as long as necessary.

**the} end (ULT)**

**the end of their lives (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the end of the world" or "the end of the age"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having endured](#)
- [will be saved](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [keep on believing](#)
- [God will save](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> But the one [having endured](#) to {the} end, he [will be saved](#).

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> But all those who [keep on believing](#) to the end of their lives, [God will save](#) them.

**Matthew 24:14**

**this gospel of the kingdom will be preached (ULT)**  
**will preach the good news about how God is ruling (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "people will tell the good news of the kingdom" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**this gospel of the kingdom will be preached (ULT)**  
**will preach the good news about how God is ruling (UST)**

Here, **kingdom** refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "people will tell the good news that God will rule" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to all the nations (ULT)**  
**to all people groups (UST)**

Here, **nations** stands for people. Alternate translation: "to all people in all places" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [gospel](#)
- [of the kingdom](#)
- [will be preached](#)
- [world](#)
- [a testimony](#)
- [to...the nations](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [will preach](#)
- [good news about how](#)
- [God is ruling](#)
- [world](#)
- [announce it](#)
- [people groups](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> And this [gospel of the kingdom will be preached](#) in the whole [world](#) for a [testimony](#) to all [the nations](#), and then the end will come.

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> Furthermore, believers [will preach](#) the [good news about how God is ruling](#) in every part of the [world](#), in order to [announce it](#) to all [people groups](#). Then the end of the world will come."

## Matthew 24:15

**the abomination of desolation having been spoken of by Daniel the prophet (ULT) disgusting person who will defile the holy temple and...cause people to abandon it... Daniel the prophet spoke and wrote about that long ago...because I am warning you (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the shameful one who defiles the things of God, about whom Daniel the prophet wrote” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**let the one reading understand (ULT) May everyone who reads this pay attention (UST)**

This is not Jesus speaking. Matthew added this to alert the reader that Jesus was using words that they would need to think about and interpret.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [abomination](#)
- [of desolation](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [the} holy place](#)
- [holy](#)
- [let...understand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disgusting person who will defile the holy temple and](#)
- [cause people to abandon it](#)
- [the temple](#)
- [the temple](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [pay attention](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Therefore, when you see the [abomination of desolation](#) having been spoken of by [Daniel](#) the [prophet](#), set up in [{the} holy place](#)” (let the one reading [understand](#)),

### UST

<sup>15</sup> “But before the world ends, the [disgusting person who will defile the holy temple and cause people to abandon it](#) will stand in [the temple](#). [Daniel](#) the [prophet](#) spoke and wrote about that long ago. May everyone who reads this [pay attention](#), because I am warning you.

## Matthew 24:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [region of Judea](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> “then let the ones in [Judea](#) flee to the mountains,

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> When you see that happen in the temple, those of you who are in the [region of Judea](#) must flee to the higher hills!

## Matthew 24:17

### the one on the housetop (ULT)

### Those who are outside their houses (UST)

A typical **housetop** where Jesus lived was flat, and people could stand on it.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [houses](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> let the one on the housetop not go down to take anything from his [house](#),

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Those who are outside their houses must not go back into their [houses](#) to get things before they run away.

## Matthew 24:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- let...turn
- cloak

### Translation Words - UST

- turn
- outer clothing before they flee

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> and let the one in the field not turn back to take his cloak.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> Those who are working in a field should not turn back to get their outer clothing before they flee.

**Matthew 24:19****to the ones having in {the} womb (ULT)  
pregnant women (UST)**

This is a polite way to say “pregnant women.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**to the ones...in...those...days (ULT)  
women at that...time (UST)**

Alternate translation: “at that time”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [woe](#)
- [the} womb](#)
- [days](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [How terrible it will be for](#)
- [women](#)
- [time](#)

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> But [woe](#) to the ones having in {[the](#)} [womb](#) and to the ones nursing in those [days](#)!

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> [How terrible it will be for](#) pregnant [women](#) at that [time](#), and for women who will be nursing their babies, because it will be very difficult for them to run away!



## Matthew 24:20

**so that your flight would not occur (ULT)  
that you will not have to flee in the (UST)**

Alternate translation: "so that you will not have to flee" or "so that you will not have to run away"

**in winter (ULT)  
winter (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in the cold season"

### Translation Words - ULT

- pray
- on a Sabbath

### Translation Words - UST

- Pray
- Sabbath, the day of rest

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But [pray](#) so that your flight would not occur in winter or [on a Sabbath](#).

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> [Pray](#) that you will not have to flee in the winter when it will be hard to travel, or on the [Sabbath, the day of rest](#);

## Matthew 24:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- a...tribulation
- of {the} world

### Translation Words - UST

- people will suffer
- the world

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> For then will be a great tribulation, such as has not been from {the} beginning of {the} world until now, nor will ever happen again.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> because people will suffer very severely when those things happen. People have never suffered that severely since God created the world until now, and no one will ever suffer like that again.

## Matthew 24:22

### unless those days had been shortened, no flesh would have been saved

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "If God does not shorten that time of suffering, everyone will die" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### flesh (ULT) everyone would die (UST)

Here, "flesh" is poetic way of referring to human beings. Alternate translation: "people" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### those days will be shortened (ULT) that time...he has decided to shorten it (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will shorten the time of suffering" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [days \(2\)](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [would have been saved](#)
- [elect](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God had...decided to shorten](#)
- [time \(2\)](#)
- [everyone would die](#)
- [everyone would die](#)
- [he has chosen](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And if those [days](#) had not been shortened, no [flesh would have been saved](#). But for the sake of the [elect](#), those [days](#) will be shortened.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> If [God had](#) not [decided to shorten](#) that [time](#) when people will suffer so much, [everyone would die](#). But he has decided to shorten it because he is concerned about the people whom [he has chosen](#)."

## Matthew 24:23

**you should not believe {it (ULT)  
do not believe it (UST)**

Alternate translation: "do not believe the false things they have said to you"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Christ
- you should...believe {it

### Translation Words - UST

- Messiah
- do...believe it

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then if anyone says to you, 'Behold, here {is} the **Christ!**' or, 'Here!' **you should not believe {it}**).

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> "At that time, if someone says to you, 'Look, here is the **Messiah!**' or if someone says, 'There is the Messiah!' do not **believe it!**

## Matthew 24:24

**so as to lead astray, if possible, even the elect (ULT)**

**in order to deceive people. They will even try to deceive you people whom God has chosen (UST)**

Here, **lead astray** is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. You can translate this as two sentences. Alternate translation: “so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect” or “so as to deceive people. If possible, they would even deceive the elect” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [false prophets](#)
- [will be raised up](#)
- [signs](#)
- [wonders](#)
- [to lead astray](#)
- [elect](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [They will perform many kinds of miracles and amazing things](#)
- [They will perform many kinds of miracles and amazing things](#)
- [They will perform many kinds of miracles and amazing things](#)
- [They will perform many kinds of miracles and amazing things](#)
- [to deceive you people](#)
- [whom God has chosen](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> For false Christs and [false prophets will be raised up](#) and will give great [signs](#) and [wonders](#), so as [to lead astray](#), if possible, even the [elect](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> [They will perform many kinds of miracles and amazing things](#), in order to deceive people. They will even try [to deceive you people whom God has chosen](#).

## Matthew 24:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### **ULT**

<sup>25</sup> Behold, I have told you beforehand.

### **UST**

<sup>25</sup> Do not forget that I have warned you about all this before it happens.

## Matthew 24:26

**if...they say to you, 'Behold, he is in the wilderness,' you should not go out there (ULT)**  
**if...someone says to you, 'Look, the Messiah is in the wilderness!' do not go there (UST)**

You can state this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "if someone tells you that the Christ is in the wilderness, do not go out there" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**Or, 'Behold, in the inner rooms (ULT)**  
**Likewise, if someone says to you, 'Look, he is in a secret room (UST)**

You can state this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Or, if someone tells you that the Christ is in the inner rooms," (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**in...the inner rooms (ULT)**  
**in...secret room (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he is in a secret room" or "he is in secret places"

### Translation Words - ULT

- wilderness
- you should...believe {it}

### Translation Words - UST

- wilderness
- do...believe that person

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Therefore, if they say to you, 'Behold, he is in the wilderness,' you should not go out there. Or, 'Behold, in the inner rooms,' you should not believe {it}.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> So if someone says to you, 'Look, the Messiah is in the wilderness!' do not go there. Likewise, if someone says to you, 'Look, he is in a secret room!' do not believe that person,

## Matthew 24:27

**just as...the lightning comes out from {the} east and shines as far as {the} west, in the same way will be the coming (ULT)  
just like...lightning flashes from the east to the west and people see it, in the same way, when the...returns again, everyone will see (UST)**

This means that the Son of Man will come very quickly and will be easy to see. (See: [Simile](#))

**of the Son of Man (ULT)  
Son of Man (UST)**

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [of the Son...of Man](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [just like](#)
- [Son...of Man](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> For [just as](#) the lightning comes out from {the} east and shines as far as {the} west, in the same way will be the coming [of the Son of Man](#).

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> because [just like](#) lightning flashes from the east to the west and people see it, in the same way, when the [Son of Man](#) returns again, everyone will see.



**Matthew 24:28**

**Wherever the corpse is, there the vultures will be gathered (ULT)**

**It will be clear to everyone just as when you see vultures gathering you know that an animal carcass is there (UST)**

This is probably a proverb that the people of Jesus' time understood. This could mean: (1) when the Son of Man comes, everyone will see him and know that he has come. (2) wherever spiritually dead people are, false prophets will be there to tell them lies. (See: [Proverbs](#))

**the vultures (ULT)**

**vultures...that (UST)**

A **vulture** is a large bird that eats the bodies of dead or dying creatures.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [vultures](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [vultures](#)

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> Wherever the corpse is, there the [vultures](#) will be gathered.

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> It will be clear to everyone just as when you see [vultures](#) gathering you know that an animal carcass is there.”

## Matthew 24:29

**immediately...after the tribulation of those days the sun (ULT)**

**Immediately...after...people have suffered during that time, the sun (UST)**

Alternate translation: "as soon as the tribulation of those days has finished, the sun"

**the tribulation of those days (ULT)**  
**people have suffered during that time (UST)**

Alternate translation: "that time of suffering"

**the sun will be darkened (ULT)**  
**the sun will become dark (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will make the sun dark" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the powers of the heavens will be shaken (ULT)**  
**God will shake all things in the...sky loose from their place (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will shake things in the sky and above the sky" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- tribulation
- of...days
- will be darkened
- light
- sky
- of the heavens
- powers

### Translation Words - UST

- people have suffered during
- time
- will become dark
- shine
- sky
- sky
- God will shake all things in the

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> But immediately after the tribulation of those days the sun will be darkened, and the moon will not give its light, and the stars will fall from the sky, and the powers of the heavens will be shaken.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> "Immediately after people have suffered during that time, the sun will become dark. The moon will not shine. The stars will fall from the sky. And God will shake all things in the sky loose from their place.

## Matthew 24:30

### of the Son of Man (ULT)

### Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### all the tribes (ULT)

### all people groups on earth (UST)

Here, **tribes** refers to people of different ethnic groups. Alternate translation: “every people group” or “all the people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- sign
- of the Son...of Man
- Son of Man
- glory
- the} sky
- of heaven
- tribes
- of the earth
- will mourn
- power

### Translation Words - UST

- Son...of Man
- Son of Man
- glory
- the...appear
- the sky
- clouds
- people groups on earth
- people groups on earth
- will wail
- power

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> And then the [sign of the Son of Man](#) will appear in [the} sky](#), and then all the [tribes of the earth will mourn](#). And they will see the [Son of Man](#) coming on the [clouds of heaven](#) with [power](#) and great [glory](#).

### UST

<sup>30</sup> After that, everyone will see the [Son of Man appear](#) in [the sky](#). Then unbelieving people from all [people groups on earth will wail](#) because they will be afraid. They will see me, the [Son of Man](#), coming on the [clouds](#) with [power](#) and great [glory](#).



## **Matthew 24:31**

**he will send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet (ULT)**

**He will send...his angels to the...trumpet's loud blast (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he will have a trumpet sounded and send his angels" or "he will have an angel blow a trumpet, and he will send his angels"

**he will send...his (ULT)**

**He will send...his (UST)**

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**they will gather together (ULT)**

**will gather together (UST)**

Alternate translation: "his angels will gather up"

**his angels...elect (ULT)**

**his angels to the...he has chosen—from (UST)**

The **elect** are the people whom the Son of Man has chosen.

**from the four winds, from {the} ends of {the} heavens as far as {the} ends of them (ULT)**

**earth from everywhere in the heavens...God's people—the ones...across the whole earth (UST)**

Both of these mean the same thing, and emphasize how far the angels will go to gather the elect. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**from the four winds, from {the} ends of {the} heavens as far as {the} ends of them (ULT)**

**earth from everywhere in the heavens...God's people—the ones...across the whole earth (UST)**

These phrases are idioms that mean "from everywhere." Alternate translation: "from all over the world" (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [he will send](#)
- [angels](#)
- [a...sound of a trumpet](#)
- [they will gather together](#)
- [elect](#)

## ULT

<sup>31</sup> And [he will send](#) his [angels](#) with a great [sound of a trumpet](#), and [they will gather together](#) his [elect](#) from the four winds, from {the} ends of {the} heavens as far as {the} ends of them.

## UST

<sup>31</sup> [He will send](#) his [angels to the earth from everywhere in the heavens](#). When they hear the [trumpet's loud blast](#), they [will gather together](#) God's people—the ones [he has chosen—from](#) across the whole earth."

- of {the} heavens

## Translation Words - UST

- He will send
- angels to the
- earth from everywhere in the heavens
- trumpet's
- will gather together
- he has chosen—from

## Matthew 24:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- parable
- fig tree
- you know

### Translation Words - UST

- learn something
- fig trees grow
- you know

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Now learn {this} parable from the fig tree. When its branch already becomes tender and it puts out {its} leaves, you know that the summer {is} near.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> "Now be sure to learn something from how fig trees grow. When the branches of a fig tree become tender and its leaves begin to sprout, you know that summer is near.



**Matthew 24:33****he is near (ULT)  
the time for him to return is very close (UST)**

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “the time for me to come is near” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**at {the} gates (ULT)  
the time for him to return is very close (UST)**

Jesus uses the imagery of a king or important official getting close to the gates of a walled city. It is a metaphor meaning the time for Jesus to come is soon. Alternate translation: “close to the gates” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [you know](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [you will know](#)

**ULT**

<sup>33</sup> In the same way also, when you see all these {things}, [you know](#) that he is near, at {the} gates.

**UST**

<sup>33</sup> Similarly, when you see all these things happening, [you will know](#) that the time for him to return is very close.

**Matthew 24:34****Truly I say to you (ULT)****Keep this in mind (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

**this generation will certainly not pass away (ULT)****all the people have died who have observed... these things (UST)**

Here, **pass away** is a polite way of saying "die." Alternate translation: "this generation will not all die" (See: [Euphemism](#))

**this generation (ULT)****all the people have died who have observed...these things (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) the people alive when Jesus was speaking. (2) all people alive when these things Jesus has just described happen. Try to translate so that both interpretations are possible.

**until all these {things} have happened (ULT)****All of these events will happen before (UST)**

Alternate translation: "until God causes all these things to happen"

**will certainly not pass away (ULT)****all the people have died who have observed (UST)**

Alternate translation: "will certainly not disappear" or "will certainly remain alive"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Truly
- generation

**Translation Words - UST**

- Keep this in mind
- all the people have died who have observed

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> Truly I say to you that this [generation](#) will certainly not pass away until all these {things} have happened.

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> [Keep this in mind](#): All of these events will happen before [all the people have died who have observed](#) these things.

## Matthew 24:35

**The heaven and the earth will pass away (ULT)  
You can be certain that these things that I  
have told you about will happen. The earth  
and sky will disappear one day (UST)**

The phrase **the heaven and the earth** is a synecdoche that includes everything that God has created, especially those things that seem permanent. Jesus is saying that his word, unlike these things, is permanent. Alternate translation: "Even the heaven and the earth will pass away" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**words...my...words...will certainly not pass  
away (ULT)  
but...what I say will always be true (UST)**

Here, **words** refers to what Jesus has said. Alternate translation: "what I say will always be true" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [earth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#)
- [sky](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> The [heaven](#) and the [earth](#) will pass away, but my words will certainly not pass away.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> You can be certain that these things that I have told you about will happen. The [earth](#) and [sky](#) will disappear one day, but what I say will always be true."

**Matthew 24:36**

**that day and hour (ULT)**  
**the day or the hour when these things will happen (UST)**

Here, **day** and **hour** refer to the exact time that the Son of Man will return. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**not even...the Son (ULT)**  
**nor...the Son (UST)**

Alternate translation: "not even the Son"

**Son (ULT)**  
**Son (UST)**

**Son** is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**Father (ULT)**  
**Only God the Father knows (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [day](#)
- [hour](#)
- [knows](#)
- [angels](#)
- [of the heavens](#)
- [Son](#)
- [Father](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [even any angel](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [Son](#)
- [knows](#)
- [day](#)
- [or the hour when these things will happen](#)
- [Only God the Father knows](#)

**ULT**

<sup>36</sup> But concerning that [day](#) and [hour](#) no one [knows](#), not even the [angels of the heavens](#), nor the [Son](#), except the [Father](#) only.

**UST**

<sup>36</sup> "But no other person, nor [even any angel](#) in [heaven](#), nor even the [Son](#), [knows](#) the [day or the hour when these things will happen](#). Only God the Father [knows](#).

## Matthew 24:37

### For just as the days of Noah were, thus will be the coming of the Son of Man

Alternate translation: "For at the time when the Son of Man comes, it will be like the time of Noah."

#### of the Son of Man (ULT)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [just as...were](#)
- [days](#)
- [of Noah](#)
- [of the Son...of Man](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [day](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> For [just as](#) the [days of Noah were](#), thus will be the coming [of the Son of Man](#).

#### UST

<sup>37-39</sup> It will be like what happened when Noah lived. Until the flood came, the people did not know that anything bad would happen to them. They were eating and drinking as usual. Men were getting married, and parents were giving their daughters to men to marry them. They were doing all this until the day that Noah and his family entered the big boat. And then the flood came and drowned all those who were not in the boat. Similarly, the unbelieving people will not know when the Son of Man will return.

## Matthew 24:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- as
- days
- day
- flood
- Noah
- ark

### Translation Words - UST

- ark
- Noah
- day
- day
- flood
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> For as in the days before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage until that day Noah entered into the ark,

### UST

## Matthew 24:39

### and they did not understand (ULT)

You can translate this as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “and the people did not realize anything was happening”

### took them all away—thus also will be the coming of the Son of Man

You can translate this as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “too them all away. This is how it will be when the Son of Man comes”

### Translation Words - ULT

- they did...understand
- flood
- of the Son...of Man

### Translation Words - UST

- Son of Man, son of man
- flood
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> and they did not understand until the flood came and took {them} all away—thus also will be the coming of the Son of Man.

### UST

<sup>37-39</sup> It will be like what happened when Noah lived. Until the flood came, the people did not know that anything bad would happen to them. They were eating and drinking as usual. Men were getting married, and parents were giving their daughters to men to marry them. They were doing all this until the day that Noah and his family entered the big boat. And then the flood came and drowned all those who were not in the boat. Similarly, the unbelieving people will not know when the Son of Man will return.

## Matthew 24:40

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell his disciples to be ready for his return.

### Then (ULT)

**When that happens not all people will be taken up to heaven. For (UST)**

This refers to the time when the Son of Man comes.

**one is taken, and one is left (ULT)**

**One of them will be taken up to heaven and the other person will be left here to be punished (UST)**

This could mean: (1) the Son of Man will take one away to heaven and will leave the other on earth for punishment. (2) the angels will take one away for punishment and leave the other for blessing. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> Then two {men} will be in the field— one is taken, and one is left.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> When that happens not all people will be taken up to heaven. For example, two people will be in the fields. One of them will be taken up to heaven and the other person will be left here to be punished.



## Matthew 24:41

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Two {women} are grinding with the mill—one is taken, and one is left.

### UST

<sup>41</sup> Similarly, two women will be grinding grain with a handmill. One of them will be taken up to heaven and the other will be left.

## Matthew 24:42

**Therefore (ULT)**

**So (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Because what I have just said is true,"

**be alert (ULT)**

**you need to be ready all the time (UST)**

Alternate translation: "pay attention"

### Translation Words - ULT

- be alert
- you do...know
- on...day
- Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- you do...know
- day
- Lord
- you need to be ready all the time

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Therefore, be alert, for you do not know on what day your Lord will come.

### UST

<sup>42</sup> So, because you do not know what day your Lord will return to the earth, you need to be ready all the time.



## **Matthew 24:43**

**if the master of the house had known in which watch of night the thief is coming, he would have been alert and would not have allowed his house to be broken into (ULT) that if the...owner of a house knew at what time in the night thieves would come, he would be awake and prevent the thieves from breaking in. Similarly, the Son of Man will come as unexpectedly as a thief (UST)**

Jesus uses a parable of a **master** and a **thief** to illustrate that his disciples should be prepared for his return. (See: [Parables](#))

**the thief (ULT)**  
**thieves (UST)**

Jesus is saying he will come when people are not expecting him, not that he will come to steal. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**he would have been alert (ULT)**  
**he would be awake and (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he would have guarded his house"

**would not have allowed his house to be broken into (ULT)**  
**prevent the thieves from breaking in. Similarly, the Son of Man will come as unexpectedly as a thief (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "would not have allowed anyone to get into his house to steal things" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#)
- [had known](#)
- [master of the house](#)
- [thief](#)
- [he would have been alert](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You know](#)
- [knew at](#)
- [owner of a house](#)
- [thieves](#)
- [he would be awake](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> But [know](#) this, that if the [master of the house had known](#) in which watch of night the [thief](#) is coming, [he would have been alert](#) and would not have allowed his [house](#) to be broken into.

### UST

<sup>43</sup> [You know](#) that if the [owner of a house knew at](#) what time in the night [thieves](#) would come, [he would be awake](#) and prevent the thieves from breaking in. [Similarly, the Son of Man will come as unexpectedly as a thief.](#)

- Similarly, the Son of Man will come as unexpectedly as a thief

## Matthew 24:44

### the Son of Man (ULT)

### Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son of Man](#)
- [at...hour](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Son...of Man](#)
- [at a time](#)

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> For this reason you also be ready, for the [Son of Man](#) will come at the [hour](#) {that} you do not think.

### UST

<sup>44</sup> So you need to be ready because the [Son of Man](#) will return to the earth [at a time](#) when you do not expect him to come.”

## Matthew 24:45

**Who then is the faithful and wise slave whom {his} master has appointed over his household to give them {their} food at {the} proper time (ULT)**

**Think about what every faithful and wise servant is like. The house owner appoints one servant to supervise the other servants. He tells him to give them food at the proper times. Then he leaves on a long trip (UST)**

Jesus uses this question to make his disciples think. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "So who is the faithful and wise servant? He is the one whom his has appointed over his household to give them their food at the proper time." or "Be like the faithful and wise servant, whom his has appointed over his household to give them their food at the proper time." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**to give them {their} food (ULT)**  
**to supervise...them food (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to give the people in the master's home their food"

### Translation Words - ULT

- faithful
- wise
- slave
- master
- has appointed
- household
- the} proper time

### Translation Words - UST

- Think about what every faithful
- wise
- servant
- house owner
- appoints one servant
- servants. He tells him to give
- the proper times

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> Who then is the faithful and wise slave whom {his} master has appointed over his household to give them {their} food at {the} proper time?

### UST

<sup>45</sup> "Think about what every faithful and wise servant is like. The house owner appoints one servant to supervise the other servants. He tells him to give them food at the proper times. Then he leaves on a long trip.



## Matthew 24:46

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed {is
- slave
- master

### Translation Words - UST

- servant
- house owner
- will be very pleased with

#### ULT

<sup>46</sup> Blessed {is} that slave whom, his master having come, will find him doing thus.

#### UST

<sup>46</sup> If the servant is doing that work when the house owner returns, the house owner will be very pleased with him.

## Matthew 24:47

### Truly I say to you (ULT)

### Think about this: The house owner (UST)

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- he will appoint
- possesses

### Translation Words - UST

- Think about this: The house owner
- will appoint...to be the supervisor
- possessions

### ULT

<sup>47</sup> Truly I say to you that he will appoint him over everything {that} he possesses.

### UST

<sup>47</sup> Think about this: The house owner will appoint that one servant to be the supervisor of all his possessions.

**Matthew 24:48****says...in his heart (ULT)****say...to himself (UST)**

Here, **heart** refers to the mind. Alternate translation: “might think in his mind” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**My master is delaying (ULT)**

**The owner has been away for a long time, so he probably will not return soon and find out what I am doing (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “My master is slow to return” or “My master will not return for a long time” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ULT**

<sup>48</sup> But if that [evil slave](#) says in his [heart](#), ‘My [master](#) is delaying.’

**UST**

<sup>48</sup> But a [wicked servant](#) might say [to himself](#), ‘The [owner](#) has been away for a long time, so he probably will not return soon and find out what I am doing.’

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [evil](#)
- [slave](#)
- [heart](#)
- [master](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [a wicked](#)
- [servant](#)
- [to himself](#)
- [owner](#)

## Matthew 24:49

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fellow slaves
- being drunk

### Translation Words - UST

- other servants
- are drunk

#### ULT

<sup>49</sup> and begins to beat his fellow slaves, and eats and drinks with the ones being drunk,

#### UST

<sup>49</sup> So he will begin to beat the other servants and eat and drink with those who are drunk.

## Matthew 24:50

**on a day that he does not expect and at an hour that he does not know (ULT)  
at a time when...does not expect him (UST)**

Both of these statements mean the same thing. They emphasize that the master will come when the servant is not expecting him. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- master
- of...slave
- a day
- an hour
- he does...know

### Translation Words - UST

- house owner
- a time
- when...does...expect him
- when...does...expect him
- servant

#### ULT

<sup>50</sup> the master of that slave will come on a day that he does not expect and at an hour that he does not know.

#### UST

<sup>50</sup> Then the house owner will come back at a time when the servant does not expect him.

**Matthew 24:51****he will cut him in pieces (ULT)****He will punish...that servant...severely (UST)**

This is an idiom that means to make the person suffer terribly. (See: [Idiom](#))

**will assign his place with the hypocrites (ULT)****put him...the hypocrites...place (UST)**

Alternate translation: "will put him with the hypocrites" or "will send him to the place where hypocrites are sent"

**there will be weeping and grinding of the teeth (ULT)****are put. In that...the people cry and grind their teeth because they suffer very much (UST)**

Here, **the grinding of the teeth** is a symbolic act, representing extreme suffering. See how you translated this in [8:12](#). Alternate translation: "people will weep and grind their teeth because of their suffering" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [will assign](#)
- [hypocrites](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [put](#)
- [hypocrites](#)

**ULT**

<sup>51</sup> And he will cut him in pieces and [will assign](#) his place with the [hypocrites](#); in that place there will be weeping and grinding of the teeth.

**UST**

<sup>51</sup> He will punish that servant severely and he will [put](#) him where the [hypocrites](#) are put. In that place the people cry and grind their teeth because they suffer very much."

## Matthew 25

### Matthew 25 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the teaching of the previous chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The parable of the ten virgins

Jesus told the parable of the ten virgins ([Matthew 25:1-13](#)) to tell his followers to be ready for him to return. His hearers could understand the parable because they knew Jewish wedding customs.

When the Jews arranged marriages, they would plan for the wedding to take place weeks or months later. At the proper time, the young man would go to his bride's house, where she would be waiting for him. The wedding ceremony would take place, and then the man and his bride would travel to his home, where there would be a feast. (See: [\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-apocalypticwriting\]\]](#))

## Matthew 25:1

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about wise and foolish virgins to illustrate that his disciples should be prepared for his return. (See: [Parables](#))

### the kingdom of the heavens will be compared to (ULT) God's rule from heaven...will be like what happened to (UST)

Here, **kingdom of the heavens** refers to God's rule as king. The phrase **kingdom of the heavens** is used only in Matthew. if possible, use **heavens** in your translation. See how you translated this in [13:24](#). Alternate translation: "when our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### lamps (ULT) lamps and (UST)

This could refer to: (1) oil **lamps**. (2) torches made by putting cloth around the end of a stick and wetting the cloth with oil.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [kingdom of the heavens](#)
- [of the heavens](#)
- [will be compared to](#)
- [virgins](#)
- [lamps](#)
- [of the bridegroom](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God's rule...from heaven](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [will be like what happened to](#)
- [unmarried girls](#)
- [lamps and](#)
- [bridegroom to come](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the [kingdom of the heavens will be compared to](#) ten [virgins](#) who, having taken their [lamps](#), went out to a meeting [of the bridegroom](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> "God's rule from heaven will be like [what happened to](#) ten [unmarried girls](#) who got ready to go to a wedding feast. They were to take their [lamps and](#) go wait for the [bridegroom to come](#).



## Matthew 25:2

**five...of them (ULT)**

**five...of these girls (UST)**

Alternate translation: "five of the virgins"

### Translation Words - ULT

- foolish
- wise

### Translation Words - UST

- foolish
- were wise

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Now five of them were foolish and five wise.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Now five of these girls were foolish, and five were wise.

## Matthew 25:3

**did not take oil with themselves (ULT)**  
**not take any extra olive oil for them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "took with them only the oil in their lamps"

### Translation Words - ULT

- foolish
- lamps
- oil

### Translation Words - UST

- foolish girls
- lamps, but they did
- olive oil

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> For the foolish, having taken their lamps, did not take oil with themselves.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> The foolish girls took their lamps, but they did not take any extra olive oil for them.

## Matthew 25:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- wise
- oil
- lamps

### Translation Words - UST

- wise girls
- oil
- in...lamps

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But the wise took oil in the containers with their lamps.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> But the wise girls took oil in their flasks as well as in their lamps.

## Matthew 25:5

### Now (ULT)

### So (UST)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Jesus starts to tell a new part of the story.

**delaying...the bridegroom (ULT)**  
**was taking a long time to come, and it**  
**became late at night...The bridegroom (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “while the bridegroom was taking a long time to arrive” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they all became sleepy (ULT)**  
**all the girls became sleepy (UST)**

Alternate translation: “all ten virgins became sleepy”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bridegroom](#)
- [were sleeping](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bridegroom](#)
- [fell asleep](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Now, the [bridegroom](#) delaying, they all became sleepy and [were sleeping](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> The [bridegroom](#) was taking a long time to come, and it became late at night. So all the girls became sleepy and [fell asleep](#).

## Matthew 25:6

**there was a cry (ULT)  
by shouting, 'Here he is (UST)**

Alternate translation: "someone shouted"

### Translation Words - ULT

- a cry
- bridegroom

### Translation Words - UST

- shouting, 'Here he is
- The bridegroom is arriving

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But in {the} middle of {the} night there was a cry, 'Behold, the bridegroom! Go out to {the} meeting.'

### UST

<sup>6</sup> In the middle of the night someone woke them up by shouting, 'Here he is! The bridegroom is arriving! Go outside and meet him!'

## Matthew 25:7

### trimmed their lamps (ULT) adjusted their lamps for burning (UST)

Alternate translation: "adjusted their lamps so they would burn brightly"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [virgins](#)
- [lamps](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [girls](#)
- [lamps for burning](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then all those [virgins](#) were awakened and trimmed their [lamps](#).

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> So all the [girls](#) got up and adjusted their [lamps for burning](#).

## Matthew 25:8

### the...foolish said to the wise (ULT)

### The...foolish girls...said to the wise ones (UST)

If your language does not use the nominal adjectives **foolish** and **wise**, you can express them as adjectives. Alternate translation: “the foolish virgins said to the wise virgins” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### our lamps are going out (ULT)

### our lamps are about to go out (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “the fire in our lamps is about to burn out” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [foolish](#)
- [to the wise](#)
- [oil](#)
- [lamps](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [foolish girls](#)
- [wise ones](#)
- [of...oil](#)
- [lamps](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now the [foolish](#) said [to the wise](#), ‘Give us from your [oil](#), because our [lamps](#) are going out.’

### UST

<sup>8</sup> The [foolish girls](#) said to the [wise ones](#), ‘Give us some of your [oil](#), because our [lamps](#) are about to go out!’

## Matthew 25:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- wise

### Translation Words - UST

- The wise girls replied

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But answering, the wise said, 'Perhaps there will certainly not be enough for us and you. Go instead to the ones selling and buy for yourselves.'

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> The wise girls replied, 'No, because there might not be enough oil for our lamps and yours. Go to the sellers and buy some for yourselves!'



**Matthew 25:10**

**But {while} they were going away (ULT)**  
**But while the foolish girls were on their way (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But while the five foolish virgins went away"

**to buy (ULT)**  
**to buy oil (UST)**

You can state the understood information explicitly. Alternate translation: "to buy more oil" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**the prepared (ULT)**  
**the wise girls, who were ready (UST)**

This phrase refers to the virgins who had extra oil.

**the door was shut (ULT)**  
**the door was closed (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the servants shut the door" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [bridegroom](#)
- [wedding feasts](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [bridegroom](#)
- [wedding hall, where the bride was waiting](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> But {while} they were going away to buy, the [bridegroom](#) came, and the prepared entered with him into the [wedding feasts](#), and the door was shut.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> But while the foolish girls were on their way to buy oil, the [bridegroom](#) arrived. Then the wise girls, who were ready, went with him into the [wedding hall, where the bride was waiting](#). Then the door was closed.

## Matthew 25:11

### open for us (ULT)

### open the door for us (UST)

You can state this implicit information explicitly. Alternate translation: "open the door for us so we can come inside" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [virgins](#)
- [Master](#)
- [master](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the girls](#)
- [Sir](#)
- [Sir](#) (2)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But afterward the other [virgins](#) also come, saying, 'Master, master, open for us.'

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Later, the rest of [the girls](#) came to the wedding hall, and they called to the bridegroom, 'Sir, open the door for us!'

**Matthew 25:12****Truly I say to you (ULT)****The truth is that (UST)**

This adds emphasis to what the master says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

**I do not know you (ULT)****I do not know you, so I will not open the door for you (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I do not know who you are"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Truly
- I do...know

**Translation Words - UST**

- The truth is that
- I do...know

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> But he, answering, said, 'Truly I say to you, I do not know you.'

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> But he said to them, 'The truth is that I do not know you, so I will not open the door for you!'"

## Matthew 25:13

### you do not know the day nor the hour (ULT) you...not know when it will be (UST)

Here, **day** and **hour** refer to an exact time. Alternate translation: “you do not know the exact time” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### you do not know the day nor the hour (ULT) you...not know when it will be (UST)

You can state the implied information explicitly. Alternate translation: “you do not know the exact time when the Son of Man will return” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [stay alert](#)
- [you do...know](#)
- [day](#)
- [hour](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [stay prepared](#)
- [you...know when](#)
- [you...know when](#)
- [it will be](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Therefore, [stay alert](#), for [you do](#) not [know](#) the [day](#) nor the [hour](#).

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> Then Jesus continued by saying, “So, in order that this does not happen to you, [stay prepared](#) because you do not [know when it will be](#).”

## Matthew 25:14

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about faithful and unfaithful servants to illustrate that his disciples should remain faithful during his absence and be prepared for his return. (See: [Parables](#))

### it is} like (ULT)

### it will be like (UST)

The word **it** here refers to the kingdom of heaven ([13:24](#)).

### going to another country (ULT)

### who was about to go on a long journey (UST)

Alternate translation: “was ready to go to another country” or “was to go soon to another country”

### handed over to them his possessions (ULT)

### gave them each some of his wealth to invest and gain more money for him (UST)

Alternate translation: “put them in charge of his wealth”

### his possessions (ULT)

### some of his wealth to invest and gain more money for him (UST)

Alternate translation: “his property” or “his wealth”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [it is} like](#)
- [He called](#)
- [slaves](#)
- [possessions](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [it will be like](#)
- [He called...together](#)
- [servants](#)
- [some of...wealth](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For [{it is} like](#) a man going to another country. [He called](#) [{his}](#) own [slaves](#) and handed over to them his [possessions](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> “When the Son of Man returns from heaven as king, [it will be like](#) a man who was about to go on a long journey. [He called](#) his [servants together](#) and gave them each [some of](#) his [wealth](#) to invest and gain more money for him.

## Matthew 25:15

### five talents (ULT)

Avoid translating this into modern money. A **talent** of gold was worth twenty years' wages. The parable is contrasting the relative amounts of five, two, and one, as well as the large amount of wealth involved. Alternate translation: "five bags of gold" or "five bags of gold, each worth 20 years' wages" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### and to one, two, and to one, one (ULT)

The word **talents** is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "and to another he gave two talents of gold, and to another he gave one talent of gold" or "and to another he gave two bags of gold, and to another he gave one bag of gold" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### according to {his} own ability (ULT)

You can state the implicit information explicitly. Alternate translation: "according to each servant's skill in managing wealth" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And to one he gave five talents, and to one, two, and to one, one—to each according to {his} own ability. And immediately he went to another country.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> He gave them money according to their ability to use it. For example, he gave one servant five bags of gold weighing about 165 kilograms, he gave another servant two bags weighing about sixty-six kilograms, and he gave another servant one bag weighing about thirty-three kilograms. Then he left on his journey.

## Matthew 25:16

### five talents...gained another (ULT) five...bags of gold...to gain...more (UST)

Alternate translation: "out of his investments, he earned another five talents"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- having received
- traded
- gained

#### Translation Words - UST

- who had received
- used
- to gain

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> {When} he had gone, the one having received the five talents traded with them and gained another five talents.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> The servant who had received five bags of gold went immediately and used that money to gain five more bags.

## Matthew 25:17

**with...two...gained another (ULT)**  
**two bags of gold...gained...more (UST)**

Alternate translation: "earned another two talents"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Likewise
- gained

### Translation Words - UST

- Similarly
- gained

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Likewise, the one with the two also gained another two.

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> Similarly, the servant who had received two bags of gold gained two bags more.



## Matthew 25:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- having received
- money
- of...master

### Translation Words - UST

- had received
- bag of gold...to keep it safe
- bag of gold...to keep it safe

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> But the one **having received** the one, having gone away, dug in {the} ground and hid the **money** of his **master**.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> But the servant who **had received** one **bag of gold** went and dug a hole in the ground, and he hid it there **to keep it safe**.

## Matthew 25:19

### Now (ULT) what (UST)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Jesus starts to tell a new part of the story.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a...time
- master
- of...slaves

### Translation Words - UST

- time
- the servants' master returned. He called them together to find out...had done with his money
- the servants' master returned. He called them together to find out...had done with his money

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Now after a long time, the master of those slaves comes and settles accounts with them.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> After a long time the servants' master returned. He called them together to find out what they had done with his money.

## Matthew 25:20

**five talents...I gained (ULT)**  
**five bags...I have gained (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I have earned five more talents"

**talents (ULT)**  
**bags (UST)**

A "talent" was worth twenty years' wages. Avoid translating this into modern money. See how you translated this in [25:15](#). (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having received](#)
- [Master](#)
- [I gained](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had received](#)
- [Master, you gave](#)
- [I have gained](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> And having approached, the one [having received](#) the five talents brought another five talents, saying, '[Master](#), you handed over to me five talents. But behold, [I gained](#) five talents.'

### UST

<sup>20</sup> The servant who [had received](#) five bags of gold brought him ten bags. He said, '[Master, you gave](#) me five bags of gold to take care of. Look, [I have gained](#) five more!'

## Matthew 25:21

### Well done (ULT) servant (UST)

Your culture might have an expression that a master (or someone in authority) would use to show that he approves of what his servant (or someone under him) has done. Alternate translation: "You have done well" or "You have done right"

### Enter into the joy of your master (ULT) You have...Come...be happy with me (UST)

The phrase **Enter into the joy** is an idiom. Alternate translation: "Come and be happy with me" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Enter into the joy of your master (ULT) You have...Come...be happy with me (UST)

The master is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)
- [of...master](#)
- [Well done](#)
- [good](#)
- [faithful](#)
- [faithful](#)
- [slave](#)
- [I will appoint](#)
- [joy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [master](#)
- [be happy with me](#)
- [servant](#)
- [very good](#)
- [servant](#)
- [been very faithful](#)
- [to me. You have managed a small amount](#)
- [of money very well, so I will put...in charge](#)
- [be happy with me](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> His [master](#) said to him, 'Well done, [good](#) and [faithful slave](#)! You have been [faithful](#) over a few {things}. [I will appoint](#) you over many {things}. Enter into the [joy](#) of your [master](#).'

### UST

<sup>21</sup> His [master](#) replied, 'You are a [very good servant](#)! You have [been very faithful to me](#). [You have managed a small amount of money very well, so I will put](#) you [in charge](#) of a lot of things. Come and [be happy with me](#)!'

## Matthew 25:22

**with...two talents...I have gained (ULT)  
two bags of gold...I have gained (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I have earned two more talents"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Master
- I have gained

### Translation Words - UST

- Master
- I have gained

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> The one with the two talents, having also approached, said, 'Master, you handed over to me two talents, but behold, I have gained two talents.'

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> The servant who had received two bags of gold also came, and he said, 'Master, you gave me two bags of gold to take care of. Look, I have gained two more!'

## Matthew 25:23

### Well done (ULT) a...servant (UST)

Your culture might have an expression that a master (or someone in authority) would use to show that he approves of what his servant (or someone under him) has done. See how you translated this in [25:21](#). Alternate translation: "You have done well" or "You have done right"

### Enter into the joy of your master (ULT) You have...Come...be happy with me (UST)

The phrase **Enter into the joy** is an idiom. See how you translated this in [25:21](#). Alternate translation: "Come and be happy with me" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Enter into the joy of your master (ULT) You have...Come...be happy with me (UST)

The master is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)
- [of...master](#)
- [Well done](#)
- [good](#)
- [faithful](#)
- [faithful](#)
- [slave](#)
- [I will appoint](#)
- [joy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [master](#)
- [be happy with me](#)
- [a...servant](#)
- [very good](#)
- [a...servant](#)
- [been very faithful to me](#)
- [You have managed a small amount of money very well, so](#)
- [I will put...in charge](#)
- [be happy with me](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> His [master](#) said to him, 'Well done, [good](#) and [faithful slave](#)! You have been [faithful](#) over a few {things}. [I will appoint](#) you over many {things}. Enter into the [joy](#) of your [master](#).'

### UST

<sup>23</sup> His [master](#) replied, 'You are a [very good servant](#)! You have [been very faithful to me](#). You have [managed a small amount of money very well, so I will put](#) you [in charge](#) of a lot of things. Come and [be happy with me](#)!'

## Matthew 25:24

### reaping where you did not sow, and gathering where you did not scatter (ULT)

The words **reaping where you did not sow** and **gathering where you did not scatter** mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### reaping where you did not sow, and gathering where you did not scatter (ULT)

This refers to a farmer who gathers crops that other people have planted. The servant uses this metaphor to accuse the master of taking what rightfully belongs to others. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you did not scatter (ULT)

This refers to sowing seed by gently throwing handfuls of it onto the soil. Alternate translation: "you did not scatter seed"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [had received](#)
- [Master](#)
- [I know](#)
- [strict](#)
- [reaping](#)
- [you did...sow](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had received](#)
- [Master](#)
- [I knew](#)
- [who tries to harvest](#)
- [he did...plant](#)
- [hard, harden, hardness](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But the one {that} [had received](#) the one talent, having also approached, said, '[Master, I know](#) you, that you are a [strict](#) man, [reaping](#) where [you did](#) not [sow](#), and gathering where you did not scatter.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Then the servant who [had received](#) one bag of gold came. He said, '[Master](#), I was afraid of you. [I knew](#) that you are a man who expects to make a lot of money even if you invest nothing, like a farmer [who tries to harvest](#) a field [he did](#) not [plant](#).

## Matthew 25:25

**talent...Behold, you have...yours (ULT)  
the...ground. Here it is now; please take it  
back (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Look, here is what is yours"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having become afraid](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I was afraid](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> And [having become afraid](#), having gone away, I hid your talent in the ground. Behold, you have {what is} yours.'

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> [I was afraid](#) of what you might do if I lost the money you lent me to invest, so I hid it in the ground. Here it is now; please take it back!'



## Matthew 25:26

**You wicked and lazy slave! You have known (ULT)**

**wicked...lazy...servant...You knew (UST)**

Alternate translation: "You are a wicked slave who does not want to work. You knew"

**I reap where I did not sow and harvest where I did not scatter (ULT)**

**farmer who harvests grain from another man's field where I did not even plant the seeds (UST)**

The words **reap where I did not sow** and **harvest where I did not scatter** mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**I reap where I did not sow and harvest where I did not scatter (ULT)**  
**farmer who harvests grain from another man's field where I did not even plant the seeds (UST)**

This refers to a farmer who gathers crops that people who work for him have planted. See how you translated this in [25:24](#), where the servant uses these words to accuse the farmer. The readers should understand that the farmer is acknowledging that he does indeed gather what others have planted but is saying that he is right to do so. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)
- [You wicked](#)
- [slave](#)
- [You have known](#)
- [I reap](#)
- [I did...sow](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [boss](#)
- [wicked...servant](#)
- [wicked...servant](#)
- [You knew](#)
- [farmer who harvests grain](#)
- [from another man's field where I did...even plant](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But answering, his [master](#) said to him, 'You [wicked](#) and lazy [slave!](#) You [have known](#) that I [reap](#) where I [did](#) not [sow](#) and harvest where I did not scatter.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> His [boss](#) replied, 'You [wicked](#), lazy [servant!](#) You [knew](#) that I take from others money that does not really belong to me, like a [farmer who harvests grain from another man's field where I did](#) not [even plant](#) the seeds!

## Matthew 25:27

**would have received back my money (ULT)**  
**I would get it back with the interest it earned (UST)**

You can state the understood information explicitly. Alternate translation: "I would have received back my own money" (See: Ellipsis)

**interest (ULT)**  
**with the interest it earned (UST)**

This **interest** was a payment from the banker for the temporary use of the master's money.

### Translation Words - ULT

- money
- would have received back

### Translation Words - UST

- money
- I would get it back

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Therefore, it was necessary for you to have placed my **money** at the bankers, and having come, I **would have received back** my money with interest.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> So then, you should have at least put my **money** on deposit in a bank, so that when I returned I **would get it back** with the interest it earned!

## Matthew 25:28

**take away...the talent (ULT)**

**Take...the bag of gold (UST)**

The master is speaking to other servants.

**the talent (ULT)**

**the bag of gold (UST)**

A **talent** was worth twenty years' wages. Avoid translating this into modern money. See how you translated this in [25:15](#). (See: [Biblical Money](#))

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> Therefore, take away the talent from him and give it to the one having the ten talents.

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> Then the master said to his other servants, 'Take the bag of gold from him and give it to the servant who has the ten bags!

**Matthew 25:29**

**to the one...having (ULT)**  
**use well what they have received...use well**  
**what they have received (UST)**

It is implied that the person who has something also uses it wisely. Alternate translation: “to the one who uses well what he has” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**even more abundantly (ULT)**  
**and they will have plenty (UST)**

Alternate translation: “even much more”

**But from the one not having (ULT)**  
**But from those who do not use well what they have received (UST)**

It is implied that the person does have something but he does not use it wisely. Alternate translation: “But from the one does not use well what he has” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**will be taken away (ULT)**  
**they already have will be taken away (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “God will take away” or “I will take away” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> For to the one having, all will be given—even more abundantly. But from the one not having, even what he has will be taken away from him.

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> To those who use well what they have received, God will give more, and they will have plenty. But from those who do not use well what they have received, even what they already have will be taken away.

## Matthew 25:30

### the outer darkness (ULT) outside...the darkness (UST)

Here, **outer darkness** is a metonym for the place where God sends those who reject them. This is a place that is completely separated from God forever. See how you translated this in [8:12](#). Alternate translation: "the dark place away from God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### weeping and grinding of the teeth (ULT) with those who are wailing and grinding their teeth in pain (UST)

Here, **grinding of teeth** is symbolic action, representing extreme sadness and suffering. See how you translated this in [8:12](#). Alternate translation: "weeping and expressing their extreme suffering" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [throw out](#)
- [slave](#)
- [darkness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [throw](#)
- [servant](#)
- [darkness](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> And [throw out](#) the worthless [slave](#) into the outer [darkness](#), where there will be weeping and grinding of the teeth.'

### UST

<sup>30</sup> Furthermore, [throw](#) that worthless [servant](#) outside into the [darkness](#), where he will be with those who are wailing and grinding their teeth in pain."

## Matthew 25:31

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell his disciples how he will judge people when he returns at the end time.

### the Son of Man (ULT)

### the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son of Man](#)
- [glory](#)
- [glorious](#)
- [angels](#)
- [throne](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Son of Man](#)
- [brilliant light](#)
- [throne to judge everyone](#)
- [angels](#)
- [throne to judge everyone](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> But when the [Son of Man](#) comes in his [glory](#) and all the [angels](#) with him, then he will sit on his [glorious throne](#).

### UST

<sup>31</sup> "When the [Son of Man](#) comes again in his [brilliant light](#) and brings all his [angels](#), he will sit as king on his [throne to judge everyone](#).

**Matthew 25:32**

**And before him will be gathered all the nations (ULT)**

**Everyone from all the people groups will be gathered in front of him (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "And he will gather all the nations before himself" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**before him (ULT)**

**in front of him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in front of him"

**all the nations (ULT)**

**Everyone from all the people groups (UST)**

Here, **nations** refers to people. Alternate translation: "all people from every country" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**just as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats (ULT)**

**as a shepherd separates his sheep from his goats (UST)**

Jesus uses a simile to describe how he will separate the people. (See: [Simile](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- will be gathered
- nations
- he will separate
- separates
- just as
- shepherd
- sheep
- goats

**Translation Words - UST**

- people groups
- will be gathered
- he will separate
- separates
- as
- a shepherd
- his sheep
- his goats

**ULT**

<sup>32</sup> And before him will be gathered all the nations, and he will separate them from one another, just as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats.

**UST**

<sup>32</sup> Everyone from all the people groups will be gathered in front of him. Then he will separate the people one from another, as a shepherd separates his sheep from his goats.

## Matthew 25:33

### And he will place the sheep on his right, but the goats on his left

This is a metaphor that means the Son of Man will separate all people. He will put the righteous people at his right side, and he will put the sinners at his left side. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sheep](#)
- [right](#)
- [goats](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [right](#)
- [just like sheep and](#)
- [goats](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> And he will place the [sheep](#) on his [right](#), but the [goats](#) on {his} left.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> He will put the righteous people on his [right](#) and the unrighteous ones on his left, [just like sheep and goats.](#)"





## **Matthew 25:34**

**the King...his (ULT)**  
**he will say...his (UST)**

Here, “the King” is another title for the Son of Man. Jesus was referring to himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “I, the King, ... my right hand” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**Come, you {that} have been blessed by my Father (ULT)**  
**You people who have been blessed by my Father, come (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “Come, you whom my Father has blessed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by my Father (ULT)**  
**by my Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**inherit the kingdom prepared for you (ULT)**  
**Come receive all the good things he will give you, for he is now giving you the blessings of his rule—things he has been preparing (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “inherit the kingdom that God has made ready for you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**inherit the kingdom prepared for you (ULT)**  
**Come receive all the good things he will give you, for he is now giving you the blessings of his rule—things he has been preparing (UST)**

Here, **kingdom** refers to God’s rule as king. Alternate translation: “receive the blessings of God’s rule that he has planned to give you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**from {the} foundation of {the} world (ULT)**  
**since the time he created the world (UST)**

Alternate translation: “since he first created the world”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- King
- right
- have been blessed
- by...Father

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> Then the **King** will say to the ones at his **right**, ‘Come, you {that} **have been blessed** by my **Father**, **inherit** the **kingdom** prepared for you from {the} **foundation of {the} world**.

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> Then **he will say** to those on his **right**, ‘You people who **have been blessed** by my **Father**, come! **Come receive all the good things he will give** you, for he is now giving you the blessings **of his rule—things** he has been preparing since **the time he created the world**.

- inherit
- kingdom
- the} foundation of {the} world
- the} foundation
- of {the} world

## Translation Words - UST

- he will say
- right
- have been blessed
- by...Father
- Come receive all the good things he will give
- of his rule—things
- the time he created the world
- the time he created
- the world

## Matthew 25:35

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> For I was hungry, and you gave me to eat; I was thirsty, and you gave me to drink; I was a stranger, and you invited me in;

### UST

<sup>35</sup> These things belong to you, because you gave me something to eat when I was hungry. You gave me something to drink when I was thirsty. When I was a stranger in your town, you invited me to stay in your houses.

## Matthew 25:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- you clothed
- prison

### Translation Words - UST

- you gave...some
- prison

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> I was naked, and you clothed me; I was sick, and you cared for me; I was in prison, and you came to me.'

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> When I needed clothes, you gave me some. When I was sick, you took care of me. When I was in prison, you came to visit me.'

## Matthew 25:37

**the righteous (ULT)**  
**the people whom God has declared to be good**  
**will reply (UST)**

If your language does not use the nominal adjective **righteous**, you can express it as an adjective. Alternate translation: "the righteous people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**Or thirsty (ULT)**  
**were you thirsty (UST)**

You can state the understood information explicitly. Alternate translation: "Or when did we see you thirsty" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous](#)
- [Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the people whom God has declared to be good will reply](#)
- [Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> Then the [righteous](#) will answer him, saying, 'Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed {you}? Or thirsty and give {you} to drink?

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> Then [the people whom God has declared to be good will reply](#), 'Lord, when were you hungry and we saw you and gave you something to eat? When were you thirsty and we gave you something to drink?

## Matthew 25:38

### Or naked and clothe {you (ULT) When did you need clothes and we gave you some (UST)

This is the end of a series of questions that begins in verse 37. You can state the understood information clearly. Alternate translation: "Or when did we see you naked and give you clothing?" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- clothe {you

#### Translation Words - UST

- we gave you some

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> And when did we see you a stranger and invite {you} in? Or naked and [clothe {you}](#)?

#### UST

<sup>38</sup> When were you a stranger in our town and we invited you to stay in our houses? When did you need clothes and [we gave you some](#)?



## Matthew 25:39

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prison](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [prison](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> And when did we see you sick or in [prison](#) and come to you?’

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> When were you sick or in [prison](#) and we went to visit you? We do not remember doing any of these things for you.

**Matthew 25:40****the King (ULT)****The King will reply (UST)**

Here, **the King** is another title for the Son of Man. Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**will say to them (ULT)****The King will reply (UST)**

Alternate translation: "will say to those at his right hand"

**Truly I say to you (ULT)****The truth is that (UST)**

This emphasizes what the King says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

**for one...of the least...brothers (ULT)****for any one...of your fellow believers...most unimportant one (UST)**

Alternate translation: "for one of the least important"

**of these brothers of mine (ULT)****of your fellow believers (UST)**

Here, **brothers** refers to anyone, male or female, who obeys the King. Alternate translation: "my brothers and sisters here" or "these who are like my brothers and sisters" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**you did {it...for me (ULT)****you did...for me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I consider that you did it for me"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [King](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [brothers](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [The King will reply](#)
- [The truth is that](#)
- [of your fellow believers](#)

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> And answering, the [King](#) will say to them, '[Truly](#) I say to you, to the extent that you did {it} for one of the least of these [brothers](#) of mine, you did {it} for me.'

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> [The King will reply](#), '[The truth is that](#) whatever you did for any one [of your fellow believers](#), even the most unimportant one, you certainly did it for me.'

## Matthew 25:41

**Then he also will say (ULT)**

**But then he will say (UST)**

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "Then the King also will" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

**you cursed (ULT)**

**You people whom God has cursed (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you people whom God has cursed"

**the eternal fire {that} has been prepared (ULT)**

**the eternal fire that God has prepared (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the everlasting fire that God has prepared" (See: [Active](#) or [Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you cursed](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [fire](#)
- [for the devil](#)
- [angels](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You people whom God has cursed](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [fire](#)
- [devil](#)
- [angels](#)

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Then he also will say to the ones on {his} left, 'Depart from me, [you cursed](#), into the [eternal fire](#) {that} has been prepared [for the devil](#) and his [angels](#),

### UST

<sup>41</sup> But then he will say to those on his left, '[You people whom God has cursed](#), leave me! Go into the [eternal fire](#) that God has prepared for the [devil](#) and his [angels](#)!

## Matthew 25:42

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> for I was hungry, and you did not give me to eat; I was thirsty, and you did not give me to drink;

### UST

<sup>42</sup> It is right for you to go there, because you did not give me anything to eat when I was hungry. You did not give me anything to drink when I was thirsty.

## Matthew 25:43

**naked, and you did not clothe me (ULT)**  
**You did not give me any clothes when I needed them (UST)**

The words **I was** preceding **naked** are understood. Alternate translation: "I was naked, but you did not give me clothes" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**sick and in prison (ULT)**  
**I was sick or in prison (UST)**

The words "I was" preceding **sick** are understood. Alternate translation: "I was sick and in prison" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you did...clothe](#)
- [prison](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You did...give...any clothes](#)
- [prison](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> I was a stranger, and you did not invite me in; naked, and [you did](#) not [clothe](#) me; sick and in [prison](#), and you did not care for me.'

### UST

<sup>43</sup> You did not invite me into your homes when I was a stranger in your town. [You did](#) not [give](#) me [any clothes](#) when I needed them. You did not take care of me when I was sick or in [prison](#).'

## Matthew 25:44

**they will also answer (ULT)**

**They will answer (UST)**

Alternate translation: "those on his left will also answer"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- prison
- did...serve

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- prison
- we did...help

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> Then they will also answer, saying, 'Lord, when did we see you hungry, or thirsty, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not serve you?'

### UST

<sup>44</sup> They will answer, 'Lord, when were you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or needing clothes or sick or in prison, and we did not help you?'

## Matthew 25:45

**for one of the least of these (ULT)  
any one of my people, even the most  
unimportant person, it was I for whom (UST)**

Alternate translation: "for any of the least important ones of my people"

**you did...do {it...not...for me (ULT)  
you did...do anything to help...not (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I consider that you did not do it for me" or "I was really the one whom you did not help"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly

### Translation Words - UST

- The truth is

#### ULT

<sup>45</sup> Then he will answer them, saying, 'Truly I say to you, to the extent that you did not do {it} for one of the least of these, you did not do {it} for me.'

#### UST

<sup>45</sup> He will reply, 'The truth is that whenever you did not do anything to help any one of my people, even the most unimportant person, it was I for whom you did not do it.'

**Matthew 25:46**

**And these will go away into eternal punishment (ULT)**

**Then those people on my left will go away to the place where God will punish them forever (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And the King will send these to a place where they will receive punishment that never ends"

**but the righteous into eternal life (ULT)**  
**but the people good in God's sight will go to where they will live forever with God (UST)**

You can state the understood information explicitly. Alternate translation: "but the King will send the righteous to the place where they will live forever with God" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**the...righteous (ULT)**  
**but...the people good in God's sight will go (UST)**

If your language does not use nominative adjective **righteous**, you can express it as an adjective. Alternate translation: "the righteous people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [eternal](#)
- [eternal \(2\)](#)
- [punishment](#)
- [righteous](#)
- [life](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the place where God will punish them](#)
- [forever](#)
- [forever with God \(2\)](#)
- [the people good in God's sight will go](#)
- [where they will live](#)

**ULT**

<sup>46</sup> And these will go away into [eternal punishment](#), but the [righteous](#) into [eternal life](#)."

**UST**

<sup>46</sup> Then those people on my left will go away to [the place where God will punish them forever](#), but the [people good in God's sight will go to where they will live forever with God](#)."



## Matthew 26

### Matthew 26 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 26:31, which is words from the Old Testament.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Sheep

Sheep are a common image used in Scripture to refer to the people of Israel. In [Matthew 26:31](#), however, Jesus used the words “the sheep” to refer to his disciples and to say that they would run away when he was arrested.

##### Passover

The Passover festival was when the Jews would celebrate the day God killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians but “passed over” the Israelites and let them live.

##### The eating of the body and blood

[Matthew 26:26-28](#) describes Jesus’ last meal with his followers. At this time, Jesus told them that what they were eating and drinking were his body and his blood. Nearly all Christian churches celebrate “the Lord’s Supper,” the “Eucharist”, or “Holy Communion” to remember this meal.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Judas’ kiss for Jesus

[Matthew 26:49](#) describes how Judas kissed Jesus so the soldiers would know whom to arrest. The Jews would kiss each other when they greeted each other.

##### “I am able to destroy the temple of God”

Two men accused Jesus of saying that he could destroy the temple in Jerusalem and then rebuild it “in three days” ([Matthew 26:61](#)). They were accusing him of insulting God by claiming that God had given him the authority to destroy the temple and the power to rebuild it. What Jesus actually said was that if the Jewish authorities were to destroy this temple, he would certainly raise it up in three days ([John 2:19](#)).

## Matthew 26:1

### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that tells of Jesus' crucifixion, death, and resurrection. Here he tells his disciples how he will suffer and die.

### And it happened that when (ULT)

### When (UST)

This phrase shifts the story from Jesus' teachings to what happened next. Alternate translation: "And after" or "Then, after"

### all these words (ULT)

### all those things (UST)

The phrase **these words** refers to all that Jesus taught starting in [24:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to...disciples](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And it happened that when [Jesus](#) had finished all these words, he said to his [disciples](#),

### UST

<sup>1</sup> When [Jesus](#) had finished saying all those things, he said to the [disciples](#),

**Matthew 26:2**

**the Son of Man is being handed over to be crucified (ULT)**

**will hand the Son of Man over to those who will nail him to a cross (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "some men will take the Son of Man to other people who will crucify him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the Son of Man (ULT)**

**the Son of Man (UST)**

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [You know](#)
- [days](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [be crucified](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [You know](#)
- [days](#)
- [Passover festival](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [to those who will nail him to a cross](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> "You know that after two days the [Passover](#) is coming, and the [Son of Man](#) is being handed over to [be crucified](#)."

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> "You know that two days from now we will celebrate the [Passover festival](#). At that time someone will hand the [Son of Man](#) over to those who will nail him to a cross."

## Matthew 26:3

### Connecting Statement:

Verses 3-5 give background information about the Jewish leaders' plot to arrest and kill Jesus. (See: [Background Information](#))

### were gathered together (ULT) gathered (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "came together" or "met together" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [chief priests](#)
- [of the high priest](#)
- [elders](#)
- [of the people](#)
- [were gathered together](#)
- [named](#)
- [Caiaphas](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [chief priests](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [Jewish elders](#)
- [Jewish elders](#)
- [gathered](#)
- [whose name was](#)
- [Caiaphas](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then the [chief priests](#) and the [elders of the people](#) were gathered together in the palace of the high priest, named [Caiaphas](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> At the same time the [chief priests](#) and the [Jewish elders gathered](#) in the home of the high priest, whose name was [Caiaphas](#).

## Matthew 26:4

### stealthily (ULT) in some tricky way (UST)

Alternate translation: "secretly"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- they might arrest
- Jesus

#### Translation Words - UST

- they could arrest
- Jesus

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And they plotted together in order that **they might arrest Jesus** stealthily and might kill him.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> There they planned how **they could arrest Jesus** in some tricky way so that they could have him executed.

## Matthew 26:5

### Not during the festival (ULT)

### We must not do it during the Passover festival (UST)

It may be helpful to your readers to state what the leaders did not want to do during the festival. Alternate translation: "We should not kill Jesus during the festival" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### during the festival (ULT)

### during the Passover festival (UST)

Here, **festival** refers to the yearly Passover festival.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [festival](#)
- [people](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Passover festival](#)
- [the people](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But they were saying, "Not during the [festival](#), so that a riot does not happen among the [people](#)."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> But they said, "We must not do it during the [Passover festival](#), because if we do it then, [the people](#) might riot."

## Matthew 26:6

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of a woman pouring expensive oil on Jesus before his death.

### Now (ULT)

### While (UST)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

### of Simon the leper (ULT)

### of Simon, whom Jesus had healed of leprosy (UST)

It is implied that this **Simon** is a man whom Jesus had healed from leprosy. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Bethany
- the} house
- leper

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus and his disciples
- the village of Bethany, they ate
- the home
- leprosy

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Now {while} Jesus was in Bethany in {the} house of Simon the leper,

### UST

<sup>6</sup> While Jesus and his disciples were in the village of Bethany, they ate in the home of Simon, whom Jesus had healed of leprosy.

## Matthew 26:7

### as he is reclining to eat (ULT) he was eating (UST)

You can use your language's word for the position people usually are in when they eat. Alternate translation: "and Jesus was lying on his side"

### a woman came to him (ULT) During the meal, a woman came into the house...to Jesus as (UST)

Alternate translation: "a woman came to Jesus"

### an alabaster jar (ULT) a beautiful stone jar (UST)

This **alabaster jar** was a costly container made of soft stone. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### of very expensive perfumed ointment (ULT) containing very expensive perfume (UST)

This refers to oil that has a pleasing smell.

### she poured {it} upon his head (ULT) She went up...poured all the perfume on his head (UST)

The woman did this to honor Jesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...perfumed ointment
- head

### Translation Words - UST

- containing...perfume
- head

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> a woman came to him having an alabaster jar of very expensive **perfumed ointment**, and she poured {it} upon his **head** as he is reclining to eat.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> During the meal, a woman came into the house. She was carrying a beautiful stone jar **containing** very expensive **perfume**. She went up to Jesus as he was eating and poured all the perfume on his **head**.



## Matthew 26:8

### For what {is} this waste (ULT) that this perfume was wasted (UST)

The disciples ask this question out of their anger over the woman's actions. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "This woman has done a bad thing by wasting this ointment!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [waste](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [was wasted](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now having seen {this}, the [disciples](#) became angry, saying, "For what {is} this [waste](#)?"

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> When the [disciples](#) saw that, they were very angry. One of them said, "It is terrible that this perfume [was wasted](#)!"

**Matthew 26:9**

**For this was able to have been sold for much and to be given (ULT)**

**We could have sold it and gotten a lot of money for it! Then we could have given the money (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "For she could have sold this for a large amount of money and given the money" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to {the} poor (ULT)**

**to poor people (UST)**

If your language does not use the nominal adjective **the poor**, you can express it as an adjective. Alternate translation: "to poor people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> For this was able to have been sold for much and to be given to {the} poor."

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> We could have sold it and gotten a lot of money for it! Then we could have given the money to poor people."

## Matthew 26:10

### Why are you causing trouble for the woman (ULT)

### what they were saying...You should not be bothering this woman (UST)

Jesus asks this question as a rebuke of his disciples. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not be troubling this woman!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### are you causing (ULT)

### You should not be bothering (UST)

Here, **you** is plural and refers to the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- knowing {this}
- trouble
- good
- a...work

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- knew
- You should not be bothering
- She has done
- a beautiful

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But Jesus, knowing {this}, said to them, "Why are you causing trouble for the woman? For she has done a good work for me.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Jesus knew what they were saying, so he said to them, "You should not be bothering this woman! She has done a beautiful thing to me.

## Matthew 26:11

### the poor (ULT)

### poor people (UST)

If your language does not use the nominal adjective **poor**, you can express it as an adjective. Alternate translation: "poor people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> For you always have the poor with you, but you do not always have me.

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Keep in mind that you will always have poor people among you, so you can help them whenever you want to. But I will not always be with you!

## Matthew 26:12

### ointment (ULT)

### perfume (UST)

This **ointment** was oil that had a pleasing smell. See how you translated this in [26:7](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- ointment
- body
- burial

### Translation Words - UST

- perfume
- body, it was as if she knew that I am going to die soon
- being buried

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For {when} she poured this ointment on my body, she did {it} for my burial.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> When she poured this perfume on my body, it was as if she knew that I am going to die soon. And it is as if she had anointed my body for being buried.

**Matthew 26:13****Truly I say to you (ULT)****I will tell you this (UST)**

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

**wherever this gospel is preached (ULT)****Wherever in...preach the good news about me (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "wherever people preach this good news" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**what she has done will also be spoken of in memory of her (ULT)****they will tell what this woman has done, and as a result, people will always remember her (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "they will remember what this woman has done and will tell others about her" or "people will remember what this woman has done and will tell others about her" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Truly
- gospel
- is preached
- world

**Translation Words - UST**

- I will tell you this
- world people
- preach
- good news about me

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> Truly I say to you, wherever this **gospel is preached** in the whole **world**, what she has done will also be spoken of in memory of her."

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> I will tell you this: Wherever in the entire **world people preach** the **good news about me**, they will tell what this woman has done, and as a result, people will always remember her."

## Matthew 26:14

### Connecting Statement:

Judas Iscariot agrees to help the Jewish leaders arrest and kill Jesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the Twelve
- named
- Judas Iscariot
- chief priests

### Translation Words - UST

- Judas...Iscariot, even though he was
- Judas
- twelve disciples
- chief priests

### ULT

**14** Then one of the Twelve, named Judas Iscariot, having gone to the chief priests,

### UST

**14** Then Judas Iscariot, even though he was one of the twelve disciples, went to the chief priests.

**Matthew 26:15****and I will betray him to you (ULT)****I enable you to arrest Jesus (UST)**

Alternate translation: "and I will bring Jesus to you"

**30 shekels of silver (ULT)****thirty silver coins (UST)**

Since these words are the same as those in an Old Testament prophecy, keep this form instead of changing it to modern money.

Alternate translation: "thirty pieces of silver"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- will betray
- shekels of silver

**Translation Words - UST**

- enable...to arrest
- silver coins

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> said, "What are you willing to give me, and I will betray him to you?" And they weighed out 30 shekels of silver for him.

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> He asked them, "If I enable you to arrest Jesus, how much money are you willing to give me?" They agreed to give him thirty silver coins. So they counted out the coins and gave them to him.



## Matthew 26:16

**in order that he might betray him (ULT)  
an opportunity...when they could arrest Jesus  
(UST)**

Alternate translation: "so that he would give him over to them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- he began to seek
- he might betray

### Translation Words - UST

- Judas watched for
- when they could arrest Jesus

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> And from that moment he began to seek an opportunity in order that he might betray him.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> From that time Judas watched for an opportunity when they could arrest Jesus.

## Matthew 26:17

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus celebrating the Passover with his disciples.

### Now (ULT) and (UST)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Unleavened Bread
- disciples
- Jesus
- Passover

### Translation Words - UST

- Festival of Bread with No Yeast
- disciples
- Jesus
- meal for the Passover Celebration so that we can

### ULT

**17** Now on the first day of Unleavened Bread the disciples came to Jesus, saying, "Where do you want {that} we might prepare for you to eat the Passover?"

### UST

**17** On the first day of the week-long Festival of Bread with No Yeast, the disciples went to Jesus and asked, "Where do you want us to prepare the meal for the Passover Celebration so that we can eat it with you?"



## **Matthew 26:18**

**And he said, “Go into the city to such a man and say to him, ‘The Teacher says, “My time is near. I am doing the Passover at your {house} with my disciples (ULT)**

**Jesus instructed two of the disciples about what they should do. He said to them, “Go into the city to a man with whom I have previously arranged this. Tell him that I, the Teacher, say this: ‘The time that I told you about is near. I am going to celebrate the Passover meal with my disciples at your house, and I have sent these two to prepare the meal (UST)**

This has quotations within quotations. You can state some of the direct quotations as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: “But he told his disciples to go into the city to a certain man and tell him that the Teacher says to him, ‘My time is at hand. I will keep the Passover at your house with my disciples.’” or “But he told his disciples to go into the city to a certain man and say to him that the Teacher’s time is at hand and he will keep the Passover with his disciples at that man’s house.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**he...My...time (ULT)**

**Jesus instructed two of the disciples about...time that I told (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) the time that Jesus told them about. (2) the time God has set for Jesus.

**is near (ULT)**

**is near. I am going to (UST)**

This could mean: (1) it “is near.” (2) it “has come.” (See: [Idiom](#))

**I am doing the Passover (ULT)**

**celebrate the Passover meal (UST)**

Alternate translation: “I am eat the Passover meal” or “I am celebrating the Passover by eating the special meal”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Teacher](#)
- [time](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [disciples](#)

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> And he said, “Go into the city to such a man and say to him, ‘The [Teacher](#) says, “My [time](#) is near. I am doing the [Passover](#) at your {house} with my [disciples.](#)””

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> Jesus instructed two of the disciples about what they should do. He said to them, “Go into the city to a man with whom I have previously arranged this. Tell him that I, the [Teacher](#), say this: ‘The [time](#) that I told you about is near. I am going to celebrate the [Passover meal](#) with my [disciples](#) at your house, and I have sent these two to prepare the meal.”

## **Translation Words - UST**

- Teacher
- time
- Passover meal
- disciples

## Matthew 26:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- as
- Jesus
- Passover

### Translation Words - UST

- two disciples
- as
- Jesus
- Passover meal

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> And the disciples did as Jesus directed them, and they prepared the Passover.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> So the two disciples did as Jesus told them. They went and prepared the Passover meal in that man's house.

## Matthew 26:20

### he was reclining to eat (ULT) was eating the meal (UST)

Translate **reclining** with the word for the position people in your culture usually are in when they eat.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Twelve](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [twelve disciples](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Now evening having come, he was reclining to eat with the [Twelve](#).

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> When that evening had come, Jesus was eating the meal with the [twelve disciples](#).



## Matthew 26:21

### Truly I say to you (ULT) Listen carefully to this (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- will betray

#### Translation Words - UST

- Listen carefully to this
- is going to enable my enemies to arrest

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> And as they were eating, he said, "Truly I say to you that one of you will betray me."

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> He said to them, "Listen carefully to this: One of you is going to enable my enemies to arrest me."

## Matthew 26:22

### Surely not I, Lord (ULT)

### Lord, it is surely not I (UST)

This could be: (1) a rhetorical question since the apostles were sure they would not betray Jesus. Alternate translation: "Lord, I would never betray you!" (2) a sincere question since Jesus' statement probably troubled and confused them. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And being very grieved, each one began to ask him, "Surely not I, [Lord](#)?"

### UST

<sup>22</sup> The disciples were very sad. They began to say to him, one after the other, "[Lord](#), it is surely not I!"

## Matthew 26:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- will betray

### Translation Words - UST

- will enable my enemies to arrest
- dipping bread into the sauce

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But he, answering, said, "The one having dipped {his} hand with me in the dish, he will betray me.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> He replied, "The one who will enable my enemies to arrest me is the one of you who is dipping bread into the sauce in the dish along with me.

## Matthew 26:24

### The Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### will depart (ULT) Man, will die (UST)

Here, **depart** is a polite way to refer to dying. Alternate translation: “will go to his death” or “will die” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### just as it is written about him (ULT) because that is what the scriptures say about me (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “just as the prophets wrote about him in the scriptures” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed (ULT) for the man who enables my enemies to arrest me (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “to the man who betrays the Son of Man” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son of Man
- Son of Man
- just as
- it is written
- woe
- is betrayed
- better

### Translation Words - UST

- Son...of Man, will die
- enables my enemies to arrest me
- because that is what
- the scriptures say
- there will be terrible punishment
- enables my enemies to arrest me
- better for

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> The [Son of Man](#) will depart [just as it is written](#) about him. But [woe](#) to that man by whom the [Son of Man is betrayed](#)! It was [better](#) for him if that man had not been born.”

### UST

<sup>24</sup> It is certain that I, the [Son of Man](#), [will die](#), [because that is what the scriptures say](#) about me. But [there will be terrible punishment](#) for the man who [enables my enemies to arrest me](#)! It would be [better for](#) that man if he had never been born!”

## Matthew 26:25

### Surely it is not I, Rabbi (ULT) Teacher, surely it is not I (UST)

Judas may be using a rhetorical question to deny that he is the one who will betray Jesus. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Rabbi, surely I am not the one who will betray you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### You have said {it} yourself (ULT) Yes, you are admitting it (UST)

This is an idiom that Jesus uses to mean "yes" without being completely clear about what he means. Alternate translation: "You are saying it" or "You are admitting it" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Judas
- betraying
- Rabbi

### Translation Words - UST

- Judas
- was going to betray
- Teacher, surely

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But answering, Judas, the one betraying him, said, "Surely it is not I, Rabbi?" He said to him, "You have said {it} yourself."

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then Judas, the one who was going to betray him, said, "Teacher, surely it is not I!" Jesus replied, "Yes, you are admitting it."

## Matthew 26:26

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus institutes the Lord's Supper as he celebrates the Passover with his disciples.

**having taken...having blessed {it}, he broke {it} (ULT)**

**took...thanked God for it. He broke it into pieces (UST)**

See how you translated these words in [14:19](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- bread
- having blessed {it}
- to...disciples
- body

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- a loaf of bread
- thanked God for it. He
- disciples
- body

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Now {as} they are eating, Jesus, having taken bread and having blessed {it}, he broke {it}. And having given {it} to the disciples, he said, "Take, eat. This is my body."

### UST

<sup>26</sup> While they were eating, Jesus took a loaf of bread and thanked God for it. He broke it into pieces, gave it to the disciples, and said, "Take this bread and eat it. It is my body."

## Matthew 26:27

**a cup (ULT)**

**a cup of wine (UST)**

Here, **cup** refers to both the cup and the wine in it. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**he gave {it} to them (ULT)**

**gave it to them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he gave it to the disciples"

**Drink from it (ULT)**

**Drink from this cup (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Drink the wine from this cup"

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> And having taken a cup and having given thanks, he gave {it} to them, saying, "Drink from it, all of you.

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> Later he took a cup of wine and thanked God for it. Then he gave it to them and said, "Drink from this cup, all of you.

## Matthew 26:28

**For this is my blood (ULT)**  
**The wine in this cup represents my blood (UST)**

Alternate translation: "For this wine is my blood"

**blood...of the covenant (ULT)**  
**blood...body. With my blood I will sign the agreement that God has made (UST)**

Alternate translation: "blood that shows that the covenant is in effect" or "blood that makes the covenant possible"

**is being poured out (ULT)**  
**which will soon flow from my (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "will soon flow out of my body" or "will flow out of my wounds when I die" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [of the covenant](#)
- [the} forgiveness](#)
- [of sins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [blood](#)
- [that God has made](#)
- [forgive](#)
- [the sins of](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> For this is my [blood of the covenant](#) {that} is being poured out for many for {the} [forgiveness of sins](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> The wine in this cup represents my [blood](#), which will soon flow from my body. With my blood I will sign the agreement [that God has made](#) to [forgive the sins](#) of many people.



**Matthew 26:29****I say...to you (ULT)****Note this carefully: I will...Note this carefully:****I will (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

**fruit of the vine (ULT)****wine (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "wine" (See: [Idiom](#))

**in the kingdom of my Father (ULT)****my Father rules completely (UST)**

Here, **kingdom** refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "when my Father establishes his rule on earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of my Father (ULT)****my Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [fruit](#)
- [of the vine](#)
- [day](#)
- [kingdom of...Father](#)
- [of...Father](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [wine](#)
- [wine](#)
- [time](#)
- [Father...rules completely](#)
- [Father](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> But I say to you, I will certainly not drink again from this [fruit of the vine](#) until that [day](#) when I drink it new with you in the [kingdom of my Father](#)."

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> Note this carefully: I will not drink [wine](#) in this way anymore until the [time](#) when I drink it with you with a new meaning. That will happen when my [Father rules completely](#)."

## Matthew 26:30

**And having sung a hymn (ULT)**

**After they sang a hymn (UST)**

A **hymn** is a song of praise to God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [of Olives](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [Olives](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> And having sung a hymn, they went out to the [Mount of Olives](#).

### UST

<sup>30</sup> After they sang a hymn, they started out toward the [Mount of Olives](#).



## **Matthew 26:31**

**will be caused to stumble in me (ULT)**  
**will desert me because of what will happen to me! This is certain to happen (UST)**

Alternate translation: "will leave me"

**I will strike the shepherd and the sheep of the flock will be scattered (ULT)**  
**I will cause men to kill the shepherd, and they will scatter all the sheep (UST)**

In this verse, Jesus quotes the prophet Zechariah to show that in order to fulfill prophecy, all of his disciples will leave him.

**for it is written (ULT)**  
**because these words that God said are written in the scriptures (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "for the prophet Zechariah wrote long ago in the scriptures" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**I will strike (ULT)**  
**I will cause men to kill (UST)**

Here, **I** refers to God. It is implied that God will cause or allow people to harm and kill Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the shepherd...the sheep of the flock (ULT)**  
**the shepherd...all the sheep (UST)**

These are metaphors that refer to Jesus and the disciples. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the sheep of the flock will be scattered (ULT)**  
**they will scatter all the sheep (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "they will scatter all the sheep of the flock" or "the sheep of the flock will run off in all directions" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [shepherd](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [of the flock](#)

## ULT

<sup>31</sup> Then [Jesus](#) said to them, "You all will be caused to stumble in me in this very night, for [it is written](#), 'I will strike the [shepherd](#) and the [sheep of the flock](#) will be scattered.'

## UST

<sup>31</sup> On the way, [Jesus](#) told them, "This night all of you will desert me because of what will happen to me! This is certain to happen because [these words that God said are written in the scriptures](#): 'I will cause men to kill the [shepherd](#), and they will scatter [all the sheep](#).'

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- these words that God said are written in the scriptures
- shepherd
- all
- sheep

**Matthew 26:32**

**after...I am raised up (ULT)**  
**after I have died and...become alive again, I (UST)**

Here to be **raised up** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. (See: [Idiom](#))

**after...am raised up (ULT)**  
**after I have died and...become alive again (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “after God raises me up” or “after God brings me back to life” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [am raised up](#)
- [Galilee](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [become alive again](#)
- [Galilee and meet you there](#)

**ULT**

<sup>32</sup> But after I [am raised up](#), I will go ahead of you into [Galilee](#).”

**UST**

<sup>32</sup> But after I have died and [become alive again](#), I will go ahead of you to [Galilee and meet you there](#).”

## Matthew 26:33

**will be caused to stumble (ULT)  
will desert you (UST)**

See how you translated this phrase in [26:31](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> But answering, [Peter](#) said to him, “{Even} if all will be caused to stumble in you, I will never be caused to stumble.”

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> [Peter](#) replied, “Perhaps all the other disciples will desert you when they see what happens to you, but I certainly will never leave you!”



**Matthew 26:34****Truly I say to you (ULT)****The truth is that (UST)**

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. Alternate translation: "I tell you the truth"

**before a rooster crows (ULT)****before the rooster crows (UST)**

A **rooster** often **crows** about the time the sun comes up, so the hearers might have understood these words as a metonym for the sun coming up. However, the actual crowing of a rooster is an important part of the story later on, so keep the word **rooster** in the translation. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a rooster (ULT)****the rooster (UST)**

A **rooster** is a male chicken, a bird that calls out loudly around the time the sun comes up.

**crows (ULT)****crows (UST)**

Here, **crows** is the common English word for what a rooster does when it calls out loudly.

**you will deny me three times (ULT)****you will say three times that you do not know me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you will say three times that you are not my follower"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jesus](#)
- [Truly](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jesus](#)
- [The truth is](#)

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> [Jesus](#) said to him, "[Truly](#) I say to you, in this very night, before a rooster crows, you will deny me three times."

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> [Jesus](#) replied to him, "[The truth is](#) that this very night, before the rooster crows, you will say three times that you do not know me!"

## Matthew 26:35

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- to die
- disciples
- likewise

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- they kill
- disciples
- same thing

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Peter says to him, "Even if it is necessary for me to die with you, I will certainly not deny you." And all the disciples said likewise.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> Peter said to him, "Even if they kill me while I am defending you, I will never say that I do not know you!" All the rest of the disciples also said the same thing.

## Matthew 26:36

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus praying in Gethsemane.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- called
- Gethsemane
- to the disciples
- I pray

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- disciples
- that is called
- Gethsemane. There
- pray

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Then Jesus went with them to a place called Gethsemane and says to the disciples, "Sit here while, having gone over there, I pray."

### UST

<sup>36</sup> Then Jesus went with the disciples to a place that is called Gethsemane. There he said, "Stay here while I go over there and pray."

## Matthew 26:37

**he began to be grieved (ULT)**  
**He became extremely distressed (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he became very sad"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- sons
- of Zebedee

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- James, and John with him
- James, and John with him

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> And having taken along Peter and the two sons of Zebedee, he began to be grieved and to be troubled.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> He took Peter, James, and John with him. He became extremely distressed.

## Matthew 26:38

**My soul is deeply sorrowful (ULT)**  
**I am very sorrowful, so much so that I feel as if I were (UST)**

Here, **soul** refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "I am very sad" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**to the point of death (ULT)**  
**about to die (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "and I feel as if I could even die" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [soul](#)
- [death](#)
- [watch](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I feel as if I were](#)
- [die](#)
- [stay awake](#)

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> Then he says to them, "My [soul](#) is deeply sorrowful, to the point of [death](#). Remain here and [watch](#) with me."

#### UST

<sup>38</sup> Then he said to them, "I am very sorrowful, so much so that [I feel as if I were](#) about to [die](#)! Remain here and [stay awake](#) with me!"



## **Matthew 26:39**

**he fell on his face (ULT)**  
**he threw himself facedown on the ground (UST)**

He purposely lay face down on the ground to pray. (See: [Idiom](#))

**My Father (ULT)**  
**My Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God that shows the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**let this cup pass away from me (ULT)**  
**do not make me suffer in the way I know I will have to (UST)**

Jesus speaks of the work that he must do, including dying on the cross, as if it were a bitter liquid that God has commanded him to drink from a cup. The word **cup** is an important word in the New Testament, so try to use an equivalent for that in your translation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**this cup (ULT)**  
**do not make me suffer in the way I know I will have to (UST)**

Here, **cup** is a metonym that stands for the cup and the contents within it. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**this cup (ULT)**  
**do not make me suffer in the way I know I will have to (UST)**

The contents in the **cup** are a metaphor for the suffering that Jesus will have to endure. Jesus is asking the Father if it is possible for him not to have to experience the death and suffering that Jesus knows will soon happen. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Yet, not as I will, but as you (ULT)**  
**But do not do as I want. Instead, do as you want (UST)**

This can be expressed as a full sentence. Alternate translation: "But do not do what I want; instead, do what you want" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [he fell](#)
- [face](#)
- [praying](#)
- [Father](#)
- [as](#)
- [as \(2\)](#)

**ULT**

<sup>39</sup> And having gone a little farther, [he fell](#) on his [face](#), [praying](#) and saying, "My [Father](#), if it is possible, let this cup pass away from me. Yet, not [as](#) I will, but [as](#) you."

**UST**

<sup>39</sup> After going a little farther, [he threw](#) himself [facedown](#) on [the ground](#). [He prayed](#), "My [Father](#), if it is possible, do not make me suffer in the way I know I will have to. But do not do [as](#) I want. Instead, [do as](#) you want!"



## Translation Words - UST

- he threw...the ground
- facedown
- He prayed
- Father
- do...as
- do as (2)

## Matthew 26:40

**he says to Peter, “So, were you not able...to watch (ULT)**

**Peter...said to him, “I am disappointed that you men fell asleep and were not able...to stay awake (UST)**

Jesus is speaking to Peter, but the **you** is plural, referring to Peter, James, and John. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**So, were you not able to watch with me for one hour (ULT)**

**him, “I am disappointed that you men fell asleep and were not able to stay awake with me for just a short time (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to scold Peter, James, and John. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “I am disappointed that you could not stay awake with me for one hour!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [sleeping](#)
- [to Peter](#)
- [to watch](#)
- [for...hour](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [three disciples](#)
- [were sleeping. He woke](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [to stay awake](#)
- [for just a short time](#)

#### ULT

<sup>40</sup> And he comes to the [disciples](#) and finds them [sleeping](#), and he says [to Peter](#), “So, were you not able [to watch](#) with me for one [hour](#)?”

#### UST

<sup>40</sup> Then he returned to the [three disciples](#) and saw that they [were sleeping](#). [He woke Peter](#) and said to him, “I am disappointed that you men fell asleep and were not able [to stay awake](#) with me [for just a short time](#)!”

## Matthew 26:41

**you do not enter into temptation (ULT)  
you can resist when anyone tempts you to sin (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **temptation**, you can express it as a verb. Alternate translation: “no one tempts you to sin” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**The spirit indeed {is} willing, but the flesh {is} weak (ULT)  
You want to do what I tell you, but you are not strong enough to actually do it (UST)**

Here, **spirit** is a metonym that stands for a person’s desires to do good. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The spirit indeed {is} willing, but the flesh {is} weak (ULT)  
You want to do what I tell you, but you are not strong enough to actually do it (UST)**

**Flesh** stands for the needs and desires of a person’s body. Jesus means that the disciples may have the desire to do what God wants, but as humans they are weak and often fail. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Watch](#)
- [pray](#)
- [temptation](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [flesh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You must keep alert](#)
- [pray](#)
- [tempts you to sin](#)
- [You want to do what I tell you](#)
- [you are not strong enough to actually do it](#)

#### ULT

<sup>41</sup> [Watch](#) and [pray](#) so that you do not enter into [temptation](#). The [spirit](#) indeed {is} willing, but the [flesh](#) {is} weak.”

#### UST

<sup>41</sup> [You must keep alert](#) and [pray](#) so that you can resist when anyone [tempts you to sin](#). [You want to do what I tell you](#), but you are not strong enough to [actually do it](#).”



## **Matthew 26:42**

**having gone away (ULT)**  
**He went away (UST)**

Alternate translation: "after Jesus went away"

**a second time (ULT)**  
**a second time (UST)**

The first **time** is described in 26:39. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**My Father (ULT)**  
**My Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**if this is not able to pass away unless I drink it (ULT)**  
**if it is necessary for me to suffer, may (UST)**

Jesus speaks of the work that he must do as if it were a bitter liquid that God has commanded him to **drink**. Alternate translation: "if the only way this can pass away is if I drink it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**if...this (ULT)**  
**if...it is necessary for me to suffer, may (UST)**

Here, **this** refers to the cup and the contents within it, a metaphor for suffering, as in 26:39. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**unless I drink it (ULT)**  
**it is necessary for me to suffer, may (UST)**

Here, **it** refers to the cup and the contents within it, a metaphor for suffering, as in 26:39. Alternate translation: "unless I drink from it" or "unless I drink from this cup of suffering" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**let your will be done (ULT)**  
**what you want happen (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "may what you want happen" or "do what you want to do" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- he prayed
- your...will

**Translation Words - UST**

- He prayed

**ULT**

<sup>42</sup> Again, having gone away a second time, he prayed, saying, "My Father, if this is not able to pass away unless I drink it, let your will be done."

**UST**

<sup>42</sup> He went away a second time. He prayed, "My Father, if it is necessary for me to suffer, may what you want happen!"

- you want

## Matthew 26:43

**were...their eyes...weighed down (ULT)**  
**were asleep...They could not keep their eyes open (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "they were very sleepy" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sleeping](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [were asleep](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> And having come again, he found them [sleeping](#), for their eyes were weighed down.

### UST

<sup>43</sup> When he returned to the three disciples, he saw that they [were asleep](#) again. They could not keep their eyes open.



## Matthew 26:44

### a third time (ULT)

### a third time (UST)

The first **time** is described in 26:39. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he prayed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He prayed](#)

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> And having left them again, having gone away, [he prayed](#) a third time, having said the same words again.

### UST

<sup>44</sup> So he left them and went away again. [He prayed](#) a third time, saying the same thing that he had prayed before.



## **Matthew 26:45**

## Are you still sleeping and taking your rest (ULT)

### I am disappointed that you are still sleeping and resting (UST)

Jesus uses a question to scold the disciples for going to sleep. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am disappointed that you are still sleeping and resting!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the hour has approached (ULT) Someone is about to (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "the time has come" (See: [Idiom](#))

### the Son of Man is being betrayed (ULT) enable...to arrest me...the...Son of Man (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "someone is betraying the Son of Man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the Son of Man (ULT) the...Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### is being betrayed into {the} hands of sinners (ULT) enable sinful men to arrest me (UST)

Here, **hands** refers to power or control. Alternate translation: "betrayed into the power of sinners" or "betrayed so that sinners will have power over him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Behold (ULT) Look (UST)

Alternate translation: "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Are you...sleeping](#)
- [still](#)
- [hour](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [is being betrayed](#)
- [the} hands](#)

## ULT

<sup>45</sup> Then he comes to the [disciples](#) and says to them, "[Are you still sleeping](#) and taking your rest? Behold, the [hour](#) has approached, and the [Son of Man](#) is being betrayed into {the} hands of [sinners](#)."

## UST

<sup>45</sup> Then he returned to all the [disciples](#). He woke them up and said to them, "I am disappointed that you are still sleeping and resting! Look! [Someone is about to enable sinful men to arrest me](#), the [Son of Man](#)!"

- of sinners

## Translation Words - UST

- disciples
- I am disappointed that you are still
- sleeping
- Someone is about to
- enable...to arrest me
- enable...to arrest me
- sinful men
- Son of Man

## Matthew 26:46

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Get up
- betraying

### Translation Words - UST

- Get up
- is enabling them to arrest

#### ULT

<sup>46</sup> Get up, that we might go. Behold, the one betraying me has approached.”

#### UST

<sup>46</sup> Get up! Let us go to meet them! Here comes the one who is enabling them to arrest me!”

## Matthew 26:47

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of when Judas betrayed Jesus and the religious leaders arrested him.

### And {as} he is still speaking (ULT) While Jesus was still speaking...arrived. Even though he was (UST)

Alternate translation: "And while Jesus was still speaking"

### clubs (ULT) clubs was coming (UST)

A club is a large piece of hard wood for hitting people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Judas
- of the Twelve
- swords
- chief priests
- elders
- of the people

### Translation Words - UST

- Judas
- twelve disciples
- swords
- chief priests
- elders had sent them
- elders had sent them

### ULT

<sup>47</sup> And {as} he is still speaking, behold, Judas, one of the Twelve, came, and with him, a large crowd with swords and clubs, from the chief priests and elders of the people.

### UST

<sup>47</sup> While Jesus was still speaking, Judas arrived. Even though he was one of the twelve disciples, he came to enable Jesus' enemies to arrest him. A large crowd carrying swords and clubs was coming with him. The chief priests and elders had sent them.

## Matthew 26:48

### Now (ULT)

### Judas had previously arranged to give them a signal (UST)

Here, **Now** is used to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew tells background information about Judas and the signal he planned to use to betray Jesus. (See: [Background Information](#))

### saying, “Whomever I kiss is him. Seize him (ULT)

### He had told them, “The man whom I will kiss is the one you want. Arrest him (UST)

You can state this direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “saying that whomever he kissed was the one they should seize.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Whomever I kiss (ULT)

### The man whom I will kiss (UST)

Alternate translation: “The one I kiss” or “The man whom I kiss”

### I kiss (ULT)

### I will kiss (UST)

This action was a respectful way to greet one’s teacher.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [betraying](#)
- [a signal](#)
- [I kiss](#)
- [Seize](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Judas had previously arranged to give them a signal](#)
- [Judas had previously arranged to give them a signal](#)
- [I will kiss](#)
- [Arrest](#)

### ULT

<sup>48</sup> Now the one [betraying](#) him gave them [a signal](#), saying, “Whomever [I kiss](#) is him. [Seize](#) him.”

### UST

<sup>48</sup> [Judas had previously arranged to give them a signal](#). He had told them, “The man whom [I will kiss](#) is the one you want. [Arrest](#) him!”



## Matthew 26:49

### having come up to Jesus (ULT)

### He...went to Jesus and (UST)

Alternate translation: "when Judas came up to Jesus"

### he kissed him (ULT)

### he kissed Jesus (UST)

Good friends would kiss each other on the cheek, but a disciple would probably kiss his master on the hand to show respect. No one knows for sure how Judas **kissed** Jesus. Alternate translation: "he met him with a kiss"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to Jesus
- Rabbi
- he kissed

### Translation Words - UST

- to Jesus and
- Teacher
- he kissed

### ULT

<sup>49</sup> And immediately, having come up to Jesus, he said, "Greetings, Rabbi!" and he kissed him.

### UST

<sup>49</sup> He immediately went to Jesus and said, "Greetings, Teacher!" Then he kissed Jesus.

## Matthew 26:50

### they laid hands (ULT) the men who came with Judas (UST)

Here, **they** refers to the people with clubs and swords that came with Judas and the religious leaders.

### they laid hands on Jesus and seized him (ULT) to...the men who came with Judas...and seized Jesus (UST)

Alternate translation: "they grabbed Jesus, and arrested him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jesus
- hands
- seized

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jesus
- the men who came with Judas
- seized

### ULT

<sup>50</sup> But Jesus said to him, "Friend, for that which you are here." Then having come, they laid hands on Jesus and seized him.

### UST

<sup>50</sup> Jesus replied, "Friend, what you are about to do, do it quickly." Then the men who came with Judas stepped forward and seized Jesus.

## Matthew 26:51

### And behold (ULT)

### Suddenly (UST)

The word **behold** here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- hand
- sword
- servant
- of the high priest

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- pulled...out of its sheath
- sword
- servant
- high priest

### ULT

<sup>51</sup> And behold, one of the ones with Jesus, having stretched out {his} hand, drew his sword, and having struck the servant of the high priest, cut off his ear.

### UST

<sup>51</sup> Suddenly, one of the men who was with Jesus pulled his sword out of its sheath. He struck the servant of the high priest to kill him, but only cut off his ear.

## Matthew 26:52

### the ones having taken up a sword (ULT) those who try to kill others with a sword (UST)

The word **sword** is a metonym for the act of killing someone with a sword. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the ones having taken up a sword (ULT) those who try to kill others with a sword (UST)

You can state the implied information explicitly. Alternate translation: “who pick up a sword to kill others” or “who want to kill other people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### a sword will perish by a sword (ULT) with a sword—someone else will kill them with a sword (UST)

Alternate translation: “a sword will die by means of the sword” or “a sword—it is with the sword that someone will kill them”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Return](#)
- [sword](#)
- [a sword](#)
- [a sword](#)
- [will perish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Put...back](#)
- [sword](#)
- [with a sword](#)
- [a sword](#)
- [someone else will kill them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>52</sup> Then [Jesus](#) says to him, “[Return](#) your [sword](#) to its place, for all the ones having taken up [a sword](#) will perish by a [sword](#).”

#### UST

<sup>52</sup> [Jesus](#) said to him, “[Put](#) your [sword](#) [back](#) in its sheath! All those who try to kill others [with a sword](#)—[someone else](#) will kill them with a [sword](#)!”

## Matthew 26:53

**Or do you think that I am not able to call upon my Father, and he will send me more than 12 legions of angels at once (ULT)**

**Do you think that if I asked my Father, he would not immediately send more than twelve armies of angels to help me (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to remind the person with the sword that Jesus could stop those who are arresting him. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely you know that I could upon my Father, and he would send me more than 12 legions of angels at once." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**do you think (ULT)**

**Do you think that if I asked...not (UST)**

Here, **you** is singular and refers to the person with the sword. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**my Father (ULT)**

**my Father (UST)**

**Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**more than 12 legions of angels (ULT)**

**more than twelve armies of angels (UST)**

The word **legion** is a military term that refers to a group of about 6,000 soldiers. Jesus means God would send enough angels to easily stop those who are arresting Jesus. The exact number of angels is not important. Alternate translation: "more than 12 really large groups of angels" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Father](#)
- [he will send](#)
- [of angels](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Father](#)
- [he would...send](#)
- [of angels](#)

#### ULT

<sup>53</sup> Or do you think that I am not able to call upon my [Father](#), and [he will send](#) me more than 12 legions [of angels](#) at once?

#### UST

<sup>53</sup> Do you think that if I asked my [Father](#), [he would](#) not immediately [send](#) more than twelve armies [of angels](#) to help me?

## Matthew 26:54

**How then would the Scriptures be fulfilled, that this must happen (ULT)**

**But if I did that, what the prophets have written in the scriptures about what will happen to the Messiah would not be fulfilled (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to explain why he is letting these people arrest him. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "This must happen so that the Scriptures will be fulfilled." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>54</sup> How then would the [Scriptures be fulfilled](#), that this must happen?"

### UST

<sup>54</sup> But if I did that, what the prophets have written in the [scriptures](#) about what will happen to the Messiah [would not be fulfilled](#)."

**How then would the Scriptures be fulfilled, that this must happen (ULT)**  
**But if I did that, what the prophets have written in the scriptures about what will happen to the Messiah would not be fulfilled (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "But if I did that, I would not be able to fulfill what God said in the scriptures must happen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Scriptures](#)
- [would...be fulfilled](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [scriptures](#)
- [would not be fulfilled](#)

## Matthew 26:55

**Have you come out with swords and clubs to seize me, as against a robber (ULT)**

**You have come here to seize me with swords and clubs, as if I were a bandit (UST)**

Jesus is using this question to point out the wrong actions of those arresting him. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You know that I am not a robber, so it is wrong for you to come out to me bringing swords and clubs" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**clubs (ULT)**

**clubs (UST)**

A club is a large piece of hard wood for hitting people.

**in the temple (ULT)**

**in the temple (UST)**

It is implied that Jesus was not in the actual **temple**. He was in the courtyard around the temple. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- hour
- Jesus
- swords
- to seize
- you did...arrest
- as
- a robber
- day
- teaching
- temple

### Translation Words - UST

- At that time
- Jesus
- to seize
- did you...arrest
- swords
- as if I were
- a bandit
- Day after day
- temple
- courtyard, teaching the people. Why

### ULT

<sup>55</sup> At that hour Jesus said to the crowd, "Have you come out with swords and clubs to seize me, as against a robber? Every day I was sitting teaching in the temple, and you did not arrest me.

### UST

<sup>55</sup> At that time Jesus said to the crowd that was seizing him, "You have come here to seize me with swords and clubs, as if I were a bandit! Day after day I sat in the temple courtyard, teaching the people. Why did you not arrest me then?"

## Matthew 26:56

**the writings of the prophets might be fulfilled (ULT)**

**to fulfill what...the prophets have written in the scriptures about me (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "I would fulfill all that the prophets wrote in the scriptures" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**having left him (ULT)**  
**deserted Jesus and (UST)**

If your language has a word that means they **left him** when they should have stayed with him, use it here.

### Translation Words - ULT

- writings
- of the prophets
- might be fulfilled
- disciples
- having left

### Translation Words - UST

- to fulfill what
- prophets have written in
- scriptures about me
- disciples
- deserted

#### ULT

<sup>56</sup> But all this has happened so that the writings of the prophets might be fulfilled." Then all the disciples, having left him, fled.

#### UST

<sup>56</sup> But all this is happening to fulfill what the prophets have written in the scriptures about me." Then all of the disciples deserted Jesus and ran away.



## Matthew 26:57

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus' trial before the council of Jewish religious leaders.

### Translation Words - ULT

- having seized
- Jesus
- Caiaphas
- high priest
- scribes
- elders
- had been gathered together

### Translation Words - UST

- had arrested
- Jesus
- Caiaphas
- high priest, lived
- men who taught the Jewish laws
- Jewish elders
- had already gathered there

### ULT

<sup>57</sup> Now the ones having seized Jesus led {him} away to Caiaphas the high priest, where the scribes and the elders had been gathered together.

### UST

<sup>57</sup> The men who had arrested Jesus took him to the house where Caiaphas, the high priest, lived. The men who taught the Jewish laws and the Jewish elders had already gathered there.

## Matthew 26:58

**But Peter was following him (ULT)**  
**Peter followed Jesus (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But Peter followed Jesus"

**the courtyard of the high priest (ULT)**  
**to the high priest's courtyard (UST)**

This **courtyard** was an open area near the high priest's house.

**And having entered inside (ULT)**  
**He entered the courtyard and (UST)**

Alternate translation: "And after Peter went inside"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- of the high priest

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- high priest's

### ULT

<sup>58</sup> But Peter was following him from a distance to the courtyard of the high priest. And having entered inside, he sat down with the guards to see the outcome.

### UST

<sup>58</sup> Peter followed Jesus at a distance. He came to the high priest's courtyard. He entered the courtyard and sat down with the guards to see what would happen.

## Matthew 26:59

### Now (ULT)

### The (UST)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

### they might put him to death (ULT)

### they could condemn him to death (UST)

Here, **they** refers to the chief priests and the members of the council.

### they might put him to death (ULT)

### they could condemn him to death (UST)

Alternate translation: "they might have a reason to execute him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- chief priests
- council
- were seeking
- Jesus
- they might put...to death

### Translation Words - UST

- chief priests
- Jewish council
- were trying to find
- Jesus
- they could condemn...to death

### ULT

<sup>59</sup> Now the chief priests and the whole council were seeking false testimony against Jesus so that they might put him to death.

### UST

<sup>59</sup> The chief priests and the rest of the Jewish council were trying to find persons who would tell lies about Jesus so that they could condemn him to death.

## Matthew 26:60

**two, having come forward (ULT)**

**two men came forward (UST)**

Alternate translation: "two men who had come forward" or "two witnesses who came forward"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [false witnesses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [spoke lies about him](#)

### ULT

<sup>60</sup> But they found none, though many [false witnesses](#) came forward. But later two, having come forward,

### UST

<sup>60</sup> But even though many people [spoke lies about him](#), they did not find anyone who said anything that was useful. Finally two men came forward

**Matthew 26:61**

**said, "This one said, 'I am able to destroy the temple of God and to rebuild {it} in three days (ULT)**

**and said, "This man said, 'I am able to destroy God's temple and to rebuild it within three days (UST)**

If your language does not allow quotes within quotes you can rewrite it as a single quote. Alternate translation: "This man said that he is able to destroy the temple of God and to rebuild it in three days." (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

**This one said (ULT)**

**This man said (UST)**

Alternate translation: "This man Jesus said"

**in three days (ULT)**

**within three days (UST)**

This phrase means "within three days," before the sun goes down three times, not "after three days," after the sun has gone down the third time.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [temple](#)
- [of God](#)
- [days](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God's](#)
- [temple](#)
- [days](#)

**ULT**

<sup>61</sup> said, "This one said, 'I am able to destroy the [temple of God](#) and to rebuild {it} in three [days](#)."

**UST**

<sup>61</sup> and said, "This man said, 'I am able to destroy [God's temple](#) and to rebuild it within three [days](#)."

## Matthew 26:62

**What {is it that} they are testifying against you (ULT)**

**What do you say about these things that they are saying to accuse you (UST)**

The chief priest is not asking Jesus for information about what the witnesses said. He is asking Jesus to prove what the witnesses said is wrong. Alternate translation: "What is your response to what the witnesses are testifying against you?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having stood up](#)
- [high priest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [high priest](#)
- [stood up and](#)

### ULT

<sup>62</sup> And [having stood up](#), the [high priest](#) said to him, "Do you answer nothing? What {is it that} they are testifying against you?"

### UST

<sup>62</sup> Then the [high priest stood up and](#) said to Jesus, "Are you not going to reply? What do you say about these things that they are saying to accuse you?"

## Matthew 26:63

### the Son of God (ULT)

### the Son of God (UST)

**Son of God** is an important title that describes the relationship between the Christ and God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### the living God

Here, **living** contrasts the **God** of Israel to all the false gods and idols that people worshiped. Only the God of Israel is alive and has power to act. See how you translated this in [16:16](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [living](#)
- [God](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Son of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [all-powerful God is listening to you](#)
- [all-powerful God is listening to you](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [Son of God](#)

### ULT

<sup>63</sup> But [Jesus](#) was silent. And the [high priest](#) said to him, "I command you by the [living God](#), so that you might tell us if you are the [Christ](#), the [Son of God](#)."

### UST

<sup>63</sup> But [Jesus](#) remained silent. Then the [high priest](#) said to him, "I command you to tell us the truth; you know that the [all-powerful God is listening to you](#): Are you the [Messiah](#), the [Son of God](#)?"





## **Matthew 26:64**

## You have said {it} yourself (ULT) you say (UST)

This is an idiom that Jesus uses to mean “yes” without being completely clear about what he means. Alternate translation: “You are saying it” or “You are admitting it” (See: [Idiom](#))

## But I say to you, from now on you will see (ULT) But I will also say this to all of you: Some day you will see (UST)

Here, **you** is plural. Jesus is speaking to the high priest and to the other persons there. (See: [Forms of You](#))

## from now on you will see the Son of Man (ULT) you will see the Son of Man (UST)

The phrase **from now on** could: (1) be an idiom that means they will see the Son of Man in his power at some time in the future. (2) means that from the time of Jesus’ trial and onward, Jesus is showing himself to be the Messiah who is powerful and victorious.

## the Son of Man (ULT) the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

## sitting at {the} right hand of the Power (ULT) sitting beside Almighty God and ruling. You will also see him (UST)

Here, **Power** is metonym that represents God. (See: [Metonymy](#))

## sitting at {the} right hand of the Power (ULT) sitting beside Almighty God and ruling. You will also see him (UST)

To sit at the **right hand of God** is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: “sitting in the place of honor beside the all-powerful God” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

## of Man...coming on the clouds...of heaven (ULT) of...coming on the clouds...from heaven (UST)

Alternate translation: “riding to earth on the clouds of heaven”

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

### ULT

<sup>64</sup> [Jesus](#) says to him, “You have said {it} yourself. But I say to you, from now on you will see the [Son of Man](#) sitting at {the} right hand of the [Power](#) and coming on the clouds of [heaven](#).”

### UST

<sup>64</sup> [Jesus](#) replied, “Yes, it is as you say. But I will also say this to all of you: Some day you will see the [Son of Man](#) sitting beside [Almighty God](#) and ruling. You will also see him coming on the clouds from [heaven](#)!”

- the} right hand
- of the Power
- of heaven

## **Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- Son of Man
- beside
- Almighty God and ruling. You will also see him
- from heaven

## Matthew 26:65

**the high priest tore his robe (ULT)**  
**the high priest was so upset that he tore his outer garment. Then (UST)**

Tearing clothing was a sign of anger and sadness. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**He has blasphemed (ULT)**  
**This man has insulted God (UST)**

The reason the high priest called Jesus' statement **blasphemy** is probably that he understood Jesus' words in [26:64](#) as a claim to be equal with God. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Why do we still have need of witnesses (ULT)**  
**He claims to be equal with God! We certainly do not need anyone else to testify against this man (UST)**

The high priest uses this question to emphasize that he and the members of the council do not need to hear from any more witnesses. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "We do not need to hear from any more witnesses!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**now you have heard (ULT)**  
**to testify against this man...You heard (UST)**

Here, **you** is plural and refers to the members of the council. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [high priest](#)
- [robe](#)
- [He has blasphemed](#)
- [blasphemy](#)
- [of witnesses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [high priest was so upset that](#)
- [outer garment. Then](#)
- [This man has insulted God](#)
- [what he said](#)
- [to testify against this man](#)

### ULT

<sup>65</sup> Then the [high priest](#) tore his [robe](#), saying, "[He has blasphemed!](#) Why do we still have need [of witnesses?](#) Behold, now you have heard the [blasphemy](#)."

### UST

<sup>65</sup> Then the [high priest was so upset that](#) he tore his [outer garment](#). Then he said, "[This man has insulted God!](#) He claims to be equal with God! We certainly do not need anyone else [to testify against this man!](#) You heard [what he said!](#)"

## Matthew 26:66

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of death

### Translation Words - UST

- to be executed

#### ULT

<sup>66</sup> What do you think?" And they, answering, said, "He is deserving of death."

#### UST

<sup>66</sup> What do you think?" The Jewish leaders replied, "According to our laws, he is guilty and deserves to be executed!"

## Matthew 26:67

**Then they spit (ULT)**

**Then some of them spat (UST)**

This could mean: (1) some of the men spit. (2) the soldiers spit.

**they spit in his face (ULT)**

**some of them spat in his face. Others (UST)**

This action was done as an insult.

### Translation Words - ULT

- face

### Translation Words - UST

- face. Others

#### ULT

<sup>67</sup> Then they spit in his face and beat him, and they slapped him,

#### UST

<sup>67</sup> Then some of them spat in his face. Others struck him with their fists. Others slapped him

## Matthew 26:68

### Prophecy to us (ULT) tell us (UST)

Here, **Prophecy to us** means to tell by means of God's power. It does not mean to tell what will happen in the future.

### Christ (ULT) Messiah (UST)

Those hitting Jesus do not really think he is the **Christ**. They call him this to mock him. (See: [Irony](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Prophecy](#)
- [Christ](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Messiah](#)
- [tell](#)

#### ULT

<sup>68</sup> saying, "[Prophecy](#) to us, [Christ](#). Who is the one having struck you?"

#### UST

<sup>68</sup> and said, "Since you claim that you are the [Messiah](#), [tell](#) us who hit you!"

## Matthew 26:69

### General Information:

These events happen at the same time as Jesus' trial before the religious leaders.

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of how Peter denies three times that he knows Jesus, as Jesus said he would do.

### Now (ULT)

### Peter (UST)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- servant girl
- Jesus
- of Galilee

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- servant girl
- Jesus
- that man from the district of Galilee

### ULT

**69** Now Peter was sitting outside in the courtyard, and one servant girl came to him, saying, "You were also with Jesus of Galilee."

### UST

**69** Peter was sitting outside in the courtyard. A servant girl came up to him and looked at him. She said, "You also were with Jesus, that man from the district of Galilee!"



## Matthew 26:70

**I do not know what you are saying (ULT)  
I do not know what you are talking about (UST)**

Peter was able to understand what the servant girl was saying. He used these words to deny that he had been with Jesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- I do...know

### Translation Words - UST

- I do...know

#### ULT

<sup>70</sup> But he denied {it} in front of {them} all, saying, "I do not know what you are saying."

#### UST

<sup>70</sup> But while everyone there was listening, he denied it. He said, "I do not know what you are talking about!"

**Matthew 26:71****But when he had gone out (ULT)****Then he went out (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But when Peter went out"

**the gateway (ULT)****the gateway of the courtyard (UST)**This **gateway** was an opening in the wall around a courtyard.**says to the ones there (ULT)****said to the people who were standing nearby****(UST)**

Alternate translation: "said to the people who were sitting there"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- gateway
- Jesus
- of Nazareth

**Translation Words - UST**

- gateway of the courtyard
- Jesus
- the man from Nazareth

**ULT**

<sup>71</sup> But when he had gone out to the [gateway](#), another {girl} saw him and says to the ones there, "This one was with [Jesus of Nazareth](#)."

**UST**

<sup>71</sup> Then he went out to the [gateway of the courtyard](#). Another servant girl saw him and said to the people who were standing nearby, "This man was with [Jesus, the man from Nazareth](#)."

## Matthew 26:72

### And he again denied it with an oath, “I do not know the man!”

Alternate translation: “And he denied it again by swearing, ‘I do not know the man!’”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- an oath
- I do...know

#### Translation Words - UST

- May God punish me if I am lying
- I tell you, I do...know

#### ULT

<sup>72</sup> And he again denied {it} with an oath, “I do not know the man!”

#### UST

<sup>72</sup> But Peter again denied it. He said, “May God punish me if I am lying! I tell you, I do not even know that man!”

## Matthew 26:73

### from among them (ULT) one of those who (UST)

Alternate translation: "one of those who were with Jesus"

### also...for...your speech makes you evident (ULT) and...were with that man. We can tell...from your accent that you are from Galilee (UST)

You can translate this as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "We can tell you are from Galilee because you speak like a Galilean"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to Peter
- Surely

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- It is certain that

### ULT

<sup>73</sup> But after a little {while}, the ones {that} had been standing by, having approached, said to Peter, "Surely you are also from among them, for even your speech makes you evident."

### UST

<sup>73</sup> After a little while, the people who were standing there approached Peter and said to him, "It is certain that you are one of those who were with that man. We can tell from your accent that you are from Galilee."

## Matthew 26:74

### to curse (ULT)

### God should curse him if he was lying (UST)

Alternate translation: "to call down a curse on himself"

### a rooster crowed (ULT)

### a rooster crowed (UST)

A **rooster** is a bird that calls out loudly around the time the sun comes up. The sound a rooster makes is called "crowing." See how you translated this in [26:34](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- to curse
- to swear
- I do...know

### Translation Words - UST

- God should curse him if he was lying
- God in heaven to witness
- I do...know

### ULT

<sup>74</sup> Then he began to curse and to swear, "I do not know the man," and immediately a rooster crowed.

### UST

<sup>74</sup> Then Peter began to proclaim loudly that God should curse him if he was lying. He asked God in heaven to witness that he was telling the truth and said, "I do not know that man!" Immediately a rooster crowed.

## Matthew 26:75

**And Peter remembered the words of Jesus that he had said, “Before the rooster crows you will deny me three times.”**

You can state this direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “Peter remembered that Jesus told him that before the rooster crowed, he would deny Jesus three times.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- of Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- Jesus

### ULT

<sup>75</sup> And Peter remembered the words of Jesus {that} he had said, “Before a rooster crows you will deny me three times.” And having gone outside, he wept bitterly.

### UST

<sup>75</sup> Then Peter remembered the words that Jesus had spoken to him, “Before the rooster crows, you will say three times that you do not know me.” And Peter went out of the courtyard, crying hard because he was so sad about what he had done.

## Matthew 27

### Matthew 27 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### “Delivered him to Pilate the governor”

The Jewish leaders needed to get permission from Pontius Pilate, the Roman governor, before they could kill Jesus. This was because Roman law did not allow them to kill Jesus themselves. Pilate wanted to set Jesus free, but they wanted him to free a very bad prisoner named Barabbas.

#### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([Matthew 27:60](#)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Sarcasm

The soldiers said, “Hail, King of the Jews!” ([Matthew 27:29](#)) to mock Jesus. They did not think that he was the king of the Jews. (See: [Irony](#))

## Matthew 27:1

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus' trial before Pilate.

### Now (ULT)

### Very early the next morning (UST)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

### took counsel...against Jesus so as to put him to death (ULT)

### decided how to...persuade...Romans to execute Jesus (UST)

The Jewish leaders were planning how they could convince the Roman leaders to kill Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- chief priests
- elders
- of the people
- counsel
- Jesus
- put...to death

### Translation Words - UST

- chief priests and
- Jewish elders
- Jewish elders
- decided how to
- persuade...Romans to execute Jesus
- persuade...Romans to execute Jesus

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now {when} it had become morning, all the [chief priests](#) and the [elders of the people](#) took [counsel](#) against [Jesus](#) so as to [put him to death](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Very early the next morning all the [chief priests and Jewish elders](#) decided [how to persuade](#) the [Romans to execute](#) [Jesus](#).



## Matthew 27:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- having bound
- to Pilate
- governor

### Translation Words - UST

- tied...hands
- Pilate
- Roman governor

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And **having bound** him, they led {him} away and handed {him} over **to Pilate** the **governor**.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Then they **tied** his **hands** and took him to **Pilate**, the **Roman governor**.

## Matthew 27:3

### General Information:

This event happened after Jesus' trial in front of the council of Jewish religious leaders, but we do not know if it happened before or during Jesus' trial before Pilate. (See: [Order of Events](#))

### Then Judas, the one betraying him, having seen (ULT)

### Then Judas, the one who had betrayed Jesus, realized (UST)

The author has stopped telling the story of Jesus' trial so he can tell the story of how Judas killed himself. If your language has a way of showing that a new story is starting, you may want to use that here.

### that he was condemned (ULT)

### that they had decided that Jesus must die. So was overcome with (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the 30 shekels of silver (ULT)

### the thirty coins (UST)

This was the money that the chief priests had given Judas to betray Jesus. See how you translated it in [26:15](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- Judas
- betraying
- he was condemned
- having repented
- he returned
- shekels of silver
- to the chief priests
- elders

### Translation Words - UST

- Judas
- had betrayed
- they had decided that Jesus must die. So was overcome with
- regret about what he had done
- He took...back
- coins
- chief priests
- elders

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then Judas, the one betraying him, having seen that he was condemned, having repented, he returned the 30 shekels of silver to the chief priests and elders,

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Then Judas, the one who had betrayed Jesus, realized that they had decided that Jesus must die. So was overcome with regret about what he had done. He took the thirty coins back to the chief priests and elders.

## Matthew 27:4

### innocent blood (ULT) a man who is innocent (UST)

This is an idiom that refers to the death of an **innocent** person.  
Alternate translation: "a person who does not deserve to die" (See: [Idiom](#))

### What {is that} to us (ULT) That means nothing to us (UST)

The Jewish leaders use this question to emphasize that they do not care about what Judas said. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "That is not our problem!" or "That is your problem!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I have sinned](#)
- [having betrayed](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [blood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I have sinned](#)
- [I have betrayed](#)
- [a man who is innocent](#)
- [a man who is innocent](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> saying, "I have sinned, having betrayed innocent blood." But they said, "What {is that} to us? See to {that} yourself."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> He said, "I have sinned. I have betrayed a man who is innocent." They replied, "That means nothing to us! That is your problem!"

## Matthew 27:5

**having thrown down the shekels of silver in the temple (ULT)**

**So Judas took the money...threw it into the temple courtyard. Then (UST)**

This could mean: (1) he threw **the pieces of silver** while in the **temple** courtyard. (2) he was standing in the temple courtyard, and he threw **the pieces of silver** into the **temple**.

### Translation Words - ULT

- shekels of silver
- temple
- he hanged himself

### Translation Words - UST

- money
- temple courtyard. Then
- hanged himself

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And having thrown down the **shekels of silver** in the **temple**, he departed and having gone out, **he hanged himself**.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> So Judas took the **money** and threw it into the **temple courtyard**. **Then** he went away and **hanged himself**.

## Matthew 27:6

**It is not lawful to put this (ULT)  
money...not allow us to put money like this (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Our laws do not allow us to put this"

**to put this (ULT)  
money...to put money like this (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to put this silver"

**the treasury (ULT)  
the temple treasury (UST)**

The **treasury** was the place they kept the money they used to provide for things needed for the temple and the priests. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the} price of blood (ULT)  
we paid for a man to die (UST)**

This is an idiom that means money paid to a person who helped kill someone. Alternate translation: "money paid for a man to die" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [chief priests](#)
- [shekels of silver](#)
- [It is...lawful](#)
- [of blood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [high priests](#)
- [coins](#)
- [a man to die](#)
- [allow us](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Now the [chief priests](#), having taken the [shekels of silver](#), said, "It is not [lawful](#) to put this into the treasury, because it is {the} price [of blood](#)."

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> The [high priests](#) picked up the [coins](#) and said, "This is money that we paid for [a man to die](#), and our law does not [allow us](#) to put money like this into the temple treasury."

## Matthew 27:7

**the field of the potter (ULT)**  
**a field that was called the Potter's Field. They made that field a...who died in Jerusalem (UST)**

This was a **field** that was bought to bury strangers who died in Jerusalem.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [counsel](#)
- [a burial place](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they decided](#)
- [they buried](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But having taken [counsel](#), they bought with them the field of the potter for [a burial place](#) for strangers.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> So [they decided](#) to use that money to buy a field that was called the Potter's Field. They made that field a place where [they buried](#) strangers who died in Jerusalem.

## Matthew 27:8

### that field has been called (ULT) that place...called "The (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "people call that field" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to {this} day (ULT) is still (UST)

Here, **this day** refers to the time when Matthew is writing this book.

### Translation Words - ULT

- has been called
- of Blood

### Translation Words - UST

- called "The
- Blood

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For this reason that field [has been called](#) "Field of Blood" to {this} day.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> That is why that place is still [called](#) "The Field of Blood."





## **Matthew 27:9**

**the...And they took the 30 shekels of silver, the price...whose price had been set by {the} sons of Israel (ULT)**  
**the...They took the thirty silver coins—that was what the leaders of Israel decided that he was worth (UST)**

The author quotes Old Testament scripture to show that Judas' suicide was a fulfillment of prophecy.

**Then {what} had been spoken by Jeremiah the prophet was fulfilled (ULT)**  
**By buying that field, they made come true these words that the prophet Jeremiah (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "This fulfilled what the prophet Jeremiah spoke" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the price of the one whose price had been set by {the} sons of Israel (ULT)**  
**that was what the leaders of Israel decided that he was worth (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the price the people of Israel set on him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the} sons of Israel (ULT)**  
**the leaders...of Israel (UST)**

This refers to those among the people of **Israel** who paid to kill Jesus. Alternate translation: "some of the people of Israel" or "the leaders of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [was fulfilled](#)
- [shekels of silver](#)
- [the} sons](#)
- [of Israel](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [they made come true](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [silver coins](#)
- [the leaders](#)
- [of Israel](#)

## ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then {what} had been spoken by [Jeremiah](#) the [prophet was fulfilled](#), saying, "And they took the 30 [shekels of silver](#), the price of the one whose price had been set by {the} [sons of Israel](#),

## UST

<sup>9</sup> By buying that field, [they made come true](#) these words that the [prophet Jeremiah](#) had written long ago: "They took the thirty [silver coins](#)—that was what [the leaders of Israel](#) decided that he was worth—

## Matthew 27:10

**had directed me (ULT)**  
**had commanded me (UST)**

Here, **me** refers to Jeremiah.

### Translation Words - ULT

- the} Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> and they gave it for the field of the potter, as {the} Lord had directed me.”

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> and with that money they bought the field of the potter. They did that as the Lord had commanded me.”

## Matthew 27:11

### Now (ULT) Jesus (UST)

This continues the story of Jesus' trial before Pilate, which began in [27:2](#). If your language has a way of continuing a story after a break from the main story line, you may want to use it here.

### the governor (ULT) the governor (UST)

Alternate translation: "Pilate"

### It {is as} you say (ULT) Yes, it is as you have just said (UST)

This could mean: (1) Jesus implied that he is the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "Yes, as you said, I am" or "Yes. It is as you said" (2) Jesus was saying that Pilate, not Jesus, was the one calling him the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "You yourself have said so" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus \(2\)](#)
- [governor](#)
- [governor](#)
- [King](#)
- [King of the Jews](#)
- [of the Jews](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus \(2\)](#)
- [governor](#)
- [governor](#)
- [king](#)
- [king of the Jews](#)
- [Jews](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Now [Jesus](#) was stood before the [governor](#), and the [governor](#) questioned him, saying, "Are you the [King of the Jews](#)?" But [Jesus](#) said, "It {is as} you say."

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Then [Jesus](#) stood in front of the [governor](#). The [governor](#) asked him, "Do you say you are the [king of the Jews](#)?" [Jesus](#) replied, "Yes, it is as you have just said."

## Matthew 27:12

**And when he was accused by the chief priests and the elders (ULT)**

**But when the chief priests and elders accused Jesus of doing various wrong things (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "And when the chief priests and elders accused him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [when...was accused](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [elders](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [chief priests](#)
- [elders](#)
- [accused](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And [when](#) he [was accused](#) by the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#), he answered nothing.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> But when the [chief priests](#) and [elders](#) [accused](#) Jesus of doing various wrong things, he did not answer.

## Matthew 27:13

**Do you not hear everything they are bringing against you (ULT)**

**You hear how many things they are accusing you of; are you not going to reply (UST)**

Pilate asks this question because he is surprised that Jesus remains silent. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am surprised that you do not answer these people who accuse you of doing bad things!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Pilate](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Pilate](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then [Pilate](#) says to him, "Do you not hear everything they are bringing against you?"

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> So [Pilate](#) said to him, "You hear how many things they are accusing you of; are you not going to reply?"

## Matthew 27:14

**he did not answer him not even with one word, so as to amaze the governor greatly (ULT)**

**not say anything. He did not reply to any of the things about which they were accusing him. As a result, the governor was very surprised (UST)**

This is an emphatic way of saying that Jesus was completely silent. Alternate translation: "he did not say even one word; this greatly amazed the governor"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to amaze
- governor

### Translation Words - UST

- governor
- surprised

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But he did not answer him not even with one word, so as to amaze the governor greatly.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> But Jesus did not say anything. He did not reply to any of the things about which they were accusing him. As a result, the governor was very surprised.

## Matthew 27:15

### Now (ULT)

### Now (UST)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line so Matthew can give information to help the reader understand what happens beginning in [27:17](#). (See: [Background Information](#))

### the} festival (ULT)

### Passover Celebration (UST)

This is the **festival** of the Passover celebration.

### to the crowd one prisoner whom they chose

### (ULT)

### one person who was in prison. He released whatever prisoner the people

### wanted (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “one prisoner whom the crowd would choose” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the} festival](#)
- [of...governor](#)
- [prisoner](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [governor's](#)
- [Passover Celebration](#)
- [person who was in prison. He released whatever prisoner](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Now at {[the](#)} [festival](#) it had become the custom of the [governor](#) to release to the crowd one [prisoner](#) whom they chose.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Now it was the [governor's](#) custom each year during the [Passover Celebration](#) to release one [person who was in prison. He released whatever prisoner](#) the people wanted.



## Matthew 27:16

**they were holding...a notorious prisoner (ULT)**  
**there was in Jerusalem...a well-known prisoner (UST)**

Alternate translation: "there was a notorious prisoner"

**notorious (ULT)**  
**a well-known (UST)**

A **notorious** person is someone who is well known for doing something bad.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a...prisoner
- named
- Barabbas

### Translation Words - UST

- prisoner
- whose name was
- Barabbas

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Now at that time they were holding a notorious **prisoner named Barabbas**.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> At that time there was in Jerusalem a well-known **prisoner whose name was Barabbas**.

## Matthew 27:17

### when...were gathered together...they (ULT) gathered...when the crowd (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "when the crowd gathered" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### called Christ (ULT) whom they call the Messiah (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "whom some people call the Christ" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [when...were gathered together](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [Barabbas](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [called](#)
- [Christ](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gathered](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [Barabbas](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [they call](#)
- [the Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Therefore {when} they [were gathered together](#), [Pilate](#) said to them, "Who do you want {that} I would release for you? [Barabbas](#), or [Jesus, called Christ](#)?"

### UST

<sup>17</sup> So when the crowd [gathered](#), [Pilate](#) asked them, "Which prisoner would you like me to release for you: [Barabbas](#), or [Jesus](#), whom [they call the Messiah](#)?"

## Matthew 27:18

### they had handed {him} over to him (ULT) had brought Jesus to him (UST)

They had done this so that Pilate would judge Jesus. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders had brought Jesus to him"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- he had known
- envy

#### Translation Words - UST

- he realized
- they were jealous of Jesus. And Pilate thought that the crowd would prefer that he release Jesus

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> For he had known that they had handed {him} over to him because of envy.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> He asked that question because he realized that the chief priests had brought Jesus to him only because they were jealous of Jesus. And Pilate thought that the crowd would prefer that he release Jesus.

## Matthew 27:19

**But {while} he was sitting (ULT)**

**While Pilate was sitting (UST)**

Alternate translation: "But while Pilate was sitting"

**while...was sitting...he...on the judgment seat (ULT)**

**While...was sitting...Pilate...in the judge's seat (UST)**

The **judgment seat** was the place where a judge would sit while making a decision. Alternate translation: "while he was sitting on the judge's seat"

**sent word (ULT)**

**sent (UST)**

Alternate translation: "sent a message"

**much...I suffered...today (ULT)**

**righteous man...Early this morning I had a bad (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I have been very upset today"

### Translation Words - ULT

- sent word
- to...righteous one
- I suffered
- a dream

### Translation Words - UST

- sent
- Early this morning I had a bad
- dream
- righteous man

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But {while} he was sitting on the judgment seat, his wife sent word to him, saying, "Nothing to you and to that righteous one. For I suffered much today by way of a dream about him."

### UST

<sup>19</sup> While Pilate was sitting in the judge's seat, his wife sent him this message: "Early this morning I had a bad dream because of that man. So do not condemn that righteous man!"

## Matthew 27:20

### Now (ULT)

### But (UST)

Here, **now** is used to mark a break in the main story line. Matthew tells background information about why the crowd chose Barabbas. (See: [Background Information](#))

### but would kill Jesus (ULT)

### and to order...Jesus be executed (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "but have the Roman soldiers kill Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [chief priests](#)
- [elders](#)
- [for Barabbas](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [chief priests](#)
- [elders](#)
- [Barabbas](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Now the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#) persuaded the crowds so that they would ask [for Barabbas](#), but would kill [Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> But the [chief priests](#) and [elders](#) persuaded the crowd to ask Pilate to release [Barabbas](#), and to order that [Jesus](#) be executed.

## Matthew 27:21

### said to them (ULT)

### So when the governor asked...them (UST)

Alternate translation: "asked the crowd"

### Translation Words - ULT

- governor
- Barabbas

### Translation Words - UST

- So when the governor asked
- Barabbas

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But answering, the **governor** said to them, "Which from the two do you want {that} I would release to you?" But they said, "**Barabbas**."

### UST

<sup>21</sup> **So when the governor asked** them, "Which of the two men do you want me to release for you?" They replied, "**Barabbas!**"

## Matthew 27:22

### called Christ (ULT) who some of you say is the Messiah (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “whom some people call the Christ” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Pilate
- with Jesus
- called
- Christ
- Crucify him

#### Translation Words - UST

- Pilate
- with Jesus
- some of you say is the
- Messiah
- Command that your soldiers crucify him

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Pilate says to them, “What then should I do with Jesus, called Christ?” They all answer, “Crucify him.”

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Pilate asked them, “So what should I do with Jesus who some of you say is the Messiah?” They all answered, “Command that your soldiers crucify him!”

## Matthew 27:23

**did he do (ULT)**  
**crime has he committed...But they shouted**  
**even louder...Have (UST)**

Alternate translation: "has Jesus done"

**they...cried out (ULT)**  
**crime has he committed...But they shouted**  
**even louder...Have...crime has he committed...**  
**But they shouted even louder...Have (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the crowd cried out"

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil
- cried out
- Crucify {him}

### Translation Words - UST

- crime has he committed...But they shouted even louder...Have
- crime has he committed?" But they shouted even louder, "Have
- him crucified

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But he said, "For what evil did he do?"  
 But they cried out even louder, saying,  
 "Crucify {him}."

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Pilate replied, "Why? What crime has he committed?" But they shouted even louder, "Have him crucified!"



## Matthew 27:24

### washed {his} hands in front of the crowd (ULT) washed his hands as...crowd was watching (UST)

Pilate does this action as a sign that he is not responsible for Jesus' death. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### the blood (ULT) the...dies (UST)

Here, **blood** refers to a person's death. Alternate translation: "the death" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### See to {it} yourselves (ULT) it is your (UST)

Alternate translation: "This is your responsibility"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Pilate
- he is...helping
- water
- hands
- innocent
- blood

## Translation Words - UST

- Pilate realized
- he was accomplishing
- So he took a basin of water
- his hands as
- dies
- fault, not mine

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But Pilate, having seen that he is not helping, but instead a riot is starting, having taken water, washed {his} hands in front of the crowd, saying, "I am innocent from the blood of this one. See to {it} yourselves."

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Pilate realized that he was accomplishing nothing. He saw that instead, the people were starting to riot. So he took a basin of water and washed his hands as the crowd was watching. He said, "By washing my hands I am showing you that if this man dies, it is your fault, not mine!"

## Matthew 27:25

**His blood {be} on us and on our children (ULT)**  
**May we be guilty for causing him to die, and**  
**may our children be guilty, too (UST)**

Here, **blood** is a metonym that stands for a person's death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**His blood {be} on us and on our children (ULT)**  
**May we be guilty for causing him to die, and**  
**may our children be guilty, too (UST)**

The phrase **be on us and our children** is an idiom that means they accept the responsibility of what is happening. Alternate translation: "Yes! We and our descendants will be responsible for executing him" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [blood](#)
- [children](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [all the people answered](#)
- [for causing...to die](#)
- [children](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> And answering, all the [people](#) said, "His [blood](#) {be} on us and on our [children](#)!"

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> And [all the people answered](#), "May we be guilty [for causing](#) him [to die](#), and may our [children](#) be guilty, too!"

## Matthew 27:26

**Then he released Barabbas to them (ULT)  
Then he ordered the soldiers to release  
Barabbas for them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Then Pilate released Barabbas to the crowd"

**but having scourged Jesus, he handed {him}  
over so that he would be crucified (ULT)  
But he ordered that his soldiers whip Jesus.  
And then he turned Jesus over to the soldiers  
for them to nail Jesus to a cross (UST)**

It is implied that Pilate ordered his soldiers to scourge Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**but having scourged Jesus, he handed {him} over so that he would be  
crucified (ULT)  
But he ordered that his soldiers whip Jesus. And then he turned Jesus over to  
the soldiers for them to nail Jesus to a cross (UST)**

Handing Jesus over to be crucified is a metaphor for ordering his soldiers to crucify Jesus. Alternate translation: "he ordered his soldiers to scourge Jesus and to crucify him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### having scourged Jesus

Alternate translation: "having beaten Jesus with a whip" or "having whipped Jesus"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Barabbas](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [he would be crucified](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Barabbas](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [to nail Jesus to a cross](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Then he released [Barabbas](#) to them, but having scourged [Jesus](#), he handed {him} over so that [he would be crucified](#).

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Then he ordered the soldiers to release [Barabbas](#) for them. But he ordered that his soldiers whip [Jesus](#). And then he turned Jesus over to the soldiers for them [to nail Jesus to a cross](#).

## Matthew 27:27

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus' crucifixion and death.

### the whole cohort (ULT)

### The whole cohort (UST)

Alternate translation: "the entire group of soldiers"

### Translation Words - ULT

- soldiers
- of the governor
- Jesus
- gathered

### Translation Words - UST

- governor's
- soldiers
- Jesus
- gathered

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Then the **soldiers of the governor**, having taken **Jesus** into the Praetorium, **gathered** before him the whole cohort.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> Then the **governor's soldiers** took **Jesus** into the soldiers' barracks. The whole cohort **gathered** around him.

## Matthew 27:28

### And having stripped him (ULT) They pulled off his clothes and (UST)

Alternate translation: "And having pulled off his clothes"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- a...robe

#### Translation Words - UST

- robe

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> And having stripped him, they put a scarlet robe on him.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> They pulled off his clothes and put a bright red robe on him, pretending he was a king.



## **Matthew 27:29**

**a crown of thorns (ULT)**  
**They took some branches with thorns...crown (UST)**

Alternate translation: "a crown made of thorny branches" or "a crown made of branches with thorns on them"

**his...a reed in...right hand (ULT)**  
**his...in...right hand a reed like a staff that a king would hold (UST)**

They gave Jesus a stick to hold to represent a scepter that a king holds. They did this to mock Jesus.

**Hail, King of the Jews (ULT)**  
**Greetings to the king of the Jews (UST)**

They were saying this to mock Jesus. They were calling Jesus **King of the Jews**, but they did not really believe he was a king. And yet what they were saying was true. (See: [Irony](#))

**Hail (ULT)**  
**Greetings to (UST)**

Alternate translation: "We honor you" or "May you live a long time"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a crown
- thorns
- of the Jews
- head
- a reed
- right hand
- having knelt down
- they mocked
- King
- King...of the Jews

**Translation Words - UST**

- thorns
- crown
- Jews
- head. They put
- right hand
- a reed
- they knelt
- and made fun
- king

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> And having woven together a crown of thorns, they put {it} on his head and a reed in his right hand, and having knelt down before him, they mocked him, saying, "Hail, King of the Jews!"

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> They took some branches with thorns and wove them to make a crown and put it on his head. They put in his right hand a reed like a staff that a king would hold. Then they knelt in front of him and made fun of him, saying, "Greetings to the king of the Jews!"



- [king of the Jews](#)

## Matthew 27:30

### And having spat on him (ULT) They kept spitting on him (UST)

Alternate translation: "And using their spit, the soldiers spat on Jesus"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- reed
- head

#### Translation Words - UST

- staff
- head with it

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> And having spat on him, they took the reed and kept striking {him} on his head.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> They kept spitting on him. They took the staff and kept striking him on the head with it.

## Matthew 27:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- they had mocked
- robe
- put...on
- his...garments
- crucify...him

### Translation Words - UST

- they had finished ridiculing
- robe
- put
- own clothes
- place where they would nail him to a cross

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> And when they had mocked him, they took the robe off him and put {his} own garments on him and led him away to crucify {him}.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> When they had finished ridiculing him, they pulled off the robe and put his own clothes on him. Then they led him away to the place where they would nail him to a cross.

**Matthew 27:32****coming out (ULT)****After Jesus carried his cross a short distance,  
the soldiers (UST)**

This means Jesus and the soldiers came out of the city. Alternate translation: “as they came out of Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they found a man (ULT)****saw a man (UST)**

Alternate translation: “the soldiers saw a man”

**whom they forced so that he would carry his cross (ULT)****They forced him to carry the cross for Jesus (UST)**

Alternate translation: “whom the soldiers forced to go with them so that he could carry Jesus’ cross”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [from Cyrene](#)
- [named](#)
- [cross](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [named](#)
- [who was from the city of Cyrene](#)
- [cross](#)

**ULT**

<sup>32</sup> Now coming out, they found a man [from Cyrene named](#) Simon, whom they forced so that he would carry his [cross](#).

**UST**

<sup>32</sup> After Jesus carried his cross a short distance, the soldiers saw a man [named](#) Simon, [who was from the city of Cyrene](#). They forced him to carry the [cross](#) for Jesus.

## Matthew 27:33

### a place called Golgotha (ULT)

### a place called Golgotha (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "a place that people called Golgotha" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- called
- saying
- Golgotha
- of a Skull

### Translation Words - UST

- called
- means...the place like a skull
- Golgotha
- means...the place like a skull

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> And having come to a place called Golgotha, which is saying, "{The} Place of a Skull,"

### UST

<sup>33</sup> They came to a place called Golgotha. That name means "the place like a skull."

## Matthew 27:34

### wine mixed with gall to drink (ULT)

**When they got there, they mixed with wine something that tasted very bitter...to drink so that he would not feel so much pain (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "wine, which they had mixed with gall" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### gall (ULT)

**something that tasted very bitter (UST)**

This **gall** was a bitter, yellow liquid that bodies use in digestion.

### Translation Words - ULT

- wine

### Translation Words - UST

- wine

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> they gave him wine mixed with gall to drink. But having tasted {it}, he was not willing to drink {it}.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> When they got there, they mixed with wine something that tasted very bitter. They gave it to Jesus to drink so that he would not feel so much pain when they nailed him on the cross. But when he tasted it, he refused to drink it. Some soldiers took his clothes.

## Matthew 27:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- having crucified
- garments
- lots

### Translation Words - UST

- they nailed...to the cross
- clothes
- by gambling with something like dice to decide which piece of clothing each one would get

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Now having crucified him, they divided up his garments by casting lots,

### UST

<sup>35</sup> Then they nailed him to the cross. Afterwards, they divided his clothes among themselves by gambling with something like dice to decide which piece of clothing each one would get.

## Matthew 27:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- they kept guard over

### Translation Words - UST

- to guard

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> and sitting down, they kept guard over him there.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Then the soldiers sat down there to guard him, to prevent anyone from trying to rescue him.



## Matthew 27:37

### his...the charge (ULT)

### Jesus...why they were nailing...to the cross (UST)

Alternate translation: "a written explanation of why he was being crucified"

### Translation Words - ULT

- head
- Jesus
- King
- King of the Jews
- of the Jews

### Translation Words - UST

- head a sign on which had been
- Jesus
- King
- King of the Jews
- Jews

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> And above his head they placed the charge against him, which had been written, "This is Jesus, the King of the Jews."

### UST

<sup>37</sup> They fastened to the cross above Jesus' head a sign on which had been written why they were nailing him to the cross. But all it said was, 'This is Jesus, the King of the Jews.'

## Matthew 27:38

**Then two robbers are being crucified with him (ULT)**

**They also nailed two bandits to crosses (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Then the soldiers crucified two robbers with Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [robbers](#)
- [are being crucified](#)
- [his} right](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [nailed...to crosses](#)
- [bandits](#)
- [the right side of Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> Then two [robbers are being crucified](#) with him, one at [{his} right](#) and one at [{his} left](#).

### UST

<sup>38</sup> They also [nailed two bandits to crosses](#). They placed one cross on [the right side of Jesus](#) and the other on the left side.

## Matthew 27:39

**shaking their heads (ULT)  
by shaking their heads as if he were an evil  
man (UST)**

They did this to make fun of Jesus. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were insulting](#)
- [heads](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [insulted](#)
- [heads as if he were an evil man](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> But the ones passing by [were insulting](#) him, shaking their [heads](#)

### UST

<sup>39</sup> The people who were passing by [insulted](#) him by shaking their [heads as if he were an evil man](#).

## Matthew 27:40

**If you are {the} Son of God, come down from the cross (ULT)**

**So if you can do that, you should be able to...If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross (UST)**

They did not believe that Jesus is **the Son of God**, so they wanted him to prove it if it was true. Alternate translation: "If you are the Son of God, prove it by coming down from the cross" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the} Son...of God (ULT)**

**Son...the...of God (UST)**

**Son of God** is an important title for the Christ that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- days
- save
- the} Son
- of God
- cross

### Translation Words - UST

- temple
- days
- save
- Son
- of God
- cross

#### ULT

<sup>40</sup> and saying, "You destroying the temple and rebuilding {it} in three days, save yourself! If you are {the} Son of God, come down from the cross!"

#### UST

<sup>40</sup> They said, "You said you would destroy the temple and then build it again within three days! So if you can do that, you should be able to save yourself! If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross!"

## Matthew 27:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Likewise
- chief priests
- mocking {him}
- scribes
- elders

### Translation Words - UST

- Similarly
- chief priests
- men who taught the Jewish laws
- the elders
- made fun of him

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Likewise also the chief priests, mocking {him} with the scribes and elders, said,

### UST

<sup>41</sup> Similarly, the chief priests, the men who taught the Jewish laws, and the elders made fun of him. They said things like,

## Matthew 27:42

**He saved others; he is not able to save himself (ULT)**

**He saved others from their sicknesses, but he cannot help himself!" "He says that (UST)**

This could mean: (1) the Jewish leaders do not believe that Jesus **saved others** or that he can **save himself**. (2) they believe he did save others but are laughing at him because now he cannot **save himself**. (See: [Irony](#))

**He is {the} King of Israel (ULT)  
he is the King of Israel. So (UST)**

The leaders are mocking Jesus. They call him **King of Israel**, but they do not really believe he is king. Alternate translation: "He says that he is the King of Israel" (See: [Irony](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- He saved
- to save
- the} King
- of Israel
- cross
- we will believe

### Translation Words - UST

- He saved
- help
- the King
- of Israel. So
- cross
- we would believe

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> "He saved others; he is not able to save himself. He is {the} King of Israel! Let him come down now from the cross, and we will believe in him.

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> "He saved others from their sicknesses, but he cannot help himself!" "He says that he is the King of Israel. So he should come down from the cross. Then we would believe him!"

## Matthew 27:43

### For he said, 'I am the Son of God.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. You can state this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "For Jesus even said that he is the Son of God." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

### of God...the} Son (ULT) he is the man who is also God. So...he is the man who is also God. So (UST)

**Son of God** is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- He has trusted
- God
- of God
- let him rescue {him
- the} Son

### Translation Words - UST

- he trusts
- God, and
- he is the man who is also God. So
- he is the man who is also God. So
- should rescue

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> He has trusted in God; let him rescue {him} now, if he wants him. For he said, 'I am {the} Son of God.'

### UST

<sup>43</sup> "He says that he trusts in God, and that he is the man who is also God. So if God is pleased with him, God should rescue him now!"

## Matthew 27:44

### the robbers being crucified with him (ULT) the two bandits who on crosses with him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the robbers that the soldiers crucified with Jesus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- robbers
- being crucified
- were reviling

#### Translation Words - UST

- bandits
- on crosses
- insulted

#### ULT

<sup>44</sup> In the same way, the robbers being crucified with him also were reviling him.

#### UST

<sup>44</sup> And the two bandits who on crosses with him also insulted him, saying similar things.



## Matthew 27:45

### Now (ULT) noon (UST)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

### from...the} sixth hour...the...hour...until...ninth (ULT)

### At...noon...noon...until...three o'clock in the afternoon (UST)

Alternate translation: "from about noon ... for three hours" or "from about twelve o'clock midday ... until about three o'clock in the afternoon"

### darkness happened over all the land (ULT) it became dark over the whole land. It stayed dark (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **darkness**, you can express it as a verb. Alternate translation: "it became dark over the whole land" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the...hour](#)
- [the...hour](#) (2)
- [darkness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [noon](#)
- [three o'clock in the afternoon](#) (2)
- [dark](#)

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> Now from {the} sixth [hour](#) [darkness](#) happened over all the land until {the} ninth [hour](#).

### UST

<sup>45</sup> At [noon](#) it became [dark](#) over the whole land. It stayed dark until [three o'clock in the afternoon](#).

## Matthew 27:46

**Jesus cried out (ULT)**

**Jesus shouted (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Jesus called out" or "Jesus shouted"

**Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani (ULT)**

**Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani (UST)**

These words are what Jesus cried out in his own language. Translators usually leave these words as is. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- hour
- Jesus
- cried out
- with a...voice
- God
- God (2)
- have you forsaken

### Translation Words - UST

- three o'clock
- Jesus shouted
- Jesus shouted
- Jesus shouted
- God
- God (2)
- have you deserted

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> But about the ninth hour, Jesus cried out with a loud voice, saying, "Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani?" which is, "My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?"

### UST

<sup>46</sup> At about three o'clock Jesus shouted loudly, "Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani?" That means, "My God, my God, why have you deserted me?"

## Matthew 27:47

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- calls
- for Elijah

### Translation Words - UST

- that...was calling for the prophet Elijah
- that...was calling for the prophet Elijah

#### ULT

<sup>47</sup> But some of the ones {that} had been standing there, having heard {it}, were saying, "He **calls for Elijah.**"

#### UST

<sup>47</sup> When some of the people standing there heard the word "Eli," they thought that he **was calling for the prophet Elijah.**

## Matthew 27:48

**one of them (ULT)**

**one of them (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) one of the soldiers. (2) one of those who stood by and watched.

**a sponge (ULT)**

**a sponge (UST)**

A **sponge** is a sea animal that is harvested and used to take up and hold liquids. These liquids can later be pushed out.

**gave {it} to him to drink (ULT)**

**held it up in order that Jesus could suck out**

**the wine that was in it (UST)**

Alternate translation: "gave it to Jesus"

### Translation Words - ULT

- on a reed

### Translation Words - UST

- on the tip of a reed and

### ULT

<sup>48</sup> And immediately one of them, having run and having taken a sponge, having both filled {it} with sour wine and having put {it} on a reed, gave {it} to him to drink.

### UST

<sup>48</sup> Immediately one of them ran and got a sponge. He filled it with sour wine. Then he put the sponge on the tip of a reed and held it up in order that Jesus could suck out the wine that was in it.

## Matthew 27:49

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [to save](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Elijah](#)
- [to save](#)

#### ULT

<sup>49</sup> But the rest were saying, "Leave {him} alone. We may see whether [Elijah](#) comes [to save](#) him."

#### UST

<sup>49</sup> But the other people there said, "Wait! Let us see if [Elijah](#) comes [to save](#) him!"

## Matthew 27:50

### released {his} spirit (ULT) giving his spirit over to God (UST)

Here, **spirit** refers to that which gives life to a person. This phrase is a way of saying that Jesus died. Alternate translation: "he died, giving his spirit over to God" or "he breathed his last breath" (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [having cried out](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [spirit](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [shouted out](#)
- [shouted out](#)
- [his spirit](#)

#### ULT

<sup>50</sup> But [Jesus](#), [having cried out](#) again [with a loud voice](#), released {his} [spirit](#).

#### UST

<sup>50</sup> Then after [Jesus shouted out](#) loudly again, he died, giving [his spirit](#) over to God.

## Matthew 27:51

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of the events that happened when Jesus died.

### behold (ULT)

### At that moment (UST)

The word **behold** here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### the curtain of the temple was split in two (ULT)

### the heavy thick curtain...in the temple split into two pieces (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the curtain of the temple tore in two” or “God caused the curtain of the temple to tear in two” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- curtain
- of the temple
- earth
- shook

### Translation Words - UST

- heavy thick curtain
- temple
- earth
- shook...some

### ULT

<sup>51</sup> And behold, the [curtain of the temple](#) was split in two from top to bottom, and the [earth shook](#), and the rocks were split apart.

### UST

<sup>51</sup> At that moment the [heavy thick curtain](#) that closed off the Most Holy Place in the [temple](#) split into two pieces from top to bottom. The [earth shook](#), and [some](#) large rocks split open.

## Matthew 27:52

**And the tombs were opened, and many of the bodies of the saints {that} had fallen asleep were raised (ULT)**

**Tombs opened up, and the bodies of many people who had honored God became alive again (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "And God opened the tombs and raised the bodies of many godly people who had died" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>52</sup> And the [tombs](#) were opened, and many [of the bodies of the saints {that} had fallen asleep](#) were raised.

### UST

<sup>52</sup> [Tombs](#) opened up, and [the bodies](#) of many people [who had honored God](#) became alive again.

**many of the bodies of the saints {that} had fallen asleep were raised (ULT)**  
**the bodies of many people who had honored God became alive again (UST)**

Here to be **raised** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation: "God put life back into the dead bodies of many godly people who had fallen asleep" (See: [Idiom](#))

**that} had fallen asleep (ULT)**  
**who had honored God (UST)**

This is a polite way of referring to dying. Alternate translation: "who had died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [tombs](#)
- [of the bodies](#)
- [of the saints](#)
- [that} had fallen asleep](#)
- [were raised](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Tombs](#)
- [the bodies](#)
- [who had honored God](#)
- [who had honored God](#)
- [became alive again](#)



## Matthew 27:53

### And having come out from the tombs after his resurrection, they entered into the holy city and appeared to many

The order of the events that Matthew describes (beginning with the words "The tombs were opened" in verse 52) is unclear. After the earthquake when Jesus died and the **tombs** were opened (1) the saints came back to life, and then, after Jesus came back to life, the saints entered Jerusalem, where many people saw them. (2) Jesus came back to life, and then the saints came back to life and entered the city, where many people saw them.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- tombs
- resurrection
- holy city
- holy

#### Translation Words - UST

- tombs
- became alive again
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem

#### ULT

<sup>53</sup> And having come out from the tombs after his resurrection, they entered into the holy city and appeared to many.

#### UST

<sup>53</sup> They came out of the tombs, and after Jesus became alive again, they went into Jerusalem and appeared to many people there.

## Matthew 27:54

### Now (ULT) the crosses were also there. When (UST)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

### the ones with him watching Jesus (ULT) who supervised the soldiers who nailed... Jesus...to the cross...was standing nearby. His soldiers who were guarding (UST)

This refers to the other soldiers who were guarding Jesus with the centurion. Alternate translation: "the other soldiers with him who were guarding Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the} Son of God (ULT) the Son of God (UST)

**Son of God** is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [centurion](#)
- [watching](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [became...afraid](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [the} Son of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [officer](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [were guarding](#)
- [they were terrified](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [the Son of God](#)

### ULT

<sup>54</sup> Now the [centurion](#) and the ones with him [watching Jesus](#), having seen the earthquake and the {things that} had happened, [became](#) very [afraid](#), saying, "Truly this was {the} [Son of God](#)."

### UST

<sup>54</sup> The [officer](#) who supervised the soldiers who nailed [Jesus](#) to the cross was standing nearby. His soldiers who [were guarding](#) the crosses were also there. When they felt the earthquake and saw all the other things that happened, [they were terrified](#). They exclaimed, "Truly he was [the Son of God](#)!"

## Matthew 27:55

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Galilee
- to care for

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Galilee in order
- to provide the things he needed

### ULT

<sup>55</sup> Now many women who had followed Jesus from Galilee to care for him were there looking on from a distance.

### UST

<sup>55</sup> Many women were there, watching from a distance. They were women who had accompanied Jesus from Galilee in order to provide the things he needed.

## Matthew 27:56

**Magdalene...mother...of the sons of Zebedee (ULT)**

**from...the mother...the mother of James and John (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the mother of James and John" or "the wife of Zebedee"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Mary Magdalene](#)
- [of the sons](#)
- [of Zebedee](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Mary from Magdala, another](#)
- [the mother of James and John](#)
- [the mother of James and John](#)

### ULT

<sup>56</sup> Among them were [Mary Magdalene](#), and Mary the mother of James and Joseph, and the mother [of the sons of Zebedee](#).

### UST

<sup>56</sup> Among these women were [Mary from Magdala, another](#) Mary who was the mother of James and Joseph, and [the mother of James and John](#).

## Matthew 27:57

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus' burial.

### Arimathea (ULT) the town of Arimathea (UST)

**Arimathea** is the name of a city in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [named](#)
- [was disciplined](#)
- [by Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [named](#)
- [was a disciple](#)
- [of Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>57</sup> Now {when} it became evening, there came a rich man from Arimathea, [named](#) Joseph, who also himself [was disciplined by Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>57</sup> When it was almost evening, a rich man [named](#) Joseph came there. He was from the town of Arimathea. He also [was a disciple of Jesus](#).

## Matthew 27:58

**Then Pilate commanded {it} to be given to him (ULT)**

**and...Pilate to allow him to take...Pilate ordered his soldiers to allow him to take the body (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Then Pilate ordered the soldiers to give the body of Jesus to Joseph" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pilate
- Pilate
- body
- of Jesus
- commanded {it}

### Translation Words - UST

- to Pilate
- and...Pilate to allow him to take...Pilate
- body
- of Jesus and bury it
- ordered his soldiers to allow him

### ULT

<sup>58</sup> He, having approached Pilate, asked for the body of Jesus. Then Pilate commanded {it} to be given to him.

### UST

<sup>58</sup> He went to Pilate and asked Pilate to allow him to take the body of Jesus and bury it. Pilate ordered his soldiers to allow him to take the body.

## Matthew 27:59

**in a clean linen cloth (ULT)**  
**a clean white cloth (UST)**

in a clean, fine, costly cloth

### Translation Words - ULT

- body
- clean

### Translation Words - UST

- body and
- clean

### ULT

<sup>59</sup> And Joseph, having taken the **body**, wrapped it in a **clean** linen cloth,

### UST

<sup>59</sup> So Joseph and others took the **body and** wrapped it in a **clean** white cloth.

## Matthew 27:60

**that he had cut into the rock (ULT)**  
**that workers had dug out of a rock cliff...in**  
**front of (UST)**

It is implied that Joseph had workers who **cut** the tomb **into the rock**. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**And having rolled a large stone against (ULT)**  
**They rolled a huge circular flat stone (UST)**

Most likely Joseph had other people there to help him roll the **stone**. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- tomb
- of the tomb

### Translation Words - UST

- tomb
- tomb. Then

### ULT

<sup>60</sup> and laid it in {his} own new **tomb** that he had cut into the rock. And having rolled a large stone against the door **of the tomb**, he went away.

### UST

<sup>60</sup> Then they placed it in Joseph's own new **tomb** that workers had dug out of a rock cliff. They rolled a huge circular flat stone in front of the entrance to the **tomb**. **Then** they left.



## Matthew 27:61

**opposite the tomb (ULT)**

**opposite the tomb, watching (UST)**

Alternate translation: "across from the tomb"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Mary Magdalene
- tomb

### Translation Words - UST

- Mary from Magdala
- tomb, watching

#### ULT

<sup>61</sup> Now [Mary Magdalene](#) and the other Mary were there, sitting opposite the [tomb](#).

#### UST

<sup>61</sup> [Mary from Magdala](#) and the other Mary were sitting there opposite the [tomb, watching](#).

## Matthew 27:62

### the Preparation (ULT) was Saturday, the Jewish day of rest (UST)

The **Preparation** is the day that people got everything ready for the Sabbath.

### were gathered together...with Pilate (ULT) went...to Pilate (UST)

Alternate translation: "met with Pilate"

### Translation Words - ULT

- chief priests
- Pharisees
- were gathered together
- Pilate

### Translation Words - UST

- chief priests and
- some of...Pharisees
- went
- Pilate

### ULT

<sup>62</sup> Now the next day, which was after the Preparation, the **chief priests** and the **Pharisees were gathered together** with **Pilate**,

### UST

<sup>62</sup> The next day was Saturday, the Jewish day of rest. The **chief priests and some of the Pharisees went to Pilate**.

**Matthew 27:63****that deceiver...yet living (ULT)****that deceiver...while...was still alive (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Jesus, the deceiver, when he was alive"

**said...After three days I am being raised up (ULT)****he said...Three days after I die I will become alive again (UST)**

This has a quotation within a quotation. You can state this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "he said that after three days he will rise again." or "he said that after three day he would rise again." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Sir
- deceiver
- living
- days
- I am being raised up

**Translation Words - UST**

- Sir
- deceiver
- was still alive
- days
- I will become alive again

**ULT**

<sup>63</sup> saying, "Sir, we remember that that deceiver, yet living, said, 'After three days I am being raised up.'

**UST**

<sup>63</sup> They said, "Sir, we remember that while that deceiver was still alive, he said, 'Three days after I die I will become alive again.'



## **Matthew 27:64**

**command...the tomb to be made secure (ULT)**  
**we ask you to order soldiers...to guard the tomb (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "command your soldiers to guard the tomb" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the third day (ULT)**  
**for...three days (UST)**

The word **third** is the ordinal form of three. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**his disciples, having come, might steal him (ULT)**  
**his disciples may come and steal the body (UST)**

Alternate translation: "his disciples may come and steal his body"

**might say to the people, 'He has been raised up from the dead,' and (ULT)**  
**they will tell people that he has risen from the dead. If they deceive people by saying...the way he (UST)**

This has a quotation within a quotation. You can state this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "might tell the people that he has been raised from the dead, and" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**from the dead (ULT)**  
**from the dead (UST)**

This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again. Alternate translation: "from among all those who have died"

**and the last deception will be worse than the first (ULT)**  
**that, it will be worse than the way he deceived people before (UST)**

You can state the understood information explicitly. Alternate translation: "and if they deceive people by saying that, it will be worse than the way he deceived people before when he said that he was the Christ" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [command](#)
- [tomb](#)
- [day](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [to the people](#)
- [He has been raised up](#)

**ULT**

<sup>64</sup> Therefore, [command](#) the [tomb](#) to be made secure until the third [day](#). Otherwise his [disciples](#), having come, might steal him and might say [to the people](#), 'He has been raised up from the [dead](#),' and the last [deception](#) will be worse than the first."

**UST**

<sup>64</sup> So [we ask you to order soldiers](#) to guard the [tomb](#) for three [days](#). If you do not do that, his [disciples](#) may come and steal the body. Then they will tell [people](#) that [he has risen](#) from the [dead](#). If they deceive people by saying that, it will be worse than the way he [deceived people](#) before."

- dead
- deception

## Translation Words - UST

- we ask you to order soldiers
- tomb
- days
- disciples
- people
- he has risen
- dead
- than...deceived people

## Matthew 27:65

### a guard (ULT) take some soldiers (UST)

This **guard** consisted of four to sixteen Roman soldiers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pilate
- as
- you know how

### Translation Words - UST

- Pilate
- as
- you know how

### ULT

<sup>65</sup> And Pilate said to them, "Take a guard. Go, make {it} as secure as you know how."

### UST

<sup>65</sup> Pilate replied, "You can take some soldiers. Go to the tomb and make it as secure as you know how."



## Matthew 27:66

**the...having sealed...stone (ULT)**  
**the...by fastening a cord from...stone that was**  
**in front of the entrance to (UST)**

This could mean: (1) they put a cord around **the stone** and attached it to the rock wall on either side of the entrance to the tomb. (2) they put seals between **the stone** and the wall.

**with the guard (ULT)**  
**the rock cliff on each side and sealing it. They**  
**also left some soldiers there to guard the**  
**tomb (UST)**

Alternate translation: "and having told the soldiers to stand where they could keep people from tampering with the tomb"

### Translation Words - ULT

- tomb
- having sealed

### Translation Words - UST

- tomb
- by fastening a cord from

### ULT

<sup>66</sup> And they, having gone, made the **tomb** secure, **having sealed** the stone with the guard.

### UST

<sup>66</sup> So they went and made the **tomb** secure **by fastening a cord from** the stone that was in front of the entrance to the rock cliff on each side and sealing it. They also left some soldiers there to guard the tomb.

## Matthew 28

### Matthew 28 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([Matthew 28:1](#)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

#### “Make disciples”

The last two verses ([Matthew 28:19-20](#)) are commonly known as “The Great Commission” because they contain a very important command given to all Christians. Christians are to “make disciples” by going to people, sharing the gospel with them and training them to live as Christians.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### An angel of the Lord

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about angels in white clothing with the women at Jesus’ tomb. Two of the authors called them men, but that is only because the angels looked human. Two of the authors wrote about two angels, but the other two authors wrote about only one of them. It is best to translate each of these passages as it appears in the ULT without trying to make the passages all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 28:1-2](#) and [Mark 16:5](#) and [Luke 24:4](#) and [John 20:12](#))

## Matthew 28:1

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of the resurrection of Jesus from the dead.

**Now late on {the} Sabbath, at the dawning toward {the} first {day} of {the} week (ULT)  
After the Sabbath ended, on Sunday morning at dawn...to (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Now after the Sabbath ended, as the sun came up on Sunday morning"

**Now (ULT)  
After (UST)**

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

**Mary Magdalene...other (ULT)  
Mary from the town of Magdala...the other (UST)**

This is **Mary** the mother of James and Joseph (27:56). Alternate translation: "the other woman named Mary"

### Translation Words - ULT

- on {the} Sabbath
- Mary Magdalene
- tomb

### Translation Words - UST

- the Sabbath
- Mary from the town of Magdala
- tomb of Jesus

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now late on {the} Sabbath, at the dawning toward {the} first {day} of {the} week, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary came to see the tomb.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> After the Sabbath ended, on Sunday morning at dawn, Mary from the town of Magdala and the other Mary went to look at the tomb of Jesus.

## Matthew 28:2

### behold (ULT)

The word **behold** here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Your language may have a way of doing this.

### And...a great earthquake happened, for an angel of {the} Lord, having descended from heaven...having come near, rolled away the stone (ULT)

This could mean: (1) the **earthquake happened** because the **angel** came down and **rolled away the stone**. (2) all these events happened at the same time.

### a...earthquake...great (ULT)

An **earthquake** is a sudden and violent shaking of the ground.

### Translation Words - ULT

- an angel
- of {the} Lord
- heaven

### Translation Words - UST

- angel, archangel
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- lord, Lord, master, sir

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And behold, a great earthquake happened, for **an angel of {the} Lord**, having descended from **heaven** and having come near, rolled away the stone and sat on it.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> There was a strong earthquake because an angel from God came down from heaven. He went to the tomb and rolled the stone away from the entrance. Then he sat on the stone.

## Matthew 28:3

### his appearance (ULT)

#### His body (UST)

Alternate translation: “the angel’s appearance”

### was...like lightning (ULT)

#### was...as bright as lightning (UST)

This is a simile that emphasizes how bright in appearance the angel was. Alternate translation: “was bright like lightning” (See: [Simile](#))

### his clothing white like snow (ULT)

#### his clothes were as white as snow (UST)

The verb “was” from the previous phrase can be repeated. Alternate translation: “his clothing was white like snow” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### his clothing white like snow (ULT)

#### his clothes were as white as snow (UST)

This is a simile that emphasizes how bright and white the angel’s clothes were. Alternate translation: “his clothing was very white, like snow” (See: [Simile](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [like](#)
- [like \(2\)](#)
- [clothing](#)
- [snow](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [as bright as lightning](#)
- [as \(2\)](#)
- [clothes were as](#)
- [snow](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Now his appearance was [like](#) lightning, and his [clothing](#) white [like](#) snow.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> His body was [as bright as lightning](#), and his [clothes were as](#) white [as snow](#).

## Matthew 28:4

### became like dead men (ULT)

This is a simile that means the soldiers fell down and did not move.  
Alternate translation: "fell to the ground and lay there like dead men"  
(See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [guards](#)
- [were shaken](#)
- [fear](#)
- [like](#)
- [dead men](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [guards](#)
- [trembled](#)
- [afraid](#)
- [dead men](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But the [guards were shaken](#) from the [fear](#) of him and became [like dead men](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The [guards trembled](#) because they were very [afraid](#), and then they fell down like [dead men](#).

## Matthew 28:5

### to the women (ULT)

Alternate translation: "to Mary Magdalene and the other woman named Mary"

### the one {that} has been crucified (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the people and the soldiers crucified" or "whom they had crucified" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [angel](#)
- [Do...be afraid](#)
- [I know](#)
- [you seek](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [has been crucified](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [should not be afraid](#)
- [I know](#)
- [are looking](#)
- [who was nailed to a cross](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But answering, the [angel](#) said to the women, "Do not [be afraid](#), for [I know](#) that [you seek Jesus](#), the one {that} [has been crucified](#)."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> The angel said to the two women, "You [should not be afraid](#)! [I know](#) that you [are looking](#) for Jesus, [who was nailed to a cross](#)."

## Matthew 28:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- he has been raised up
- just as

### Translation Words - UST

- has made him alive again
- just as

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He is not here, for he has been raised up, just as he said. Come see the place where he was lying.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> He is not here! God has made him alive again, just as Jesus told you he would! Come and see the place where his body lay!



## Matthew 28:7

**tell his disciples, 'He has been raised up from the dead. And behold, he is going ahead of you to Galilee. There you will see him.'**

This is a quotation within a quotation. You can state this as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "tell his disciples that he has risen from the dead and that Jesus has gone ahead of you to Galilee where you will see him." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**He has been raised up (ULT)**  
**He has risen (UST)**

Alternate translation: "He has come back to life"

**from the dead (ULT)**

This expression describes all **dead** people together in the underworld.

**you...you will see...you (ULT)**

Here, all occurrences of **you** are plural. It refers to the women and the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [disciples](#)
- [He has been raised up](#)
- [dead](#)
- [Galilee](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [He has risen](#)
- [disciple](#)
- [Galilee, Galilean](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> And having gone quickly, tell his [disciples](#), '[He has been raised up](#) from the [dead](#). And behold, he is going ahead of you to [Galilee](#). There you will see him.' Behold, I have told you."

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> Then go quickly and tell his disciples, '[He has risen](#) from the dead! He will go ahead of you to the district of Galilee. You will see him there.' Pay attention to what I have told you!"

## Matthew 28:8

### And having quickly left (ULT)

Alternate translation: "And after Mary Magdalene and the other woman named Mary quickly left"

### Translation Words - ULT

- tomb
- fear
- joy
- to tell
- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- They were afraid
- joyful
- tell
- the disciples
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And having quickly left the **tomb** with **fear** and great **joy**, they ran **to tell** his **disciples**.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> So the women left the tomb quickly. **They were afraid**, but they were also very **joyful**. They ran to **tell the disciples** what had happened.

## Matthew 28:9

### behold (ULT)

The word **behold** here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Your language may have a way of doing this.

### Greetings (ULT)

#### Greetings to you (UST)

This is an ordinary greeting, much like "Hello" in English.

### took hold of his feet (ULT)

Alternate translation: "got down on their knees and held onto his feet"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- worshiped

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- prostrate, bow down, worship

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And behold, **Jesus** met them, saying, "Greetings!" But they, having approached, took hold of his feet and **worshiped** him.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Suddenly, as they were running, Jesus appeared to them. He said, "Greetings to you!" The women came close to him. They knelt down and clasped his feet and worshiped him.

## Matthew 28:10

### my brothers (ULT) my disciples (UST)

Here, **my brothers** refers to Jesus' disciples.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Do...be afraid
- tell
- brothers
- Galilee

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Do...be afraid
- tell all
- disciples
- Galilee

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then Jesus says to them, "Do not be afraid. Go tell my brothers so that they would depart to Galilee, and there they will see me."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Then Jesus said to them, "Do not be afraid! Go and tell all my disciples that they should go to Galilee. They will see me there."

## Matthew 28:11

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of the reaction of the Jewish religious leaders when they heard of Jesus' resurrection.

### Now (ULT)

The word **Now** is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

### they (ULT)

Here, **they** refers to Mary Magdalene and the other Mary.

### behold (ULT)

Here, **behold** marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

### Translation Words - ULT

- told
- chief priests

### Translation Words - UST

- high priest, chief priests
- report, reported, tell, reputation

### ULT

**11** Now {while} they were going, behold, some of the guards, having gone into the city, told the chief priests all the {things that} had happened.

### UST

**11** While the women were going, some of the soldiers who had been guarding the tomb went into the city. They reported to the chief priests everything that had happened.

## Matthew 28:12

### and having taken counsel (ULT)

The priests and elders decided to give the money to the soldiers.  
Alternate translation: "decided on a plan among themselves"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having gathered together](#)
- [elders](#)
- [counsel](#)
- [of money](#)
- [to the soldiers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [met](#)
- [They thought of a way](#)
- [the soldiers](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And [having gathered together](#) with the [elders](#) and having taken [counsel](#), they gave a large amount [of money to the soldiers](#),

### UST

<sup>12</sup> So the chief priests and Jewish elders [met](#) together. [They thought of a way](#) to explain why the tomb was empty. They gave [the soldiers](#) a lot of money as a bribe.

## Matthew 28:13

### Say, 'His disciples came ... while we were sleeping.'

If your language does not use quotations within quotations you may translate this as a single quote. Alternate translation: "Tell others that Jesus' disciples came ... while you were sleeping" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [while...are sleeping](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [were sleeping](#)
- [disciple](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> saying, "Say, 'His [disciples](#), having come by night, stole him {[while](#)} we [are sleeping](#).'

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> They said, "Tell people, 'His disciples came during the night and stole his body while we [were sleeping](#).'

## Matthew 28:14

**And if this {report} is heard by the governor (ULT)**

**If the governor hears about this...ourselves...to (UST)**

Alternate translation: "If the governor hears that you were asleep when Jesus' disciples took his body"

**the governor (ULT)**

**the governor (UST)**

Alternate translation: "Pilate" (27:2)

**And...we will persuade {him...keep you free from care (ULT)**

**we ourselves will make sure that he does...you will not have...worry (UST)**

Alternate translation: "do not worry. We will talk to him so that he does not punish you."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [governor](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [governor](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And if this {report} is heard by the [governor](#), we will persuade {him} and keep you free from care."

### UST

<sup>14</sup> If the [governor](#) hears about this, we ourselves will make sure that he does not get angry and punish you. So you will not have to worry."



## Matthew 28:15

### did as they had been instructed (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “did what the priests had told them to do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### this report...among {the} Jews even until today (ULT)

Alternate translation: “Many Jews heard this report and continue to tell others about it even today”

### even until today (ULT)

This refers to the time Matthew wrote the book.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the} money](#)
- [as](#)
- [they had been instructed](#)
- [report](#)
- [the} Jews](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [were told](#)
- [story](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And they, having taken [{the} money](#), did [as they had been instructed](#). And this [report](#) was reported widely among [{the} Jews](#) even until today.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> So the soldiers took the money and did as they [were told](#). And this [story](#) has been told among the [Jews](#) to this very day.

## Matthew 28:16

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus meeting with his disciples after his resurrection.

### Translation Words - ULT

- 11 disciples
- disciples
- Galilee
- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- disciple
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- the twelve, the eleven
- Galilee, Galilean

### ULT

**16** Now the 11 disciples went to Galilee, to the mountain where Jesus had directed them.

### UST

**16** Later the eleven disciples went to the district of Galilee. They went to the mountain where Jesus had told them to go.

## Matthew 28:17

### they worshiped {him}, but some doubted (ULT)

This could mean: (1) they all worshiped Jesus even though some of them doubted. (2) some of them worshiped Jesus, but others did not worship him because they doubted.

### but some doubted (ULT)

You can state this explicitly what the disciples doubted. Alternate translation: "some doubted that he was really Jesus and that he had become alive again" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they worshiped {him}](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [prostrate, bow down, worship](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> And having seen him, [they worshiped {him}](#), but some doubted.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> They saw him there and worshiped him. But some doubted that it was really Jesus and that he had become alive again.

## Matthew 28:18

### All authority has been given to me (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "My Father has given me all authority" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### in heaven and on the earth (ULT)

Here, **heaven** and **earth** are used together to mean everyone and everything in heaven and earth. (See: [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [authority](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [earth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [authority over everything and everyone](#)
- [earth](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

### ULT

**18** And having come, [Jesus](#) spoke to them, saying, "All [authority](#) has been given to me in [heaven](#) and on the [earth](#)."

### UST

**18** Then [Jesus](#) came close to them and said, "My Father has given me all [authority over everything and everyone](#) in heaven and on [earth](#)."

## Matthew 28:19

### of all the nations (ULT)

Here, **nations** refers to the people. Alternate translation: “of all the people in every nation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### in the name (ULT)

Here, **name** refers to authority. Alternate translation: “by the authority” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### of the Father...of the Son (ULT)

**Father** and **Son** are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [make disciples](#)
- [of...the nations](#)
- [baptizing](#)
- [name](#)
- [of the Father](#)
- [of the Son](#)
- [of the...Holy...Spirit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [teach my message to people of all people groups so that they may become my disciples](#)
- [Baptize...to be](#)
- [authority](#)
- [the Father](#)
- [the Son](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [nation](#)

### ULT

**19** Having gone, therefore, [make disciples](#) of all the nations, [baptizing](#) them in the [name of the Father](#), and of [the Son](#), and of the Holy Spirit;

### UST

**19** So go, and use my authority to [teach my message to people of all people groups so that they may become my disciples](#). [Baptize](#) them [to be](#) under the [authority of the Father](#), of [the Son](#), and of the Holy Spirit.

## Matthew 28:20

### behold (ULT)

### remember that (UST)

Alternate translation: "look" or "listen" or "pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

### even to the end of the age (ULT)

### until...end of this age (UST)

Alternate translation: "until the end of this age" or "until the end of the world"

### Translation Words - ULT

- teaching
- to obey
- I have commanded
- days
- of the age

### Translation Words - UST

- Teach
- to obey
- I have commanded
- age
- day

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> teaching them to obey all {things} that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you all the days, even to the end of the age."

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Teach them to obey everything that I have commanded you. And remember that I will be with you always, until the end of this age."



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 33**

## Abstract Nouns

### Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

### Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)



The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Matthew 3 General Notes](#); [6:13](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [7:2](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:27](#); [7:28](#); [9:6](#); [9:8](#); [9:35](#); [10:1](#); [10:21](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [24:12](#); [26:41](#); [27:45](#))

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: Matthew 1 General Notes; 1:16; 1:18; 1:20; 1:22; 2:5; 2:15; 2:16; 2:17; 2:18; 2:23; 3:3; 3:6; 3:10; 3:13; 3:16; 4:1; 4:4; 4:6; 4:7; 4:10; 4:12; 4:14; 4:24; 5:4; 5:6; 5:9; 5:10; 5:13; 5:14; 5:19; 5:21; 5:24; 5:25; 5:27; 5:29; 5:31; 5:32; 5:33; 5:38; 5:43; 6:1; 6:2; 6:5; 6:7; 6:9; 6:10; 6:29; 6:30; 6:33; 7:1; 7:2; 7:7; 7:19; 7:24; 7:25; 7:26; 8:3; 8:8; 8:9; 8:12; 8:13; 8:16; 8:17; 8:24; 8:28; 8:33; Notes; 9:2; 9:5; 9:15; 9:17; 9:21; 9:22; 9:25; 9:29; 9:30; 9:32; 9:33; 10:18; 10:19; 10:22; 10:26; 10:29; 10:30; 11:5; 11:7; 11:10; 11:11; 11:19; 11:20; 11:21; 11:23; 11:27; 12:13; 12:22; 12:25; 12:31; 12:32; 12:33; 12:37; 12:39; 12:44; Notes; 13:6; 13:11; 13:12; 13:19; 13:35; 13:40; 13:44; 13:47; 13:57; Notes; 14:8; 14:9; 14:11; 14:20; 14:36; 15:12; 15:13; 15:22; 15:24; 15:28; 15:31; 16:4; 16:21; 17:2; 17:18; 17:22; 17:23; 18:6; 18:8; 18:9; 18:16; 18:24; 18:25; 18:34; 19:11; 19:12; 19:13; 19:25; 20:18; 20:19; 20:23; 20:28; 21:2; 21:4; 21:13; 21:21; 21:42; 21:43; 21:44; 22:3; 22:4; 22:8; 22:10; 22:14; 22:29; 22:30; 22:31; 23:5; 23:7; 23:8; 23:10; 23:12; 23:37; 24:2; 24:6; 24:9; 24:13; 24:14; 24:15; 24:22; 24:29; 24:40; 24:43; 24:48; 25:5; 25:10; 25:29; 25:32; 25:34; 25:41; 26:2; 26:3; 26:9; 26:13; 26:24; 26:28; 26:31; 26:32; 26:42; 26:45; 26:54; 26:56; 27:3; 27:8; 27:9; 27:12; 27:15; 27:17; 27:20; 27:22; 27:33; 27:34; 27:38; 27:44; 27:51; 27:52; 27:58; 27:64; 28:5; 28:15; 28:18)

# Apostrophe

## Description

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called an apostrophe?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

## Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34a ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

## Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says **about this altar**. 'See, ... they will burn people's bones on **it**.'"

**Mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **you**. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

**As for these mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **them**.

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:6](#); [11:21](#); [11:23](#); [23:37](#))

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.  
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.  
>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At



the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**  
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18; 1:22; 2:2; 2:11; 2:13; 2:16; 3:9; 3:11; 4:6; 4:8; 4:13; 4:16; 4:18; 5:11; 5:14; 5:18; 5:21; 5:23; 5:25; 5:38; 5:41; 6:1; 6:8; 6:9; 6:16; 6:17; 7:1; 7:2; 7:7; 7:12; 7:22; 7:24; 8:2; 8:4; 8:10; 8:20; 8:29; 8:31; 9:1; 9:4; 9:12; 9:16; 9:27; 9:34; 10:5; 10:11; 10:15; 10:20; 10:39; 10:40; 10:41; 10:42; 11:3; 11:7; 11:17; 11:18; 11:22; 11:24; 12:4; 12:7; 12:10; 12:18; 12:38; 12:41; 12:42; Notes; 13:1; 13:2; 13:11; 13:14; 13:17; 13:19; 13:20; 13:22; 13:24; 13:32; 13:33; 13:44; 13:45; 13:54; 14:4; 14:6; 14:12; 14:13; 14:31; 15:2; 15:6; 15:7; 15:21; 15:22; 16:18; 17:10; 17:15; 17:24; 17:27; 18:10; 18:17; 18:19; 18:20; 18:34; 19:12; 19:25; 20:24; 21:2; 21:4; 21:8; 21:12; 21:15; 21:23; 22:4; 22:7; 22:16; 22:17;](#)

22:29; 22:46; 23:5; 23:27; 24:1; 24:2; 24:3; 25:11; 25:13; 25:15; 25:29; 26:6; 26:31; 26:52; 26:55; 26:65; 27:1; 27:6;  
27:11; 27:26; 27:32; 27:40; 27:54; 27:60; 28:17)

## Background Information

### Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Order of Events](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

**Example** — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

### A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
  - > \* Setting includes:
    - > \* where the story takes place
    - > \* when the story takes place
    - > \* who is present when the story begins
    - > \* what is happening when the story begins

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

## Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son** (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain, rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said ...."

## Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

**And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.  
**Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

**"When Abram was 86 years old,** Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done,** added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things,** so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:4](#); [4:12](#); [8:30](#); [9:21](#); [10:2](#); [Notes](#); [14:13](#); [15:29](#); [16:22](#); [19:1](#); [26:3](#); [26:48](#); [27:15](#); [27:20](#))

## Biblical Distance

### Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong,” which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

### Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter,” “45 centimeters,” or “50 centimeters.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.

When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**.”

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**.”

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; <sup>1</sup> its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; <sup>2</sup> and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; <sup>1</sup> its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; <sup>2</sup> and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

[<sup>1</sup>] two and a half cubits  
[<sup>2</sup>] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:27](#))



## Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

An **extended metaphor** is an explicit metaphor that uses multiple images and multiple ideas at the same time. This is in contrast to a simple metaphor, which uses only a single Image and a single Idea. The difference between an extended metaphor and a complex metaphor is that an extended metaphor is explicitly stated by a writer/speaker, but a complex metaphor is not.

This page answers the question: *What is an extended metaphor?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Metaphor](#)  
[Simile](#)

### Explanation of an Extended Metaphor

When using a metaphor, a writer/speaker uses a physical Image in order to express an abstract Idea about some immediate Topic, with at least one point of comparison between the Topic and the Image. In an extended metaphor, the writer/speaker explicitly states the Topic, and then describes multiple images and communicates multiple ideas.

In Isaiah 5:1b-7, the prophet Isaiah uses a vineyard (the **Image**) to express God's disappointment (the **Idea**) with the nation of Israel (the **Topic**) for their unfaithfulness to God and his covenant with them as his people. Farmers care for their gardens, and a farmer would feel disappointed if his vineyard produced bad fruit. If a vineyard produced only bad fruit for a long enough time, the farmer would eventually stop caring for it. We call this an extended metaphor because the prophet describes in detail multiple images relating to a vineyard as well as multiple aspects of God's disappointment.

1b My well beloved had a **vineyard** on a very fertile hill. 2 He **spaded it, removed the stones,** and **planted it** with an excellent kind of vine. He **built a tower** in the middle of it, and also **built a winepress. He waited for it to produce grapes, but it produced wild grapes.** 3 So now, inhabitant of Jerusalem and man of Judah; judge between me and my vineyard. 4 What more could have been done for my vineyard, that I have not done for it? **When I looked for it to produce grapes, why did it produce wild grapes?** 5 Now I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard; I will remove the hedge; I will turn it into a pasture; I will break down its wall, and it will be trampled down. 6 I will lay it waste, and it will not be pruned nor hoed. Instead, briars and thorns will spring up. I will also command the clouds not to rain on it. 7 For **the vineyard of Yahweh of hosts is the house of Israel,** and the man of Judah his pleasant planting; **he waited for justice, but instead, there was killing; for righteousness, but, instead, a shout for help.** (Isa 5:1b-7 ULT)

### Other Examples From the Bible

In Psalm 23, the psalmist uses the physical **Image** of a shepherd to describe the way that God (the **Topic**) shows great concern and care (the **Idea**) for his people. The psalmist describes multiple aspects of what shepherds do for sheep (leads them to pasture and to water, protects them, etc.). The psalmist also describes multiple aspects of how God takes care of him (gives him life, righteousness, comfort, etc.). Shepherds give sheep what they need, take them to safe places, rescue them, guide them, and protect them. What God does for his people is like these actions.

1 Yahweh is my shepherd; I will lack nothing.  
2 He **makes me** to lie down in green pastures;  
he **leads me** beside tranquil water.  
3 He **brings back** my life;  
he **guides me** along right paths for his name's sake.  
4 Even though I walk through a valley of darkest shadow,

I will not fear harm since you are with me;  
your rod and your staff comfort me. (Psalm 23:1-4 ULT)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not realize that the images represent other things.
- People may not be familiar with the things that are used as images.
- Extended metaphors are often so profound that it would be impossible for a translator to show all of the meaning generated by the metaphor.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of the extended metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.
- When someone uses an extended metaphor, the images are an important part of what he is trying to say.
- If the target audience is not familiar with some of the images, you will need to find some way of helping them understand the images so that they can understand the whole extended metaphor.

## Translation Strategies

Consider using the same extended metaphor if your readers will understand it in the same way the original readers would have understood it. If not, here are some other strategies:

- (1) If the target audience would think that the images should be understood literally, translate the metaphor as a simile by using words such as “like” or “as.” It may be enough to do this in just the first sentence or two.
- (2) If the target audience would not know the image, find a way of translating it so they can understand what the image is.
- (3) If the target audience still would not understand, then state it clearly.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the target audience would think that the images should be understood literally, translate the metaphor as a simile by using words such as “like” or “as.” It may be enough to do this in just the first sentence or two. See Psalm 23:1-2 as an example:

Yahweh is **my shepherd**; I will lack nothing.  
He makes **me** to lie down in green pastures;  
**he leads me** beside tranquil water. (ULT)

Can be translated as:

“Yahweh is **like** a shepherd to me, so I will lack nothing.  
**Like** a shepherd who makes his sheep lie down in green pastures and leads them by peaceful waters, Yahweh helps me to rest peacefully.”

(2) If the target audience would not know the image, find a way of translating it so they can understand what the image is.

My well beloved had a **vineyard** on a very fertile hill.  
He **spaded** it, removed the stones, and planted it with **an excellent kind of vine**.  
He built **a tower** in the middle of it, and also built a **winepress**.  
He waited for it to produce grapes, but it only produced **wild grapes**. (Isaiah 5:1b-2 ULT)

May be translated as:

My well beloved had a **grapevine garden** on a very fertile hill.  
 He **dug up the ground** and removed the stones, and planted it with **the best grapevines**.  
 He built a **watchtower** in the middle of it, and also built **a tank where he could crush the juice out of the grapes**.  
 He waited for it to produce grapes, but it produced **wild grapes that were not good for making wine**.

(3) If the target audience still would not understand, then state it clearly.

Yahweh is **my shepherd**; I will lack nothing. (Psalm 23:1 ULT)

“Yahweh **cares for me** like a shepherd that cares for his sheep, so I will lack nothing.”

For the vineyard of Yahweh of hosts **is** the house of Israel,  
 and the men of Judah his pleasant planting;  
 he waited for justice, but instead, there was killing;  
 for righteousness, but, instead, a shout for help. (Isaiah 5:7 ULT)

Can be translated as:

For the vineyard of Yahweh of hosts **represents** the house of Israel,  
 and the men of Judah **are like** his pleasant planting;  
 he waited for justice, but instead, there was killing;  
 for righteousness, but, instead, a cry for help.

or as:

**So as a farmer stops caring for a grapevine garden that produces bad fruit,**  
**Yahweh will stop protecting** Israel and Judah,  
**because they do not do what is right.**  
 He waited for justice, but instead, there was killing;  
 for righteousness, but, instead, a cry for help.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:22](#); [6:23](#); [11:29](#); [11:30](#))

# Biblical Money

## Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

## Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

## Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

- (1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
- (3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
- (4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

█ The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

█ "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**."

Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

█ "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

█ "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

█ [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii**,1 and the other, **50**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)

█ [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 17:24](#); [17:27](#); [18:24](#); [18:28](#); [20:2](#); [20:10](#); [20:13](#); [22:19](#); [25:15](#); [25:20](#); [25:28](#))

# Biblical Volume

## Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

## Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

## When the unit of measure is stated

### Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**.”

- (2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**.”

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**.”

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**.”

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**.”

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters<sup>1</sup>, and 220 liters<sup>2</sup> of seed will yield only 22 liters<sup>3</sup>.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] one bath  
[2] one homer  
[3] one ephah

## When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure.”

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”

When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.



When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:33](#))

## Connect — Background Information

### Time Relationship

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate clauses that give background information?*

### Background Clause

#### Description

A background clause is one that describes something that is ongoing. Then, in the same sentence, another clause indicates an event that begins to happen during that time. These events are also simultaneous events, but they have the further relationship of background event and main event because the event that is already happening serves as the background for the other event, the one that is in focus. The background event simply provides the time frame or other context for the main event or events.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate a shift in time in different ways. You (the translator) need to understand how these shifts in time are indicated in the original languages in order to communicate them clearly in your own language. Background clauses often indicate a time that began long before the event that is in focus. Translators need to understand how both the source language and the target language communicate background events. Some English words that indicate background events are “now,” “when,” “while,” and “during.” Those words can also indicate simultaneous events. To tell the difference, ask yourself if all of the events seem to be equal in importance and started at about the same time. If so, they are probably simultaneous events. But if an event(s) is ongoing and another event(s) just started, then the ongoing event(s) is probably background to the other event(s). Some common phrases that indicate background events are “in those days” and “at that time.”

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

When Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods. (OBS Story 18 Frame 3)

Solomon began to worship foreign gods at a time when he was old. Being old is the background event. Worshiping other gods is the main event.

And his parents went **every year** to Jerusalem to the Feast of the Passover. And when he was 12 years old, they went up according to the custom of the feast. (Luke 2:41-42 ULT)

The first event—going to Jerusalem—is ongoing and started long ago. We know this because of the words “every year.” Going to Jerusalem is the background event. Then an event begins that started during the time “when he was twelve years old.” So the main event is the specific time Jesus and his family traveled to Jerusalem for the Passover festival **when he was twelve years old**.

And it came about that, **while** they were there, the days were fulfilled for her to give birth. (Luke 2:6 ULT)

Being in Bethlehem is the background event. The birth of the baby is the main event.

And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of

Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness.  
(Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

This example begins with five background clauses (marked by commas), signalled as background by the words “while” and “during.” Then the main event happens: “the word of God came to John.”

## Translation Strategies

If the way that the Background Clauses are marked is also clear in your language, then translate the Background Clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a Background Clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

(2) If your language marks Background Clauses in a different way than using connecting words (such as by using different verb forms), then use that way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness.  
(Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a background clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

**It happened during the time that** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, **and during the time that** Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, **and during the time that** his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, **and during the time that** Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **and also during the time that** Annas and Caiaphas were high priests—**that** the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

(2) If your language marks background clauses in a different way than using connecting words, such as with different verb forms, then use that way.

Pontius Pilate **was governing** Judea, and Herod **was ruling over** Galilee, and his brother Philip **was ruling over** the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias **was ruling over** Abilene, and Annas and Caiaphas **were being** high priests—the word of God **came** to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

## Example of Differences in Time Relationship Connecting Words:

Category	Example
Background setting	Yahweh's word was rare <b>in those days</b> ;
Background repeated	there was no frequent prophetic vision.
Introduction of main event	<b>At that time, when</b> Eli
Background	<b>whose</b> eyesight had begun to grow dim so that he could not see well,
Simultaneous background	was lying down in his own bed.
Simultaneous background	The lamp of God <b>had not yet</b> gone out,
Simultaneous background	<b>and</b> Samuel was lying down to sleep in the temple of Yahweh,
Simultaneous background	where the ark of God was.
Main event	<b>Yahweh called to Samuel,</b>
Sequential event	who said, "Here I am." (1 Sam 3:1-4 ULT)

In the above example, the first two lines talk about a condition that was going on for a long time. This is the general, long-term background. We know this from the phrase "in those days." After the introduction of the main event ("At that time,"), there are several lines of simultaneous background. The first one is introduced by "when," and then three more follow, with the last connected by "and." The background clause introduced by "where" explains a little more about the background clause before it. Then the main event happens, followed by more events. Translators will need to think about the best way to show these relationships in their language.

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:19](#); [1:21](#); [1:23](#); [4:18](#); [10:4](#))

## Connect — Contrast Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a contrast relationship?*

### Contrast Relationship

#### Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word “yet.”

The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

#### Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

{David} found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)

[David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:4](#); [5:15](#); [5:17](#); [5:33](#); [9:17](#); [10:6](#); [10:20](#); [10:28](#); [11:19](#))

## Connect — Exception Clauses

### Exceptional Relationship

This page answers the question: *How can I translate exception clauses?*

### Description

Exceptional relationship connectors exclude one or more items or people from a group.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

English indicates exceptional relationships by first describing a group (Part 1) and then stating what is not in that group by using words like “except,” “but not,” “other than,” “besides,” “unless,” “however ... not,” and “only” (Part 2). Some languages do not indicate in this way that one or more items or people are excluded from a group. Instead, they have other ways of doing this. In some languages this type of construction does not make sense because the exception in Part 2 seems to contradict the statement in Part 1. Translators need to understand who (or what) is in the group and who (or what) is excluded in order to be able to accurately communicate this in their language.

### Examples From OBS and the Bible

God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4b ULT)

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not** a man escaped **except for** 400 young men, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

### Translation Strategies

If the way that Exceptional Clauses are marked in the source language is also clear in your language, then translate the Exceptional Clauses in the same way.

- (1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”
- (2) Reverse the order of the clauses so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

### Examples of Translation Strategy Applied

- (1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not a man escaped except for 400 young men**, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

- Part 1: (**Not a man escaped**)
- Part 2: (**except for 400 young men**)

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Only 400 young men escaped**; they rode on camels and fled.

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4 ULT)

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for **you are first in line to redeem it {only you can redeem it}**, and I am after you.

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me." (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will let you go **only if** you bless me."

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses, so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

God told Adam that he could **not** eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, but he could eat from **any other** tree in the garden.

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:13](#); [5:32](#))



## Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

### Conditional Relationships

This page answers the question: *How can I translate hypothetical conditions?*

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words “if ... then.” Often, however, the word “then” is not stated.

### Hypothetical Condition

#### Description

A Hypothetical Condition is a condition in which the second event (the “then” clause) will only take place if the first event (the “if” clause) takes place or is fulfilled in some way. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

It is important that translators understand whether or not something is a Hypothetical Condition so that they translate it in the correct way. For example, some of God’s promises to Israel were conditional, based on whether or not Israel obeyed God. However, many of God’s promises to Israel were not conditional; God would keep these promises whether or not the Israelites obeyed. It is important that you (the translator) know the difference between these two types of promises and communicate each one accurately in your own language. Also, sometimes conditions are stated in an order different than the order in which they would happen. If the target language would state the clauses in a different order, then you will need to make that adjustment.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

There are two hypothetical conditions in this frame. In both of these conditions, the first event (the “if clause”) is stated after the “then” clause. If this is unnatural or confusing, the clauses can be restated in the more natural order. The first hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites obeyed God, then God would bless and protect them. The second hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites did not obey God, then God would punish them.

If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? (Genesis 4:7a ULT)

If Cain does what is right, then he will be accepted. The only way for Cain to be accepted is by doing what is right.

... **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them. (Acts 5:38b-39aULT)

There are two hypothetical conditions here: (1) If it is true that this plan is of men, then it will be overthrown; (2) If it is true that this plan is of God, then it cannot be overthrown.

#### Translation Strategies

- (1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.
- (2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like “then.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

God promised to bless the people and protect them **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

If the people obeyed these laws, God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, God said that he would punish them.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like “then.”

God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

If the people obeyed these laws, **then** God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, **then** God said that he would punish them.

... **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; (Acts 5:38b-39a ULT)

... **if** this plan or this work is of men, **then** it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, **then** you will not be able to overthrow them;

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:3](#); [4:9](#); [5:19](#); [5:20](#); [8:2](#); [11:21](#); [11:23](#))

## Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the reason-result relationship?*

### Reason-and-Result Relationships

#### Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — “I did Y because I wanted X to happen.” But usually it is looking backward — “X happened, and so I did Y.” Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are “because,” “so,” “therefore,” and “for.” Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus!  
(Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. “Because” connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves.  
(Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by “so that.” Notice that the term “so that” often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

“Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God.” (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.
- (2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.
- (3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

- (1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.
- (2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.
- (3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

- (1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.
- (2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.
- (3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

**Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

- (1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.
- (2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.
- (3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:24](#); [2:2](#); [10:18](#); [21:40](#))

## Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

### Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate clauses with a sequential time relationship?*

### Sequential Clause

#### Description

A sequential clause is a time relation that connects two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate sequences of events in different ways; some use ordering, some use connecting words, some even use relative tense (Relative tense is a tense that refers to a time in relation to a reference point in the context.) Connecting words that may indicate sequence are words such as “then,” “later,” “after,” “afterward,” “before,” “first,” and “when.” Translators need to be certain that they communicate the order of the events in a way that is natural in their language. This may require ordering clauses differently than in the original languages.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

**When** Joseph came to his brothers, they kidnapped him and sold him to some slave traders. (OBS Story 8 Frame 2)

First Joseph came to his brothers, and then they kidnapped and sold him. We know this because of the connecting word “**when**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but **after** I ate it, my stomach became bitter. (Revelation 10:10b ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs first, and the event of the last clause occurs later. We know this because of the connecting word “**after**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs after the event of the second clause. First the land they dread will be desolate, and then the child will know to refuse evil and choose good. We know this because of the connecting word “**before**.” However, stating the clauses in this order may communicate the wrong order of events in your language. The translator may have to change the order so that the clauses come in the order that they happen. Or it may be possible to keep the order of the original language text and mark the ordering of sequence so that it is clear to the readers. You (the translator) need to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Here the general connector “**and**” connects four events. These are sequential events—each happens after the one before it. We know this because that is the only way that these events would happen. So in English, the general

connector “and” is enough to make the sequence clear for events such as these. You will need to decide if this also communicates this sequence clearly and correctly in your language.

## Translation Strategies

If the sequence of events is clear in your language, then translate the sequence as it is.

- (1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.
- (2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Then Mary arose in those days. **Then** she quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah. **Then** she entered into the house of Zechariah, **and then** she greeted Elizabeth.

For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

For the time will come when the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, **but even before that time**, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate.

- (2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

For the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.

For more about sequences of events, see [Sequence of Events](#).

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [5:24](#); [9:14](#); [9:25](#))

## Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

### Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate clauses with a simultaneous time relationship?*

### Simultaneous Clause

#### Description

A simultaneous clause is a time relationship that connects two or more events that occur at the same time.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate in many different ways that events occur simultaneously. These ways may vary based on whether or not something is causing the events to occur simultaneously. Connecting words that may indicate simultaneous events are words such as “while,” “as,” and “during.” Often the Bible does not state a relationship between the events but simply says they occurred at the same time. It is important that you (the translator) know when a time relationship is implied and when it is not implied so that you can communicate it clearly. A simultaneous clause communicates that events happened at the same time but it does not indicate that one event caused the other. That would be a reason-and-result relationship.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

Joseph served his master well, **and** God blessed Joseph. (OBS Story 8 Frame 4)

Two events happened while Joseph was a slave to a wealthy government official: Joseph served well, and God blessed Joseph. There is no indication of a reason-and-result (cause and effect) relationship between the two, or that the first event happened, and then the second event happened.

But in truth I say to you that there were many widows in Israel **during** the days of Elijah. (Luke 4:25b ULT)

The connecting word “**during**” tells us clearly that two things happened at the same time, but one event did not cause the other.

And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

The people were both waiting and wondering at the same time. The general connector “**and**” indicates this.

**While** they were looking intensely into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

Three events happened at the same time — the disciples looking, Jesus going up, and two men standing. The connector words “**while**” and “**as**” tell us this.

## Translation Strategies

If the way that the simultaneous clauses are marked also is clear in your language, then translate the simultaneous clauses as they are.

- (1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that the simultaneous clauses are happening at the same time, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
- (2) If it is not clear which clause the simultaneous clause is connected to, and that they are happening at the same time, mark all of the clauses with a connecting word.
- (3) If your language marks events as simultaneous in a different way than using connecting words, then use that way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Below, each Bible verse will be restated in three different ways, according to the translation strategies in the list above. Each restatement will have the same number as the translation strategy that it is using.

And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

- (1) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were wondering at his delaying in the temple.
- (2) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were **also** wondering at his delaying in the temple.
- (3) Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, wondering at his delaying in the temple.

**While** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

- (1) And **during the time** they were looking intently into heaven **while** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing.
- (2) And **while** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, **at that same time** two men stood by them in white clothing.
- (3) They were looking intently into heaven; he was going up **when** they saw two men standing by them in white clothing.

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:20](#))



## Connecting Words and Phrases

### Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to join parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.

**Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

### Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

## The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- [Sequential Clause](#) — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- [Simultaneous Clause](#) — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- [Background Clause](#) — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- [Exceptional Relationship](#) — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- [Hypothetical Condition](#) — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- [Factual Condition](#) — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- [Contrary-to-Fact Condition](#) — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: [Hypothetical Statements](#).
- [Goal Relationship](#) — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- [Reason and Result Relationship](#) — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- [Contrast Relationship](#) — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

## Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word “instead” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

**Therefore**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “therefore” links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “but” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words “so that” connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

## General Translation Strategies

### See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
- (2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
- (3) Use a different connecting word.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

Jesus said to them, “Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.” Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word “so.”

Jesus said to them, “Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.” **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

- (2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words “instead” or “then” here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

- (3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

**Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven.  
**And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:17](#); [12:42](#))

## Copy or Borrow Words

### Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns](#).)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Examples From the Bible

▮ Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

▮ Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

▮ The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

### Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

- (1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
- (2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
- (3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

.A man's name in Hebrew letters — זְפַנְיָהּ  
 "Zephaniah" — The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

Zephaniah — This is a man's name.  
 "Zephaniah" — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Zephaniah — If your language does not have the "z," you could use "s." If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f." Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay."  
 "Sefania"  
 "Sefanaia"  
 "Sefanaya"

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:22](#); [10:25](#); [27:46](#))

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

### Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."  
(Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming**,
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[Quotations and Quote Margins](#)

## Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, **“Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

And he commanded him **to tell no one**, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him, **“Tell no one.** But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations](https://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

Next we recommend you learn about:  
[Quotes within Quotes](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:4; 9:5; 11:18; 11:19; 12:13; 12:47; 13:30; 13:51; 14:4; 17:26; 19:5; 21:21; 22:4; 22:32; 24:26; 26:48; 26:75](#))



## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called [litotes](#).

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

## Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

"For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

"... so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

...ἰώτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)

...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law

or:

...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:20](#); [10:26](#); [10:29](#); [11:27](#); [12:24](#); [13:34](#); [13:57](#); [17:20](#); [18:3](#); [23:23](#); [24:22](#))

## Doublet

### Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

### Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

“He has one people **very spread out**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

- English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**.”

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, “Master!**  
We are perishing!”

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:18](#); [5:12](#); [11:1](#); [11:25](#); [11:29](#); [21:21](#); [22:37](#); [22:38](#); [23:33](#))

## Ellipsis

### Description

An ellipsis<sup>1</sup> occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**  
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[<sup>1</sup>] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

### Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

## Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:3](#); [2:5](#); [5:17](#); [5:22](#); [5:25](#); [5:41](#); [6:30](#); [7:10](#); [8:9](#); [8:18](#); [8:20](#); [9:12](#); [9:13](#); [9:28](#); [10:8](#); [10:21](#); [10:23](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [10:34](#); [10:35](#); [11:3](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [12:48](#); [13:8](#); [13:16](#); [13:23](#); [15:34](#); [16:5](#); [16:17](#); [19:9](#); [20:28](#); [20:33](#); [22:21](#); [22:42](#); [23:18](#); [25:10](#); [25:15](#); [25:27](#); [25:37](#); [25:38](#); [25:43](#); [25:46](#); [26:5](#); [26:39](#); [27:64](#); [28:3](#))



## End of Story

### Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

This page answers the question: *What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Background Information](#)

### The following are purposes for end of story information:

- to summarize the story
- to give a comment about what happened in the story
- to connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- to tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- to tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- to tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know:

- that this information is ending the story
- what the purpose of the information is
- how the information is related to the story

### Translation Strategies

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

### Examples From the Bible

- To summarize the story

Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. **In this way it happened that all of us were brought safely to the land.** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

- To give a comment about what happened in the story

Many of those who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. Then they counted the value of them, and found it was 50,000 pieces of silver. **So the word of the Lord was spreading and prevailing with power.** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

And Mary said, "My soul magnifies the Lord, and my spirit rejoiced in God my savior." **And Mary stayed with her about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who those who heard it were amazed concerning the things that were spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept all the things, pondering them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

"Woe to you, experts in the Jewish law, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After he went from there, the scribes and the Pharisees began to fiercely oppose him and argued against him about many things, lying in wait to trap him in something from his mouth.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:28](#))

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.  
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**”

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

“They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18](#); [1:25](#); [2:18](#); [2:20](#); [9:20](#); [9:24](#); [10:29](#); [24:19](#); [24:34](#); [26:24](#); [27:50](#); [27:52](#))

## Exclamations

### Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

### Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

**Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Alas" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

**How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

### Translation Strategies

- (1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
- (2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
- (3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
- (4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

“You **are** such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word “wow” shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were extremely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak.” (Mark 7:37 ULT)

“They were extremely astonished, saying, “**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.””

Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)

“**Oh no,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

“**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

“**Help,** Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, “**Alas,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:21; 11:21](#))

## Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Description

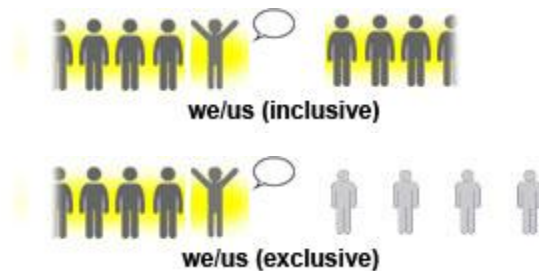
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

**We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

## Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:15](#); [8:25](#); [8:31](#); [11:3](#); [17:4](#); [17:19](#); [20:18](#))



## First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[Pronouns](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:20](#); [9:6](#); [10:23](#); [11:15](#); [11:19](#); [11:27](#); [12:6](#); [12:8](#); [12:32](#); [12:39](#); [12:40](#); [12:41](#); [12:42](#); [13:9](#); [13:37](#); [13:41](#); [13:43](#); [16:4](#); [16:13](#); [16:27](#); [17:9](#); [17:12](#); [17:22](#); [17:23](#); [19:28](#); [20:18](#); [20:19](#); [20:28](#); [23:10](#); [24:27](#); [24:30](#); [24:31](#); [24:33](#); [24:37](#); [24:44](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [25:31](#); [25:34](#); [25:40](#); [25:41](#); [26:2](#); [26:24](#); [26:45](#); [26:64](#))

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](https://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:11](#); [5:25](#); [5:29](#); [5:36](#); [5:40](#); [5:43](#); [6:1](#); [6:5](#); [6:25](#); [6:27](#); [8:11](#); [9:6](#); [11:14](#); [11:21](#); [11:23](#); [11:28](#); [12:28](#); [12:31](#); [12:34](#); [13:11](#); [13:16](#); [13:17](#); [14:16](#); [15:5](#); [16:19](#); [16:28](#); [17:27](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [18:14](#); [18:18](#); [18:35](#); [19:8](#); [20:22](#); [21:32](#); [21:43](#); [23:8](#); [23:11](#); [26:10](#); [26:40](#); [26:53](#); [26:64](#); [26:65](#); [28:7](#))

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Forms of 'You' — Singular](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

## Forms of 'You' — Singular

### Description

Some languages have a singular form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

This page answers the question: *How do I know if the word 'you' is singular?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[Forms of You](#)

[Pronouns](#)

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have both a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. When we read the Bible in a language that does not have different forms of you, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know the number of people the speaker was speaking to. Sometimes Greek and Hebrew speakers used the singular form of “you” even though they were speaking to a group of people. (See Forms of 'You' — Singular to a Crowd.)

### Examples From the Bible

But he said, “All these things I have kept from my youth.” But when he heard this, Jesus said to him, “One thing is still lacking to **you**. All things, as much as **you** have, sell all and distribute to the poor, and **you** will have treasure in heaven—and come, follow me.” (Luke 18:21-22 ULT)

The ruler was speaking about just himself when he said “I.” This shows us that when Jesus said “you” he was referring only to the ruler. So languages that have singular and plural forms of “you” need the singular form here.

The angel said to him, “Dress **yourself** and put on **your** sandals.” So he did that. He said to him, “Put on **your** outer garment and follow me.” (Acts 12:8 ULT)

The context makes it clear that the angel was speaking to one person and that only one person did what the the angel commanded. So languages that have singular and plural forms of “you” would need the singular form here for “yourself” and “your.” Also, if verbs have different forms for singular and plural subjects, then the verbs “dress” and “put on” need the form that indicates a singular subject.

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. For this purpose I left **you** in Crete, that **you** might set in order things not yet complete and ordain elders in every city as I directed **you**. But **you**, say what fits with sound teaching. (Titus 1:4a, 5; 2:1 ULT)

Paul wrote this letter to one person, Titus. Most of the time the word “you” in this letter refers only to Titus.

## Strategies for finding out how many people “you” refers to

- (1) Look at the notes to see if they tell whether “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
- (2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
- (3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes “you” singular from “you” plural, see which form of “you” that Bible has in that sentence.
- (4) Look at the context to see how many people the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 5 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [6:3](#); [6:17](#); [6:22](#); [Notes](#); [7:3](#))

## Generic Noun Phrases

### Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?  
So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife;**  
**the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase "a good man" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase "a man who makes evil plans" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

### Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

- (1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.
- (2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.
- (3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."
- (4) Use the plural form, as in "people."

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

“Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**.” (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:4](#); [4:7](#); [4:10](#); [Notes](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:8](#); [5:15](#); [5:19](#); [5:43](#); [6:2](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [6:24](#); [9:17](#); [10:22](#); [10:23](#); [10:42](#))

## Hendiadys

### Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called a hendiadys. In a hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

... his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or a **glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

### Examples From the Bible

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

“A mouth” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes what comes from the mouth.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

### Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
- (2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
- (3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.



(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

For I will give you **wise words** ...

Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

If you are **willingly obedient** ...

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective “obedient” can be substituted with the verb “obey.”

if you **obey willingly** ...

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun “glory” can be changed to the adjective “glorious” to make it clear that Jesus’ appearing is what we hope for. Also, “Jesus Christ” can be moved to the front of the phrase and “great God and Savior” put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing of Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Doublet

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:35](#); [10:19](#))

## How to Translate Names

### Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

**Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 1:3](#); [1:5](#); [1:16](#); [1:23](#); [2:1](#); [2:22](#); [4:25](#); [8:28](#); [10:28](#); [12:42](#); [14:3](#); [14:34](#); [15:39](#); [16:17](#); [21:1](#); [22:16](#); [27:57](#))

## Hyperbole

### Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

### Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

### Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

## Examples From the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches**. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.



## Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
  - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
  - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

or:

**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:3](#); [3:5](#); [3:9](#); [4:23](#); [4:24](#); [5:18](#); [5:29](#); [5:30](#); [7:3](#); [8:34](#); [9:35](#); [10:22](#); [16:26](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [19:24](#); [23:9](#); [23:24](#))

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

▮ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

▮ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

▮ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

▮ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

▮ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

▮ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

▮ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

▮ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

▮ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

▮ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

▮ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

▮ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18; 3:4; 3:12; 3:15; 4:19; 4:21; 5:2; 5:3; 5:4; 5:8; 5:25; 7:23; 8:9; 8:20; 9:30; 10:8; 10:19; 10:21; 10:27; 11:5; 11:10; 11:11; 11:12; 11:26; 12:19; 12:40; 12:42; 13:35; 13:38; 14:13; 14:19; 14:30; 15:8; 15:28; 16:21; 16:22; 16:28; 17:6; 17:18; 17:23; 18:10; 18:35; 19:29; 20:12; 20:22; 20:23; 20:28; 21:13; 21:32; 22:44; 23:4; 23:15; 23:35; 24:11; 24:12; 24:31; 24:51; 25:8; 25:21; 25:23; 26:18; 26:25; 26:29; 26:32; 26:38; 26:39; 26:43; 26:45; 26:64; 27:4; 27:6; 27:25; 27:52](#))

## Imperatives — Other Uses

### Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

### Examples From the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, “**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in.” (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

### Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command “Be clean” means to “be healed” so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

“I am willing. **Be clean.**” Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general, second-person command, as in the ULT:

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like “light must be.”

### Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

## Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

**Do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;  
**love** her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6, below, is to teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

**Teach** a child the way he should go,  
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
- (2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
- (3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

**Be clean.** (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

“You are now clean.”  
“I now cleanse you.”

God said, “**Let there be light,**” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, “**There is now light**” and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful, and multiply. Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

God blessed them and said to them, “**My will for you is that you be fruitful, and multiply. Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.”

- (2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

God said, “**Let there be light,**” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, ‘Let there be light,’ **so** there was light.  
God said, “Light must be;” **as a result,** there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

**If** you teach a child the way he should go,  
**then** when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.”

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:8](#))

## Information Structure

### Description

Different languages arrange the parts of the sentence in different ways. In English, a sentence normally has the subject first, then the verb, then the object, then other modifiers, like this: Peter painted his house yesterday.

Many other languages normally put these things in a different order such as: Painted yesterday Peter his house.

Although all languages have a normal order for parts of a sentence, this order can change depending on what information the speaker or writer considers to be the most important.

Suppose that someone is answering the question, "What did Peter paint yesterday?" The person asking the question already knows all of the information in our sentence above except for the object, "his house." Therefore, that becomes the most important part of the information, and a person answering in English might say "His house is what Peter painted (yesterday)."

This puts the most important information first, which is normal for English. Many Other Languages would normally put the most important information last. In the flow of a text, the most important information is usually what the writer considers to be new information for the reader. In some languages the new information comes first, and in others it comes last.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Different languages arrange the parts of a sentence in different ways. If you (the translator) copy the order of the parts of a sentence from the source, it may not make sense in your language.
- Different languages put important or new information in different places in the sentence. If you keep the important or new information in the same place that it had in the source language, it may be confusing or give the wrong message in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

They all ate until they were satisfied. (Mark 6:42 ULT)

The parts of this sentence were in a different order in the original Greek source language. They were like this: And they ate all and they were satisfied.

In English, this means that the people ate everything. But the next verse says that they took up twelve baskets full of leftover pieces of food. In order for this to not be so confusing, the translators of the ULT put the parts of the sentence in the right order for English.

And the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, "Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in an desolate place." (Luke 9:12 ULT)

In this verse, what the disciples say to Jesus puts the important information first, that he should send the crowd away. In languages that put the important information last, people would understand that the reason that they gave, being in an isolated place, is the most important part of their message to Jesus. They might then think that the disciples are afraid of the spirits in that place, and that sending the people to buy food is a way to protect them from the spirits. That is the wrong message.

This page answers the question: *How do languages arrange the parts of a sentence?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)



Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers treated the false prophets in the same way. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

In this verse, the most important part of the information is first, that “woe” is coming on the people for what they are doing. The reason that supports that warning comes last. This could be confusing for people who expect the important information to come last.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.
- (2) Study where your language puts the new or important information, and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

## Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

This is the verse in the original Greek order:

And he went out from there and came to the hometown his, and they followed him the disciples his. (Mark 6:1)

The ULT has put this into the normal order for English:

Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. (Mark 6:1 ULT)

- (2) Study where your language puts the new or important information and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

And the day began to end, and the twelve came and said to him, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in a desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Because we are here in an desolate place, send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food.”

Woe to you, when all men speak well of you, for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

When all men speak well of you, which is just as people’s ancestors treated the false prophets, then woe to you!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-distinguish\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:8](#))

## Introduction of a New Event

### Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Order of Events](#)

### Examples From the Bible

**In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

**And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

**The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

**Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

**Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

**Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

## Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
- (3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
- (4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him ... (Mark 2:14a ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector’s tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as “another time,” or “someone.”

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

**After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

**Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.

**Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Introduction of New and Old Participants](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18](#); [3:1](#); [3:13](#); [4:1](#); [4:18](#); [5:1](#); [8:1](#); [9:2](#); [9:18](#); [10:1](#); [11:1](#); [15:1](#))

## Introduction of New and Old Participants

### Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

Now **there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus** ... **This man** came to Jesus at night ... Jesus replied and said to **him** ... (John 3:1, 2a, 3a)

The first bolded phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. After being introduced, he is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he has become an old participant.

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

## Examples From the Bible

### New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man,” as in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who his family was, and what his name was.

**Now there was a man** from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2a ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important participant is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife.” This phrase shows her relationship to him.

Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. **His wife** was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

Now King David was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

## Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his,” and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she.”

His wife was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah’s wife is referred to by the noun phrase “the wife.”

The angel of Yahweh appeared to the wife and he said to her ... (Judges 13:3a ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant’s name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to by his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then Manoah prayed to Yahweh. (Judges 13:8a ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages, people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.
- (2) If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
- (3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.

Then Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which is translated as Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by birth ... (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) — Starting the sentence with Joseph’s name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of Encouragement). There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

- (2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

And it happened that when he was praying in a certain place, when he stopped, one of his disciples said to him, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples.” (Luke 11:1 ULT) — Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.

It happened when Jesus finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.”

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Joseph's master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20) — Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might prefer the pronoun.

Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Pronouns — When to Use Them](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:1](#); [8:2](#); [9:14](#); [9:18](#))

# Irony

## Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."  
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

## Examples From the Bible

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshipping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!"** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They



emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

## Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

(2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

**You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:2](#); [6:16](#); [8:12](#); [9:12](#); [11:25](#); [26:68](#); [Notes](#); [27:29](#); [27:42](#))

# Kinship

## Description

This page answers the question: *What are kinship terms and how can I translate them?*

Kinship terms refer to those words used to describe people related to one another in familial relationships. These terms vary widely in their specificity from language to language. They range from the (Western) nuclear or immediate family (father-son, husband-wife) out to broad clan relationships in other cultures.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Depending on the language translators may need to use specific terms to designate the accurate kinship relationship. In some languages a different term may be used based on siblings' birth order. In others, the side of the family (father's or mother's), age, marital status, etc. may determine the term used. Different terms may be used based on the gender of the speaker and/or addressee. Translators may need to make sure they know the exact relationship between two related people in the Bible to find the correct term. Sometimes these terms are difficult even for native speakers to remember and translators may need to seek community help in finding the correct term. Another complicating issue is that the Bible may not give enough information about the relationship for translators to determine the correct term in the language being translated into. In this case, translators will have to use a more general term or simply pick a satisfactory term based on the limited information available.

Sometimes terms that seem like kinship terms are used for people who are not necessarily related. For instance, an older person may refer to a younger man or woman as "my son" or "my daughter."

## Examples from the Bible

Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Where is Abel **your brother?**" He said, "I do not know. Am I **my brother's** keeper?" (Genesis 4:9 ULT)

Abel was Cain's younger brother.

Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock and said to them, "I see **your father's** attitude toward me has changed, but the God of my father has been with me." (Genesis 31:4-5 ULT)

Jacob is referring here to his father-in-law. In some languages there may be a specific term for a man's father-in-law, however, in this case it is better to retain the form **your father** as Jacob may be using it to distance himself from Laban.

And Moses was shepherding the flock of Jethro **his father-in-law**, the priest of Midian. (Exodus 3:1a ULT)

Unlike the previous instance, if your language has a term for a man's father-in-law this is a good place to use it.

And **his sister** stationed herself at a distance to know what would be done to him. (Exodus 2:4 ULT)

From context we know that this was Miriam, Moses's older sister. In some languages this may require a specific term. In others, the term for older sister may be only used when the younger sibling is addressing and/or referring to his or her sister.

Then she and **her daughters-in-law** arose to return from the fields of Moab (Ruth 1:6a ULT)

Ruth & Orpah are Naomi's daughters-in-law.

Then she said, “Look, your sister-in-law has turned back to her people and to her gods.” (Ruth 1:15 ULT)

Orpah had been the wife of Ruth’s husband’s brother. This may be a different term in your language than if she had been Ruth’s husband’s sister.

Then Boaz said to Ruth, “Will you not listen to me, **my daughter?**” (Ruth 2:8a ULT)

Boaz is not Ruth’s father; he is simply using the term to address a younger woman.

And behold, **your relative** Elizabeth—she also has conceived a son in her old age, and this is the sixth month for her who was called barren. (Luke 1:36 ULT)

While the KJV translated this as **cousin**, the term simply means a related woman.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Find out the exact relationship specified and translate using the term your language uses.
- (2) If the text does not specify the relationship as clearly as your language would, either:
  - (a) settle on a more general term.
  - (b) use a specific term if required by your language, choosing the one that is most likely to be correct.

## Translation Strategies Applied

This is not an issue in English, so the following illustrations draw on other languages.

In Korean, there are several terms for brother and sister; the use of them depends on the speaker’s (or referent’s) sex and birth order. Examples are from the Korean Living Bible, found on [biblegateway.com](http://biblegateway.com)

Genesis 30:1 Rachel is jealous of her “eonni,” which is the term a woman uses for her older sister.

Genesis 34:31 Simeon and Levi refer to Dinah as “nui,” a general term for sister.

Genesis 37:16 Joseph refers to his brothers as “hyeong,” which is the term a man uses for his older brother(s).

Genesis 45:12 Joseph refers to Benjamin as “dongsaeng,” which roughly means sibling, usually younger.

In Russian, in-law terms are complex. For instance, “nevěstka” is the term for a brother’s (or brother-in-law’s) wife; a woman uses the same term for her daughter-in-law but her husband would call the same daughter-in-law “snoxá.” Examples from the Russian Synodal Version.

Genesis 38:25 Tamar sends a message to her father-in-law, Judah. The term used is “svekor.” This is used for a woman’s husband’s father.

Exodus 3:1 Moses is watching his father-in-law’s herd. The term used is “test’.” This is used for a man’s wife’s father.

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:16](#); [5:22](#); [5:45](#); [7:3](#); [9:22](#); [9:27](#))

# Litany

## Description

A litany is a figure of speech in which the various components of a thing are listed in a series of very similar statements. The speaker does this to indicate that what he is saying should be understood as comprehensive and without exceptions.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called litany?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use litanies, and readers could be confused by them. They may wonder why the speaker seems to be saying the same thing over and over again.

## Examples From the Bible

Though they dig into Sheol, there my hand will take them. Though they climb up to heaven, there I will bring them down. Though they hide on the top of Carmel, there I will search and take them. Though they are hidden from my sight in the bottom of the sea, there will I give orders to the serpent, and it will bite them. Though they go into captivity, driven by their enemies before them, there will I give orders to the sword, and it will kill them. (Amos 9:2-4 ULT)

In this passage Yahweh is telling the people of Israel that when he punishes them, none of them will escape.

But you should not have looked on the day of your brother, on the day of his misfortune. And you should not have rejoiced over the sons of Judah in the day of their perishing. And you should not have made your mouth great in a day of distress. You should not have entered the gate of my people in the day of their calamity. Yes, you! You should not have looked on his evil in the day of his calamity. And you women should not have looted his wealth in the day of his calamity. And you should not have stood at the crossroads to cut down his fugitives. And you should not have delivered up his survivors in a day of distress. (Obadiah 1:12-14)

In this passage Yahweh is telling the people of Edom that they should have helped the people of Judah when they were conquered by the Babylonians.

## Translation Strategies

If the litany is understood as it is in the ULT, then translate the litany as it is. If it is not understood, then try one or more of the following strategies.

- (1) Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany.
- (2) You can put each sentence of the litany on a separate line. Also, if each sentence in the litany has two parts, you can format the litany so that the equivalent parts of each sentence line up. Use this or any other type of formatting that will show that each sentence is reinforcing the same meaning.
- (3) You can eliminate words like “and,” “but,” and “or” at the beginning of sentences so that it will be clearer that the component parts of the litany are all being listed in a row.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) combined with (3):

Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany;

You can eliminate words like “and,” “but,” and “or” at the beginning of sentences so that it will be clearer that the component parts of the litany are all being listed in a row.

You did nothing to help the Israelites when strangers carried away their wealth. They conquered all the cities of Judah, and they even plundered Jerusalem. And you were just as bad as those foreigners, because you did nothing to help:

You should not have looked on the day of your brother, on the day of his misfortune. You should not have rejoiced over the sons of Judah in the day of their perishing. You should not have made your mouth great in a day of distress. You should not have entered the gate of my people in the day of their calamity. Yes, you! You should not have looked on his evil in the day of his calamity. You women should not have looted his wealth in the day of his calamity. You should not have stood at the crossroads to cut down his fugitives. You should not have delivered up his survivors in a day of distress. (Obadiah 1:11-14)

In the above example, verse 11 provides the summary and meaning for the litany that follows in verses 12-14.

(1) combined with (2):

Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany;

You can put each sentence of the litany on a separate line. Also, if each sentence in the litany has two parts, you can format the litany so that the equivalent parts of each sentence line up. Use this or any other type of formatting that will show that each sentence is reinforcing the same meaning.

Not one of them will get away, not one of them will escape:

Though they dig into Sheol,	there my hand will take them.
Though they climb up to heaven,	there I will bring them down.
Though they hide on the top of Carmel,	there I will search and take them.
Though they are hidden from my sight in the bottom of the sea,	there will I give orders to the serpent, and it will bite them.
Though they go into captivity, driven by their enemies before them,	there will I give orders to the sword, and it will kill them.

(Amos 9:1b-4 ULT)

In the above example, the sentence before the litany explains its overall meaning. That sentence can be placed as an introduction. The second half of each sentence can be formatted in a descending staircase pattern as above, or

lined up evenly like the first half of each sentence, or in another way. Use whatever format best shows that these sentences are all communicating the same truth, that it is not possible to escape from God.

**(Go back to: [Matthew 10:8; 11:5](#))**

# Litotes

## Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a [double negative](#) is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

## Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)



“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good.**”

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

“Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

or:

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:6; 11:11](#))

## Merism

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am **the alpha and the omega**,” says the Lord God,  
“the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.  
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

**Alpha and omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples From the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

**In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:2](#); [4:23](#); [8:11](#); [11:25](#); [12:40](#); [23:15](#); [23:35](#); [28:18](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

## Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him.**

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad.** (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a pointed stick.**

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay.** You are our **potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood.** You are our **carver;** and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string.** You are the **weaver;** and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)



Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

**(Go back to:** [Matthew 1:1](#); [1:20](#); [1:23](#); [2:6](#); [3:3](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [4:4](#); [4:16](#); [4:19](#); [5:6](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#); [5:16](#); [5:29](#); [5:30](#); [5:34](#); [5:35](#); [5:36](#); [6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:12](#); [6:20](#); [6:21](#); [6:22](#); [6:27](#); [6:29](#); [6:30](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:6](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [7:19](#); [7:20](#); [8:11](#); [8:22](#); [10:6](#); [10:25](#); [10:28](#); [10:39](#); [10:40](#); [10:42](#); [11:7](#); [11:10](#); [11:25](#); [11:28](#); [12:20](#); [12:25](#); [12:27](#); [12:30](#); [12:33](#); [12:34](#); [12:35](#); [12:39](#); [12:44](#); [12:49](#); [12:50](#); [13:13](#); [13:15](#); [13:19](#); [13:20](#); [13:21](#); [13:22](#); [13:23](#); [13:42](#); [13:50](#); [Notes](#); [15:13](#); [15:14](#); [15:24](#); [15:27](#); [Notes](#); [16:4](#); [16:6](#); [16:11](#); [16:18](#); [16:19](#); [16:23](#); [16:24](#); [16:25](#); [18:7](#); [18:9](#); [18:18](#); [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [19:8](#); [19:12](#); [19:21](#); [20:28](#); [20:33](#); [21:13](#); [21:29](#); [21:42](#); [21:43](#); [21:44](#); [23:4](#); [23:13](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:19](#); [23:24](#); [23:25](#); [23:26](#); [23:32](#); [23:33](#); [23:37](#); [24:4](#); [24:5](#); [24:8](#); [24:11](#); [24:24](#); [24:33](#); [24:43](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#); [25:33](#); [26:31](#); [26:39](#); [26:42](#); [27:26](#))

# Metonymy

## Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment?**”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:3](#); [2:6](#); [2:11](#); [2:18](#); [3:2](#); [3:5](#); [4:17](#); [4:23](#); [5:3](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#); [5:16](#); [5:17](#); [5:19](#); [5:28](#); [5:30](#); [5:45](#); [6:1](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:33](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [7:21](#); [7:22](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [8:16](#); [8:34](#); [9:4](#); [9:10](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:9](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#); [10:15](#); [10:19](#); [10:22](#); [10:27](#); [10:32](#); [10:33](#); [10:34](#); [10:38](#); [11:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:15](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [11:22](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#); [11:29](#); [12:19](#); [12:25](#); [12:26](#); [12:28](#); [12:32](#); [12:34](#); [12:36](#); [12:41](#); [12:42](#); [13:9](#); [13:11](#); [13:15](#); [13:19](#); [13:20](#); [13:24](#); [13:27](#); [13:31](#); [13:33](#); [13:38](#); [13:43](#); [13:44](#); [13:47](#); [13:52](#); [14:3](#); [15:8](#); [15:11](#); [15:18](#); [15:23](#); [16:18](#); [16:19](#); [16:24](#); [16:28](#); [17:5](#); [17:22](#); [18:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:7](#); [18:16](#); [18:18](#); [18:20](#); [18:35](#); [19:1](#); [19:8](#); [19:12](#); [19:14](#); [19:23](#); [19:28](#); [19:29](#); [20:21](#); [20:23](#); [21:9](#); [21:10](#); [21:16](#); [21:25](#); [21:31](#); [21:42](#); [21:43](#); [22:13](#); [22:37](#); [22:40](#); [22:46](#); [23:2](#); [23:13](#); [23:30](#); [23:35](#); [23:37](#); [23:38](#); [23:39](#); [24:5](#); [24:7](#); [24:9](#); [24:14](#); [24:30](#); [24:35](#); [24:36](#); [24:48](#); [25:1](#); [25:13](#); [25:30](#); [25:32](#); [25:34](#); [26:27](#); [26:29](#); [26:34](#); [26:39](#); [26:41](#); [26:45](#); [26:52](#); [26:64](#); [27:9](#); [27:24](#); [27:25](#); [28:19](#))

## Nominal Adjectives

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

**He will not be rich;** his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

**The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:3](#); [5:5](#); [5:39](#); [11:5](#); [11:25](#); [12:7](#); [13:49](#); [15:31](#); [19:21](#); [21:14](#); [22:32](#); [23:29](#); [25:8](#); [25:37](#); [25:46](#); [26:9](#); [26:11](#))

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

▮ Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

▮ That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples From the Bible

▮ When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

▮ Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.  
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:2](#); [14:21](#); [15:38](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [18:22](#); [18:24](#); [26:53](#))



## Order of Events

### Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

This page answers the question: *Why are some events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

### Examples From the Bible

He even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, and the ark of the covenant of Yahweh followed after them. But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

### Translation Strategies

(1) If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

20 he even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

20 But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. 21 **Before John was put in prison**, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets 10 But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8,10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_events](https://ufw.io/figs_events).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-versebridge]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:5](#); [14:1](#); [14:3](#); [27:3](#))

# Ordinal Numbers

## Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

## Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

## Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)

**(Go back to: [Matthew 10:2](#); [16:21](#); [17:23](#); [20:3](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#); [20:19](#); [22:25](#); [22:26](#); [26:42](#); [26:44](#); [27:64](#))**

## Parables

A parable is a short story that teaches something(s) that is true, and delivers the lesson in a way that is easy to understand and hard to forget.

### Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach something(s) that is true. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach the lesson(s) that the listener is meant to learn. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often use figures of speech such as [simile](#) and [metaphor](#).

This page answers the question: *What is a parable?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Then he also told them a parable. "A blind man is not able to guide a blind man, is he? Would not both fall into a pit?" (Luke 6:39 ULT)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

### Examples From the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket but, rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULT)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

>

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

### Translation Strategies

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the lesson the same.

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the lesson the same.

Jesus also said to them, "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the **lampstand**?" (Mark 4:21 ULT)

If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.

Jesus also said to them, “The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on **a high shelf?**”

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **sowed** in his field. It is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **planted** in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

**Jesus also said to them**, “The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the lampstand?” (Mark 4:21 ULT)

**Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly.** Jesus also said to them, “The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the lampstand?” (Mark 4:21 ULT)

**Then Jesus presented another parable to them.** He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. It is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

**Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the kingdom of God grows.** He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:17](#); [12:29](#); [12:45](#); [13:24](#); [13:31](#); [13:33](#); [13:44](#); [13:47](#); [13:52](#); [18:23](#); [20:1](#); [21:28](#); [21:33](#); [22:1](#); [24:43](#); [25:1](#); [25:14](#))

# Parallelism

## Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

## Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]



Yahweh sees everything a person does  
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;  
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,  
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.  
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.  
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:3](#); [4:16](#); [5:30](#); [6:24](#); [7:7](#); [8:17](#); [10:26](#); [10:27](#); [11:30](#); [12:20](#); [12:25](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [13:16](#); [13:34](#); [21:44](#); [24:7](#); [24:31](#); [24:50](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#))

## Personification

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

**Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

**Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Apostrophe](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:7](#); [3:17](#); [4:24](#); [6:24](#); [6:28](#); [6:34](#); [8:15](#); [8:27](#); [9:15](#); [9:22](#); [9:26](#); [13:22](#))

## Possession

### Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “of,” by using **an apostrophe and the letter “s”**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather **'s** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.
  - The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own
- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
  - The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John
  - A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel
- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
  - The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
  - the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord
- Contents — Something has something in it.
  - a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
  - my head — the head that is part of my body
  - the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession**. This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

### Examples From the Bible

**Ownership** — In the example below, the son owned the money.

▮ The younger son ... wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that show it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

**Social Relationship** — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

**Association** — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

**Material** — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

**Contents** — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

**Part of a whole** — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace**. (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

**Part of a group** — In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

## Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

**Subject** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

**Object** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

**Instrument** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

**Representation** — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

## Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

- (1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
- (2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
- (3) See what the notes say about it.

## Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

“On their heads were **gold crowns**”

- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink ... will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath**. (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.

or:

Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, “punishment of Yahweh” and “your God.”)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God**. (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.

You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.

You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)

|| You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you.**

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:38](#))



## Predictive Past

### Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

### Examples From the Bible

Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given; and the rule will be on his shoulder. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, "Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones." (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

### Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.
- (2) If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
- (3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am about to deliver** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am delivering** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:37](#))

## Pronouns

### Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are "I," "you," "he," "it," "this," "that," "himself," "someone," and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns, and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

### Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

#### Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
  - [Exclusive and Inclusive "We"](#)
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

#### Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
  - [Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups](#)
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

#### Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

#### Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

## Other Types of pronouns

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word “himself” refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:4](#))

## Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

This page answers the question: *How do I decide whether or not to use a pronoun?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** ... (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase “this man.” Then he is referred to with the pronoun “him.”

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

### Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom “he” in the second sentence refers to.

Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
- (2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)

Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

- (2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **he** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:15](#); [11:17](#))

## Proverbs

### Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer general advice to a person about how to live his life.

Hatred stirs up conflicts, but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise. It has no commander, officer, or ruler, yet it prepares its food in the summer, and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Metaphor](#)

[Parallelism](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

### Examples From the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,  
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,  
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

### Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

- (1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
- (2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them

with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches,  
and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.

Wise people choose a good name over great riches,  
and favor over silver and gold.

Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.

Will riches really help you?

I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like **snow in summer** or rain in harvest,  
so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

It is not natural for **a cold wind to blow in the hot season** or for it to rain  
in the harvest season;

And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow,  
for you do not know what a day may bring. (Proverbs 27:1a ULT)

Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

There is a generation that curses their father  
and does not bless their mother.

There is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,



and yet they are not washed of their filth. (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous,  
and they do not turn away from their sin.

**(Go back to: [Matthew 8:20](#); [Notes](#); [9:12](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:17](#); [9:37](#); [10:10](#); [10:24](#); [10:26](#); [10:29](#); [10:39](#); [10:41](#); [11:19](#); [12:25](#); [12:33](#); [15:26](#); [24:28](#))**

## Quotations and Quote Margins

### Description

This page answers the question: *What are quote margins and where should I put them?*

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, “The food is ready. Come and eat.”
- “The food is ready. Come and eat,” **she said**.
- “The food is ready,” **she said**. “Come and eat.”

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning “said.”

But his mother **answered** and **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (“ ”). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning “said.”
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Quote margin before the quote

**Then Zechariah said to the angel**, “How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days.” (Luke 1:18 ULT)

Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, “Teacher, what should we do?” (Luke 3:12 ULT)

So **he said to them**, “Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered.” (Luke 3:13 ULT)

#### Quote margin after the quote

Yahweh relented concerning this. “It will not happen,” **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

#### Quote margin between two parts of the quote

“I will hide my face from them,” **he said**, “and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful.” (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh’s declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Decide where to put the quote margin.
- (2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

**He said**, “Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.

“Therefore, those who can,” **he said**, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

- (2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

But his mother **answered and said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

But his mother **replied**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”

But his mother **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”

But his mother **answered** like this. “No. Rather, he will be called John,” she **said**.

Next we recommend you learn about:  
[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:22; 2:5; 2:15; 3:3; 4:4; 4:6; 8:17; 26:61; 28:13](#))

## Quotes within Quotes

### Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are “layers” of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word “I,” the listener needs to know whether “I” refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.

Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

### Examples From the Bible

#### A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, “I, however, was indeed born a citizen.” (Acts 22:28b ULT)

#### Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, “Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will lead many astray.” (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

#### A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, “... I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, “**He is my brother.**”’” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

## A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: **'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"**" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

## Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, "There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar.**" (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king. He said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept in custody for the emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.'**"

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, 'During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'" (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:3](#); [15:6](#); [21:25](#); [21:26](#); [22:24](#); [26:18](#); [27:43](#); [27:63](#); [27:64](#); [28:7](#))

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)



Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed ...

**Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

**Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

**And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

**Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:7](#); [3:14](#); [5:13](#); [5:46](#); [5:47](#); [6:25](#); [6:26](#); [6:27](#); [6:28](#); [6:30](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:16](#); [7:22](#); [8:26](#); [8:27](#); [8:29](#); [Notes](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [10:29](#); [11:7](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [11:16](#); [11:23](#); [12:3](#); [12:5](#); [12:11](#); [12:26](#); [12:27](#); [12:29](#); [12:34](#); [12:48](#); [13:27](#); [13:54](#); [13:55](#); [13:56](#); [14:31](#); [15:2](#); [15:3](#); [15:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:33](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:26](#); [17:17](#); [17:25](#); [18:12](#); [18:33](#); [19:4](#); [19:5](#); [19:17](#); [19:25](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:20](#); [21:25](#); [21:28](#); [21:42](#); [22:12](#); [22:18](#); [22:20](#); [22:31](#); [22:32](#); [22:43](#); [22:45](#); [23:17](#); [23:19](#); [23:33](#); [24:2](#); [24:45](#); [26:8](#); [26:10](#); [26:22](#); [26:25](#); [26:40](#); [26:45](#); [26:53](#); [26:54](#); [26:55](#); [26:65](#); [27:4](#); [27:13](#))

## Simile

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

### Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Metaphor*

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:16](#); [7:24](#); [7:26](#); [9:36](#); [10:16](#); [13:24](#); [13:33](#); [13:43](#); [13:47](#); [17:2](#); [17:20](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [19:14](#); [23:27](#); [23:37](#); [24:27](#); [25:32](#); [28:3](#); [28:4](#))

## Symbolic Action

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:9](#); [8:12](#); [9:18](#); [9:23](#); [10:14](#); [13:42](#); [13:50](#); [15:25](#); [18:26](#); [18:29](#); [21:8](#); [22:13](#); [22:44](#); [24:51](#); [25:30](#); [26:64](#); [26:65](#); [27:24](#); [27:39](#))

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bit-part2]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:3](#); [4:15](#); [5:29](#); [6:11](#); [7:9](#); [8:8](#); [9:26](#); [11:16](#); [11:29](#); [12:18](#); [12:21](#); [12:34](#); [13:16](#); [15:26](#); [16:17](#); [24:22](#); [24:35](#); [26:38](#); [26:41](#))



## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

### Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] <sup>[2]</sup>

[2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” <sup>16</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” <sup>16</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. <sup>16</sup> If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 6:13](#); [19:9](#))

## Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 2 General Notes](#); [2:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:12](#); [4:18](#); [4:24](#); [5:25](#); [5:35](#); [5:40](#); [6:6](#); [6:19](#); [6:28](#); [7:6](#); [8:6](#); [8:14](#); [9:2](#); [9:32](#); [9:37](#); [10:4](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [10:17](#); [10:29](#); [11:16](#); [11:19](#); [12:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:31](#); [13:45](#); [23:23](#); [23:37](#); [26:7](#))

## Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

### Biblical Witness

**“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.**

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and ... a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus ... said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth ... no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son.**” (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

**I love** the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)

**No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son.** (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, ... glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you ... I glorified you on the earth ... Now Father, glorify me ... with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made.**” (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)

But in these last days, {God the Father} has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory and **the very exact representation of his being.** He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father?’” (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod\]\]](#)

## Human Relationships

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.**

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

## Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."

(2) If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).

(3) If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father and Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

**(Go back to: [Matthew 3:17](#); [4:3](#); [4:6](#); [5:45](#); [5:48](#); [6:1](#); [6:6](#); [6:8](#); [6:14](#); [6:18](#); [6:26](#); [6:32](#); [7:11](#); [7:21](#); [8:29](#); [10:20](#); [10:23](#); [10:29](#); [10:32](#); [11:19](#); [11:25](#); [11:27](#); [12:50](#); [13:43](#); [14:33](#); [15:13](#); [16:16](#); [16:17](#); [16:27](#); [18:10](#); [18:14](#); [18:19](#); [18:35](#); [20:23](#); [23:9](#); [24:36](#); [25:34](#); [26:29](#); [26:39](#); [26:42](#); [26:53](#); [26:63](#); [27:40](#); [27:43](#); [27:54](#); [28:19](#))**

## When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men,” “brothers,” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[Generic Noun Phrases](#)

### Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says “brothers” when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

A wise son makes **his** father rejoice  
but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

### Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

### Examples From the Bible

Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

**Caution:** Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If **someone** dies, not having children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **his brother**.’ (Matthew 22:24 ULT)



## Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

- (1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
- (2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
- (3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)

“The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”  
 “Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

- (2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia.”

- (3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

“If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.”  
 (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

>

“If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:1](#); [6:5](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [10:32](#); [10:33](#); [25:40](#))

## When to Keep Information Implicit

### Description

Sometimes it is better not to state assumed knowledge or implicit information explicitly. This page gives some direction about when not to do this.

This page answers the question: *When should I not make implicit information explicit?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

### Translation Principles

- If a speaker or author intentionally left something unclear, do not try to make it more clear.
- If the original audience did not understand what the speaker meant, do not make it so clear that your readers would find it strange that the original audience did not understand.
- If you need to explicitly state some assumed knowledge or implicit information, try to do it in a way that does not make your readers think that the original audience needed to be told those things.
- Do not make implicit information explicit if it confuses the message or leads the reader to forget what the main point is.
- Do not make assumed knowledge or implicit information explicit if your readers already understand it.

### Examples From the Bible

From the eater came forth food;  
and from the strong one came forth sweetness. (Judges 14:14 ULT)

This was a riddle. Samson purposely said this in a way that it would be hard for his enemies to know what it meant. Do not make it clear that the eater and the strong thing was a lion and that the sweet thing to eat was honey.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." They reasoned among themselves saying, "It is because we did not take bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Some possible implicit information here is that the disciples should beware of the false teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. But Jesus' disciples did not understand this. They thought that Jesus was talking about real yeast and bread. So it would not be appropriate to state explicitly that the word "yeast" here refers to false teaching. The disciples did not understand what Jesus meant until they heard what Jesus said in Matthew 16:11.

"How is it that you do not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread? Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." Then they understood that he was not telling them to beware of yeast in bread, but to beware of the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. (Matthew 16:11-12 ULT)

Only after Jesus explained that he was not talking about bread did they realize that he was talking about the false teaching of the Pharisees. Therefore, it would be wrong to explicitly state the implicit information in Matthew 16:6.

### Translation Strategies

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies.

## **Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies applied.

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:20; 11:2](#))



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 36**

# Abel

## Facts:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

- Abel was a shepherd.
- Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
- God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
- Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cain, [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 4:2
- Genesis 4:9
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 23:35

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1893, G00060

(Go back to: [Matthew 23:35](#))

# Abijah

## Facts:

Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:3
- 1 Samuel 8:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:2
- 2 Chronicles 13:19
- Luke 1:5

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0029, G00070

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:7](#))

## abomination, abominable

### Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: [adultery](#), desecrate, [desolate](#), false god, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezra 9:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 1:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:15](#))

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Chaldea, Sarah, [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:17](#); [3:9](#); [8:11](#); [22:32](#))



## accuse, accused, accuser, accusation

### Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 4:4
- Jeremiah 2:9-11
- Luke 6:6-8
- Romans 8:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3198, H6818, G14580, G21470, G25960, G27240

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:25](#); [12:10](#); [27:12](#))

## adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

### Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), [sexual immorality](#), [sleep with](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 4:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 5:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 2:22

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:6** “Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **28:2** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:7** “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5003, H5004, G34280, G34290, G34300, G34310, G34320

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:27](#); [5:28](#); [5:32](#); [12:39](#); [15:19](#); [16:4](#); [19:9](#); [19:18](#))

## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:43](#); [5:44](#); [10:36](#); [13:25](#); [13:28](#); [13:39](#); [22:44](#))

## advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

### Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:14](#); [22:15](#); [27:1](#); [27:7](#); [28:12](#))

## age, aged

### Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 2:7
- Hebrews 6:5
- Job 5:26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G01650, G10740

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:32](#); [13:22](#); [13:39](#); [13:40](#); [13:49](#); [21:19](#); [24:3](#); [28:20](#))

# Ahaz

## Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshiping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 28:1
- 2 Kings 16:20
- Hosea 1:1
- Isaiah 1:1
- Isaiah 7:4
- Matthew 1:9-11

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0271

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:9](#))

## alms

### Definition:

The term “alms” refers to money, food, or other things that are given to help poor people.

- Often the giving of alms was seen by people as something that their religion required them to do in order to be righteous.
- Jesus said that giving alms should not be done publicly for the purpose of getting other people to notice.
- This term could be translated as “money” or “gifts to poor people” or “help for the poor.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:1-3
- Matthew 6:1
- Matthew 6:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G16540

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#))

## altar

### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:23](#); [5:24](#); [23:18](#); [23:19](#); [23:20](#); [23:35](#))



## **amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded**

### **Definition:**

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 8:9-11
- Acts 9:20-22
- Galatians 1:6
- Mark 2:10-12
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G06390, G15680, G15690, G16050, G16110, G18390, G22840, G22850, G22960, G22970, G22980, G40230, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:28](#); [8:10](#); [8:27](#); [9:33](#); [12:23](#); [13:54](#); [15:31](#); [19:25](#); [21:20](#); [21:42](#); [22:22](#); [22:33](#); [24:24](#); [27:14](#))

## amen, truly

### Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0543, G02810

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:18; 5:26; 6:2; 6:5; 6:16; 8:10; 10:15; 10:23; 10:42; 11:11; 13:17; 16:28; 17:20; 18:3; 18:13; 18:18; 18:19; 19:23; 19:28; 21:21; 21:31; 23:36; 24:2; 24:34; 24:47; 25:12; 25:40; 25:45; 26:13; 26:21; 26:34](#))

## ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:5](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [2:22](#); [3:9](#); [4:21](#); [4:22](#); [8:21](#); [10:21](#); [10:35](#); [10:37](#); [15:4](#); [15:5](#); [15:6](#); [19:5](#); [19:19](#); [19:29](#); [21:31](#); [23:9](#); [23:30](#); [23:32](#))

## Andrew

### Facts:

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

- Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
- Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
- Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:12-14
- John 1:40
- Mark 1:17
- Mark 1:29-31
- Mark 3:17-19
- Matthew 4:19
- Matthew 10:2-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G04060

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:18](#); [10:2](#))

## angel, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:20](#); [1:24](#); [2:13](#); [2:19](#); [4:6](#); [4:11](#); [13:39](#); [13:41](#); [13:49](#); [16:27](#); [18:10](#); [22:30](#); [24:31](#); [24:36](#); [25:31](#); [25:41](#); [26:53](#); [28:2](#); [28:5](#))

## anoint, anointed, anointing

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God. (This and the other uses are symbolic actions, see [Symbolic Action](#).)
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:17](#))



## apostle, apostleship

### Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G06510, G06520, G24910, G53760, G55700

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:2](#))

## appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:9](#); [21:6](#); [24:45](#); [24:47](#); [24:51](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#))

# ark

## Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, [basket](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:6
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H8392, G27870

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:38](#))

## Asa

### Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913 B.C. to 873 B.c.

- King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
- Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
- Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease that eventually killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:14-16
- 1 Kings 15:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 14:3
- Jeremiah 41:9
- Matthew 1:7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0609

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:7](#); [1:8](#))

## ash, ashes

### Facts:

The term “ash” (or “ashes”) refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned.

- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving. When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or put ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- An “ash heap” is a pile of ashes.
- Sometimes the word “dust” is used with the term “ashes” in the phrase, “dust and ashes.” This phrase can be translated as “dust and ashes” or simply as “ashes.”
- When translating “ashes,” use the word in the target language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.

(See also: [fire](#), [sackcloth](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:10
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Psalms 102:9
- Psalms 113:7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0080, H0665, H1854, H6083, H6368, H7834, G28680, G47000, G50770, G55220

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:21](#))

## asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless

### Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: Metaphor)
- The expression “fall asleep” means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To “sleep with one’s fathers” means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “fall asleep” could be translated as to “suddenly become asleep” or to “start sleeping” or to “die,” depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions “sleep” and “asleep” do not make sense.

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 4:14
- Acts 7:60
- Daniel 12:2
- Psalms 44:23
- Romans 13:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G08790, G18520, G18530, G25180, G28370, G52580

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:24](#); [8:24](#); [9:24](#); [13:25](#); [25:5](#); [26:40](#); [26:43](#); [26:45](#); [27:52](#); [28:13](#))

## assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

### Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

### New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: [council](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:4](#); [13:2](#); [22:10](#); [22:34](#); [22:41](#); [24:31](#); [25:32](#); [26:3](#); [26:57](#); [27:17](#); [27:27](#); [27:62](#); [28:12](#))

## astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray

### Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See also: disobey, [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:7
- 2 Timothy 3:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:5
- Psalms 58:3
- Psalms 119:110

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G41050, G53510

(Go back to: [Matthew 18:12](#); [18:13](#); [22:29](#); [24:4](#); [24:5](#); [24:11](#); [24:24](#))



## authority

### Definition:

The term “authority” usually refers to a position of influence, responsibility, or rule over another person.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: dominion, [king](#), [ruler](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 2:10
- Esther 9:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 3:6-7
- Luke 12:5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 1:22
- Matthew 8:9
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 3:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G08310, G14130, G18490, G18500, G20030, G27150, G52470

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:29](#); [Notes](#); [8:9](#); [9:6](#); [9:8](#); [10:1](#); [20:25](#); [21:23](#); [21:24](#); [21:27](#); [28:18](#))

## ax

### Definition:

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

- An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
- If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate “ax.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include “tree-cutting tool” or “wooden tool with blade” or “long-handled wood-chopping tool.”
- In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:7-8
- 2 Kings 6:5
- Judges 9:48-49
- Luke 3:9
- Matthew 3:10
- Psalm 35:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1631, H4621, H7134, G05130

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:10](#))

## Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

### Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:17](#))

## baptize, baptized, baptism

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:38
- Acts 8:36
- Acts 9:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:3** When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:7** John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?”
- **46:5** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G09070

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:11](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [3:16](#); [21:25](#); [28:19](#))

## Barabbas

### Facts:

Barabbas was a prisoner in Jerusalem at the time when Jesus was arrested.

- Barabbas was a criminal who had committed crimes of murder and rebellion against the Roman government.
- When Pontius Pilate offered to either release Barabbas or Jesus, the people chose Barabbas.
- So Pilate allowed Barabbas to go free, but condemned Jesus to be killed.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Pilate](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- John 18:40
- Luke 23:19
- Mark 15:7
- Matthew 27:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09120

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:16](#); [27:17](#); [27:20](#); [27:21](#); [27:26](#))

## Bartholomew

### Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus' name.
- He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
- A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [good news](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#), [Pentecost](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:12-14
- Luke 6:14-16
- Mark 3:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09180

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:3](#))

## **basket, basketfuls**

### **Definition:**

The term “basket” refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as “basket” in that story is the same word that is translated as “ark” referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be “floating container.”

(See also: [ark](#), [Moses](#), Nile River, [Noah](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 11:33
- Acts 9:25
- Amos 8:1
- John 6:13-15
- Judges 6:19-20
- Matthew 14:20

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H7991, G28940, G34260, G45530, G47110

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:15](#); [14:20](#); [15:37](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#))



## bear, bearer, carry

### Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [burden](#), [Elisha](#), [endure](#), [fruit](#), [iniquity](#), [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Lamentations 3:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G01420, G04300, G09410, G10800, G16270, G25920, G31400, G41600, G47220, G48280, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090, G55760

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:21](#); [1:23](#); [3:11](#); [4:6](#); [8:17](#); [17:17](#); [20:12](#))

## Beelzebul

### Facts:

Beelzebul is another name for Satan, or the devil. It is also sometimes spelled, "Beelzebub."

- This name literally means "lord of flies" which means "ruler over demons." But it is best to translate this term close to the original spelling rather than translate the meaning.
- It could also be translated as "Beelzebul the devil" to make it clear who is being referred to.
- This name is related to the name of the false god "Baal-zebub" of Ekron.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), Ekron, [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 11:15
- Mark 3:22
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 12:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09540

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:25](#); [12:24](#); [12:27](#))

## beg, beggar, needy

### Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: plead)

### Bible References:

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 6:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 45:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:4** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **29:8** “The king called the servant and said, ‘You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.’”
- **32:7** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.
- **44:1** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0034, H7592, G01540, G18710, G43190, G44340

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:5](#); [8:31](#); [8:34](#); [9:38](#); [14:36](#); [18:29](#); [18:32](#))

## believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

#### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

#### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:13](#); [9:28](#); [13:58](#); [17:17](#); [18:6](#); [21:22](#); [21:25](#); [21:32](#); [24:23](#); [24:26](#); [27:42](#))

## beloved

### Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:14
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 John 4:7
- Mark 1:11
- Mark 12:6
- Revelation 20:9
- Romans 16:8
- Song of Songs 1:14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G00250, G00270, G52070

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:17](#); [12:18](#); [17:5](#))

## Bethany

### Facts:

The town of Bethany was located at the base of the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about 2 miles east of Jerusalem.

- Bethany was near the road that ran between Jerusalem and Jericho.
- Jesus often visited Bethany where his close friends Lazarus, Martha, and Mary lived.
- Bethany is especially known as the place where Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#), Lazarus, Martha, Mary (sister of Martha), [Mount of Olives](#))

### Bible References:

- John 1:26-28
- Luke 24:50-51
- Mark 11:1
- Matthew 21:15-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09630

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:17](#); [26:6](#))



## Bethlehem, Ephrathah

### Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: Caleb, [David](#), Micah)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16
- John 7:42
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 2:16
- Ruth 1:2
- Ruth 1:21

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **23:4** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- **23:6** “The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem!**”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0376, H0672, H1035, G09650

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [2:5](#); [2:6](#); [2:8](#); [2:16](#))

## betray, betrayer

### Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), Jewish leaders, [apostle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- John 6:64
- John 13:22
- Matthew 10:4
- Matthew 26:22

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:11** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:3** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **38:6** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” \* \* **38:6** Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **38:13** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **38:14** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **39:8** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7411, G38600, G42730

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:4](#); [24:10](#); [26:15](#); [26:16](#); [26:21](#); [26:23](#); [26:24](#); [26:25](#); [26:45](#); [26:46](#); [26:48](#); [27:3](#); [27:4](#))

## bind, bond, bound

### Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:29](#); [13:30](#); [14:3](#); [16:19](#); [18:18](#); [22:13](#); [23:4](#); [27:2](#))

## blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:12-14
- Acts 6:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 2:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 74:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G09870, G09880, G09890

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:3](#); [Notes](#); [12:31](#); [15:19](#); [26:65](#); [27:39](#))

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”

- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#); [5:11](#); [11:6](#); [13:16](#); [14:19](#); [16:17](#); [21:9](#); [23:39](#); [24:46](#); [25:34](#); [26:26](#))

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:17](#); [23:30](#); [23:35](#); [26:28](#); [27:4](#); [27:6](#); [27:8](#); [27:24](#); [27:25](#))



## Boaz

### Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who lived during the time when there were judges ruled Israel. He married a Moabite woman named Ruth and became both the great grandfather of King David and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

- He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
- Boaz “redeemed” Naomi’s widowed daughter-in-law Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Moab, redeem, [Ruth](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:12
- 2 Chronicles 3:17
- Luke 3:30-32
- Matthew 1:5
- Ruth 2:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1162

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:5](#))

## body

### Definition:

The term “body” refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or to a group consisting of individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [hand](#); [face](#); [loins](#); [righthand](#); [tongue](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- Ephesians 4:4
- Judges 14:8
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Psalm 31:9
- Romans 12:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G44300, G49540, G49830, G55590

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:29](#); [5:30](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [6:25](#); [10:28](#); [14:12](#); [26:12](#); [26:26](#); [27:52](#); [27:58](#); [27:59](#))

## born again, born of God, new birth

### Definition:

The term “born again” was first used by Jesus to describe what it means for God to change a person from being dead spiritually to being alive spiritually. The terms “born of God” and “born of the Spirit” also refer to a person being given new spiritual life.

- All humans are born spiritually dead and are given a “new birth” when they accept Jesus Christ as their Savior.
- At the moment of the spiritual new birth, God’s Holy Spirit begins to live in the new believer and empowers him to produce good spiritual fruit in his life.
- It is God’s work to cause a person to be born again and become his child.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “born again” could include “born anew” or “born spiritually.”
- It is best to translate this term literally and use the normal word in the language that would be used for being born.
- The term “new birth” might be translated as “spiritual birth.”
- The phrase “born of God” could be translated as “caused by God to have new life like a newborn baby” or “given new life by God.”
- In the same way, “born of the Spirit” could be translated as “given new life by the Holy Spirit” or “empowered by the Holy Spirit to become God’s child” or “caused by the Spirit to have new life like a newborn baby.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit, save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:9
- 1 Peter 1:3
- 1 Peter 1:23
- John 3:4
- John 3:7
- Titus 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G03130, G05090, G10800, G38240

(Go back to: [Matthew 19:28](#))

## bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#); [4:9](#); [9:18](#); [17:6](#); [18:26](#); [18:29](#); [20:20](#); [26:39](#); [27:29](#))

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [yeast](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:3](#); [4:4](#); [6:11](#); [7:9](#); [12:4](#); [14:17](#); [14:19](#); [15:2](#); [15:26](#); [15:33](#); [15:34](#); [15:36](#); [16:5](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [26:26](#))

## bridegroom

### Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the **man** who will marry the bride (the **woman**).

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: bride)

### Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 2:15-16
- John 3:30
- Luke 5:35
- Mark 2:19
- Mark 2:20
- Matthew 9:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G35660

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:15](#); [25:1](#); [25:5](#); [25:6](#); [25:10](#))

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:2](#); [1:11](#); [4:18](#); [4:21](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#); [5:24](#); [5:47](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [10:2](#); [10:21](#); [Notes](#); [12:46](#); [12:47](#); [12:48](#); [12:49](#); [12:50](#); [13:55](#); [14:3](#); [17:1](#); [18:15](#); [18:21](#); [18:35](#); [19:29](#); [20:24](#); [22:24](#); [22:25](#); [23:8](#); [25:40](#); [28:10](#))

## burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:28](#); [11:30](#); [20:12](#); [23:4](#))



## bury, buried, burial

### Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:21](#); [8:22](#); [14:12](#); [26:12](#); [27:7](#))

# Caesar

## Facts:

The term “Caesar” was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

- The first Roman ruler named Caesar was “Caesar Augustus,” who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
- About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
- Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
- When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title “Caesar.”
- When “Caesar” is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: “the Emperor” or “the Roman Ruler.”
- In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, “Caesar” can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#), Paul, Rome)

## Bible References:

- Acts 25:6
- Luke 2:1
- Luke 20:23-24
- Luke 23:2
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:17
- Philippians 4:22

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G25410

(Go back to: [Matthew 22:17](#); [22:21](#))

## Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi

### Facts:

Caesarea was an important city on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 39 km south of Mount Carmel. Caesarea Philippi was a city located in the northeastern part of Israel, near Mount Hermon.

- These cities were named for the Caesars who ruled the Roman empire.
- The coastal Caesarea became the capital city of the Roman province of Judea around the time of the birth of Jesus.
- The apostle Peter first preached to the Gentiles in Caesarea.
- Paul sailed from Caesarea to Tarsus and also passed through this city on two of his missionary journeys.
- Jesus and his disciples traveled in the region surrounding Caesarea Philippi in Syria. Both cities were named after Herod Philip.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Caesar](#), [Gentile](#), the sea, Carmel, Mount Hermon, Rome, Tarsus)

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:30
- Acts 10:1-2
- Acts 25:1
- Acts 25:14
- Mark 8:27
- Matthew 16:13-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G25420, G53760

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:13](#))

## Caiaphas

### Facts:

Caiaphas was the high priest of Israel during the time of John the Baptist and Jesus.

- Caiaphas played a major role in the trial and condemnation of Jesus.
- The high priests Annas and Caiaphas were at the trial of Peter and John when they were arrested after healing a crippled man.
- Caiaphas is the one who said that it was better for one man to die for the whole nation than for the whole nation to perish. God caused him to say this as a prophecy about how Jesus would die to save his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Annas, [high priest](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:5-7
- John 18:12
- Luke 3:2
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:57-58

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G25330

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:3](#); [26:57](#))

## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:16](#); [1:21](#); [1:23](#); [1:25](#); [2:7](#); [2:15](#); [2:23](#); [4:18](#); [4:21](#); [5:9](#); [5:19](#); [9:13](#); [10:1](#); [10:2](#); [10:25](#); [11:16](#); [13:55](#); [15:10](#); [15:32](#); [18:2](#); [18:32](#); [20:8](#); [20:25](#); [20:32](#); [21:13](#); [22:3](#); [22:14](#); [22:43](#); [22:45](#); [23:7](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [23:10](#); [25:14](#); [26:3](#); [26:14](#); [26:36](#); [27:8](#); [27:16](#); [27:17](#); [27:22](#); [27:33](#); [27:47](#))

## camel

### Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:21
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 3:4
- Matthew 19:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G25740

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:4](#); [19:24](#); [23:24](#))

## Canaan, Canaanite

### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:5** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **4:6** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **4:9** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **5:3** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:22](#))



## Capernaum

### Facts:

Capernaum was a fishing village on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

- Jesus lived in Capernaum whenever he was teaching in Galilee.
- Several of his disciples were from Capernaum.
- Jesus also did many miracles in this city, including bringing a dead girl back to life.
- Capernaum was one of three cities that Jesus publicly rebuked because their people rejected him and did not believe his message. He warned them that God would punish them for their unbelief.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Galilee](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

### Bible References:

- John 2:12
- Luke 4:31
- Luke 7:1
- Mark 1:21
- Mark 2:2
- Matthew 4:12-13
- Matthew 17:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G25840

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:13](#); [8:5](#); [11:23](#); [17:24](#))

## cast out, driving out, throw out

### Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”
- To “cast out” someone from a synagog or church could be translated as “banish them” or “put them out.”

(See also: [demon](#), [demon-possessed](#), [lots](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:17-19
- Mark 3:13-16
- Mark 9:29
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G15440

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:22](#); [8:12](#); [8:16](#); [8:31](#); [9:25](#); [9:33](#); [9:34](#); [10:1](#); [10:8](#); [12:24](#); [12:26](#); [12:27](#); [12:28](#); [15:17](#); [17:19](#); [21:12](#); [21:39](#); [22:13](#); [25:30](#))

## centurion

### Definition:

A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

- This could also be translated with a term that means “leader of a hundred men” or “army leader” or “officer in charge of a hundred.”
- One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
- The centurion in charge of Jesus’ crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
- God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 10:1
- Acts 27:1
- Acts 27:42-44
- Luke 7:4
- Luke 23:47
- Mark 15:39
- Matthew 8:7
- Matthew 27:54

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G15430, G27600

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:5](#); [8:8](#); [8:13](#); [27:54](#))

## chaff

### Definition:

Chaff is a dry protective covering of a grain seed. The chaff is not good for food so people separate it from the seed and throw it away.

- Often, the chaff is separated from the seed by throwing the heads of grain up into the air. The wind blows the chaff away and the seed falls on the ground. This process is called “winnowing.”
- In the Bible, this term is also used figuratively to refer to evil people and evil, worthless things.

(See also: [grain](#), [wheat](#), [winnow](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 2:35
- Job 21:18
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2842, H4671, H5784, H8401, G08920

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:12](#))

## children, child, offspring

### Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

## Word Data:

• Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:11](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:16](#); [2:18](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [3:9](#); [7:11](#); [9:2](#); [10:21](#); [11:16](#); [11:19](#); [11:25](#); [12:34](#); [14:21](#); [15:26](#); [15:38](#); [18:2](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:25](#); [19:13](#); [19:14](#); [19:29](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [22:24](#); [23:33](#); [23:37](#); [27:25](#))

## chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

### Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:18](#); [22:14](#); [24:22](#); [24:24](#); [24:31](#))

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus."
- "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ."

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah." (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.



- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 1:1](#); [1:16](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [2:4](#); [11:2](#); [16:16](#); [16:20](#); [16:21](#); [Notes](#); [22:42](#); [23:10](#); [24:5](#); [24:23](#); [26:63](#); [26:68](#); [27:17](#); [27:22](#))

## church, Church

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to all people who believe in Jesus. Sometimes “church” refers to a part of that larger group who regularly met together in a certain place, such as the “church at Ephesus.”

- This term literally refers to an assembly or congregation of people who were “called out” of the general population to meet together for a special purpose.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home to pray together and to hear and discuss scripture. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: [assembly](#), [believe](#), Christian)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- 1 Timothy 3:5
- Acts 9:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 4:15
- Ephesians 5:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 4:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:9** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G15770

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:18; 18:17](#))

## clean, wash

### Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#), [demon](#), [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:2](#); [8:3](#); [10:8](#); [11:5](#); [12:43](#); [23:25](#); [23:26](#); [27:59](#))

## clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

### Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G02940, G14630, G15620, G17370, G17420, G17460, G19020, G20660, G22240, G24390, G24400, G40160, G47490, G55090

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:4](#); [5:40](#); [6:25](#); [6:28](#); [6:29](#); [7:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:20](#); [9:21](#); [14:36](#); [17:2](#); [21:7](#); [21:8](#); [22:11](#); [22:12](#); [24:18](#); [25:36](#); [25:38](#); [25:43](#); [26:65](#); [27:31](#); [27:35](#); [28:3](#))

## comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

### Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 1:4
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G03020, G38700, G38740, G38750, G38880, G38900, G39310

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:18](#); [5:4](#))

## command, commandment

### Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:24](#); [4:6](#); [5:19](#); [8:4](#); [8:18](#); [12:16](#); [14:9](#); [14:19](#); [14:28](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [15:9](#); [15:35](#); [16:20](#); [17:9](#); [18:25](#); [19:7](#); [19:17](#); [22:36](#); [22:38](#); [22:40](#); [27:58](#); [27:64](#); [28:20](#))



## compassion, compassionate

### Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "deep caring" or "pity" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

### Bible References:

- Daniel 1:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 5:9-11
- Jonah 4:1-3
- Mark 1:41
- Romans 9:14-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G16530, G33560, G36270, G46970, G48340, G48350

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:36](#); [14:14](#); [15:32](#); [18:27](#); [20:34](#))

## conceive, conception

### Definition:

The terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, “think of” or “plan” or “create,” depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, “when sin is conceived” which means “when sin is first thought of” or “at the very start of a sin” or “when a sin first begins.”

(See also: [create](#), [womb](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 2:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 1:24-25
- Luke 2:21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G10800, G17220, G28450, G48150

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18](#); [1:20](#); [1:23](#))

## condemn, condemned, condemnation

### Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:20
- Job 9:29
- John 5:24
- Luke 6:37
- Matthew 12:7
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 34:22
- Romans 5:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G01760, G08430, G26070, G26130, G26310, G26320, G26330, G29170, G29190, G29200, G52720, G60480

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:7](#); [12:37](#); [12:41](#); [12:42](#); [20:18](#); [27:3](#))

## confess, confession

### Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8-10
- 2 John 1:7-8
- James 5:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Matthew 3:4-6
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 38:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:6](#); [10:32](#))

## cornerstone

### Definition:

The term “cornerstone” refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its “cornerstone.”
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cornerstone” could also be translated as “main building stone” or “foundation stone.”
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building’s foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, “a foundation stone used for the corner of a building.”
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means “large stone” (such as “boulder”) but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:11
- Ephesians 2:20
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H6438, H7218, G02040, G11370, G27760, G30370

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:42](#))

## corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness

### Definition:

The terms “false witness” and “corrupt witness” refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

- A “false testimony” or “false report” is the actual lie that is told.
- To “bear false witness” means to lie or give a false report about something.
- The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bear false witness” or “give a false testimony” could be translated as “testify falsely” or “give a false report about someone” or “speak falsely against someone” or “lie.”
- When “false witness” refers to a person, it could be translated as “person who lies” or “one who testifies falsely” or “someone who says things that are not true.”

(See also: [testimony](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:19
- Exodus 20:16
- Matthew 15:18-20
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Proverbs 14:5-6
- Psalms 27:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H6030, H7650, H8267, G19650, G31440, G55710, G55750, G55760, G55770

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:19](#); [19:18](#); [26:60](#))

## corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

### Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 6:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 14:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G08610, G13110, G27040, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:17](#); [7:18](#); [12:33](#); [13:48](#))

## council

### Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The “Jewish Council” in Jerusalem, also known as the “Sanhedrin,” had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word “council” could also be translated as “legal assembly” or “political assembly.”
- To be “in council” means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than “counsel,” which means “wise advice.”

(See also: [assembly](#), [counsel](#), [Pharisee](#), [law](#), [priest](#), [Sadducee](#), [scribe](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 24:20
- John 3:2
- Luke 22:68
- Mark 13:9
- Matthew 5:22
- Matthew 26:59

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4186, H5475, G10100, G48240, G48920

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:22](#); [10:17](#); [26:59](#))



## **courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement**

### **Facts:**

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression "take courage" means "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
- The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
- Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
- To "speak with courage" could be translated as "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and "encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
- The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: confidence, exhort, [fear](#), [strength](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 9:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 7:13
- Acts 5:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 3:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0533, H0553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G21140, G21150, G21740, G22920, G22930, G22940, G38700, G38740, G39540, G43890, G48370, G51110

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:2](#); [9:22](#); [14:27](#))

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:28](#))

## create, created, creation, creator

### Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means "since the time when God created the world."
- A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
- To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
- The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
- Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
- The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
- Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:35](#); [25:34](#))

## cross

### Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:17
- Colossians 2:15
- Galatians 6:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 9:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 2:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:2** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G47160

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:38](#); [16:24](#); [27:32](#); [27:40](#); [27:42](#))

## **crown, crowned**

### **Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

### **Bible References:**

- John 19:3
- Lamentations 5:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 4:1
- Psalms 21:3
- Revelation 3:11

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G12380, G47350, G47370

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:29](#))

## crucify, crucified

### Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "crucify" could be translated as "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: [cross](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:23
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "**Crucify** him (Jesus)!"
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:4** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:6** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!"
- **43:9** "You **crucified** this man, Jesus."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G03880, G43620, G47170, G49570

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:19](#); [23:34](#); [26:2](#); [27:22](#); [27:23](#); [27:26](#); [27:31](#); [27:35](#); [27:38](#); [27:44](#); [28:5](#))



## **cry, cry out, outcry**

### **Definition:**

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- It can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#), [pray](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:3](#); [8:29](#); [9:27](#); [12:19](#); [14:26](#); [14:30](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [20:30](#); [20:31](#); [21:9](#); [21:15](#); [25:6](#); [27:23](#); [27:46](#); [27:50](#))

## cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

### Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:16
- Acts 8:6
- Luke 5:13
- Luke 6:19
- Luke 8:43
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 9:35
- Matthew 13:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:6** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **26:8** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **44:3** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **49:2** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H0622, G12950, G17430, G23220, G23230, G23860, G23900, G23920, G25110, G36470, G49820, G51980, G51990

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:23](#); [4:24](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:13](#); [8:16](#); [9:21](#); [9:22](#); [9:35](#); [10:1](#); [10:8](#); [12:10](#); [12:15](#); [12:22](#); [13:15](#); [14:14](#); [14:36](#); [15:28](#); [15:30](#); [17:16](#); [17:18](#); [19:2](#); [21:14](#))

## curse, cursed, cursing

### Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **2:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **4:4** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

(Go back to: [Matthew 25:41](#); [26:74](#))

## curtain

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: [holy place](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 4:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 4:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G26650

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:51](#))

## cut off, cut down

### Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:30](#); [7:19](#); [18:8](#))

## Cyrene

### Facts:

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

- In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
- Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Crete)

### Bible References:

- Acts 11:19-21
- Matthew 27:32-34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G29560, G29570

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:32](#))



# Daniel

## Facts:

Daniel was an Israelite prophet who as a young man was taken captive by the Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar around 600 BC.

- This was during the time that many other Israelites from Judah were held captive in Babylon for 70 years.
- Daniel was given the Babylonian name Belteshazzar.
- Daniel was an honorable and righteous young man who obeyed God.
- God enabled Daniel to interpret several dreams or visions for the Babylonian kings.
- Because of this ability and because of his honorable character, Daniel was given a high leadership position in the Babylonian empire.
- Many years later, Daniels enemies tricked the Babylonian king Darius into making a law forbidding the worship of anyone except the king. Daniel continued to pray to God, so he was arrested and thrown into a den of lions. But God rescued him and he was not harmed at all.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), Nebuchadnezzar)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 1:6-7
- Daniel 5:29
- Daniel 7:28
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Matthew 24:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1840, H1841, G11580

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:15](#))

## darkness

### Definition:

The term "darkness" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:6
- 1 John 2:8
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 1:13
- Isaiah 5:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 8:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0652, H0653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G22170, G46520, G46530, G46550, G46560

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:16](#); [6:23](#); [8:12](#); [10:27](#); [22:13](#); [24:29](#); [25:30](#); [27:45](#))

## daughter of Zion

### Definition:

“Daughter of Zion” is a figurative way of referring to the people of Israel. It is usually used in prophecies.

- In the Old Testament, “Zion” is often used as another name for the city of Jerusalem.
- Both “Zion” and “Jerusalem” are also used to refer to Israel.
- The term “Daughter” is a term of endearment or affection. It is a metaphor for the patience and care that God has for his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate this could include “my daughter Israel, from Zion” or “people from Zion, who are like a daughter to me” or “Zion, my dear people Israel.”
- It is best to keep the term “Zion” in this expression since it is used many times in the Bible. A note could be included in the translation to explain its figurative meaning and prophetic use.
- It is also better to keep the term “Daughter” in the translation of this expression, as long as it is understood correctly.

(See also: [Jerusalem](#), [prophet](#), [Zion](#))

### Bible References:

- Jeremiah 6:2
- John 12:15
- Matthew 21:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1323, H6726

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:5](#))

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:1](#); [1:6](#); [1:17](#); [1:20](#); [9:27](#); [12:3](#); [12:23](#); [15:22](#); [20:30](#); [20:31](#); [21:9](#); [21:15](#); [22:42](#); [22:43](#); [22:45](#))

## day

### Definition:

The term "day" generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- "Day" is sometimes used in contrast to "night." In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as "today."
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days." Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" non-figuratively.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as "day" or "daytime" using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of "day" could include "daytime," "time," "season," "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [time](#), judgment day, last day)

### Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [3:1](#); [4:2](#); [6:34](#); [7:22](#); [9:15](#); [10:15](#); [11:12](#); [11:22](#); [11:24](#); [12:36](#); [12:40](#); [13:1](#); [15:32](#); [16:21](#); [17:1](#); [17:23](#); [20:2](#); [20:6](#); [20:12](#); [20:19](#); [22:23](#); [22:46](#); [23:30](#); [24:19](#); [24:22](#); [24:29](#); [24:36](#); [24:37](#); [24:38](#); [24:42](#); [24:50](#); [25:13](#); [26:2](#); [26:29](#); [26:55](#); [26:61](#); [27:40](#); [27:63](#); [27:64](#); [28:20](#))

## deceive, lie, deception, illusions

### Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a "lie." The act of deceiving someone is called "lying," "deceit," or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To "lie" is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:22](#); [27:63](#); [27:64](#))

## declare, proclaim, announce

### Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:23](#))

## defile, defiled, desecrate

### Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [profane](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 7:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G28390, G28400, G33920, G34350

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:11](#); [15:18](#); [15:20](#))



# delight

## Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

## Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:17](#); [12:18](#); [17:5](#))

## deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

### Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:13; 27:43](#))

## demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

### Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [demon-possessed](#), [Satan](#), false god, false god, [angel](#), [evil](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- James 2:19
- James 3:15
- Luke 4:36
- Mark 3:22
- Matthew 4:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:9** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"
- **32:8** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **47:5** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, "In the name of Jesus, come out of her." Right away the **demon** left her.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G01690, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G41900, G41510, G41520, G41890

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:22](#); [8:16](#); [8:31](#); [9:33](#); [9:34](#); [10:1](#); [10:8](#); [11:18](#); [12:24](#); [12:27](#); [12:28](#); [12:43](#); [12:45](#); [17:18](#))

## demon-possessed

### Definition:

A person who is demon-possessed has a demon or evil spirit that controls what he does and thinks.

- Often a demon-possessed person will hurt himself or other people because the demon causes him to do that.
- Jesus healed demon-possessed people by commanding the demons to come out of them. This is often called “casting out” demons.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “demon-controlled” or “controlled by an evil spirit” or “having an evil spirit living inside.”

(See also: [demon](#))

### Bible References:

- Mark 1:32
- Matthew 4:24
- Matthew 8:16
- Matthew 8:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:9** Many people who had **demons in them** were brought to Jesus.
- **32:2** When they reached the other side of the lake, a **demon-possessed** man came running up to Jesus.
- **32:6** The man **with the demon** cried out in a loud voice, “What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? Please do not torture me!”
- **32:9** The people from the town came and saw the man who used to **have the demons**.
- **47:3** Every day as they (Paul and Silas) walked there, a slave girl **possessed by a demon** followed them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G11390

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:24](#); [8:16](#); [8:28](#); [8:33](#); [9:32](#); [12:22](#); [15:22](#))

## desert, wilderness

### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:1](#); [3:3](#); [4:1](#); [11:7](#); [15:33](#); [24:26](#))

## desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

### Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), devastate, ruin, [waste](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 1:20
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Lamentations 3:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0490, H0816, H0910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G20480, G20490, G20500, G34430

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:25](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [23:38](#); [24:15](#))

## destroy, destruction, annihilate

### Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:13](#))

## devour

### Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

(See also: consume)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:4](#))



# die, dead, deadly, death

## Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

## 1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

## 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:15](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [4:16](#); [8:22](#); [9:18](#); [9:24](#); [10:8](#); [10:21](#); [11:5](#); [14:2](#); [15:4](#); [16:28](#); [17:9](#); [20:18](#); [22:24](#); [22:25](#); [22:27](#); [22:31](#); [22:32](#); [23:27](#); [26:35](#); [26:38](#); [26:59](#); [26:66](#); [27:1](#); [27:64](#); [28:4](#); [28:7](#))

## disciple

### Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the 12.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:1
- Acts 9:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22
- John 13:23
- Luke 6:40
- Matthew 11:3
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **30:8** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:11** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- **42:10** Jesus said to his **disciples**, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3928, G31000, G31010, G31020

(Go back to: Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew; Matthew 5:1; 8:21; 8:23; 9:10; 9:11; 9:14; 9:19; 9:37; 10:1; 10:24; 10:25; 10:42; 11:1; 11:2; 12:1; 12:2; 12:49; 13:10; 13:36; 13:52; 14:12; 14:15; 14:19; 14:22; 14:26; 15:2; 15:12; 15:23; 15:32; 15:33; 15:36; 16:5; 16:13; 16:20; 16:21; 16:24; 17:6; 17:10; 17:13; 17:16; 17:19; 18:1; 19:10; 19:13; 19:23; 19:25; 20:17; 21:1; 21:6; 21:20; 22:16; 23:1; 24:1; 24:3; 26:1; 26:8; 26:17; 26:18; 26:19; 26:26; 26:35; 26:36; 26:40; 26:45; 26:56; 27:57; 27:64; 28:7; 28:8; 28:13; 28:16; 28:19)

## divorce

### Definition:

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term to “divorce” means to formally and legally separate from one’s spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the term to “divorce” is to “send away” or to “formally separate from.” Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A “certificate of divorce” could be translated as a “paper stating that the marriage has ended.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:8-11
- Leviticus 21:7-9
- Luke 16:18
- Mark 10:4
- Matthew 5:32
- Matthew 19:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G06300, G06470, G08630

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:19](#); [5:31](#); [5:32](#); [19:3](#); [19:7](#); [19:8](#); [19:9](#))

## doctrine, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge

### Definition:

The word “doctrine” literally means “teaching.” It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, “doctrine” refers to all teachings about God—Father, Son and Holy Spirit—including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word “doctrine” is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as “teaching.”

(See also: [teach](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- 2 Timothy 3:16-17
- Mark 7:6-7
- Matthew 15:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3948, G13190, G13220, G20850

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:9](#))

## donkey, mule

### Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:2](#); [21:5](#); [21:7](#))

## dove, pigeon

### Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [olive](#), [innocent](#), [pure](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 8:9
- Luke 2:22-24
- Mark 1:10
- Matthew 3:16
- Matthew 21:12-14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G40580

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:16](#); [10:16](#); [21:12](#))



## **dream**

### **Definition:**

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 2:16-17
- Daniel 1:17-18
- Daniel 2:1
- Genesis 37:6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 2:13
- Matthew 2:19-21

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **8:2** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **8:7** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:1** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G17970, G17980, G36770

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:20](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:19](#); [2:22](#); [27:19](#))

## drunk, drunkard

### Facts:

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: [wine](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:19; 24:49](#))

## eagle

### Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Daniel](#), [free](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:23
- Daniel 7:4
- Jeremiah 4:13-15
- Leviticus 11:13-16
- Revelation 4:7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5403, H5404, G01050

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:28](#))

## earth, land

### Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as "land" when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term "earth" is often paired with the term "heaven" as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated "land" when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as "the land of Canaan."
- The term "earthly" is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth."

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: [world](#), [heaven](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:5](#); [5:13](#); [5:18](#); [5:35](#); [6:10](#); [6:19](#); [9:6](#); [10:34](#); [11:25](#); [12:40](#); [12:42](#); [16:19](#); [17:25](#); [18:18](#); [18:19](#); [23:9](#); [23:35](#); [24:30](#); [24:35](#); [27:51](#); [28:18](#))

## Egypt, Egyptian

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), Nile River, patriarchs)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *\_Egypt\_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:19](#))

## elder, older, old

### Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:2](#); [16:21](#); [21:23](#); [26:3](#); [26:47](#); [26:57](#); [27:1](#); [27:3](#); [27:12](#); [27:20](#); [27:41](#); [28:12](#))

## Eleazar

### Facts:

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.

Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."

Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aaron, [high priest](#), [David](#), [mighty](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:3
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 34:16-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0499, G16480

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:15](#))

## Eliakim

### Facts:

Eliakim was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Eliakim was the manager of the palace under King Hezekiah.
- Another man named Eliakim was a son of King Josiah. He was made king of Judah by the Egyptian pharaoh Necho.
- Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Hezekiah](#), [Jehoiakim](#), [Josiah](#), [Pharaoh](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:18
- 2 Kings 18:26
- 2 Kings 18:37
- 2 Kings 23:34-35

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0471, G16620

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:13](#))



# Elijah

## Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:3-4
- James 5:16-18
- John 1:19-21
- John 1:24-25
- Mark 9:5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:2 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:3** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:4** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:7** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:3** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0452, G22430

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:14](#); [16:14](#); [17:3](#); [17:4](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:12](#); [27:47](#); [27:49](#))

## endure, endurance

### Definition:

The term "endure" means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term "endurance" can mean "patience" or "bearing up under a trial" or "persevering when being persecuted."
- The encouragement to Christians to "endure to the end" is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To "endure suffering" can also mean to "experience suffering."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "endure" could include "persevere" or "keep believing" or "continue to do what God wants you to do" or "stand firm."
- In some contexts, to "endure" could be translated as to "experience" or to "go through."
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term "endure" could also be translated as "last" or "continue." The phrase "will not endure" could be translated as "will not last" or "will not continue to survive."
- Ways to translate "endurance" could include "perseverance" or "continuing to believe" or "remaining faithful."

(See also: persevere)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- James 1:3
- James 1:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G04300, G09070, G15260, G20050, G20760, G25940, G33060, G47220, G52780, G52810, G52970, G53420

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:22](#); [24:13](#))

## envy, covet

### Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: jealous)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G08660, G19370, G22050, G22060, G37130, G37880, G41230, G41240, G41900, G53540, G53550, G53660

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:18](#))

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

(Go back to: [Matthew 18:8](#); [19:16](#); [19:29](#); [25:41](#); [25:46](#))

## eunuch

### Definition:

Usually the term “eunuch” refers to a man who has been castrated. The term later became a general term to refer to any government official, even those without the deformity.

- Jesus said that some eunuchs were born that way, perhaps because of damaged sex organs or because of not being able to function sexually. Others chose to live like eunuchs in a celibate lifestyle.
- In ancient times, eunuchs were often kings’ servants who were set as guards over the women’s quarters.
- Some eunuchs were important government officials, such as the Ethiopian eunuch who met the apostle Philip in the desert.

(See also: Philip)

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:27
- Acts 8:36
- Acts 8:39
- Isaiah 39:7-8
- Jeremiah 34:17-19
- Matthew 19:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5631, G21340, G21350

(Go back to: [Matthew 19:12](#))

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:11](#); [5:37](#); [5:39](#); [5:45](#); [6:23](#); [6:34](#); [7:11](#); [9:4](#); [12:34](#); [12:35](#); [12:39](#); [12:45](#); [13:49](#); [15:19](#); [16:4](#); [18:32](#); [20:15](#); [22:10](#); [22:18](#); [24:48](#); [25:26](#); [27:23](#))



## ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:15](#); [9:36](#); [10:6](#); [10:16](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [15:24](#); [18:12](#); [25:32](#); [25:33](#); [26:31](#))

## exalt, exalted, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, proud)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:23](#); [23:12](#))

## exult, exultant

### Definition:

The terms “exult” and “exultant” refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To “exult” includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God’s goodness.
- The term “exultant” can also include being arrogant in one’s feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term “exult” could also be translated as “celebrate joyfully” or “praise with great joy.”
- Depending on the context, the term “exultant” could be translated as “praising triumphantly” or “celebrating with self praise” or “arrogant.”

(See also: arrogant, [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:1
- Isaiah 13:3
- Job 6:10
- Psalm 68:1-3
- Zephaniah 2:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5539, H5947, H5970

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:12](#))

## face, facial

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:16](#); [6:17](#); [11:10](#); [17:2](#); [17:6](#); [18:10](#); [22:16](#); [26:39](#); [26:67](#))

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:30](#); [8:10](#); [8:26](#); [9:2](#); [9:22](#); [9:29](#); [15:28](#); [16:8](#); [17:20](#); [21:21](#))

## faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [Matthew 23:23](#); [24:45](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#))



## false prophet

### Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1-3
- 2 Peter 2:1
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 6:26
- Matthew 7:16
- Matthew 24:23-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G55780

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:15](#); [24:11](#); [24:24](#))

## famine

### Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:7](#))

## fast, fasting

### Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 3:4-5
- Luke 5:34
- Mark 2:19
- Matthew 6:18
- Matthew 9:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:8** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G35210, G35220

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:2](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#))

## fear, afraid, frighten

### Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect," or "deep respect;" "revere," or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: awe, Yahweh, [Lord](#), [marvel](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:20](#); [2:22](#); [9:8](#); [10:26](#); [10:28](#); [10:31](#); [14:5](#); [14:26](#); [14:27](#); [14:30](#); [Notes](#); [17:6](#); [17:7](#); [21:26](#); [21:46](#); [25:25](#); [27:54](#); [28:4](#); [28:5](#); [28:8](#); [28:10](#))

## feast, feasting

### Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#), banquet)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

(Go back to: [Matthew 22:2](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [23:6](#); [25:10](#))

## festival, feast, celebrate

### Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
  - Passover
  - Festival of Unleavened Bread
  - Firstfruits
  - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
  - Festival of Trumpets
  - Day of Atonement
  - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 2 Chronicles 8:13
- Exodus 5:1
- John 4:45
- Luke 22:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G14560, G18580, G18590

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:5; 27:15](#))

## fig

### Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

### Bible References:

- Habakkuk 3:17
- James 3:12
- Luke 13:7
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 7:17
- Matthew 21:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G36530, G48080, G48100

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:16](#); [21:19](#); [21:20](#); [21:21](#); [24:32](#))

## fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [5:22](#); [7:19](#); [13:40](#); [13:42](#); [13:50](#); [17:15](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [25:41](#))



## fishermen, fishers

### Definition:

Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term “fishers” is another name for fishermen.

- Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
- Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
- This term could be translated with a phrase such as “men who catch fish” or “men who earn money by catching fish.”

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:9-10
- Isaiah 19:8
- Luke 5:1-3
- Matthew 4:19
- Matthew 13:47

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1728, H1771, H2271, G02310

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:18](#); [4:19](#))

## flesh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:17](#); [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [24:22](#); [26:41](#))

## flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

### Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: [goat](#), [cow](#), [pig](#), [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:31](#))

## flood

### Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action, as in “the land was flooded by river water.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor, as in “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The figurative expression “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears cover my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: [ark](#), [Noah](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:10
- Genesis 7:6-7
- Luke 6:46-48
- Matthew 7:24-25
- Matthew 7:26-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3999, G26270

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:38](#); [24:39](#))

## flute, pipe

### Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:7
- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- Daniel 3:3-5
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 9:23
- Matthew 11:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G08320, G08340, G08360

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:17](#))

## fool, foolish, folly

### Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:17
- Ephesians 5:15
- Galatians 3:3
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 25:8
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 49:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0191, H0196, H0200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G04530, G04540, G07810, G08010, G08770, G08780, G27570, G31500, G31540, G34710, G34720, G34730, G34740, G39120

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:22](#); [7:26](#); [23:17](#); [23:19](#); [25:2](#); [25:3](#); [25:8](#))

## footstool

### Definition:

The term “footstool” refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a “footstool” was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says “I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet” he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God’s will.
- To “worship at God’s footstool” means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God’s “footstool.” This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:49
- Isaiah 66:1
- Luke 20:43
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 22:44
- Psalm 110:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1916, H3534, H7272, G42280, G52860

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:35](#))

## forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

### Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.



- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

## Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G85900, G86300, G54830

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:12](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [9:2](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [12:31](#); [12:32](#); [18:21](#); [18:27](#); [18:32](#); [18:35](#); [26:28](#))

## forsake, forsaken, leave

### Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:56](#); [27:46](#))

## found, founder, foundation

### Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G23100, G23110, G26020

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:25](#); [13:35](#); [25:34](#))

## frankincense

### Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [learned men](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:28-29
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Matthew 2:11-12
- Numbers 5:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3828, G30300

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#))

## free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

### Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G04250, G05250, G05580, G06290, G06300, G08590, G13440, G14320, G16570, G16580, G16590, G18490, G30890, G39550, G45060, G54830

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:8](#); [17:26](#))

## fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, [grain](#), [grape](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:8](#); [3:10](#); [Notes](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [7:20](#); [12:33](#); [13:8](#); [13:22](#); [13:23](#); [13:26](#); [21:19](#); [21:34](#); [21:41](#); [21:43](#); [26:29](#))

## fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:22](#); [2:15](#); [2:17](#); [2:23](#); [3:15](#); [4:14](#); [5:17](#); [8:17](#); [12:17](#); [13:14](#); [13:35](#); [21:4](#); [26:54](#); [26:56](#); [27:9](#))



## furnace

### Facts:

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: false god, [image](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51
- Genesis 19:28
- Proverbs 17:3
- Psalms 21:9
- Revelation 9:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0861, H3536, H3564, H5948, H8574, G25750

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:42](#); [13:50](#))

## Galilee, Galilean

### Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A "Galilean" was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the "Sea of Galilee."
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](#), [Samaria](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:32
- Acts 13:31
- John 2:1-2
- John 4:3
- Luke 13:3
- Mark 3:7
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:13-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:10** The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of **Galilee** where he lived.
- **39:6** Finally, the people said, "We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from **Galilee**."
- **41:6** Then the angel told the women, "Go and tell the disciples, 'Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to **Galilee** ahead of you.'"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1551, G10560, G10570

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:22](#); [3:13](#); [4:12](#); [4:15](#); [4:18](#); [4:23](#); [4:25](#); [15:29](#); [17:22](#); [19:1](#); [21:11](#); [26:32](#); [26:69](#); [27:55](#); [28:7](#); [28:10](#); [28:16](#))

## gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

The term "gate" refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A "bar" for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:13](#); [7:14](#); [26:71](#))

## generation

### Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

### Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:7
- Mark 8:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G10740

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:17](#); [11:16](#); [12:39](#); [12:41](#); [12:42](#); [12:45](#); [16:4](#); [17:17](#); [23:36](#); [24:34](#))

## Gentile

### Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
- Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew."
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Jew](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 2:16
- Luke 2:32
- Matthew 5:47
- Matthew 6:5-7
- Romans 11:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1471, G14820, G14840, G16720

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:15](#); [5:47](#); [6:7](#); [6:32](#); [10:5](#); [10:18](#); [12:18](#); [12:21](#); [18:17](#); [20:19](#); [20:25](#))

## Gethsemane

### Facts:

Gethsemane was a garden of olive trees east of Jerusalem beyond the Kidron valley and near the Mount of Olives.

- The garden of Gethsemane was a place where Jesus and his followers would go to be alone and rest, away from the crowds.
- It was in Gethsemane that Jesus prayed in deep sorrow, before being arrested there by Jewish leaders.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Kidron Valley](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

### Bible References:

- Mark 14:32
- Matthew 26:36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G10680

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:36](#))

## gift

### Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1
- 2 Samuel 11:8
- Acts 8:20
- Acts 10:4
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 1:17
- John 4:9-10
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 8:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G03340, G13900, G13940, G14310, G14340, G14350, G33110, G54860

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#); [5:23](#); [5:24](#); [7:11](#); [8:4](#); [15:5](#); [23:18](#); [23:19](#))

## glory, glorious, glorify

### Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), [majesty](#), [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2



- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glor**y to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glor**y and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glor**y of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glor**y if you believe in me?”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:8](#); [5:16](#); [6:2](#); [6:29](#); [9:8](#); [15:31](#); [16:27](#); [Notes](#); [19:28](#); [24:30](#); [25:31](#))

## goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

### Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [sacrifice](#), [sheep](#), [righteous](#), [wine](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 3:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G01220, G20550, G20560, G51310

(Go back to: [Matthew 25:32](#); [25:33](#))

## God

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), false god, [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), false god, [Son of God](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:23](#); [3:9](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:10](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:34](#); [6:24](#); [6:30](#); [9:8](#); [12:4](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [15:31](#); [16:23](#); [19:6](#); [19:26](#); [22:16](#); [22:21](#); [22:29](#); [22:31](#); [22:32](#); [22:37](#); [23:22](#); [26:61](#); [26:63](#); [27:40](#); [27:43](#); [27:46](#))

## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ancestor](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:8** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:16](#); [5:45](#); [5:48](#); [6:1](#); [6:4](#); [6:6](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:18](#); [6:26](#); [6:32](#); [7:11](#); [7:21](#); [10:20](#); [10:29](#); [10:32](#); [10:33](#); [11:25](#); [11:26](#); [11:27](#); [12:50](#); [13:43](#); [15:13](#); [16:17](#); [16:27](#); [18:10](#); [18:14](#); [18:19](#); [18:35](#); [20:23](#); [23:9](#); [24:36](#); [25:34](#); [26:29](#); [26:39](#); [26:53](#); [28:19](#))

## gold, golden

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, false god, [silver](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#); [10:9](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#))

# Golgotha

## Facts:

“Golgotha” was the name of the place where Jesus was crucified. Its name comes from an Aramaic word that means “Skull” or “Place of the Skull.”

- Golgotha was located outside the city walls of Jerusalem, somewhere nearby. It was perhaps located on a slope of the Mount of Olives.
- In some older English versions of the Bible, Golgotha is translated as “Calvary,” which comes from the Latin word for “skull.”
- Many Bible versions use a word that looks or sounds similar to “Golgotha,” since its meaning is already explained in the Bible text.

(Translation Suggestion: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Mount of Olives](#))

## Bible References:

- John 19:17
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:33

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G11150

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:33](#))



## Gomorrah

### Facts:

Gomorrah was a city located in a fertile valley near Sodom, where Abraham's nephew Lot chose to live.

- The exact location of Gomorrah and Sodom is unknown, but there are indications that they may have been located directly south of the Salt Sea, near the Valley of Siddim.
- There were many kings at war in the region where Sodom and Gomorrah were located.
- When Lot's family was captured in a conflict between Sodom and other cities, Abraham and his men rescued them.
- Not long after that, Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed by God because of the wickedness of the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), [Lot](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Sodom](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:6
- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 18:21
- Isaiah 1:9
- Matthew 10:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6017

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:15](#))

## good news, gospel

### Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: [kingdom](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:25
- Colossians 1:23
- Galatians 1:6
- Luke 8:1-3
- Mark 1:14
- Philippians 2:22
- Romans 1:3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:6** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G20970, G20980, G42830

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:23](#); [9:35](#); [11:5](#); [24:14](#); [26:13](#))

## good, right, pleasant, better, best

### Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), prosper, [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:10](#); [5:16](#); [5:45](#); [7:11](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [12:12](#); [12:33](#); [12:34](#); [12:35](#); [13:8](#); [13:23](#); [13:24](#); [13:27](#); [13:37](#); [13:38](#); [13:45](#); [13:48](#); [15:26](#); [17:4](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [19:16](#); [19:17](#); [20:15](#); [22:10](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [26:10](#); [26:24](#))

## **govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha**

### **Definition:**

A “governor” is a person who rules over a large area of land (such as a territory, region, or province) within a nation or empire.

- In the Old Testament, the term “Tirshatha” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Persian province.
- In the New Testament, the term “proconsul” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or “supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), province, Rome, [ruler](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G04450, G04460, G07460, G14810, G22320, G22330, G22300, G42320

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:6](#); [10:18](#); [27:2](#); [27:11](#); [27:14](#); [27:15](#); [27:21](#); [27:27](#); [28:14](#))

## grain, grainfields

### Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 42:3
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 6:2
- Mark 2:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 1:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G02480, G25900, G34500, G46210, G47190

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:1](#); [13:31](#); [17:20](#))

## grape, grapevine

### Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 9:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 6:43-44
- Matthew 7:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0811, H0891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G02880, G47180

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:16](#))



## grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

### Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:28](#); [23:27](#); [23:29](#); [27:52](#); [27:53](#); [27:60](#); [27:61](#); [27:64](#); [27:66](#); [28:1](#); [28:8](#))

## Hades, Sheol

### Definition:

The terms "Hades" (in Greek) and "Sheol" (in Hebrew) are proper names for the place where the spirits of dead people would go after they had died.

- In these ancient cultures, people thought of this as an underground dwelling place where the spirits of dead people existed in a shadowy, semi-conscious form.
- Although these terms are place names, in the Bible they often mean the same thing as "death" or "the grave."
- Throughout most of biblical history, "Sheol" and "Hades" refer to a neutral place where all of the dead go to await judgment, both the righteous and the unrighteous. In the New Testament, however, "Hades" begins to be seen as a place for only the unrighteous, in contrast with "Abraham's side" (Luke 16:22) or "paradise" (Luke 23:43), which describe the place for the righteous.

### Translation Suggestions

- Both "Sheol" and "Hades" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "place of the dead," "place for dead spirits," "the underworld," "the pit," "the grave," or "death."
- Some translations keep the proper names "Sheol" and "Hades," spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it. Examples of doing this are, "Sheol, place where dead people are" and "Hades, place of death."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [hell](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:31
- Genesis 44:29
- Jonah 2:2
- Luke 10:15
- Luke 16:23
- Matthew 11:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Revelation 1:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G00860

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:23](#); [16:18](#))

## hand

### Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

### Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [power](#), [right hand](#), [honor](#), [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:12](#); [4:6](#); [5:30](#); [8:3](#); [8:15](#); [9:18](#); [9:25](#); [12:10](#); [12:13](#); [12:49](#); [14:31](#); [15:2](#); [15:20](#); [17:22](#); [18:8](#); [19:13](#); [19:15](#); [22:13](#); [26:23](#); [26:45](#); [26:50](#); [26:51](#); [27:24](#))

## hang, hung

### Definition:

The term “hang” means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person’s neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
- In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a “tree”), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- Some ancient cultures “hung” a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
- For many references to death by “hanging” in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 3:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G05190

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:5](#))

## hard, harden, hardness

### Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The use of “hard” (in various forms) with “heart” refers to people being stubbornly unrepentant or disobedient (usually) to God.
- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:7
- Exodus 14:4
- Hebrews 4:7
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G09170, G14190, G14210, G14220, G14230, G22050, G25320, G25530, G28720, G28730, G34250, G34330, G40530, G41830, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

(Go back to: [Matthew 19:8](#); [19:23](#); [25:24](#))

## harvest, reap

### Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: [firstfruits](#), [festival](#), [good news](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 9:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 5:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9
- Matthew 9:38
- Ruth 1:22
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:26](#); [9:37](#); [9:38](#); [13:30](#); [13:39](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#))

## head

### Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: [chief](#), [grain](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:36](#); [6:17](#); [8:20](#); [10:30](#); [14:8](#); [14:11](#); [21:42](#); [26:7](#); [27:29](#); [27:30](#); [27:37](#); [27:39](#))



## heart

### Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:8](#); [5:28](#); [6:21](#); [9:4](#); [11:29](#); [12:34](#); [12:40](#); [13:15](#); [13:19](#); [15:8](#); [15:18](#); [15:19](#); [18:35](#); [22:37](#); [24:48](#))

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: Matthew 3:2; 3:16; 3:17; 4:17; 5:3; 5:10; 5:12; 5:16; 5:18; 5:19; 5:20; 5:34; 5:45; 5:48; 6:1; 6:9; 6:10; 6:14; 6:20; 6:26; 6:32; 7:11; 7:21; 8:11; 8:20; 10:7; 10:32; 10:33; 11:11; 11:12; 11:23; 11:25; 12:50; 13:11; 13:24; 13:31; 13:32; 13:33; 13:44; 13:45; 13:47; 13:52; 14:19; 15:13; 16:1; 16:17; 16:19; 18:1; 18:3; 18:4; 18:10; 18:14; 18:18; 18:19; 18:23; 18:35; 19:12; 19:14; 19:21; 19:23; 20:1; 21:25; 22:2; 22:30; 23:9; 23:13; 23:22; 24:29; 24:30; 24:31; 24:35; 24:36; 25:1; 26:64; 28:2; 28:18)

## heir

### Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, [inherit](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:1-2
- Galatians 4:7
- Genesis 15:1
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:7
- Matthew 21:38-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G28160, G28180, G28200, G47890

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:38](#))

## hell, lake of fire

### Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them, will be punished forever in hell.

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](#), [death](#), [Hades](#), [abyss](#))

### Bible References:

- James 3:6
- Luke 12:5
- Mark 9:42-44
- Matthew 5:21-22
- Matthew 5:29
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **50:14** He (God) will throw them into **hell**, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.
- **50:15** He will throw Satan into **hell** where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G00860, G04390, G04400, G10670, G30410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G50200, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:22](#); [5:29](#); [5:30](#); [10:28](#); [18:9](#); [23:15](#); [23:33](#))

## Herod, Herod Antipas

### Facts:

During most of Jesus' lifetime, Herod Antipas was the ruler of the part of the Roman Empire that included Galilee province.

- Like his father Herod the Great, Antipas was sometimes referred to as "King Herod" even though he was not really a king.
- Herod Antipas ruled about one-fourth of the provinces of Israel, so he was also called "Herod the tetrarch." "Tetrarch" was a title for a person who ruled one-fourth of a country.
- Antipas is the "Herod" who gave the order for John the Baptist to be killed by beheading.
- It was also Herod Antipas who questioned Jesus before his crucifixion.
- The other Herods in the New Testament were Antipas' son (Agrippa) and grandson (Agrippa 2) who ruled during the time of the apostles.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [Herod the Great](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [king](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 3:1-2
- Luke 3:20
- Luke 9:9
- Luke 13:32
- Luke 23:9
- Mark 6:20
- Matthew 14:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G22640, G22650, G22670

(Go back to: [Matthew 14:1](#); [14:3](#); [14:6](#))

## Herod, Herod the Great

### Facts:

Herod the Great was ruling over Judea at the time Jesus was born. He was the first of several Edomite rulers named Herod who ruled over parts of the Roman Empire.

- His ancestors converted to Judaism and he was raised as a Jew.
- Caesar Augustus named him “King Herod” even though he was not a true king. He ruled over the Jews in Judea for 33 years.
- Herod the Great was known for the beautiful buildings he ordered to be built and for the rebuilding of the Jewish temple in Jerusalem.
- This Herod was very cruel and had many people killed. When he heard that a “king of the Jews” had been born in Bethlehem, he had all the baby boys in that town killed.
- His sons Herod Antipas and Herod Philip and his grandson Herod Agrippa also became Roman rulers. His great-grandson Herod Agrippa II (called “King Agrippa”) ruled over the entire area of Judea.

(See [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod Antipas](#), [Judea](#), [king](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Matthew 2:3
- Matthew 2:12
- Matthew 2:16
- Matthew 2:20
- Matthew 2:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G22640

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [2:3](#); [2:7](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#); [2:19](#); [2:22](#))

## Herodias

### Facts:

Herodias was the wife of Herod Antipas in Judea during the time of John the Baptist.

- Herodias was originally the wife of Herod Antipas's brother Philip, but later she unlawfully married Herod Antipas.
- John the Baptist rebuked Herod and Herodias for their unlawful marriage. Because of this, Herod put John in prison and because of Herodias eventually was beheaded.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod Antipas](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 3:19
- Mark 6:17
- Mark 6:22
- Matthew 14:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G22660

(Go back to: [Matthew 14:3](#); [14:6](#))



## Hezekiah

### Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz, who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah became very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God performed a miracle and caused the sun to move backwards in the sky.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: [Ahaz](#), Assyria, false god, [Judah](#), Sennacherib)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:13-14
- 2 Kings 16:19-20
- Hosea 1:1
- Matthew 1:9-11
- Proverbs 25:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2396, H3169, G14780

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:9](#); [1:10](#))

## high priest, chief priests

### Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus’ main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- The term “chief priests” could be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”

(See also: Annas, [Caiaphas](#), [priest](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:27
- Acts 7:1
- Acts 9:1
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 3:2
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:8** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:7** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:3** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:1** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **39:3** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:7** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.

- **45:2** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **46:1** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G07480, G07490

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:4](#); [16:21](#); [20:18](#); [21:15](#); [21:23](#); [21:45](#); [26:3](#); [26:14](#); [26:47](#); [26:51](#); [26:57](#); [26:58](#); [26:59](#); [26:62](#); [26:63](#); [26:65](#); [27:1](#); [27:3](#); [27:6](#); [27:12](#); [27:20](#); [27:41](#); [27:62](#); [28:11](#))

## holy city

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “holy city” refers to the city of Jerusalem.

- This term is used to refer to the ancient city of Jerusalem as well as the new, heavenly Jerusalem where God will live and reign among his people.
- This term can be translated by combining the terms for “holy” and “city” that have been used in the rest of the translation.

(See also: [heaven](#), [holy](#), [Jerusalem](#))

### Bible References:

- Matthew 4:5-6
- Matthew 27:51-53
- Revelation 21:1-2
- Revelation 21:9-10
- Revelation 22:18-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5892, H6944, G00400, G41720

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:5](#); [27:53](#))

## holy place

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: altar of incense, ark of the covenant, [bread](#), consecrate, courtyard, [curtain](#), [holy](#), [set apart](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:16-18
- Acts 6:12-15
- Exodus 26:33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:1
- Ezra 9:8-9
- Hebrews 9:1-2
- Leviticus 16:18
- Matthew 24:15-18
- Revelation 15:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G00400, G00400, G34850, G51170

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:15](#))

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**”
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18](#); [1:20](#); [3:11](#); [3:16](#); [4:1](#); [10:20](#); [Notes](#); [12:18](#); [12:28](#); [12:31](#); [12:32](#); [22:43](#); [28:19](#))

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, [sanctify](#), [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6



- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:5](#); [7:6](#); [24:15](#); [27:53](#))

## honey, honeycomb

### Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:4](#))

## honor

### Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: [dishonor](#), [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:4](#); [15:6](#); [15:8](#); [19:19](#))

## hope, hoped

### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated a, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [confidence](#), [good](#), [obey](#), [trust](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 2:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:6
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 1:5
- Job 11:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H0983, H0986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G00910, G05600, G16790, G16800, G20700

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:21](#))

# hour

## Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term “hour” is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes “hour” refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the “hour of prayer.”
- When the text says that the “hour had come” for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term “hour” is also used to mean “at that moment” or “right then.”
- When the text talks about the “hour” being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

## Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term “hour” can be translated as “time” or “moment” or “appointed time.”
- The phrase “in that very hour” or “the same hour” could be translated as “at that moment” or “at that time” or “immediately” or “right then.”
- The expression “the hour was late” could be translated as “it was late in the day” or “it would soon be getting dark” or “it was late afternoon.”

(See also: [hour](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:30
- Acts 10:30
- Mark 14:35

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G56100

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:13](#); [9:22](#); [10:19](#); [14:15](#); [15:28](#); [17:18](#); [18:1](#); [24:36](#); [24:44](#); [24:50](#); [25:13](#); [26:45](#); [26:55](#))

## hour, moment, immediately, for a while

### Definition:

The term “hour” is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean “time” or “moment.”

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 AM). For example, “the ninth hour” meant “around three in the afternoon.”
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 PM). For example, “the third hour of the night” meant “around nine in the evening” in our present-day system..
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as “around nine” or “about six o’clock” could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like “in the evening” or “in the morning” or “in the afternoon” to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, “in that hour” could be translated as “at that time” or “in that moment.”
- Referring to Jesus, the expression “his hour had come” could be translated as “the time had come for him to” or “the appointed time for him had come.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:15
- John 4:51-52
- Luke 23:44
- Matthew 20:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8160, G56100

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:3](#); [20:5](#); [20:9](#); [20:12](#); [26:40](#); [27:45](#); [27:46](#))

## house of God, Yahweh's house

### Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house)" refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped" (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people").
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 5:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 2:26
- Matthew 12:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G23160, G36240

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:4](#))

## house, household

### Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term “house” means “household,” referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term “house” means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshipped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: descendant, [house of God](#), tabernacle, [temple](#), house of David, kingdom of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#); [5:15](#); [7:24](#); [7:25](#); [7:26](#); [7:27](#); [8:6](#); [8:14](#); [9:6](#); [9:7](#); [9:10](#); [9:23](#); [9:28](#); [10:6](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [11:8](#); [12:4](#); [12:25](#); [12:29](#); [12:44](#); [13:1](#); [13:36](#); [15:24](#); [17:25](#); [19:29](#); [21:13](#); [23:38](#); [24:17](#); [24:43](#); [26:6](#))



## household

### Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:10
- Galatians 6:10
- Genesis 7:1
- Genesis 34:19
- John 4:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 4:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G23220, G36090, G36140, G36150, G36160, G36230, G36240

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:25](#); [10:36](#); [13:57](#); [24:45](#))

## humble, humbled, humility

### Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

### Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G08580, G42360, G42390, G42400, G50110, G50120, G50130, G53910

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:29](#); [18:4](#); [23:12](#))

## hypocrite, hypocrisy

### Definition:

The term “hypocrite” refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term “hypocrisy” refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages have an expression like “two-faced” that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
- Other ways to translate “hypocrite” could include “fraud” or “pretender” or “arrogant, deceitful person.”
- The term “hypocrisy” could be translated by, “deception” or “fake actions” or “pretending.”

### Bible References:

- Galatians 2:13
- Luke 6:41-42
- Luke 12:54-56
- Luke 13:15
- Mark 7:6-7
- Matthew 6:1-2
- Romans 12:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, H2611, H2612, G05050, G52720, G52730

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:2](#); [6:5](#); [6:16](#); [7:5](#); [15:7](#); [22:18](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:23](#); [23:25](#); [23:27](#); [23:28](#); [23:29](#); [24:51](#))

## image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue

### Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, [God](#), false god, image of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 7:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 1:23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G15040, G51790

(Go back to: [Matthew 22:20](#))

## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), Promised Land, [possess](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:5](#); [19:29](#); [21:38](#); [25:34](#))

## innocent

### Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: guilt)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:4** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:8** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:5](#); [12:7](#); [27:4](#); [27:24](#))

## **instruct, instruction, instructors**

### **Facts:**

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [teach](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Exodus 14:4
- Genesis 26:5
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 11:1
- Proverbs 1:30

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0241, H0376, H0559, H0631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G12560, G12990, G13190, G13210, G13780, G17810, G17850, G27270, G27530, G35590, G35600, G38110, G38520, G38530, G42640, G43670, G48220

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:5](#); [28:15](#))



## interpret, interpretation, interpreter

### Facts:

The terms "interpret" and "interpretation" refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The "interpretation" of the dream is the "explanation" of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term "interpret" can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term "interpret" could include, "figure out the meaning of" or "explain" or "give the meaning of."
- The term "interpretation" could also be translated as "explanation" or "meaning."

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Daniel](#), [dream](#), [prophet](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 4:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 7:15-16
- Luke 12:56

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7667, H7760, H7922, G12520, G13280, G13290, G13810, G19550, G20580, G31770, G47930

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:23](#))

## Isaac

### Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), descendant, [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), Sarah, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **5:6** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **6:5** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **7:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G24640

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:2](#); [8:11](#); [22:32](#))

# Isaiah

## Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Christ](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Jotham](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [Uzziah](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 1:1
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 1:1
- Mark 7:6
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 4:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:2** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:8** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G22680

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:3](#); [4:14](#); [8:17](#); [12:17](#); [13:14](#); [15:7](#))

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *\_Israel\_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave \_Israel\_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *\_Israel\_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:6](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [8:10](#); [9:33](#); [10:6](#); [10:23](#); [15:24](#); [15:31](#); [19:28](#); [27:9](#); [27:42](#))

## it is written

### Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law](#), [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 9:12
- Matthew 4:6
- Revelation 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G11250

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:5](#); [4:4](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:10](#); [11:10](#); [21:13](#); [26:24](#); [26:31](#))

## Jacob, Israel

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Leah, [Rachel](#), Zilpah, Bilhah, [deceive](#), Esau, [Isaac](#), Rebekah, Laban)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:2](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [8:11](#); [22:32](#))

## James (brother of Jesus)

### Facts:

James was a son of Mary and Joseph. He was one of Jesus' younger half-brothers.

- Jesus' other half-brothers were named Joseph, Judas, and Simon.
- During Jesus' lifetime, James and his brothers did not believe that Jesus was the Messiah.
- Later, after Jesus was raised from the dead, James believed in him and became a leader of the church in Jerusalem.
- The New Testament book of James is a letter that James wrote to Christians who had fled to other countries to escape persecution.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [church](#), Judas the son of James, [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 1:18-20
- Galatians 2:9-10
- James 1:1-3
- Jude 1:1-2
- Mark 9:1-3
- Matthew 13:54-56

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G23850

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:55](#))



## James (son of Alphaeus)

### Facts:

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
- He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:12-14
- Luke 6:14-16
- Mark 3:17-19
- Mark 14:32-34
- Matthew 10:2-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G23850

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:3](#))

## James (son of Zebedee)

### Facts:

James, a son of Zebedee, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He had a younger brother named John who was also one of Jesus' apostles.

- James and his brother John worked by fishing with their father Zebedee.
- James and John were nicknamed the "Sons of Thunder," perhaps because they got angry quickly.
- Peter, James, and John were Jesus' closest disciples and were with him for amazing events such as when Jesus was on a mountaintop with Elijah and Moses and when Jesus caused a dead little girl to come back to life.
- This is a different James than the one who wrote a book in the Bible. Some languages may have to write their names differently to make it clear that they were two different men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Elijah](#), [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [James \(son of Alphaeus\)](#), [Moses](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 9:28-29
- Mark 1:19-20
- Mark 1:29-31
- Mark 3:17
- Matthew 4:21-22
- Matthew 17:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G23850

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:21](#); [10:2](#); [17:1](#))

## Jehoram, Joram

### Facts:

“Jehoram” was the name of two kings in the Old Testament. Both kings were also known as “Joram.”

- One King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Judah for eight years. He was the son of King Jehoshaphat. This is the king that is most commonly known as Jehoram.
- The other King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Israel for twelve years. He was the son of King Ahab.
- King Jehoram of Judah reigned during the time that the prophets Jeremiah, Daniel, Obadiah, and Ezekiel were prophesying in the kingdom of Judah.
- The King Jehoram also reigned during some of the time that his father King Jehoshaphat was reigning over Judah.
- Some translations may choose to consistently use the name “Jehoram” when this king of Israel is mentioned and the name “Joram” for the king of Judah.
- Another way to clearly identify each one would be to include the name of his father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahab, [Jehoshaphat](#), Joram, [Judah](#), kingdom of Israel, Obadiah)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 22:48-50
- 2 Chronicles 21:3
- 2 Kings 11:1-3
- 2 Kings 12:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3088, H3141, G24960

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:8](#))

# Jehoshaphat

## Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a "recorder" for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), false god, [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10-12
- 1 Kings 4:17
- 2 Chronicles 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:17
- 2 Samuel 8:15-18
- Matthew 1:7-8

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, G24980

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:8](#))

# Jeremiah

## Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a "fountain of tears," to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah, [prophet](#), rebel, [suffer](#), well)

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:25
- Jeremiah 1:2
- Jeremiah 11:1
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Matthew 27:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **21:5** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G24080

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:17](#); [16:14](#); [27:9](#))

# Jericho

## Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jordan River](#), Joshua, [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:78
- Joshua 2:1-3
- Joshua 7:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:5** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G24100

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:29](#))

# Jerusalem

## Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [2:3](#); [3:5](#); [4:25](#); [5:35](#); [15:1](#); [16:21](#); [20:17](#); [20:18](#); [21:1](#); [21:10](#); [23:37](#))



## Jesse

### Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Boaz](#), descendant, [Jesus](#), [king](#), [prophet](#), [Ruth](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 3:32
- Matthew 1:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G24210

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:5](#); [1:6](#))

## Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."

- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G24240, G55470

(Go back to: Matthew 1:1; 1:16; 1:18; 1:21; 1:25; 2:1; 3:13; 3:15; 3:16; 4:1; 4:7; 4:10; 4:17; 7:28; 8:4; 8:10; 8:13; 8:14; 8:18; 8:20; 8:22; 8:34; 9:2; 9:4; 9:9; 9:10; 9:15; 9:19; 9:22; 9:23; 9:27; 9:28; 9:30; 9:35; 10:5; 11:1; 11:4; 11:7; 11:25; 12:1; 12:15; 13:1; 13:34; 13:53; 13:57; 14:1; 14:12; 14:13; 14:16; 14:27; 14:29; 14:31; 15:1; 15:21; 15:28; 15:29; 15:32; 15:34; 16:6; 16:8; 16:13; 16:17; 16:21; 16:24; 17:1; 17:4; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:17; 17:18; 17:19; 17:22; 17:25; 17:26; 18:1; 18:22; 19:1; 19:14; 19:18; 19:21; 19:23; 19:26; 19:28; 20:17; 20:22; 20:25; 20:30; 20:32; 20:34; 21:1; 21:6; 21:11; 21:12; 21:16; 21:21; 21:24; 21:27; 21:31; 21:42; 22:1; 22:18; 22:29; 22:41; 23:1; 24:1; 24:4; 26:1; 26:4; 26:6; 26:10; 26:17; 26:19; 26:26; 26:31; 26:34; 26:36; 26:49; 26:50; 26:51; 26:52; 26:55; 26:57; 26:59; 26:63; 26:64; 26:69; 26:71; 26:75; 27:1; 27:11; 27:17; 27:20; 27:22; 27:26; 27:27; 27:37; 27:46; 27:50; 27:54; 27:55; 27:57; 27:58; 28:5; 28:9; 28:10; 28:16; 28:18)

## Jew, Jewish

### Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:5
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 3:11
- John 2:14
- Matthew 28:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G24500, G24510, G24520, G24530, G24540

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:2](#); [27:11](#); [27:29](#); [27:37](#); [28:15](#))

## John (the apostle)

### Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The Apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the Apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [reveal](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Zebedee](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 2:9-10
- John 1:19-21
- Mark 3:17-19
- Matthew 4:21-22
- Revelation 1:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **36:1** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.
- **44:1** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.
- **44:6** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.
- **44:7** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"
- **44:9** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24910

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:21](#); [10:2](#); [17:1](#))

## John (the Baptist)

### Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since “John” was a common name, he is often called “John the Baptist” to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called “John the Baptist” because he baptized many people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [baptize](#), Zechariah (NT))

### Bible References:

- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:11-13
- Luke 1:62-63
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 3:15-16
- Luke 7:27-28
- Matthew 3:13
- Matthew 11:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:2** The angel said to Zechariah, “Your wife will have a son. You will name him **John**. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit, and will prepare the people for Messiah!”
- **22:7** After Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy, Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby **John**, as the angel had commanded.
- **24:1 John**, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to **John**. He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by **John**. When **John** saw him, he said, “Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09100 G24910

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [4:12](#); [9:14](#); [11:2](#); [11:4](#); [11:7](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:13](#); [11:18](#); [14:2](#); [14:3](#); [14:4](#); [14:8](#); [14:10](#); [16:14](#); [17:13](#); [21:25](#); [21:26](#); [21:32](#))

# Jonah

## Definition:

Jonah was a Hebrew prophet in the Old Testament.

- The book of Jonah tells the story of what happened when God sent Jonah to preach to the people of Nineveh.
- Jonah refused to go to Nineveh and instead got on a ship headed for a Tarshish.
- God caused a huge storm to overwhelm that ship.
- Jonah told the men sailing the ship that he was running away from God, and he suggested that they throw him into the sea. When they did that, the storm stopped and the sailors offered a sacrifice to Yahweh.
- Jonah was swallowed by a huge fish, and he was inside the belly of that fish for three days and nights.
- After that, Jonah went to Nineveh and preached to the people there, and the people stopped acting so violently toward others.
- Jonah became angry at God for not destroying Nineveh, and God used a plant and a worm to teach Jonah a lesson about compassion.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: disobey, [Nineveh](#), [turn](#))

## Bible References:

- Jonah 1:3
- Luke 11:30
- Matthew 12:39
- Matthew 16:4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3124, G24950

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:39](#); [12:40](#); [12:41](#); [16:4](#))

## Jordan River, Jordan

### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:13](#); [4:15](#); [4:25](#); [19:1](#))



## Joseph (NT)

### Facts:

Joseph was Jesus' earthly father and raised him as his son. He was a righteous man who worked as a carpenter.

- Joseph became engaged to a Jewish girl named Mary, while they were engaged God chose her to become the mother of Jesus the Messiah.
- An angel told Joseph that the Holy Spirit had miraculously caused Mary to be pregnant, and that Mary's baby was the Son of God.
- After Jesus was born, an angel warned Joseph to take the baby and Mary to Egypt in order to escape from Herod.
- Joseph and his family later lived in the city of Nazareth of Galilee, where he earned a living doing carpentry work.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), [Jesus](#), [Nazareth](#), [Son of God](#), [virgin](#))

### Bible References:

- John 1:43-45
- Luke 1:26-29
- Luke 2:4-5
- Luke 2:15-16
- Matthew 1:18-19
- Matthew 1:24-25
- Matthew 2:19-21
- Matthew 13:54-56

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** She (Mary) was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named **Joseph**.
- **23:1 Joseph**, the man Mary was engaged to, was a righteous man. When he heard that Mary was pregnant, he knew it was not his baby. He did not want to shame her, so he planned to quietly divorce her.
- **23:2** The angel said, "**Joseph**, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit. She will give birth to a son. Name him Jesus (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **23:3** So **Joseph** married Mary and took her home as his wife, but he did not sleep with her until she had given birth.
- **23:4 Joseph** and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:4** Jesus said, "The words I just read to you are happening right now." All the people were amazed. "Isn't this the son of **Joseph**?" they said.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G25010

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:16](#); [1:18](#); [1:19](#); [1:20](#); [1:24](#); [2:13](#); [2:19](#))

# Josiah

## Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: false god, [Judah](#), law, [Passover](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:3
- Jeremiah 1:3
- Matthew 1:11

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2977, G25020

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:10](#); [1:11](#))

## Jotham

### Definition:

In the Old Testament, there were three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, by not removing the places of idol worship he caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: Abimelech, [Ahaz](#), Gideon, [Uzziah](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Kings 15:5
- Isaiah 1:1
- Judges 9:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3147

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:9](#))

## joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

### Definition:

#### joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:10](#); [5:12](#); [13:20](#); [13:44](#); [18:13](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [28:8](#))

# Judah

## Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Judah \(kingdom\)](#), [Jew](#), [Judea](#), [Jacob](#), [Leah](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [2:6](#))

## Judas Iscariot

### Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

- The name "Iscariot" may mean "from Kerioth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
- Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
- Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
- After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
- One of the other apostles of Jesus was Judas son of James. He was not the same person as Judas Iscariot.
- One of Jesus' brothers was named Judas. He was later known as "Jude." He was not the same person as Judas Iscariot.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [betray](#), Jewish leaders, Judas the son of James)

### Bible References:

- Luke 6:14-16
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 3:19
- Mark 14:10-11
- Matthew 26:23-25

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **38:2** One of Jesus' disciples was a man named **Judas**. ... After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, **Judas** went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:3** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid **Judas** thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **38:14** **Judas** came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were all carrying swords and clubs. **Judas** came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, teacher," and kissed him.
- **39:8** Meanwhile, **Judas**, the betrayer, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24550, G24690

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:4](#); [26:14](#); [26:25](#); [26:47](#); [27:3](#))

## Judea, Judah

### Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Galilee](#), [Edom](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24530

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [2:5](#); [2:22](#); [3:1](#); [3:5](#); [4:25](#); [19:1](#); [24:16](#))



# judge

## Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [judge](#), [law](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:8
- Acts 7:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 5:25
- Ruth 1:1

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G03500, G12520, G13480, G29190, G29220, G29230

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:25](#); [12:27](#))

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, [judge](#), judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:21](#); [5:22](#); [5:40](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [10:15](#); [11:22](#); [11:24](#); [12:36](#); [12:41](#); [12:42](#); [19:28](#); [23:33](#))

## just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

### Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:45](#); [11:19](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [12:37](#); [23:23](#))

## kind [NOT kindness]

### Definition:

The term “kind” refers to a group or classification of something(s) that share some common characteristics but not all characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

### Bible References:

- Genesis 1:21
- Genesis 1:24
- Mark 9:29
- Matthew 13:47

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2178, H3978, H4327, G10850, G54490

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:47](#))

## King of the Jews

### Definition:

The term “King of the Jews” is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

- The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was “King of the Jews.”
- The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
- Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus “King of the Jews.” This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus’ cross.
- Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “King of the Jews” could also be translated as “king over the Jews” or “king who rules over the Jews” or “supreme ruler of the Jews.”
- Check to see how the phrase “king of” is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: descendant, [Jew](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), wise men)

### Bible References:

- Luke 23:3
- Luke 23:38
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 27:11
- Matthew 27:35-37

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:9** Some time later, wise men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky. They realized it meant a new **king of the Jews** was born.
- **39:9** Pilate asked Jesus, “Are you the **King of the Jews**?”
- **39:12** The Roman soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, “Look, the **King of the Jews**!”
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, “**King of the Jews**” on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus’ head.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G09350, G24530

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:2](#); [27:11](#); [27:29](#); [27:37](#))

## king, kingship

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:6](#); [2:1](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:9](#); [5:35](#); [10:18](#); [11:8](#); [14:9](#); [17:25](#); [18:23](#); [21:5](#); [22:2](#); [22:7](#); [22:11](#); [22:13](#); [25:34](#); [25:40](#); [27:11](#); [27:29](#); [27:37](#); [27:42](#))



# kingdom

## Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:8](#); [12:25](#); [12:26](#); [13:44](#); [24:7](#))

## kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

### Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [King of the Jews](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 4:11
- John 3:3
- Luke 7:28
- Luke 10:9
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 3:2
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 5:10
- Romans 14:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:6** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God!** Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God.**”
- **29:2** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:1** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”

- **34:3** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- **34:4** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:5** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:9** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:5** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G09320, G23160, G37720

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:2](#); [4:17](#); [4:23](#); [5:3](#); [5:10](#); [5:19](#); [5:20](#); [6:10](#); [6:33](#); [7:21](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [9:35](#); [10:7](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [12:28](#); [13:11](#); [13:19](#); [13:24](#); [13:31](#); [13:33](#); [13:38](#); [13:41](#); [13:43](#); [13:44](#); [13:45](#); [13:47](#); [13:52](#); [16:19](#); [16:28](#); [18:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:23](#); [19:12](#); [19:14](#); [19:23](#); [19:24](#); [20:1](#); [20:21](#); [21:31](#); [21:43](#); [22:2](#); [23:13](#); [24:14](#); [25:1](#); [25:34](#); [26:29](#))

# kiss

## Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G27050, G53680, G53700

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:48](#); [26:49](#))

## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:25](#); [6:3](#); [6:8](#); [6:32](#); [7:11](#); [7:16](#); [7:20](#); [7:23](#); [9:6](#); [9:30](#); [10:26](#); [11:27](#); [12:7](#); [12:15](#); [12:25](#); [12:33](#); [14:35](#); [15:12](#); [16:8](#); [17:12](#); [20:22](#); [20:25](#); [21:27](#); [21:45](#); [22:16](#); [22:18](#); [22:29](#); [24:32](#); [24:33](#); [24:36](#); [24:39](#); [24:42](#); [24:43](#); [24:50](#); [25:12](#); [25:13](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#); [26:2](#); [26:10](#); [26:70](#); [26:72](#); [26:74](#); [27:18](#); [27:65](#); [28:5](#))

## labor, laborer, work, hard work

### Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), labor pains)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:9
- 1 Thessalonians 3:5
- Galatians 4:10-11
- James 5:4
- John 4:38
- Luke 10:2
- Matthew 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G00750, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730, G48660, G49040

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:28](#); [7:23](#); [9:37](#); [9:38](#); [10:10](#); [11:28](#); [20:1](#); [20:2](#); [20:8](#); [21:28](#); [25:16](#))



# lamp

## Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [light](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 8:16-18
- Matthew 5:15
- Matthew 6:22
- Matthew 25:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G29850, G30880

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:15](#); [6:22](#); [25:1](#); [25:3](#); [25:4](#); [25:7](#); [25:8](#))

# lampstand

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- The lampstand would be tall enough so that the light of the lamp could shine throughout the room.
- The lampstand could be made of wood or metal and could hold one or more lamps.
- Ordinary lamps were made of clay, and lamps for special purposes, such as for the temple, were made of metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- The lamps were in the shape of a bowl with a raised lip on one side that held a wick. The lamps were filled with olive oil that soaked the wick and burned when the wick was lighted.
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand that had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

## Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- Daniel 5:5-6
- Exodus 37:17
- Mark 4:21-23
- Matthew 5:15-16
- Revelation 1:12-13
- Revelation 1:20

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4501, G30870

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:15](#))

## law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

### Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, [lawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 5:17](#); [5:18](#); [7:12](#); [11:13](#); [12:5](#); [Notes](#); [22:36](#); [22:40](#); [23:23](#))

## lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

### Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful,” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, something was “lawful” if it was permitted by God’s moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was “unlawful” was “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God’s laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include “permitted” or “according to God’s law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful?” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow?” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

The terms “unlawful” and “not lawful” are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term “unlawful” is not only used to refer to breaking God’s laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something “unlawful” if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something “unlawful” because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was “unlawful” for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness,” there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term “unlawful” should be translated using a word or expression that means “not lawful” or “lawbreaking.”
- Other ways to translate “unlawful” could be “not permitted” or “not according to God’s law” or “not conforming to our laws.”
- The expression “against the law” has the same meaning as “unlawful.”
- The term “lawless” could also be translated as “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying”.
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase “man of lawlessness” could be translated as “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God’s laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: law, [law](#), [Moses](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- Matthew 7:21-23

- Matthew 12:2
- Matthew 12:4
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 3:4
- Luke 6:2
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3
- Titus 2:14
- 1 John 3:4-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6530, G01110, G01130, G02660, G04580, G04590, G18320, G35450

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:23](#); [12:2](#); [12:4](#); [12:10](#); [12:12](#); [13:41](#); [14:4](#); [19:3](#); [20:15](#); [22:17](#); [23:28](#); [24:12](#); [27:6](#))

## learned men, astrologers

### Definition:

In Matthew's account of the birth of Christ, the "learned" or "educated" men were the "wise men" who brought gifts to Jesus in Bethlehem sometime after his birth there. They may have been "astrologers," people who study the stars.

- These men traveled a long way from a country far to the east of Israel. It is not known exactly where they came from or who they were. But they were obviously scholars who had studied the stars.
- They may have been descendants of the wise men who served the Babylonian kings in Daniel's time and who were trained in many things, including studying the stars and interpreting dreams.
- Traditionally it has been said that there were three wise men or learned men because of the three gifts they brought to Jesus. However, the Bible text does not say how many there were.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Daniel](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 2:27
- Daniel 5:7
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:7
- Matthew 2:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1505, G30970

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [2:7](#); [2:16](#))

## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14



## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:20](#); [4:4](#); [6:25](#); [7:14](#); [9:18](#); [10:39](#); [16:16](#); [16:25](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [19:16](#); [19:17](#); [19:29](#); [20:28](#); [22:32](#); [25:46](#); [26:63](#); [27:63](#))

## light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten

### Definition:

The term “light” is used figuratively in various ways in the Bible. Light is often used as a metaphor for wisdom, life, righteousness, truth, or happiness.

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [wisdom](#), [life](#), [righteous](#), [true](#), [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 John 2:8
- 2 Corinthians 4:6
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 2:5
- John 1:5
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 6:23
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0216, H0217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G06810, G07960, G16450, G29850, G30880, G53380, G54570, G54580, G54600, G54620

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:16](#); [5:14](#); [5:16](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [10:27](#); [17:2](#); [24:29](#))

## like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder." (See: [Simile](#))
- To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
- The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
- The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
- The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:5
- Mark 8:24
- Matthew 17:2
- Matthew 18:3
- Psalms 73:5
- Revelation 1:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1823, H8403, H8544, G15030, G15040, G25090, G25310, G25960, G36640, G36650, G36660, G36670, G36680, G36690, G36970, G48330, G51080, G56130, G56150, G56160, G56180, G56190

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:24](#); [3:16](#); [5:48](#); [6:2](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:10](#); [6:12](#); [6:16](#); [6:29](#); [7:24](#); [7:26](#); [7:29](#); [8:13](#); [9:36](#); [10:16](#); [10:25](#); [11:16](#); [12:13](#); [12:40](#); [13:24](#); [13:40](#); [13:43](#); [13:44](#); [13:45](#); [13:47](#); [13:52](#); [14:5](#); [15:28](#); [17:2](#); [17:20](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:17](#); [18:23](#); [18:33](#); [19:19](#); [20:1](#); [20:5](#); [20:14](#); [20:28](#); [21:6](#); [21:26](#); [21:30](#); [21:36](#); [22:2](#); [22:26](#); [22:30](#); [22:39](#); [24:27](#); [24:37](#); [24:38](#); [25:1](#); [25:14](#); [25:17](#); [25:32](#); [26:19](#); [26:24](#); [26:35](#); [26:39](#); [26:55](#); [27:41](#); [27:65](#); [28:3](#); [28:4](#); [28:6](#); [28:15](#))

## locust

### Facts:

The term “locust” refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many other of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel's disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: captive, [Egypt](#), [Israel](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), plague)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:28
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Mark 1:6
- Proverbs 30:27-28

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G02000

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:4](#))

## loins, waist

### Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, gird, [children](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- 2 Chronicles 6:9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G37510

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:4](#))

## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:20](#); [1:22](#); [1:24](#); [2:13](#); [2:15](#); [2:19](#); [3:3](#); [4:7](#); [4:10](#); [5:33](#); [6:24](#); [7:21](#); [7:22](#); [8:2](#); [8:6](#); [8:8](#); [8:21](#); [8:25](#); [9:28](#); [9:38](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [11:25](#); [12:8](#); [13:27](#); [14:28](#); [14:30](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [15:27](#); [16:22](#); [17:4](#); [17:15](#); [18:21](#); [18:25](#); [18:26](#); [18:27](#); [18:31](#); [18:32](#); [18:34](#); [20:8](#); [20:11](#); [20:30](#); [20:31](#); [20:33](#); [21:3](#); [21:9](#); [21:30](#); [21:40](#); [21:42](#); [22:37](#); [22:43](#); [22:44](#); [22:45](#); [23:39](#); [24:42](#); [24:43](#); [24:45](#); [24:46](#); [24:48](#); [24:50](#); [25:11](#); [25:18](#); [25:19](#); [25:20](#); [25:21](#); [25:22](#); [25:23](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#); [25:37](#); [25:44](#); [26:22](#); [27:10](#); [27:63](#); [28:2](#))

## lots, casting lots

### Definition:

In the Bible, a “lot” is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. “Casting lots” refers to the process of using “lots” to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the “lots”) were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the “lots” actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “throwing lots” or “rolling lots.” The translation of “cast” should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made “by lot,” this could be translated as “by casting lots” or “by throwing lots,” etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

### Bible References:

- Jonah 1:7
- Luke 1:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 22:18-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H5307, G28190, G29750

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:35](#))



## love, beloved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:43](#); [5:44](#); [5:46](#); [6:5](#); [6:24](#); [10:37](#); [19:19](#); [22:37](#); [22:39](#); [23:6](#); [24:12](#))

## **lust, lustful, passions, desires**

### **Definition:**

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or to “strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase to “lust after” could be translated as to “wrongly desire” or to “think immorally about” or to “immorally desire.”

(See also: [adultery](#), false god)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 Timothy 2:22
- Galatians 5:16
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 5:28

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0183, H0185, H0310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G07660, G19370, G19390, G22370, G37150, G38060

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:28](#))

## manager, steward, stewardship

### Definition:

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:4-5
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 8:3
- Luke 16:2
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 1:7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G20120, G36210, G36230

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:8](#))

# Manasseh

## Facts:

Manasseh was the older son of Joseph. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Manasseh is similar to the Hebrew word meaning “to forget.”
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the “half-tribe of Manasseh” because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh. King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Three other men named Manasseh are mentioned in the Old Testament. One of them was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods. The other two were men who lived during the time of Ezra and were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joseph, Ephraim, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:9
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Genesis 41:51
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 1:27-28

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4519, H4520, G31280

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:10](#))

## Mary Magdalene

### Facts:

Mary Magdalene was one of several women who believed in Jesus and followed him in his ministry. She was known as the one whom Jesus had healed from seven demons who had controlled her.

- Mary Magdalene and some other women helped support Jesus and his apostles by giving to them.
- She is also mentioned as one of the women who were the first to see Jesus after he rose from the dead.
- As Mary Magdalene stood outside the empty tomb, she saw Jesus standing there and he told her to go tell the other disciples that he was alive again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [demon-possessed](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 8:1-3
- Luke 24:8-10
- Mark 15:39-41
- Matthew 27:54-56

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G30940, G31370

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:56](#); [27:61](#); [28:1](#))

## Mary, the mother of Jesus

### Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

- The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
- An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
- Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
- Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
- Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
- Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
- When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
- The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cana](#), [Egypt](#), [Herod the Great](#), [Jesus](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Son of God](#), [virgin](#))

### Bible References:

- John 2:4
- John 2:12
- Luke 1:29
- Luke 1:35
- Mark 6:3
- Matthew 1:16
- Matthew 1:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** When Elizabeth was six months pregnant, the same angel appeared to Elizabeth's relative, whose name was **Mary**. She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah."
- **22:5** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God." **Mary** believed and accepted what the angel said.
- **22:6** Soon after the angel spoke to **Mary**, she went and visited Elizabeth. As soon as Elizabeth heard **Mary's** greeting, Elizabeth's baby jumped inside her.
- **23:2** The angel said, "Joseph, do not be afraid to take **Mary** as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit."
- **23:4** Joseph and **Mary** had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **49:1** An angel told a virgin named **Mary** that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a virgin, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G31370

**(Go back to: [Matthew 1:16](#); [1:18](#); [1:20](#); [2:11](#); [13:55](#))**



## Matthew, Levi

### Facts:

Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi, son of Alpheus.

- Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
- Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
- There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Levite](#), [tax collector](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 5:27
- Luke 6:14-16
- Mark 2:14
- Mark 3:17-19
- Matthew 9:9
- Matthew 10:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G30170, G31560

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:9](#); [10:3](#))

## meek, meekness

### Definition:

The term “meek” describes a person who is gentle, submissive, and willing to suffer injustice. Meekness is the ability to be gentle even when harshness or force might seem appropriate.

- Meekness is often associated with humility.
- This term could also be translated as “gentle” or “mild-mannered” or “sweet-tempered.”
- The term “meekness” could be translated as “gentleness” or “humility.”

(See also: [humble](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Corinthians 10:1-2
- 2 Timothy 2:25
- Matthew 5:5
- Matthew 11:29
- Psalms 37:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6035, H6037, G42350, G42360, G42390, G42400

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:5](#); [11:29](#))

## member, body parts

### Definition:

The term “member” refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as “members” of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the “head” of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called “members” of these groups.

(See also: [body](#), [Pharisee](#), [council](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:2
- Romans 12:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, H8212, G10100, G31960, G36090

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:29](#); [5:30](#))

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:9** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:7](#); [9:13](#); [9:27](#); [12:7](#); [15:22](#); [17:15](#); [18:33](#); [20:30](#); [20:31](#); [23:23](#))

## messenger

### Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [apostle](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:10](#))

## might, mighty, mighty works

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:11](#))

## mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

### Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 6:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 4:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G12710, G13740, G33280, G35250, G35400, G35630, G49930, G55900

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:23](#); [22:37](#))



## miracle, wonder, sign

### Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:22](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [11:23](#); [13:54](#); [13:58](#); [21:15](#))

## mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

### Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:4
- Acts 2:12-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 9:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:5** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G15920, G17010, G17020, G17030, G23010, G26060, G34560, G55120

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:19](#); [27:29](#); [27:31](#); [27:41](#))

## Moses

### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:4](#); [17:3](#); [17:4](#); [19:7](#); [19:8](#); [22:24](#); [23:2](#))

## Mount of Olives

### Definition:

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

- In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as “the mountain that is east of Jerusalem.”
- The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
- Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
- This could also be translated as “Olive Hill” or “Olive Tree Mountain.”

(See also: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gethsemane](#), [olive](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 19:29
- Luke 19:37
- Mark 13:3
- Matthew 21:1-3
- Matthew 24:3-5
- Matthew 26:30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2022, H2132, G37350, G16360

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:1](#); [24:3](#); [26:30](#))

## mourn, mourner, weeping

### Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:18](#); [5:4](#); [9:15](#); [24:30](#))

## **multiply, multiplied, multiplication**

### **Definition:**

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G40520, G41290

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:12](#))

## myrrh

### Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: [frankincense](#), [learned men](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 30:22-25
- Genesis 37:25-26
- John 11:1-2
- Mark 15:23
- Matthew 2:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3910, H4753, G34640, G46660, G46690

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#))



## mystery, hidden truth

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something that we cannot know or understand unless God reveals it or explains it to us.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden truth” or “previously unknown thing.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [Jew](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 4:2-4
- Ephesians 6:19-20
- Luke 8:9-10
- Mark 4:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1219, H7328, G34660

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:11](#))

## name

### Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:21](#); [1:23](#); [1:25](#); [6:9](#); [7:22](#); [10:2](#); [10:22](#); [10:41](#); [10:42](#); [12:21](#); [18:5](#); [18:20](#); [19:29](#); [21:9](#); [23:39](#); [24:5](#); [24:9](#); [27:32](#); [27:57](#); [28:19](#))

# Naphtali

## Facts:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Bilhah](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:13](#); [4:15](#))

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), Greek, [people group](#), Philistines, Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:43](#); [24:7](#); [24:9](#); [24:14](#); [25:32](#); [28:19](#))

## Nazareth, Nazarene

### Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it takes about three to five days to travel there on foot.

- Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as “the Nazarene.”
- Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus’ teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
- Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareth’s synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
- The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Mary](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:9-11
- John 1:43-45
- Luke 1:26-29
- Mark 16:5-7
- Matthew 2:23
- Matthew 21:9-11
- Matthew 26:71-72

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:4** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in **Nazareth** to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of **Nazareth** where he had lived during his childhood.
- **26:7** The people of **Nazareth** dragged Jesus out of the place of worship and brought him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G34780, G34790, G34800

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:23](#); [4:13](#); [21:11](#); [26:71](#))

## neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

### Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26-28
- Ephesians 4:25-27
- Galatians 5:14
- James 2:8
- John 9:8-9
- Luke 1:58
- Matthew 5:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G10690, G20870, G40400, G41390

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:43](#); [19:19](#); [22:39](#))

## Nineveh, Ninevite

### Facts:

Nineveh was the capital city of Assyrian empire. A "Ninevite" was a person who lived in Nineveh.

- God sent the prophet Jonah to warn the Ninevites to turn from their wicked ways. The people stopped acting so violently and God did not destroy them at that time.
- The prophets Nahum and Zephaniah both prophesied that God would destroy Nineveh as judgment for their sin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Assyria, [Jonah](#), [repent](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Jonah 1:3
- Jonah 3:3
- Luke 11:32
- Matthew 12:41

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5210, G35350, G35360

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:41](#))



# Noah

## Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: descendant, [ark](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 5:30-31
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:8
- Genesis 8:1
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **3:4** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **3:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, "You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth." So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G35750

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:37](#); [24:38](#))

## **oath, swear, swearing, swear by**

### **Definition:**

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), vow)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:33](#); [5:34](#); [5:36](#); [14:7](#); [14:9](#); [23:16](#); [23:18](#); [23:20](#); [23:21](#); [23:22](#); [26:72](#); [26:74](#))

## obey, keep

### Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal. In the Bible, often the term “keep” means “to obey.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), disobey, [kingdom](#), law)

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:32
- Acts 6:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 1:25
- James 2:10
- Luke 6:47
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **5:6** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **5:10** “Because you (Abraham) have *\_obeyed\_* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **5:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:7** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G01910, G39800, G39820, G50830, G50840, G52180, G52190, G52550, G52920, G52930, G54420

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:27](#); [19:17](#); [23:3](#); [28:20](#))

# oil

## Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

(Go back to: [Matthew 25:3](#); [25:4](#); [25:8](#); [26:7](#); [26:12](#))

## olive

### Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), the sea, [Mount of Olives](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:3](#); [26:30](#))

## on high, in the highest

### Definition:

The terms “on high” and “in the highest” are expressions that usually mean “in heaven.”

- Another meaning for the expression “in the highest” could be “the most honored.”
- This expression could also be used literally, as in the expression “in the highest tree,” which means “in the tallest tree.”
- The expression “on high” could also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird’s nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as “high in the sky” or “at the top of a tall tree.”
- The word “high” could also indicate the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
- The expression “from on high” could be translated as “from heaven.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- Lamentations 1:13
- Psalms 69:29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4605, H4791, H7682, G17220, G53080, G53100, G53110

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:9](#))

## ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared

### Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term “ordain” often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to “ordain” could be translated as to “assign” or to “appoint” or to “command” or to “make a rule” or to “institute.”

(See also: [command](#), [covenant](#), decree, law, [law](#), [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 3:3
- Psalms 111:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G12990, G25250, G42700, G42820

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:16](#))

## parable

### Definition:

The term “parable” usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- A parable could be used to reveal truth to his disciples while hiding that truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in Jesus.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus’ comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus’ teachings.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 5:36
- Luke 6:39
- Luke 8:4
- Luke 8:9-10
- Mark 4:1
- Matthew 13:3
- Matthew 13:10
- Matthew 13:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1819, H4912, G38500, G39420

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 13:3](#); [13:10](#); [13:13](#); [13:18](#); [13:24](#); [13:31](#); [13:33](#); [13:34](#); [13:35](#); [13:36](#); [13:53](#); [15:15](#); [21:33](#); [21:45](#); [22:1](#); [24:32](#))



## Passover

### Facts:

The "Passover" is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God "passed over" the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God "passed over" their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "Passover" could be translated by combining the words "pass" and "over" or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:7
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 6:21-22
- John 13:1
- Joshua 5:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 9:3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:1** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:4** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:9** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G39570

**(Go back to: [Matthew 26:2](#); [26:17](#); [26:18](#); [26:19](#))**

## patient, patience, impatient

### Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), [forgive](#), persevere)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- 2 Peter 3:8-9
- Hebrews 6:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 37:7
- Revelation 2:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0750, H0753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G04200, G04630, G19330, G31140, G31150, G31160, G52780, G52810

(Go back to: [Matthew 18:26](#); [18:29](#))

## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:13](#); [10:34](#))

## people of God

### Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the “sons of God” or “children of God.”
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:21](#))

## people, people group

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:21](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [4:16](#); [4:23](#); [13:15](#); [15:8](#); [21:23](#); [26:3](#); [26:5](#); [26:47](#); [27:1](#); [27:25](#); [27:64](#))

## perfect, complete

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be “perfect” or “complete,” that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

(See also: blemish)

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:2
- James 3:2
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Psalms 19:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G01990, G26750, G26760, G36470, G50460, G50470, G50480, G50500

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:48](#); [19:21](#))



# perish

## Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

## Spiritual Meaning of “Perish:”

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God’s punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God’s people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:29](#); [5:30](#); [8:25](#); [8:32](#); [9:17](#); [10:6](#); [10:28](#); [10:39](#); [10:42](#); [15:24](#); [16:25](#); [18:14](#); [21:41](#); [22:7](#); [26:52](#))

## persecute

### Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, [church](#), oppress, Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 1:13-14
- John 5:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 5:10
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 3:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:2** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:4** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G13750, G13760, G13770, G15590, G23470

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:10](#); [5:11](#); [5:12](#); [5:44](#); [10:23](#); [13:21](#); [23:34](#))

## **perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, dishonest, distortion**

### **Definition:**

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “Perverse speech” could be translated as “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “Perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [deceive](#), disobey, [evil](#), [turn](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 8:47
- 1 Samuel 20:30
- Job 33:27-28
- Luke 23:2
- Psalms 101:4-6

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1942, H2015, H3868, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G12940

(Go back to: [Matthew 17:17](#))

## Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

### Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [disciple](#), [apostle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:25
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 3:16
- Matthew 4:18-20
- Matthew 8:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **28:9** Peter said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?"
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told Peter, "Come!"
- **36:1** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and John with him.
- **38:9** Peter replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times."
- **38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, Peter pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G27860, G40740, G46130

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:18](#); [8:14](#); [10:2](#); [14:28](#); [14:29](#); [15:15](#); [16:16](#); [16:17](#); [16:18](#); [16:22](#); [16:23](#); [17:1](#); [17:4](#); [17:24](#); [17:25](#); [18:21](#); [19:27](#); [26:33](#); [26:35](#); [26:37](#); [26:40](#); [26:58](#); [26:69](#); [26:73](#); [26:75](#))

## Pharisee

### Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: [council](#), Jewish leaders, [law](#), [Sadducee](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:4
- John 3:1-2
- Luke 11:44
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 5:20
- Matthew 9:11
- Matthew 12:2
- Matthew 12:38
- Philippians 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G53300

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:7](#); [5:20](#); [9:11](#); [9:14](#); [9:34](#); [12:2](#); [12:14](#); [12:24](#); [12:38](#); [15:1](#); [15:12](#); [16:1](#); [16:6](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [19:3](#); [21:45](#); [22:15](#); [22:34](#); [22:41](#); [23:2](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:23](#); [23:25](#); [23:26](#); [23:27](#); [23:29](#); [27:62](#))

## Philip, the apostle

### Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

- Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
- Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
- At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
- Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Philip)

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:14
- John 1:44
- John 6:6
- Luke 6:14
- Mark 3:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G53760

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:3](#))

## pig, pork, swine

### Definition:

A pig is a type of four-legged, hoofed animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called “pork.” The general term for pigs and related animals is “swine.”

- God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
- Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
- There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a “wild boar.” Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
- Sometimes large pigs are referred to as “hogs.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:22
- Mark 5:13
- Matthew 7:6
- Matthew 8:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2386, G55190

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:6](#); [8:30](#); [8:31](#); [8:32](#))

## Pilate

### Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [governor](#), [guilt](#), [Judea](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:27-28
- Acts 13:28
- Luke 23:2
- Mark 15:2
- Matthew 27:13
- Matthew 27:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:9** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to **Pilate**, the Roman governor. They hoped that **Pilate** would condemn Jesus as guilty and sentenced him to be killed. **Pilate** asked Jesus, "Are you the King of the Jews?"
- **39:10** **Pilate** said, "What is truth?"
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, **Pilate** went out to the crowd and said, "I find no guilt in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" **Pilate** replied, "He is not guilty." But they shouted even louder. Then **Pilate** said a third time, "He is not guilty!"
- **39:12** **Pilate** became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.
- **40:2** **Pilate** commanded that a sign be put above Jesus' head that read, "King of the Jews."
- **41:2** **Pilate** said, "Take some soldiers and make the tomb as secure as you can."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G40910, G41940

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:2](#); [27:13](#); [27:17](#); [27:22](#); [27:24](#); [27:58](#); [27:62](#); [27:65](#))



## pit, pitfall, trenches, cistern

### Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- A “cistern” was a hole dug in order to hold water.
- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [prison](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:18
- Luke 6:39
- Proverbs 1:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0875, H0953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G00120, G09990, G54210

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:11](#); [15:14](#))

## plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow

### Definition:

A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively, as in “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

### Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [good](#), [harvest](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 6:8
- Luke 8:5
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:4
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G46870, G47030, G54520

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:26](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:18](#); [13:19](#); [13:20](#); [13:22](#); [13:23](#); [13:24](#); [13:25](#); [13:27](#); [13:31](#); [13:37](#); [13:39](#); [15:13](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#))

## possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#), [inherit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:2](#); [6:5](#); [6:16](#); [19:21](#); [19:22](#); [21:38](#); [24:47](#); [25:14](#))

## power, powerful, powerfully

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [strength](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Colossians 1:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 1:25
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 3:21
- Psalm 80:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G14110, G14150, G17540, G17560, G18490, G18500, G21590, G24780, G24790, G29040, G31680

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:28](#); [14:2](#); [22:29](#); [24:29](#); [24:30](#); [26:64](#))

## praise, praised, praiseworthy

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:25; 21:16](#))

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, [forgive](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:44](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [6:9](#); [14:23](#); [19:13](#); [21:13](#); [21:22](#); [24:20](#); [26:36](#); [26:39](#); [26:41](#); [26:42](#); [26:44](#))

## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [declare](#), [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.



- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:1](#); [4:17](#); [4:23](#); [9:35](#); [10:7](#); [10:27](#); [11:1](#); [12:41](#); [24:14](#); [26:13](#))

## precious, valuable, expensive, fine

### Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:1
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 1:7
- Luke 7:2-5
- Psalms 36:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H1431, H2532, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H5238, H8443, G09270, G17840, G24720, G41850, G41860, G50920, G50930

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:46](#))

## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, [high priest](#), mediator, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:4](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#))

## prison, prisoner, imprison

### Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:4
- Ephesians 4:1
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 6:17
- Matthew 5:26
- Matthew 14:3
- Matthew 25:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0612, H0613, H0615, H0616, H0631, H0953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G11980, G11990, G12000, G12010, G12020, G12100, G22520, G36120, G47880, G48690, G50840, G54380, G54390

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:25](#); [11:2](#); [14:3](#); [14:10](#); [18:30](#); [25:36](#); [25:39](#); [25:43](#); [25:44](#); [27:15](#); [27:16](#))

## profane, profaned

### Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [holy](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:9
- Malachi 1:10-12
- Matthew 12:5
- Numbers 18:30-32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G09520, G09530

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:5](#))

## profit, profitable, unprofitable

### Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: [worthy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

### Bible References:

- Job 15:3
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 2:8
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 6:63
- Mark 8:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 2:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G01470, G02550, G05120, G08880, G08890, G08900, G12810, G25850, G27700, G27710, G34080, G42970, G42980, G48510, G55390, G56220, G56230, G56240

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:29](#); [5:30](#); [15:5](#); [16:26](#); [18:6](#); [18:15](#); [19:10](#); [25:16](#); [25:17](#); [25:20](#); [25:22](#); [27:24](#))

## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”<sup>⚡</sup>
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

(Go back to: [Matthew 14:7](#))



## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:22](#); [2:5](#); [2:15](#); [2:17](#); [2:23](#); [3:3](#); [4:14](#); [5:12](#); [5:17](#); [7:12](#); [7:22](#); [8:17](#); [10:41](#); [11:9](#); [11:13](#); [12:17](#); [12:39](#); [13:14](#); [13:17](#); [13:35](#); [13:57](#); [14:5](#); [15:7](#); [16:14](#); [Notes](#); [21:4](#); [21:11](#); [21:26](#); [21:46](#); [22:40](#); [23:29](#); [23:30](#); [23:31](#); [23:34](#); [23:37](#); [Notes](#); [24:15](#); [26:56](#); [26:68](#); [27:9](#))

## prostitute, harlot, whored

### Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshipping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [adultery](#), false god, [sexual immorality](#), false god)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G42040

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:31](#); [21:32](#))

## prostrate, bow down, worship

### Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, **Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:2](#); [2:8](#); [2:11](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [8:2](#); [14:33](#); [15:9](#); [15:25](#); [18:26](#); [28:9](#); [28:17](#))

## punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

### Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- 2 Thessalonians 1:9
- Acts 4:21
- Acts 7:59-60
- Genesis 4:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:6** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G13490, G15560, G15570, G28490, G38110, G50970

(Go back to: [Matthew 25:46](#))

## pure, purify, purification

### Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, [clean](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:8](#))

# queen

## Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, [king](#). Persia [ruler](#), Sheba)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 8:27
- Esther 1:17
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G09380

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:42](#))



## quench, quenched, unquenchable

### Definition:

The term “quench” means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term “quench” in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not “quench the Holy Spirit.” This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit from produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people..

(See also: [fruit](#), [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:19
- Ezekiel 20:47
- Isaiah 1:31
- Jeremiah 21:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1846, H3518, H7665, G07620, G45700

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:20](#))

## Rabbi

### Definition:

The term “Rabbi” literally means “my master” or “my teacher.”

- It was a title of respect that was used to address a man who was a Jewish religious teacher, especially a teacher of God’s laws.
- Both John the Baptist and Jesus were sometimes called “Rabbi” by their disciples.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate this term could include “My Master” or “My Teacher” or “Honorable Teacher” or “Religious Teacher.” Some languages may capitalize a greeting like this, while others may not.
- The project language may also have a special way that teachers are normally addressed.
- Make sure the translation of this term does not indicate that Jesus was a schoolteacher.
- Also consider how “Rabbi” is translated in a Bible translation in a related language or a national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [teacher](#))

### Bible References:

- John 1:49-51
- John 6:24-25
- Mark 14:43-46
- Matthew 23:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G44610

(Go back to: [Matthew 23:7](#); [23:8](#); [26:25](#); [26:49](#))

## Rachel

### Facts:

Rachel was one of Jacob's wives. She was the mother of Joseph and Benjamin, whose descendants became three of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Rachel and her sister Leah were the daughters of Laban, Jacob's uncle.
- For many years, Rachel was not able to have any children. Then God enabled her to give birth to Joseph.
- Years later, Rachel died as she gave birth to Benjamin. Jacob buried her near Bethlehem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Jacob](#), Laban, Leah, Joseph (OT), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 29:6
- Genesis 29:19-20
- Genesis 29:30
- Genesis 31:6
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Matthew 2:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7354, G44780

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:18](#))

## Rahab

### Facts:

Rahab was a woman who lived in Jericho when Israel attacked the city. She was a prostitute.

- Rahab hid the two Israelites who came to spy on Jericho before the Israelites attacked it. She helped the spies escape back to the Israelite camp.
- Rahab became a believer in Yahweh.
- She and her family came to live with the Israelites after the Israelites destroyed Jericho and spared Rahab and her family.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jericho](#), [prostitute](#))

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:29-31
- James 2:25
- Joshua 2:21
- Joshua 6:17-19
- Matthew 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** In that city there lived a prostitute named **Rahab** who hid the spies and later helped them to escape. She did this because she believed God. They promised to protect **Rahab** and her family when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.
- **15:5** The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded. **Rahab** and her family were the only people in the city that they did not kill. They became part of the Israelites.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7343, G44600

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:5](#))

## raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

### Definition:

#### raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [3:9](#); [8:15](#); [8:26](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [9:7](#); [9:19](#); [9:25](#); [10:8](#); [11:5](#); [11:11](#); [12:11](#); [12:42](#); [14:2](#); [16:21](#); [17:7](#); [17:9](#); [17:23](#); [20:19](#); [22:24](#); [24:7](#); [24:11](#); [24:24](#); [26:32](#); [26:46](#); [26:62](#); [27:52](#); [27:63](#); [27:64](#); [28:6](#); [28:7](#))

## Ramah

### Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Benjamin, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:27
- 1 Samuel 2:11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- Jeremiah 31:15
- Joshua 18:25-28
- Matthew 2:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G44710

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:18](#))

## **ransom, ransomed**

### **Definition:**

The term “ransom” refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, to “ransom” means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of “buy back” is similar to the meaning of “redeem.”
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called “redemption” in the Bible.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term to “ransom” could also be translated as to “pay to release” or to “pay a price to free” or to “buy back.”
- The phrase to “pay a ransom” could be translated as to “pay the price (of freedom)” or to “pay the penalty (to free people)” or to “make the required payment.”
- The noun “ransom” could be translated as “a buying back” or “a penalty paid” or “the price paid” (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms a “ransom” and a “redemption” have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from “atonement.”

(See also: atonement, redeem)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 2:6
- Isaiah 43:3
- Job 6:23
- Leviticus 19:20
- Matthew 20:28
- Psalms 49:7

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6306, G04870, G30830

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:28](#))



## rebuke, reprove

### Definition:

The term “rebuke” refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also admonish, disobey)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 21:25
- Mark 1:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 8:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G16490, G16510, G19690, G20080, G36790

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:26](#); [16:22](#); [17:18](#); [18:15](#); [19:13](#); [20:31](#))

## receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5
- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:8](#); [10:8](#); [10:14](#); [10:40](#); [10:41](#); [11:14](#); [13:20](#); [17:25](#); [18:5](#); [19:11](#); [19:12](#); [19:29](#); [20:9](#); [20:10](#); [20:11](#); [21:22](#); [21:34](#); [25:16](#); [25:18](#); [25:20](#); [25:24](#); [25:27](#))

## reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation

### Definition:

To “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “make peace” between people who were formerly enemies of each other. “Reconciliation” is that act of making peace

- In the Bible, this term usually refer to Gods reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God’s enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus’ sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could be translated as “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: [peace](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:19
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Matthew 5:24
- Proverbs 13:17-18
- Romans 5:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2398, H3722, G06040, G12590, G24330, G26430, G26440

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:24](#))

## reed

### Facts:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), Nile River)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 7:24
- Matthew 11:7
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 68:30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0098, H0100, H0260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G25630

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:7](#); [12:20](#); [27:48](#))

## Rehoboam

### Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and he became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

- At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the “kingdom of Israel” in the north.
- Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah, which consisted of the remaining two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: kingdom of Israel, Judah, [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10
- 1 Kings 11:41-43
- 1 Kings 14:21
- Matthew 1:7

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:5** After Solomon died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became king. **Rehoboam** was a foolish man.
- **18:6** **Rehoboam** answered foolishly and told them, “You thought my father Solomon made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will punish you more harshly than he did.”
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against **Rehoboam**. Only two tribes remained faithful to him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7346, G44970

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:7](#))

## reign, rule

### Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:22](#))

## reject, rejected, rejection

### Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), disobey, [obey](#), stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:12-14
- Hosea 4:6-7
- Isaiah 41:9
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 7:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0947, H0959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G01140, G04830, G05500, G05790, G05800, G05930, G06830, G07200, G16090, G38680

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:42](#))



## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:5** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:2](#); [3:8](#); [3:11](#); [4:17](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [12:41](#); [Notes](#); [21:29](#); [21:32](#); [27:3](#))

## report, reported, tell, reputation

### Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:8](#); [8:33](#); [9:26](#); [11:4](#); [14:12](#); [18:31](#); [28:8](#); [28:10](#); [28:11](#); [28:15](#))

## rest, rested, restless

### Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:29](#); [12:43](#); [26:45](#))

## resurrection

### Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 3:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 5:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 3:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G03860, G14540, G18150

(Go back to: [Matthew 22:23](#); [22:28](#); [22:30](#); [22:31](#); [27:53](#))

## return, turn back

### Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:12](#); [12:44](#); [21:18](#); [24:18](#); [27:3](#))

## reveal, revealed, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 3:5
- Galatians 1:12
- Lamentations 2:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 3:15
- Revelation 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0241, H1540, H1541, G06010, G06020, G55370

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:26](#); [11:25](#); [11:27](#); [12:16](#); [16:17](#))

## reward, prize, deserve

### Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:6
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 6:35
- Mark 9:40-41
- Matthew 5:11-12
- Matthew 6:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:12](#); [5:46](#); [6:1](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:16](#); [6:18](#); [10:41](#); [10:42](#))



## right hand

### Definition:

The term “right hand” refers to the hand on the right side of a person’s body. In the Bible, the term is often used figuratively to refer to other body parts on a person’s right side, to the direction of a person’s right, to the direction south, or to a place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand can be used figuratively as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:33
- Colossians 3:1
- Galatians 2:9
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 2:3
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 44:3
- Revelation 2:1-2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G11880

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:3](#); [20:21](#); [20:23](#); [22:44](#); [25:33](#); [25:34](#); [26:64](#); [27:29](#); [27:38](#))

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, [law](#), [obey](#), [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), [unlawful](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:19](#); [3:15](#); [5:6](#); [5:10](#); [5:20](#); [6:1](#); [6:33](#); [9:13](#); [10:41](#); [13:17](#); [13:43](#); [13:49](#); [20:4](#); [21:32](#); [23:28](#); [23:29](#); [23:35](#); [25:37](#); [25:46](#); [27:19](#))

## robe, robed

### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, [tunic](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0145, H0155, H0899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G17460, G20670, G24400, G47490, G40160, G55110

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:28](#); [27:31](#))

## rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

### Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:18](#); [9:23](#); [9:34](#); [12:24](#); [20:25](#))

## Ruth

### Facts:

Ruth was a Moabite woman who lived during the time when judges were leading Israel. In Moab, she married an Israelite man named Mahlon after his family had moved there because of a famine in Israel. Mahlon died, and some time after that she left Moab with her mother-in-law Naomi to return to the city of Bethlehem in Israel.

- Ruth was loyal to Naomi and worked hard to provide food for her.
- She also committed herself to serving the one true God of Israel.
- Ruth married an Israelite man named Boaz and gave birth to a son named Obed. Obed became the grandfather of King David, and King David was an ancestor of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Boaz](#), [David](#), [judge](#))

### Bible References:

- Matthew 1:5
- Ruth 1:3-5
- Ruth 3:9
- Ruth 4:6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7327, G45030

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:5](#))

## Sabbath

### Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:5** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:3** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210



(**Go back to:** [Matthew 12 General Notes](#); [12:1](#); [12:2](#); [12:5](#); [12:8](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [24:20](#); [28:1](#))

## sackcloth

### Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [ash](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [humble](#), [mourn](#), [repent](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 1:8-10
- Jonah 3:5
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G45260

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:21](#))

## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering, peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:13](#); [12:7](#))

## Sadducee

### Definition:

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

- Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
- The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
- The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
- Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: [chief priests](#), [council](#), [high priest](#), [hypocrite](#), Jewish leaders, [Pharisee](#), [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:3
- Acts 5:17-18
- Luke 20:27
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 16:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G45230

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:7](#); [16:1](#); [16:6](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [22:23](#); [22:34](#))

## saint

### Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: [holy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:10
- 2 Corinthians 9:12-15
- Revelation 16:6
- Revelation 20:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G00400

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:52](#))

## Samaria, Samaritan

### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, [Galilee](#), [Judea](#), Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:1-3
- Acts 8:5
- John 4:4-5
- Luke 9:51-53
- Luke 10:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:4** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:8** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:9** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G45400, G45410, G45420

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:5](#))

## sanctify, sanctification

### Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, [holy](#), [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Genesis 2:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 6:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6942, G00370, G00380

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:9](#); [23:17](#); [23:19](#))



## sandal

### Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 1:27
- Joshua 5:15
- Mark 6:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G45470, G52660

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:11](#); [10:10](#))

## Satan, devil, evil one

### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), [tempt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.

- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G12280, G41900, G45660, G45670

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:1](#); [4:5](#); [4:8](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [6:13](#); [12:26](#); [13:19](#); [13:38](#); [13:39](#); [16:23](#); [25:41](#))

## Satan, devil, evil one

### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), [tempt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.

- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G12280, G41900, G45660, G45670

(Go back to: [Matthew 4 General Notes](#))

## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:21](#); [8:25](#); [10:22](#); [14:30](#); [16:25](#); [19:25](#); [24:13](#); [24:22](#); [27:40](#); [27:42](#); [27:49](#))

## scribe

### Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), [Pharisee](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:5
- Luke 7:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 1:22
- Mark 2:16
- Matthew 5:19-20
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G11220

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:4](#); [5:20](#); [7:29](#); [8:19](#); [9:3](#); [12:38](#); [13:52](#); [15:1](#); [16:21](#); [17:10](#); [20:18](#); [21:15](#); [23:2](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:23](#); [23:25](#); [23:27](#); [23:29](#); [23:34](#); [26:57](#); [27:41](#))



## Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias

### Facts:

The "Sea of Galilee" is a lake in eastern Israel. In the Old Testament it was called the "Sea of Kinnereth."

- The water of this lake flows south through the Jordan River down to the Salt Sea.
- Capernaum, Bethsaida, Gennesaret, and Tiberias were some of the towns located on the Sea of Galilee during New Testament times.
- Many events of Jesus' life took place on or near the Sea of Galilee.
- The Sea of Galilee was also referred to as the "Sea of Tiberias" and the "lake of Gennesaret."
- This term could also be translated as "lake in the region of Galilee" or "Lake Galilee" or "lake near Tiberias (Gennesaret)."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Capernaum](#), [Galilee](#), [Jordan River](#), Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- John 6:1-3
- Luke 5:1
- Mark 1:16-18
- Matthew 4:12-13
- Matthew 4:18-20
- Matthew 8:18-20
- Matthew 13:1-2
- Matthew 15:29-31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H3672, G10560, G10820, G22810, G30410, G50850

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:18](#); [8:24](#); [8:26](#); [8:27](#); [8:32](#); [13:1](#); [14:25](#); [14:26](#); [15:29](#); [17:27](#))

## seal, sealed, unsealed

### Definition:

To term “seal” means to close an object with something (usually called a “seal”) that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus’ grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a “seal” showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 2:3
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 6:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 5:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G26960, G49720, G49730

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:66](#))

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [children](#), descendant)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:24](#); [13:27](#); [13:32](#); [13:37](#); [13:38](#); [22:24](#); [22:25](#))

## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:13](#); [2:20](#); [6:32](#); [6:33](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [12:39](#); [12:43](#); [12:46](#); [12:47](#); [13:45](#); [16:4](#); [18:12](#); [21:46](#); [26:16](#); [26:59](#); [28:5](#))

## seize, seizure, capture

### Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: [euphemism](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 8:29
- Matthew 26:48

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G07240, G19490, G26380, G29020, G29830, G48150, G48840

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:12](#); [12:29](#); [13:19](#); [14:3](#); [18:28](#); [21:46](#); [22:6](#); [26:4](#); [26:48](#); [26:50](#); [26:55](#); [26:57](#))

## send, sent, send out

### Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commissioned me.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [redeem](#), [castout](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:33-34
- Acts 8:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 9:37-38
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G07820, G03750, G06300, G06490, G06520, G06570, G10260, G10320, G15440, G15990, G18210, G33330, G33430, G39360, G39920, G43110, G43410, G43690, G48420, G48820

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:8](#); [2:16](#); [8:31](#); [9:38](#); [10:5](#); [10:16](#); [10:40](#); [11:2](#); [11:10](#); [13:41](#); [14:10](#); [14:35](#); [15:24](#); [20:2](#); [21:1](#); [21:3](#); [21:34](#); [21:36](#); [21:37](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#); [22:16](#); [23:34](#); [23:37](#); [24:31](#); [26:53](#); [27:19](#))

## serpent, snake, viper

### Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [deceive](#), disobey, Eden, [evil](#), prey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), [tempt](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 3:3
- Genesis 3:4-6
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 23:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G21910, G20620, G37890

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:7](#); [7:10](#); [10:16](#); [12:34](#); [23:33](#))

## **servant, serve, slave, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), [works](#), [obey](#), [house](#), [lord](#))



## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:10](#); [6:24](#); [8:6](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:13](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [12:18](#); [13:27](#); [13:28](#); [14:2](#); [18:23](#); [18:26](#); [18:27](#); [18:28](#); [18:29](#); [18:31](#); [18:32](#); [18:33](#); [20:27](#); [21:34](#); [21:35](#); [21:36](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:6](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [24:45](#); [24:46](#); [24:48](#); [24:49](#); [24:50](#); [25:14](#); [25:19](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [25:26](#); [25:30](#); [26:51](#); [26:69](#))

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 3:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Philippians 1:1-2
- Romans 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G00370, G00380, G00400, G08730

(Go back to: [Matthew 25:32](#))

## sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

### Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), false god, [prostitute](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 3:5-8
- Ephesians 5:3
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 4:13-14
- Matthew 5:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G16080, G42020, G42030

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:32](#); [15:19](#); [19:9](#))

## shadow, overshadow, shade

### Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:9
- Genesis 19:8
- Isaiah 30:2
- Jeremiah 6:4
- Psalms 17:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G06440, G19820, G26830, G46390

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:16](#))

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, [accuse](#), [rebuke](#), false god, [humble](#), [Isaiah](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:11](#); [11:20](#); [27:44](#))

## shepherd, herder, pastor

### Definition:

A “shepherd” is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a “herder” who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term “shepherd” means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd,” and in other places Jesus is called the “great shepherd” of the Church.
- The term “shepherd” is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- The noun “shepherd” can be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as “herder,” “tender of livestock” or “person who takes care of livestock.”
- When used as a verb, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- In some contexts, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- When used figuratively, the noun “shepherd” could be translated in different ways, including “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- When used figuratively, the verb “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”

(See also: [sheep](#), livestock, pastor)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 2:9
- Mark 6:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.



- **17:2** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:6** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:8** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:6](#); [9:36](#); [25:32](#); [26:31](#))

## Sidon, Sidonians

### Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Noah](#), Phoenicia, the sea, [Tyre](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19
- Mark 3:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G46050, G46060

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:21](#); [11:22](#); [15:21](#))

## sign, proof, reminder

### Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
  - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
  - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), circumcise)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:38](#); [12:39](#); [16:1](#); [16:4](#); [24:3](#); [24:24](#); [24:30](#); [26:48](#))

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:9](#); [25:18](#); [25:27](#); [26:15](#); [27:3](#); [27:5](#); [27:6](#); [27:9](#); [28:12](#); [28:15](#))

## Simon the Zealot

### Facts:

Simon the Zealot was one of Jesus' twelve disciples.

- Simon is mentioned three times in the listing of Jesus' disciples, but little else is known about him.
- Simon was one of the Eleven who met to pray together in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up into heaven.
- The term "zealot" may mean that Simon was a member of "the Zealots," a Jewish religious party that was very zealous in upholding the Law of Moses while strongly opposing the Roman government.
- Or, "zealot" may simply mean "the zealous one," referring to Simon's religious zeal.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:12-14
- Luke 6:14-16
- Mark 3:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G22080, G25810, G46130

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:4](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:21](#); [3:6](#); [Notes](#); [9:2](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [9:13](#); [11:19](#); [12:31](#); [Notes](#); [18:15](#); [18:21](#); [Notes](#); [26:28](#); [26:45](#); [27:4](#))



## sister

### Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or spouse.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother](#) in Christ, [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 1:2
- Romans 16:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0269, H1323, G00270, G00790

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:50](#); [13:56](#); [19:29](#))

## skin disease, leper, leprosy

### Definition:

The term “leprosy” is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A “leper” is a person who has leprosy. The term “leprosy” describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered “unclean” and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out “unclean” so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “leprosy” in the Bible can be translated as “skin disease” or “dreaded skin disease.”
- Ways to translate “leprosy” could include “full of leprosy” or “infected with skin disease” or “covered with skin sores.”

(See also: Miriam, Naaman, [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 5:13
- Luke 17:12
- Mark 1:40
- Mark 14:3
- Matthew 8:3
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 11:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6879, H6883, G30140, G30150

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:2](#); [8:3](#); [10:8](#); [11:5](#); [26:6](#))

## skull

### Definition:

The term "skull" refers to the bony, skeletal structure of the head of a person or animal.

- Sometimes the term "skull" means "head," as in the phrase "shave your skull."
- The term "Place of the Skull" was another name for Golgotha, where Jesus was crucified.
- This term could also be translated as "head" or "head bone."

(See also: [crucify](#), [Golgotha](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:35-37
- Jeremiah 2:16
- John 19:17
- Matthew 27:32-34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1538, H6936, H7218, G28980

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:33](#))

## snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall

### Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. To “snare” or “ensnare” is to catch with a snare, and to “trap” or “entrap” is to catch with a trap. In the Bible, these terms were also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” is a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” is usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together, catching an animal so it can’t get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- A person who starts sinning and cannot stop can be described as “ensnared by sin” in a figurative reference to the way an animal can be ensnared and cannot escape.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: [free](#), [prey](#), [Satan](#), [tempt](#))

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 7:26
- Luke 21:34
- Mark 12:13
- Psalms 18:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2256, H3353, H3369, H3920, H3921, H4170, H4204, H4434, H4685, H4686, H4889, H5367, H5914, H6341, H6351, H6354, H6679, H6983, H7639, H7845, H8610, G00640, G23390, G23400, G38020, G38030, G39850, G46250

(Go back to: [Matthew 22:15](#))

## snow

### Facts:

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that can fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but does not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of a place mentioned in the Bible as having snow is Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is very white often has its color compared to the color of snow. For example, in the book of Revelation Jesus’ clothing and hair were described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes purity and cleanliness. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God will completely cleanse his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Lebanon, [pure](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 4:6
- Job 37:4-6
- Matthew 28:3
- Psalms 147:16
- Revelation 1:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7949, H7950, H8517, G55100

(Go back to: [Matthew 28:3](#))

## Sodom

### Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Gomorrah](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 13:12
- Matthew 10:15
- Matthew 11:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G46700

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:15](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#))

## soldier, warrior

### Facts:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: [courage](#), [crucify](#), [Rome](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:5
- Acts 21:33
- Luke 3:14
- Luke 23:11
- Matthew 8:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H0510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H4421, H5971, H6518, H6635, H7273, H7916, G46860, G47530, G47540, G47570, G47580, G49610

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:9](#); [27:27](#); [28:12](#))

## Solomon

### Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bathsheba, [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 1:7-8
- Matthew 6:29
- Matthew 12:42

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:3** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:4** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G46720

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:6](#); [1:7](#); [6:29](#); [12:42](#))



## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: descendant, [ancestor](#), [Son of God](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:1](#); [1:20](#); [1:21](#); [1:23](#); [1:25](#); [5:9](#); [5:45](#); [7:9](#); [8:12](#); [9:15](#); [9:27](#); [10:37](#); [12:23](#); [12:27](#); [13:38](#); [13:55](#); [15:22](#); [17:15](#); [17:25](#); [17:26](#); [20:20](#); [20:21](#); [20:30](#); [20:31](#); [21:5](#); [21:9](#); [21:15](#); [21:28](#); [21:37](#); [21:38](#); [22:2](#); [22:42](#); [22:45](#); [23:15](#); [23:31](#); [23:35](#); [26:37](#); [27:9](#); [27:56](#))

## Son of God, the Son

### Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [ancestor](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:10
- Acts 9:20
- Colossians 1:17
- Galatians 2:20
- Hebrews 4:14
- John 3:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 2:18
- Romans 8:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **24:9** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”
- **31:8** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **37:5** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God!**”

- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1121, H1247, G23160, G52070

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:15](#); [3:17](#); [4:3](#); [4:6](#); [8:29](#); [11:27](#); [14:33](#); [16:16](#); [17:5](#); [24:36](#); [26:63](#); [27:40](#); [27:43](#); [27:54](#); [28:19](#))

## Son of Man, son of man

### Definition:

The title “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he said, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man” it could be translated as “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:56
- Daniel 7:14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 3:12-13
- Luke 6:5
- Mark 2:10
- Matthew 13:37
- Psalms 80:17-18
- Revelation 14:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, H0606, H1121, H1247, G04440, G52070

(**Go back to:** [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 8:20](#); [9:6](#); [10:23](#); [11:19](#); [12:8](#); [12:32](#); [12:40](#); [13:37](#); [13:41](#); [16:13](#); [16:27](#); [16:28](#); [17:9](#); [17:12](#); [17:22](#); [19:28](#); [20:18](#); [20:28](#); [24:27](#); [24:30](#); [24:37](#); [24:39](#); [24:44](#); [25:31](#); [26:2](#); [26:24](#); [26:45](#); [26:64](#))

## sons of God, children of God

### Definition:

The term “sons of God” is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term “sons of God” that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- The title “Son of God” is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God’s only Son.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “sons of God” refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as “children of God.”
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate “sons of God” could include “angels,” “spirit beings,” “supernatural creatures,” or “demons.”
- Also see the link for “son.”

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [ruler](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 6:2
- Genesis 6:4
- Job 1:6
- Romans 8:14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H1121, G52070, G50430

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:9](#); [5:45](#))

## soul, self, person

### Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:28](#); [11:29](#); [12:18](#); [16:26](#); [22:37](#); [26:38](#))

## spirit, wind, breath

### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah." Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives."
- Sometimes this term can be translated as "wind" when referring to the simple movement of air or "breath" when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: [soul](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [demon](#), [breath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27



## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:3](#); [26:41](#); [27:50](#))

## staff, clubs

### Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, [power](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 4:1-3
- Exodus 7:9
- Luke 9:3
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G25630, G35860, G44640

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:10](#); [27:29](#); [27:30](#))

## stone, stoning

### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [commit](#), [crime](#), [death](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 7:59-60
- Acts 14:5
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 8:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:6
- Matthew 23:37-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0068, H0069, H0810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G26420, G29910, G30340, G30350, G30360, G30370, G40740, G43480, G55860

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:35; 23:37](#))

## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,  
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

**(Go back to: [Matthew 8:28](#); [9:12](#); [12:29](#); [14:30](#))**

## stumble, reeling

### Definition:

The term “stumble” means “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to “stumble” can mean to “sin” or to “falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

### Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: [believe](#), [persecute](#), [sin](#), [stumbling block](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 2:8
- Hosea 4:5
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G06790, G43480, G43500, G44170, G46240, G46250

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:29](#); [5:30](#); [18:6](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#))

## stumbling block, stone of stumbling

### Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See also: [stumble](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:23
- Galatians 5:11
- Matthew 5:29-30
- Matthew 16:23
- Romans 9:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4383, G30370, G43490, G46250

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:23](#); [18:7](#))

## suffer, suffering

### Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 1:3-5
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- Acts 7:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 6:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 22:24
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:3** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:7** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:4** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.



## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G00910, G09410, G09710, G22100, G23460, G23470, G25520, G25530, G25610, G38040, G39580, G43100, G47780, G47770, G48410, G50040

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:21](#); [17:12](#); [27:19](#))

## sweep

### Facts:

To “sweep” usually means to remove dirt by making broad, quick movements with a broom or brush. “Swept” is the past tense of “sweep.” These words are also used figuratively.

- The term “sweep” is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
- For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would “sweep through” the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
- The term “sweep” can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
- When overwhelming, difficult things are happening to a person, it can be said that they are “sweeping over” him.

(See also: Assyria, [Isaiah](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:3
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Genesis 18:24
- Proverbs 21:7-8
- Psalms 90:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H0857, H1640, H2498, H2894, H3261, H5500, H5595, H7857, G42160, G45630, G49510

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:44](#))

## sword, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:34](#); [26:47](#); [26:51](#); [26:52](#); [26:55](#))

## synagogue

### Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jew](#), [pray](#), [temple](#), [word of God](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:9
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 6:59
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 6:1-2
- Matthew 9:35-36
- Matthew 13:54

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4150, G06560, G07520, G48640

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:23](#); [6:2](#); [6:5](#); [9:35](#); [10:17](#); [12:9](#); [13:54](#); [23:6](#); [23:34](#))

## Syria, Ashur

### Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

- In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
- Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
- Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
- Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
- Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, commander, Damascus, descendant, Elisha, [leprosy](#), Naaman, [persecute](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:23
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 20:3
- Galatians 1:21-24
- Matthew 4:23-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0758, H0804, G49470, G49480

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:24](#))

## Tamar

### Facts:

Tamar is the name of several different women in the Old Testament. There are several cities or other places that are named Tamar in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called "Hazon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: Absalom, [ancestor](#), Amnon, [David](#), [ancestor](#), [Judah](#), Salt Sea)

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:4
- 2 Samuel 13:2
- 2 Samuel 14:25-27
- Genesis 38:6-7
- Genesis 38:24
- Matthew 1:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1193, H2688, H8412, H8559

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:3](#))

## tax, tribute, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,

### Definition:

The terms "tax" and "taxes" refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A "tax collector" was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person's property is worth.
- In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term "tax" could also be translated as "required payment" or "government money" or "temple money," depending on the context.
- To "pay taxes" could also be translated as to "pay money to the government" or "receive money for the government" or "make the required payment." To "collect taxes" could be translated as to "receive money for the government."
- A "tax collector" is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
- The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
- Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
- The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
- The phrase, "tax collectors and sinners" was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.

(See also: [Jew](#), [Rome](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 20:21-22
- Mark 2:13-14
- Matthew 9:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7
- Luke 3:12-13
- Luke 5:27-28
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Matthew 9:10-11
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 17:26-27
- Matthew 18:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

34:6 He said, "Two men went to the Temple to pray. One of them was a tax collector, and the other was a religious leader." 34:7 "The religious leader prayed like this, 'Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector.'" 34:9 "But the tax collector stood far away from the

religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, 'God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.'" 34:10 Then Jesus said, "I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector's prayer and declared him to be righteous." 35:1 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.

### Word Data:

- Tax: Strong's: H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H6186, G13230, G27780, G50550, G54110
- Tax Collector: Strong's: H5065, H5674, G50570, G50580

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:46](#); [9:9](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [10:3](#); [11:19](#); [17:25](#); [18:17](#); [21:31](#); [21:32](#))



## teach, teaching, untaught

### Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- John 7:14
- Luke 4:31
- Matthew 4:23
- Psalms 32:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G13170, G13210, G13220, G20850, G26050, G27270, G31000, G23120, G25670, G38110, G49940

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:23](#); [5:2](#); [5:19](#); [7:28](#); [7:29](#); [9:35](#); [11:1](#); [13:54](#); [15:9](#); [16:12](#); [21:23](#); [22:16](#); [22:33](#); [26:55](#); [28:20](#))

## teacher, Teacher

### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:12-15
- Ephesians 4:11-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Habakkuk 2:18
- James 3:2
- John 1:37-39
- Luke 6:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:1** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **37:2** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- **49:3** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G13200, G25670, G35470, G55720

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:19](#); [9:11](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [12:38](#); [17:24](#); [19:16](#); [22:16](#); [22:24](#); [22:36](#); [26:18](#))

## temple, house, house of God

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:5](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [21:12](#); [21:14](#); [21:15](#); [21:23](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:21](#); [23:35](#); [24:1](#); [26:55](#); [26:61](#); [27:5](#); [27:40](#); [27:51](#))

## tempt, temptation

### Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), [test](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:4-5
- Hebrews 4:15
- James 1:13
- Luke 4:2
- Luke 11:4
- Matthew 26:41

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0974, H4531, H5254, G05510, G15980, G39850, G39860, G39870

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:1](#); [4:3](#); [6:13](#); [26:41](#))

## tenth, tithe

### Definition:

The terms "tenth" and "tithe" refer to "ten percent" or "one-out-of-ten portion" of one's money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as "one-tenth" or "one out of ten."

(See also: [believe](#), [Israel](#), [Levite](#), [livestock](#), [Melchizedek](#), [minister](#), [sacrifice](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- Isaiah 6:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4643, H6237, H6241, G05860, G11810, G11830

(Go back to: [Matthew 23:23](#))

## test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

### Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12
- Lamentations 3:40-43
- Malachi 3:10
- Philippians 1:10
- Psalm 26:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:7](#); [16:1](#); [19:3](#); [22:18](#); [22:35](#))

## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- In some places in the Old Testament, “Testimony” refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God’s law more broadly.
- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))



## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:4](#); [10:18](#); [18:16](#); [23:31](#); [24:14](#); [26:65](#))

## tetrarch

### Definition:

The term "tetrarch" refers to a governing official who ruled over part of the Roman Empire. Each tetrarch was under the authority of the Roman emperor.

- The title "tetrarch" means "one of four joint rulers."
- Starting under the Emperor Diocletian, there were four major divisions of the Roman Empire and each tetrarch ruled one division.
- The kingdom of Herod "the Great," who was king at the time of the birth of Jesus, was divided into four sections after his death, and ruled by his sons as "tetrarchs," or "rulers of a fourth."
- Each division had one or more smaller parts called "provinces," such as Galilee or Samaria.
- "Herod the tetrarch" is mentioned several times in the New Testament. He is also known as "Herod Antipas."
- The term "tetrarch" could also be translated as "regional governor" or "provincial ruler" or "ruler" or "governor."

(See also: [governor](#), [Herod Antipas](#), province, Rome, [ruler](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 3:1-2
- Luke 9:7
- Matthew 14:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G50750, G50760

(Go back to: [Matthew 14:1](#))

## the twelve, the eleven

### Definition:

The term “the twelve” refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called “the eleven.”

- Jesus had many other disciples, but the title “the twelve” distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
- The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
- Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, “the eleven” chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas’ place. Then they were called “the twelve” again.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, “the twelve apostles” or “Jesus’ twelve closest disciples.”
- “The eleven” could also be translated as “Jesus’ eleven remaining disciples.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in “the Twelve” and “the Eleven.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
- Acts 6:2
- Luke 9:1
- Luke 18:31
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 10:7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G14270, G17330

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:1](#); [10:2](#); [10:5](#); [11:1](#); [20:17](#); [26:14](#); [26:20](#); [26:47](#); [28:16](#))

## thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits

### Facts:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “thief” is “thieves.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: [bless](#), [crime](#), [crucify](#), [darkness](#), [destroyer](#), [power](#), [Samaria](#), [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:10
- Luke 12:33
- Mark 14:48
- Proverbs 6:30
- Revelation 3:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H7703, G07270, G24170, G28120, G30270

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:19](#); [6:20](#); [21:13](#); [24:43](#); [26:55](#); [27:38](#); [27:44](#))

## Thomas

### Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

- Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
- After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [God the Father](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:12-14
- John 11:15-16
- Luke 6:14-16
- Mark 3:17-19
- Matthew 10:2-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G23810

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:3](#))

## thorn, thorn bush, thistle

### Facts:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 6:7-8
- Matthew 13:7
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G01730, G01740, G46470, G51460

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:16](#); [13:7](#); [13:22](#); [27:29](#))

## thresh

### Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:7
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 2:35
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Ruth 3:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:12](#))

## throne, enthroned

### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:34](#); [19:28](#); [23:22](#); [25:31](#))



## time, untimely, date

### Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:7
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 8:29
- Psalms 68:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0116, H0227, H0310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G07440, G05300, G10740, G12080, G14410, G15970, G16260, G19090, G20340, G21190, G21210, G22350, G22500, G25400, G34610, G35680, G37640, G38190, G39560, G39990, G41780, G41810, G41830, G42180, G42870, G43400, G44550, G51190, G51510, G53050, G55500, G55510, G56100

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:7](#); [2:16](#); [8:29](#); [11:25](#); [12:1](#); [13:30](#); [14:1](#); [21:34](#); [21:41](#); [24:45](#); [25:19](#); [26:18](#))

## to minister, ministry

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:11](#); [8:15](#); [20:26](#); [20:28](#); [22:13](#); [23:11](#); [25:44](#); [27:55](#))

## torment, tormented, tormentors

### Facts:

The term “torment” refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term “torment” refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the “beast” will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering may also take the form of spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as “terrible suffering” or “cause someone to suffer greatly” or “agony.” Some translators may add “physical” or “spiritual” to make the meaning clear.

(See also: [beast](#), [everlasting](#), [Job](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [suffer](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 1:11-12
- Luke 8:28-29
- Revelation 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3013, G09280, G09290, G09300, G09310, G25580, G28510, G36000

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:6](#); [8:29](#))

## tradition

### Definition:

The term “tradition” refers to a custom or practice that has been kept over time and which is passed down to people in later generations.

- Often in the Bible the word “traditions” referred to teachings and practices that people made, not God’s laws. The expression “tradition of men” or “human tradition” makes this clear.
- Phrases such as “traditions of the elders” or “traditions of my fathers” referred specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions had not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
- The apostle Paul used the term “tradition” in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
- In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Christian](#), [ancestor](#), [generation](#), [Jew](#), [law](#), [Moses](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Colossians 2:8
- Galatians 1:13-14
- Mark 7:2
- Matthew 15:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G38620

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:2](#); [15:3](#); [15:6](#))

## trample

### Definition:

To “trample” means to step on something and smash it with the feet. This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to mean “destroy” or “defeat” or “humiliate.”

- An example of “trampling” would be the smashing down of grass by the feet of people running in a field..
- In ancient times, wine was sometimes made by trampling grapes to remove the juice from them.
- Sometimes the term to “trample” has a figurative meaning of to “punish by humiliating,” comparing it to trampling mud for a threshing floor.
- The term “trample” was used figuratively to express how Yahweh would punish his people Israel for their pride and rebellion.
- Other ways that “trample” could be translated include “crush with the feet” or “smash down with the feet” or “stomp on and crush” or “smash into the ground.”
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated

(See also: [grape](#), [shame](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#), [thresh](#), [wine](#))

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:29
- Psalms 7:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0947, H1758, H1869, H4001, H4823, H7429, H7512, G26620, G39610

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:13](#); [7:6](#))

## tremble, stagger, shake

### Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:51; 28:4](#))

## **trespass**

### **Definition:**

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, iniquity, [sin](#), transgress)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 2:13
- Ephesians 2:1
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 5:17
- Romans 5:20-21

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0816, H0817, H0819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G02640, G39000

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:14](#); [6:15](#))

## tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(Go back to: [Matthew 19:28](#); [24:30](#))



## tribulation, distresses, trouble

### Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus' teachings.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), [teach](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- Mark 4:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 2:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6869, G23470, G44230

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:21](#); [24:9](#); [24:21](#); [24:29](#))

## tribute, contribution, fined

### Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations. A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.

- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), [ruler](#), [tax](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:3
- Luke 23:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H6066, H7862, G54110

(Go back to: [Matthew 17:25](#); [22:17](#); [22:19](#))

## trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

### Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:3](#); [9:36](#); [14:26](#); [24:6](#); [26:10](#))

## true, truth

### Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" means that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true!** You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth?**"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(Go back to: [Matthew 14:33](#); [22:16](#); [26:73](#); [27:54](#))

## trumpet, trumpeters

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:2](#); [24:31](#))

## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:43](#))

## tunic

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “tunic” referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See Also: [robe](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 3:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 8:12-13
- Luke 3:11
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G55090

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:40](#); [10:10](#))



## turn, turn away, turn back, return

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”
- To “turn aside” means to change direction, it often means to either stop doing right and start doing evil or the opposite.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake. It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: false god, [leprosy](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:2
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 1:17
- Malachi 4:6
- Revelation 11:6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G03440, G03870, G04020, G06540, G06650, G08680, G12940, G15780, G16120, G16240, G19940, G31790, G33130, G33290, G33440, G33460, G47620, G51570, G52900

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:39](#); [5:42](#); [7:6](#); [9:22](#); [10:13](#); [13:15](#); [16:23](#); [18:3](#); [26:52](#))

## twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes

### Definition:

The term “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- These are the names of Jacob’s twelve sons: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, [Judah](#), Dan, [Naphtali](#), Gad, Asher, Issachar, [Zebulun](#), Joseph, Benjamin, Ephraim, [Manasseh](#), [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [tribe](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:7
- Genesis 49:28
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 19:28

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H7626, H8147, G14270, G24740, G54430

(Go back to: [Matthew 19:28](#))

## Tyre, Tyrians

### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), cedar, [Israel](#), the sea, Phoenicia, [Sidon](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 3:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G51830, G51840

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:21](#); [11:22](#); [15:21](#))

## understand, understanding, thinking

### Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:25](#); [13:11](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [13:15](#); [13:19](#); [13:23](#); [13:51](#); [15:10](#); [15:17](#); [16:9](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [17:13](#); [24:15](#))

## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 6:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 6:21
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Luke 22:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G01060

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:17](#))

# Uriah

## Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), Bathsheba, [David](#), Hittite)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:5
- 2 Samuel 11:3
- 2 Samuel 11:26-27
- Nehemiah 3:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:12** Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed.
- **17:13** After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0223, G37740

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:6](#))

## Uzziah, Azariah

### Facts:

Uzziah became king of Judah at the age of 16 and reigned 52 years, which was an unusually long reign. Uzziah was also known as "Azariah."

- King Uzziah was well-known for his organized and skilled military. He had towers built to protect the city and had specially-designed weapons of war mounted on them to hurl arrows and large stones.
- As long as Uzziah served the Lord, he prospered. Toward the end of his reign, however, he became proud and he disobeyed the Lord by burning incense in the temple, which only the priest was permitted to do.
- Because of this sin, Uzziah became sick with leprosy and had to live separately from other people until the end of his reign.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Judah, [king](#), [leprosy](#), [reign](#), [watchtower](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 14:21
- Amos 1:1
- Hosea 1:1
- Isaiah 6:1-2
- Matthew 1:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5818, H5838, H5839

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:8](#); [1:9](#))



## vain, vanity

### Definition:

The terms “vain” and “vanity” describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as “vain” things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done “in vain,” it means that there the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase “in vain” might be translated in various ways, including: “without result;” “with no result;” “for no reason;” “for no purpose,” or “with no purpose.”
- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty;” “useless;” “hopeless;” “worthless;” “meaningless;” etc.

(See also: false god, [worthy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 2:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 2:29-31
- Matthew 15:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G09450, G15000, G27560, G27580, G27610, G31510, G31520, G31530, G31550

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:9](#))

## **vine**

### **Definition:**

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:1
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:3
- Matthew 21:35-37

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:29](#))

## vineyard

### Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:20-21
- Luke 13:6
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:2
- Matthew 21:40-41

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G02900

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:1](#); [20:2](#); [20:4](#); [20:7](#); [20:8](#); [21:28](#); [21:33](#); [21:39](#); [21:40](#); [21:41](#))

## virgin, virginity

### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Mary](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:23](#); [25:1](#); [25:7](#); [25:11](#))

## vision, envision

### Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

### Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 1:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G37010, G37050, G37060

(Go back to: [Matthew 17:9](#))

## voice

### Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

### Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:18](#); [3:3](#); [3:17](#); [12:19](#); [17:5](#); [27:46](#); [27:50](#))

## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:18](#); [9:5](#); [11:5](#); [14:25](#); [14:26](#); [14:29](#); [15:31](#))

## waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak

### Definition:

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” to a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 6:6
- Leviticus 26:39
- Matthew 26:8
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Zechariah 7:13-14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0535, H1086, H1104, H1326, H2100, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H5307, H5327, H7334, H7582, H7703, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, G06840, G12870, G20490, G26730

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:8](#))



## watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [Matthew 14:25](#); [16:6](#); [24:42](#); [24:43](#); [25:13](#); [26:38](#); [26:40](#); [26:41](#); [27:36](#); [27:54](#); [28:4](#))

## watchtower, tower

### Definition:

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [watch](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:33-34
- Psalm 62:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0803, H0971, H0975, H1785, H2918, H4026, H4029, H4692, H4707, H4869, H6076, H6438, H6836, G44440

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:33](#))

## water, deep

### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- The “deep” refers to a deep body of water, such as the watery depths at the beginning of creation or bodies of water that extend deep under the earth’s surface such as oceans, seas, etc.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 4:10
- John 4:14
- John 4:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, H8415, G05040, G42150, G42220, G52020, G52040

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:11](#); [3:16](#); [8:32](#); [14:28](#); [14:29](#); [17:15](#); [27:24](#))

## wheat

### Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), [chaff](#), [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), [winnow](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Matthew 13:26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G46210

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:12](#); [13:25](#); [13:29](#); [13:30](#))

## will of God

### Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G10120, G10130, G23070, G23080, G23090, G25960

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:10](#); [7:21](#); [12:50](#); [18:14](#); [26:42](#))

## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:17](#); [27:34](#))

## winepress

### Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- Isaiah 63:2
- Mark 12:1
- Matthew 21:33
- Revelation 14:20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1660, H3342, H6333, G30250, G52760

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:33](#))

## winnow, sift

### Definition:

The terms “winnow” and “sift” mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words can also be used to refer to separating or dividing people.

- To “winnow” means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
- The word “sift” refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
- In the Old Testament, “winnow” and “sift” are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
- Jesus also used the term “sift” in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
- To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be “shaking” or “fanning.” If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#))

### Bible References:

- Isaiah 21:10
- Luke 22:31
- Matthew 3:12
- Proverbs 20:8
- Ruth 3:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2219, H5128, H5130, G44250, G46170

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:12](#))



## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:24](#); [10:16](#); [11:19](#); [11:25](#); [12:42](#); [13:54](#); [23:34](#); [24:45](#); [25:2](#); [25:4](#); [25:8](#); [25:9](#))

## woe

### Definition:

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- Jude 1:9-11
- Luke 6:24
- Luke 17:1-2
- Matthew 23:23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0188, H0190, H0337, H0480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G37590

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:21](#); [18:7](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:16](#); [23:23](#); [23:25](#); [23:27](#); [23:29](#); [24:19](#); [26:24](#))

## wolf, wild dogs

### Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term “wolves” is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

### Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as “wild dog” or “wild animal.”
- Other names for wild dogs could be “jackal” or “coyote.”
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as “evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep.”

(See also: [evil](#), [false prophet](#), [sheep](#), [teach](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 20:29
- Isaiah 11:7
- John 10:11-13
- Luke 10:3
- Matthew 7:15
- Zephaniah 3:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2061, H3611, G30740

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:15](#); [10:16](#))

## womb

### Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 2:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G10640, G28360, G33880

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18](#); [1:23](#); [19:12](#); [24:19](#))

## word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7

- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God.**"
- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word.**
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God.**
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:6](#); [21:42](#); [22:29](#); [26:54](#); [26:56](#))

## work, works, deeds

### Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:16](#); [11:2](#); [16:27](#); [23:3](#); [23:5](#); [26:10](#))

## world, worldly

### Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), Rome, godly)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15
- 1 John 4:5
- 1 John 5:5
- John 1:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G10930, G28860, G28890, G36250

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:8](#); [5:14](#); [13:35](#); [13:38](#); [16:26](#); [18:7](#); [24:14](#); [24:21](#); [25:34](#); [26:13](#))



## worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

### Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:4
- 2 Thessalonians 1:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 1:9-10
- Jeremiah 8:19
- Mark 1:7
- Matthew 3:10-12
- Philippians 1:25-27

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G00960, G05140, G05150, G05160, G24250, G26610, G27350

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:8](#); [3:11](#); [8:8](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:13](#); [10:37](#); [10:38](#); [22:8](#))

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:7](#))

## wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

### Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:5
- Luke 6:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 71:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G00910, G00920, G00930, G00950, G02640, G08240, G09830, G09840, G15360, G16260, G16510, G17270, G19080, G25560, G25580, G25590, G26070, G30760, G30770, G37620, G41220, G51950, G51960

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:13](#))

## year

### Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:20](#))

## yeast, leaven, unleavened

### Definition:

“Leaven” is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. “Yeast” is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as “yeast,” which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn’t have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.
- The term “leaven” or “yeast” is used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person’s life or how sin can influence other people.
- It can also refer to false teaching which often spreads to many people and influences them.
- The term “leaven” is also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God’s kingdom spreads from person to person.

### Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as “leaven” or “substance that causes dough to rise” or “expanding agent.” The word “rise” could be expressed as “expand” or “get bigger” or “puff up.”
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means “leavening,” this would be the best term to use.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Passover](#), [unleavened bread](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:8
- Galatians 5:9-10
- Luke 12:1
- Luke 13:21
- Matthew 13:33
- Matthew 16:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G01060, G22190, G22200

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:33](#); [16:6](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#))

## yoke, yoked, tied

### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [persecute](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:10
- Galatians 5:1
- Genesis 27:40
- Isaiah 9:4
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Matthew 11:30
- Philippians 4:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G20860, G22180

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:29](#); [11:30](#))

## Zadok

### Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ark of the covenant, [David](#), [Jotham](#), Nehemiah, [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 1:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- Matthew 1:12-14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6659, G45240

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:14](#))

## Zebedee

### Facts:

Zebedee was a fisherman from Galilee who is known because of his sons, James and John, who were Jesus' disciples. They are often identified in the New Testament as the "sons of Zebedee."

- Zebedee's sons were also fishermen and worked with him to catch fish.
- James and John quit their fishing work with their father Zebedee and left to go follow Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [disciple](#), [fishermen](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [John \(the apostle\)](#))

### Bible References:

- John 21:1-3
- Luke 5:8-11
- Mark 1:19-20
- Matthew 4:21-22
- Matthew 20:20
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G21990

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:21](#); [10:2](#); [20:20](#); [26:37](#); [27:56](#))



## Zebulun

### Facts:

Zebulun was Jacob's tenth son. He was Leah's sixth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Zebulun" or "Zebulun."
- The meaning of the name Zebulun is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word probably meaning "to honor" or "to dwell."
- The tribe of Zebulun settled in northwest Canaan, bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Issachar, Manasseh, and Asher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Leah](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:20
- Isaiah 9:1
- Judges 4:10
- Matthew 4:13
- Matthew 4:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2074, H2075, G21940

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:13](#); [4:15](#))

## Zerubbabel

### Facts:

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

- One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
- A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
- Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), captive, Cyrus, Ezra, [high priest](#), Jehoiakim, Joshua, [Judah](#), Nehemiah, Persia, Zedekiah)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:19-21
- Ezra 2:1-2
- Ezra 3:8-9
- Luke 3:27-29
- Matthew 1:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2216, H2217, G22160

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:12](#); [1:13](#))

## Zion, Mount Zion

### Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), Jebusites)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:5
- Amos 1:2
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 76:1-3
- Romans 11:26

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:5](#))

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway



Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Scott Bayer  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Dan Dennison  
Jamie Duguid  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
John Huffman  
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary  
Leonard Smith  
Suzanna Smith  
Tim Span  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Maria Tijerina  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary  
James Vigen  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Kailey Gregory  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
John Huffman  
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College  
Leonard Smith  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
James Vigen  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors**

Door43 World Missions Community

Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)

Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)

Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)

Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)